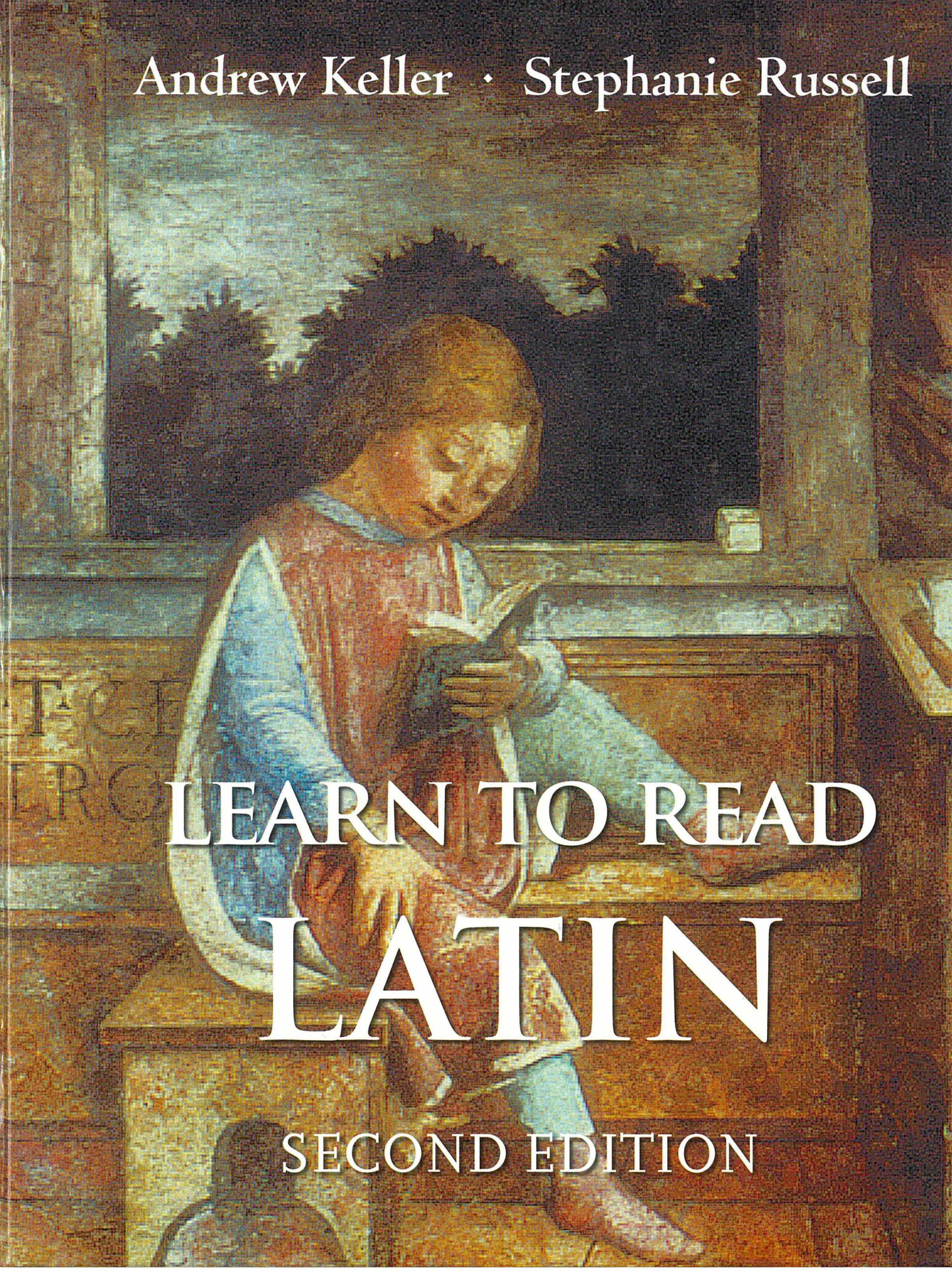


Andrew Keller • Stephanie Russell

A classical painting of a young child with a halo, sitting on a wooden bench and reading a book. The child is wearing a blue long-sleeved shirt and a red vest. The background is a dark, textured wall with a window. The text 'LEARN TO READ' and 'LATIN' is overlaid on the image in white serif font. 'LEARN TO READ' is in a smaller font size than 'LATIN'.

LEARN TO READ
LATIN

SECOND EDITION

LEARN TO READ LATIN

LEARN TO READ
LATIN

SECOND EDITION

Andrew Keller

Collegiate School

Stephanie Russell

Collegiate School

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS New Haven & London

The authors thank Dr. Hans-Friedrich Mueller of the University of Florida and Dr. John Miller of the University of Virginia for reviewing their manuscript.

First edition published as one volume in 2004 and as two volumes in 2006. Second edition published in 2015.

Copyright © 2004, 2006, 2015 by Yale University.

All rights reserved.

This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, including illustrations, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publishers.

Yale University Press books may be purchased in quantity for educational, business, or promotional use. For information, please e-mail sales.press@yale.edu (U.S. office) or sales@yaleup.co.uk (U.K. office).

Editor: Tim Shea

Publishing Assistant: Ashley E. Lago

Production Editor: Ann-Marie Imbornoni

Production Controller: Aldo Cupo

Designed by James J. Johnson

Set in E & F Scala type by Integrated Publishing Solutions.

Printed in the United States of America.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014946106

ISBN: 978-0-300-19494-4 (hardcover)

ISBN: 978-0-300-19495-1 (paperback)

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

CONTENTS

Preface	xvii
Preface to the Second Edition	xix
Acknowledgments	xxi
How to Use <i>Learn to Read Latin</i>	xxiii
List of Abbreviations	xxix
Introduction	1
The Latin Language	1
Pronunciation of Classical Latin	3
Alphabet	4
Consonants	4
Vowels	5
Diphthongs	6
Stress	7
<i>The Law of the Penult</i>	8
Language Study: Vocabulary, Morphology, and Syntax	9

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary	11
Vocabulary Notes	12
Prepositions	12
Derivatives and Cognates	14
§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case	15
Nominative Case	15
Nominative, Subject	15
Predicate Nominative	16

Genitive Case	16
Genitive of Possession	16
Dative Case	16
Dative of Reference	16
Dative of Indirect Object	16
Accusative Case	17
Accusative, Direct Object	17
Ablative Case	17
Ablative of Accompaniment	17
Ablative of Means	17
Vocative Case	18
§2. The Five Declensions	18
Finding the Stem	19
§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension	19
§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension	21

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary	25
Vocabulary Notes	26
Principal Parts	26
§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood	29
§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview	30
§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts	31
§8. The Four Conjugations	32
Finding the Present Stem	32
§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	33
Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	33
Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	34
Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	35
§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	35
Present Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	36
Imperfect Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	36
Future Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	37
The Two Meanings of the Verb <i>sum</i>	37
§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs	38
§12. Complementary Infinitive	38

- §13. Object Infinitive 39
- §14. Dative of the Possessor 39
Expressions of Possession Compared 40
- §15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order 40
Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences 43
Short Readings 44
- §16. Names in Latin I 45

CHAPTER III

- Vocabulary 47
Vocabulary Notes 48
Adjectives 48
- §17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives 50
- §18. Noun-Adjective Agreement 51
- §19. Substantive Use of the Adjective 51
- §20. Predicate Adjective 52
- §21. The Irregular Verb *eō* 53
- §22. Introduction to the Passive Voice 53
- §23. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 54
Passive Personal Endings 54
Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 55
Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 56
Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 56
- §24. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative 57
- §25. Ablative of Personal Agent 58
- §26. The Uses of *habeō* and *videō* in the Passive Voice 58
- §27. Ablative of Manner 59
- §28. Subject Infinitive 60
- §29. Apposition 60
Short Readings 61

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary 63

Vocabulary Notes 64

- §30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 67
 Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 67
 Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 69
 Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 70
- §31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs 71
- §32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs 71
- §33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative 73
- §34. Partitive Genitive 74
- §35. Subjective Genitive 74
- §36. Objective Genitive 74
- §37. Ablative of Respect 75
- §38. Personal Pronouns 76
- §39. Possessive Adjectives 77
 Short Readings 79

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary 83

Vocabulary Notes 84

Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening 84

- §40. The Perfect Active System 87
 Finding the Perfect Active Stem 87
- §41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 87
 Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 87
 Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 88
 Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 89
- §42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative System, Infinitive, and Imperative 90

- §43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō* 91
- §44. Reflexive Pronouns 91
- §45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives 93
- §46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* 93
- §47. Adverbs I 94
- §48. Subordinate Clauses I 95
- §49. Conditional Sentences I 97
 Simple Conditional Sentences 97
 Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences 98
- Short Readings 100

CHAPTER VI

- Vocabulary 105
 Vocabulary Notes 106
- §50. The Perfect Passive System 108
- §51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 108
 Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 108
 Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 109
 Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 109
- §52. Synopsis IV: Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative 110
- §53. The Omission of *sum* in Compound Verb Forms; A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle 111
- §54. Impersonal Passive 112
- §55. Noun Morphology: Third Declension 112
 Case Endings of the Third Declension 112
 Case Endings of the Third-Declension i-Stem 114
 The Irregular Third-Declension Noun *vīs* 115
- §56. Third-Declension Adjectives 116
- §57. Adverbs II 117
- §58. Ablative of Separation 118
- §59. Ablative of Cause 118
- §60. Ablative of Place From Which 119
- §61. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case 119
 Ablative of Place Where 119
 Locative Case 119

§62. Accusative of Place To Which	120
Short Readings	121
Longer Readings	127

§63. Names in Latin II	132
------------------------	-----

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary	135
------------	-----

Vocabulary Notes	136
------------------	-----

§64. Introduction to the Subjunctive	140
--------------------------------------	-----

§65. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	141
--	-----

§66. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	142
--	-----

§67. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs	143
Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs	143
Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs	143

§68. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	144
Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	144
Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	144

§69. Synopsis V: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Imperative	145
--	-----

§70. Three Independent Subjunctives	146
Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive	146
Negative Commands	146
Potential Subjunctive	147
Optative Subjunctive	147

§71. Conditional Sentences II	148
Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences	149
Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences	149
Mixed Conditional Sentences	149

§72. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction	151
---	-----

§73. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage	151
Short Readings	152
Longer Readings	158

§74. Greetings and Interjections in Latin	160
---	-----

CHAPTER VIII

- Vocabulary 163
 Vocabulary Notes 164
- §75. Deponent Verbs 167
- §76. Semideponent Verbs 169
- §77. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: *hic, iste, and ille* 170
 Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns 171
- §78. The Relative Pronoun *quī, quae, quod* and the Relative Clause 172
 A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses 174
- §79. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun 175
 The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent 175
 The Connective Relative 175
 Placement of the Antecedent in and after the Relative Clause 176
- §80. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid* 176
- §81. The Interrogative Adjective *quī, quae, quod* 177
- §82. Dative with an Intransitive Verb 178
 Short Readings 179
 Longer Readings 187
- §83. About Meter I 194
 Introduction to Quantitative Meter 194
 Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet 194
 Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus 196
 Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry 197

CHAPTER IX

- Vocabulary 199
 Vocabulary Notes 200
- §84. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension 203
- §85. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension 204
- §86. Nine Irregular Adjectives 205
- §87. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses 206
 Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses 209

- §88. Indirect Commands 209
- §89. Relative Clauses of Purpose 211
- §90. Accusative of Duration of Time 212
- §91. Ablative of Time When 213
- §92. Ablative of Time Within Which 213
 - Short Readings 214
 - Longer Readings 222
- §93. Numbers in Latin 235

CHAPTER X

- Vocabulary 239
 - Vocabulary Notes 240
- §94. Relative Clauses of Characteristic 244
- §95. Introduction to Participles 246
 - Participles of Irregular Verbs 247
 - Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs 247
- §96. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participle, Infinitive, and Imperative 248
- §97. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive and Circumstantial Uses 249
- §98. Ablative Absolute 251
- §99. Active and Passive Periphrastics 252
- §100. Dative of Agent with a Passive Periphrastic 253
- §101. Genitive of Description 254
- §102. Ablative of Description 254
- §103. Ablative of Origin 254
 - Short Readings 255
 - Longer Readings 265
 - Continuous Readings 286
- §104. Rhetorical Terms 288

CHAPTER XI

- Vocabulary 291
 Vocabulary Notes 292
- §105. Infinitives 295
 Periphrastic Infinitives 296
- §106. Synopsis VII: Complete 297
- §107. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative 298
- §108. A Note on the Subject Accusative 300
- §109. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement 301
- §110. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs 302
 Comparative Degree of Adjectives 302
 Comparative Degree of Adverbs 303
 Superlative Degree of Adjectives 303
 Superlative Degree of Adverbs 304
- §111. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs 305
- §112. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees 306
 Short Readings 308
 Longer Readings 319
 Continuous Readings 342
- §113. About Meter II 347
 Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry 347
 Hendecasyllable 348
 Choliambic (Limping Iambic) 348
 Sapphic Strophe 349
 Asclepiadean Meters 349
 Archilochian Meter 350
 Alcaic Strophe 351

CHAPTER XII

- Vocabulary 353
 Vocabulary Notes 354
- §114. Direct Questions 357
- §115. Deliberative Subjunctive 358
- §116. Indirect Questions 359
- §117. Doubting Clauses 361

- §118. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum* 361
- §119. The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* 363
- §120. Negative Commands with *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and an Infinitive 364
- §121. Dative with a Compound Verb 364
- Short Readings 366
- Longer Readings 375
- Continuous Readings 397
- §122. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Forms, and Syncopation 402
- Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings 402
- Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System 402
- Common Archaic Verb Forms 403

CHAPTER XIII

- Vocabulary 405
- Vocabulary Notes 406
- §123. Gerunds and Gerundives 408
- §124. Subordinate Clauses III 410
- Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood 410
- Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood 411
- Proviso Clauses 412
- §125. Correlatives 412
- §126. The Irregular Verb *fīō* 414
- §127. Adverbial Accusative 415
- §128. Accusative of Exclamation 415
- §129. Genitive of Indefinite Value 416
- §130. Ablative of Price 416
- Short Readings 418
- Longer Readings 432
- Continuous Readings 456
- §131. Adverbs of Place 460
- Short Readings 461

CHAPTER XIV

- Vocabulary 463
 Vocabulary Notes 464
- §132. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives 466
- §133. Result Clauses 467
- §134. Relative Clauses of Result 468
- §135. Substantive *Ut* Clauses 469
- §136. *Fore ut* Construction 470
- §137. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet*, *neccesse est*, and *oportet* 471
- §138. Genitive of Characteristic 472
- Short Readings 474
- Longer Readings 490
- Continuous Readings 514

CHAPTER XV

- Vocabulary 521
 Vocabulary Notes 522
- §139. Fear Clauses 524
- §140. Prevention Clauses 525
- §141. Impersonal Constructions II: *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*,
rēfert, *interest* 526
- Verbs Expressing Emotion 526
- Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest 527
- §142. Direct and Indirect Reflexives 528
- §143. Subjunctive by Attraction 529
- §144. Supine 529
- §145. Accusative of Respect 530
- §146. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb 530

§147. Historical Infinitive 531
 Short Readings 532
 Longer Readings 549
 Continuous Readings 578

List of Authors and Passages A1
Morphology Appendix A13
Latin to English Vocabulary A39
English to Latin Vocabulary A49
General Index A63

PREFACE

Learn to Read Latin is an introductory grammar and reader in one. The aim of this book is to help students acquire as quickly as possible an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature. Respectful of both teachers and students, the book assumes a serious interest in learning Latin well and thoroughly.

LTRL grew out of an earnest wish to make available to others the immense pleasure we have both experienced in reading Latin literature in Latin. For many years it has seemed to us that too much emphasis has been placed on teaching students to translate Latin and that even the most diligent Latin students have attained too little intimacy with the Latin language and the styles of great Latin writers. Many beginning Latin books expect students to translate several volumes of stories in Latin written not by ancient authors but by the authors of the books themselves. This seems to us an inefficient use of student energy and a pedagogical method of limited value if one's goal is to prepare students to read and appreciate Caesar, Cicero, Livy, Vergil, Horace, and so many others.

In addition, we have noted how often introductory books present tidbits of information about Roman domestic life and culture, while failing to provide students with information about the many authors and literary works that will become available to them as their proficiency increases. In our experience this has meant that many students choose not to continue their studies beyond the introductory level in part because they are unaware of what they might read at the intermediate and advanced levels. We have tried to create a beginning Latin book that relies primarily on the ancient authors themselves as the means by which students may learn about Latin syntax and style. We have sought to introduce students to the Latin literature that for many will be the focus of their later studies, and we firmly believe that the best introduction to Roman culture is through the reading of as much Roman literature drawn from as wide a variety of authors as possible.

LTRL owes much to the two texts written for use at the Brooklyn College of

CUNY Latin/Greek Institute, *Latin: An Intensive Course* by Floyd L. Moreland and Rita M. Fleischer, and *Greek: An Intensive Course* by Hardy Hansen and Gerald M. Quinn. Both books were designed for rapid-paced summer courses in which a new unit is covered each day. Both are models of clarity, efficiency, and completeness. From Floyd Moreland, who was our teacher and colleague, we learned the importance of the order of presentation of points of grammar and morphology and the value of brief, clear explanations. He imparted to both of us his own deep interest in Latin syntax and style. He taught us to go in order when reading and translating, to care about the smallest details, and to love Latin literature. His powerful presence informs much that is good in our book. From Hardy Hansen and Gerry Quinn we borrowed the idea of placing numbered observations below presentations of morphology and syntax, and we modeled our vocabulary notes on theirs, including a considerable amount of linguistic information, as they did in their Greek book.

Since *LTRL* was not written to meet the special requirements of an intensive summer course, our book departs from its forebears in several important ways. The chapters are longer and present whole systems or closely related elements of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax. Many drills and drill sentences are provided in the workbook for use in class, for homework, and for extra and remedial work with individual students. Certain points of English grammar and usage are explained at some length, and drills are provided for these as well. Two aims determined the order of presentation of grammatical points in *LTRL*. We wished to give the student a sense of the logical development of Latin syntax and a steadily deepening understanding. We also wished to provide the earliest possible access to unabridged Latin passages.

LTRL is perhaps the first book of its kind to make extensive use of the Packard Humanities Institute CD-ROM containing much of the corpus of Latin literature up to Justinian. With the aid of this powerful tool we have often been able to establish correct Latin usage for drills and drill sentences, and we have tried to exclude any phrase or piece of syntax not occurring in extant classical Latin. Although there may still be some errors of usage, we believe that the Latin in our book that has been written by us resembles what students will read in the ancient authors. We have also used the CD-ROM to locate many passages that well illustrate the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax presented in each chapter of the book. The wide range of authors and texts represented in *LTRL*—including choice passages from authors not commonly read—was made possible in part by this CD-ROM. Several Latin grammars and dictionaries were regularly consulted during the writing of this book, and we relied in particular on *A Latin Grammar* by George M. Lane and *A New Latin Syntax* by E. C. Woodcock. For vowel quantities in Latin words we have consulted *Lateinisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch* by Walde and Hofmann.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION OF THE TEXTBOOK

Learn To Read Latin was first published in 2003. We now welcome the opportunity to present a revised edition based on the observations and suggestions of adopters and users of the first edition. We are grateful for their aid. Corrections have been made throughout. Editing and rewriting in the vocabulary notes and the syntax and morphology sections are intended to streamline and clarify presentations. A new section on indefinite pronouns and adjectives (previously presented only in the vocabulary notes) has been added to chapter XIV. Three chapters (VIII, IX, and X) have been substantially changed and their contents rearranged to create greater balance of presentation. Some vocabulary words have been moved to different chapters, and some new words have been added. Additions, deletions, and corrections have been made in the short and longer readings of each chapter. Chapters II to VI in particular now have more samples of actual Latin to challenge and inspire beginning students. The vocabulary provided for all readings is now presented in the order in which the words appear in readings and not in alphabetical order.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Andrew Keller wishes to thank past and present colleagues at Colgate University, in particular Eric Casey, Leah Himmelhoch, and Naomi Rood, who used early versions of the book in both first- and second-year classes, made many helpful suggestions for improvements, caught many errors, and remained even-keeled throughout the experience. Fred Jones, Colgate class of 2003, enthusiastically proofread early versions of the book and found countless small and large typographical errors. Thanks are due as well to departmental colleagues Rebecca Ammerman and Robert Garland for their support of this project over the past several years.

Stephanie Russell gratefully acknowledges support for the writing of this book provided by Collegiate School, including two generous summer awards: a Wilson Parkhill Fellowship and a grant from the Van Horne Foundation. Special thanks are also owed to colleagues William Abernathy, Phyllis Brugnolotti, Jose Corredor, Lynn Hansell, Paul Ness, and Kathy Sullivan. Phuc Tran was willing to use early versions of the book in his Latin classes, and his many wise and helpful suggestions have significantly improved the book. Barbara Juhel, head of Collegiate's Foreign Language Department, gave kind encouragement over many years and provided an introduction to Yale University Press.

The authors extend their warmest thanks to the Latin students at Colgate University and at Collegiate School (especially to those in the class of 2004) who used our book, spotted many errors, and offered many good ideas. They have played an important part in bringing the book to its present form.

Mary Jane Peluso acquired our book for Yale University Press and handled two anxious authors with patience and professionalism. Her assistant, Gretchen Rings, was helpful and attentive to many important details. Our skilled manuscript editor, Dan Heaton, made intelligent and inspired improvements throughout the manuscript. To these three we are sincerely grateful.

Ann-Marie Imbornoni served as the senior production editor for the second edition of *LTRL*, and Joyce Ippolito was the manuscript editor. The authors are most grateful for their devoted attention to all the details of the manuscript. Juliana Froggatt was a scrupulous and intelligent proofreader with an eagle eye and a refined sense of style. Thanks to the thorough and careful work of these three professionals, we have been able to avoid many errors and infelicities. Their suggestions and tactful queries have greatly improved our book.

HOW TO USE *LEARN TO READ LATIN*

The following is a detailed description of all the components of *Learn to Read Latin*, accompanied by suggestions for their most effective use by students and teachers. Only if the textbook is used in partnership with the workbook can the best results be achieved.

Overview: Components and Organization

The main text of *LTRL* comprises fifteen chapters that present all the basic morphology and syntax for an elementary course in classical Latin. Depending on the amount of time available for one's course (meetings per week, minutes per meeting), these fifteen chapters can be studied in two or three college semesters or in two or three years in middle and high school.

The actual teaching and learning units of this book are the sections, and there are approximately ten sections in each chapter. Two or three weeks in college, more in high school, should be devoted to the study of each chapter. Substantial vocabulary lists and complex Latin sentences (both synthetic and authentic) allow students to significantly advance their knowledge of syntax and to practice and refine their reading skills. The book as a whole, as well as each of the chapters taken individually, aims not at hasty coverage of material but at thorough understanding and engagement as soon as possible with Latin literary texts.

Vocabulary Lists

Each chapter begins with a list of new words to be memorized, placed first for ready reference. The **vocabulary** has been chosen to provide students with words that appear commonly in a wide variety of Latin authors. In many chapters certain pieces of morphology and syntax must be presented before new vocabulary is learned, but

the vocabulary list is given prominence to emphasize its importance and to encourage its acquisition by students as early as possible in the study of each chapter. As the book progresses and chapters are devoted to more advanced syntax, words that are commonly found with the constructions to be learned in those chapters are included in the vocabulary.

At the back of both the textbook and the workbook are complete Latin-English and English-Latin vocabulary lists containing all the words that appear in the chapter vocabularies. Some additional meanings and idioms that appear only in the vocabulary notes or elsewhere in the textbook are included. These lists also include the names of the gods and cardinal and ordinal numbers.

Vocabulary Notes

Vocabulary Notes follow the word list in each chapter. Since essential information about the forms, meanings, and usage of new vocabulary words is contained in these notes, students should always read them, and the teacher should emphasize the most important points. Particularly in the early chapters, important information about the forms of vocabulary entries (adjectives, principal parts of verbs, etc.) and new morphology is included in the vocabulary notes. This material should be presented in conjunction with the new material in the chapters. It is included in the vocabulary notes for ease of reference, and students should consult these notes frequently while mastering the material in the chapter. (For those who would like to learn more about the development of the Latin language, information has also been included about word formation and Indo-European linguistic features.) Immediately following the vocabulary notes in each chapter are lists of English derivatives and cognates for many of the new words in the chapter. Although by no means exhaustive, the lists allow students to see how Latin words are related to English words.

Summaries and Synopsis Blanks

When beginning each new chapter, students should tear out from the back of the workbook all the **summaries** for that chapter. These summaries include a copy of the vocabulary list and one or two pages of compact summaries of the new morphology and syntax introduced in the chapter. These summaries should be consulted when drills on new material are being done in class, and they can serve as valuable learning aids as students work toward mastery of the material presented in each chapter. Included after the summaries for all the chapters are verb **synopsis blanks** that can be torn out and used to make multiple copies for drills.

Sections and Drills

The **sections** that present new morphology and syntax are numbered consecutively, as in a reference grammar. Frequently throughout these sections (as well as in the

vocabulary notes), brief instructions appear in capital letters (for example, “MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM”). These instructions are addressed directly to students and are intended to ensure that no essential point is overlooked.

Following many of the morphology and syntax sections are sentences pointing to appropriate **drills** in the workbook for individual sections or groups of sections. The drills are designed to reinforce new material as it is presented. The sentences pointing to appropriate drills indicate the natural breaks within chapters, and they can be used by teachers to determine how much material to introduce in a class period.

Drills on new forms and syntax include only vocabulary from earlier chapters, unless new morphology or syntax requires the use of new vocabulary. For example, when third-declension noun morphology is introduced, it is necessary to include new nouns in the corresponding drills to reinforce the new morphology.

Drills are provided in such sufficiently large numbers that some can be done at sight in class, others assigned for homework, and still others used for individual work or quizzes.

Exercises

Following the drills in each chapter in the workbook, **exercises** are provided that allow comprehensive practice of all new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax introduced in a chapter, while reinforcing material presented in earlier chapters. The exercises, consisting of synthetic sentences, are divided into two sections. The first contains Latin sentences to be translated into English, and the second section provides sentences in English to be translated into Latin. This section gives students practice in writing clear, correct Latin in good Latin word order. The exercises should not be assigned until all new material in a chapter has been introduced, unless a teacher selects only those exercise sentences that contain material already presented.

In the synthetic Latin sentences (drills, exercises, and examples used in the textbook), we have tried to include only usages found in extant Latin; often exact phrases drawn from classical Latin authors have been included in the sentences. However, we have allowed certain extrapolations from extant Latin usage. For example, since *homō pius* appears in Cicero, we have allowed *hominēs piī*.

In our experience, *LTRL* works best when translations of some exercise sentences are assigned as written homework, while class time is devoted to the reading of other exercise sentences at sight. As many as eighty such sentences are provided in the early chapters, but this number is gradually reduced as it becomes possible to reinforce new material through unabridged Latin passages.

Readings

Beginning in Chapter II, the introduction of new material in the textbook is followed by a section of **short readings**, unabridged Latin passages drawn from a wide range

of ancient authors. Each short reading is preceded by a brief introduction to establish context. Beneath each reading are vocabulary glosses for words that do not appear in the chapter vocabulary lists.¹ The inclusion of these short readings, which steadily increase in number and length, reflects our belief that the best way to learn Latin is to study specimens of authentic Latin as soon as possible. The short readings have been chosen to reinforce the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax of the chapters in which they appear and to provide examples of various word orders from Latin prose and poetry. Many of these short readings can be read at sight in class, and some may be read before all the new material of a chapter has been introduced, provided that they not contain material that has not yet been presented.

Beginning in Chapter VI, each section of short readings is followed by a section of **longer readings**, also unabridged Latin passages.² In addition to introductions and vocabulary glosses, at the first appearance of an author or a work in the longer readings, we have included brief biographies of the authors and descriptions of the works from which the readings are taken. A list of authors and passages in the back of the textbook allows students and teachers to refer to this material when authors or works appear again in subsequent longer readings or to investigate further when short readings feature these authors or works.

Beginning in Chapter X, each section of longer readings is followed by a section of **continuous readings**. Two poetry passages (from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*) are presented with brief introductions and appropriate vocabulary glosses. Beginning in Chapter XI, two extended prose passages (from Cicero's *Oratio Prima in Catilinam* and Sallust's *Bellum Catilinae*) are added. These continuous readings are intended to give the student practice in reading in context and in developing a sense of the basic stylistic features of a given author and text. They also offer a preliminary experience in what lies ahead for the student when he or she finishes with the basic grammar book and moves on to upper-level reading courses. Students and teachers may choose to read any or all of the continuous readings, favoring prose or poetry as they prefer. If all four are read, students will complete the book with a significant first experience in reading four major Latin authors.

To help give students a basic knowledge of the history and development of Latin literature and to foster their interest in further study, we have organized all readings from ancient authors in each chapter in chronological order by author. Since the texts of Latin literature that survive contain examples of the language as each writer in each period chose to style it, this chronological arrangement may help students observe the evolution of various styles of both prose and poetry. Through the short and longer readings, *LTRL* is meant to become in part a literary venture, and there are many opportunities for consideration of rhetoric and style as well as of forms and syntax.

1. For ease of use by students vocabulary glosses for each reading are listed in the order in which the words appear in the passage. A dagger (†) indicates a word receiving a special note.

2. As a general rule, longer readings are those that have ten or more vocabulary glosses.

Additional Material

Interspersed between many chapters in *LTRL* are brief sections devoted to **additional material** related to the study of the Latin language. Sections on Roman names and numbers, on meter, and on rhetorical terms, for example, should be studied as seriously as each chapter. Some of these sections even contain a few vocabulary words that the student is expected to learn. Knowledge of the information presented in all these additional sections is assumed in subsequent readings in the textbook and will enhance students' reading and appreciation of the authentic Latin passages in the readings. Students may either learn the material in these sections or look back at them when necessary.

ABBREVIATIONS

·	diaeresis	imper.	imperative
*	indicates that a form is hypothetical	imperf.	imperfect
< >	enclose an element added by editors	indef.	indefinite
[]	used to indicate that, contrary to the tradition, an author is <i>not</i> the writer of a work	indic.	indicative
<	(derived) from	infin.	infinitive
>	becomes	interj.	interjection
§	section	interrog.	interrogative
1-intr.	first conjugation intransitive verb	intr.	intransitive
1-tr.	first conjugation transitive verb	i.o.	indirect object
abl.	ablative	loc.	locative
acc.	accusative	m.	masculine
act.	active	masc.	masculine
adj.	adjective	n.	neuter
adv.	adverb	neut.	neuter
cf.	<i>cōnfer</i> , compare	nom.	nominative
conj.	conjunction	pass.	passive
d.a.	direct address	perf.	perfect
dat.	dative	PIE	Proto-Indo-European
demonstr.	demonstrative	pl.	plural
d.o.	direct object	pluperf.	pluperfect
etc.	<i>et cētera</i> , and the remaining things	prep.	preposition
f.	feminine	pres.	present
fem.	feminine	pron.	pronoun
frag.	fragment	rel.	relative
fut.	future	sēd inc.	<i>sēdēs incerta</i> , uncertain location
gen.	genitive	sing.	singular
IE	Indo-European	subj.	subject
		subjunc.	subjunctive
		subst.	substantive
		tr.	transitive
		voc.	vocative

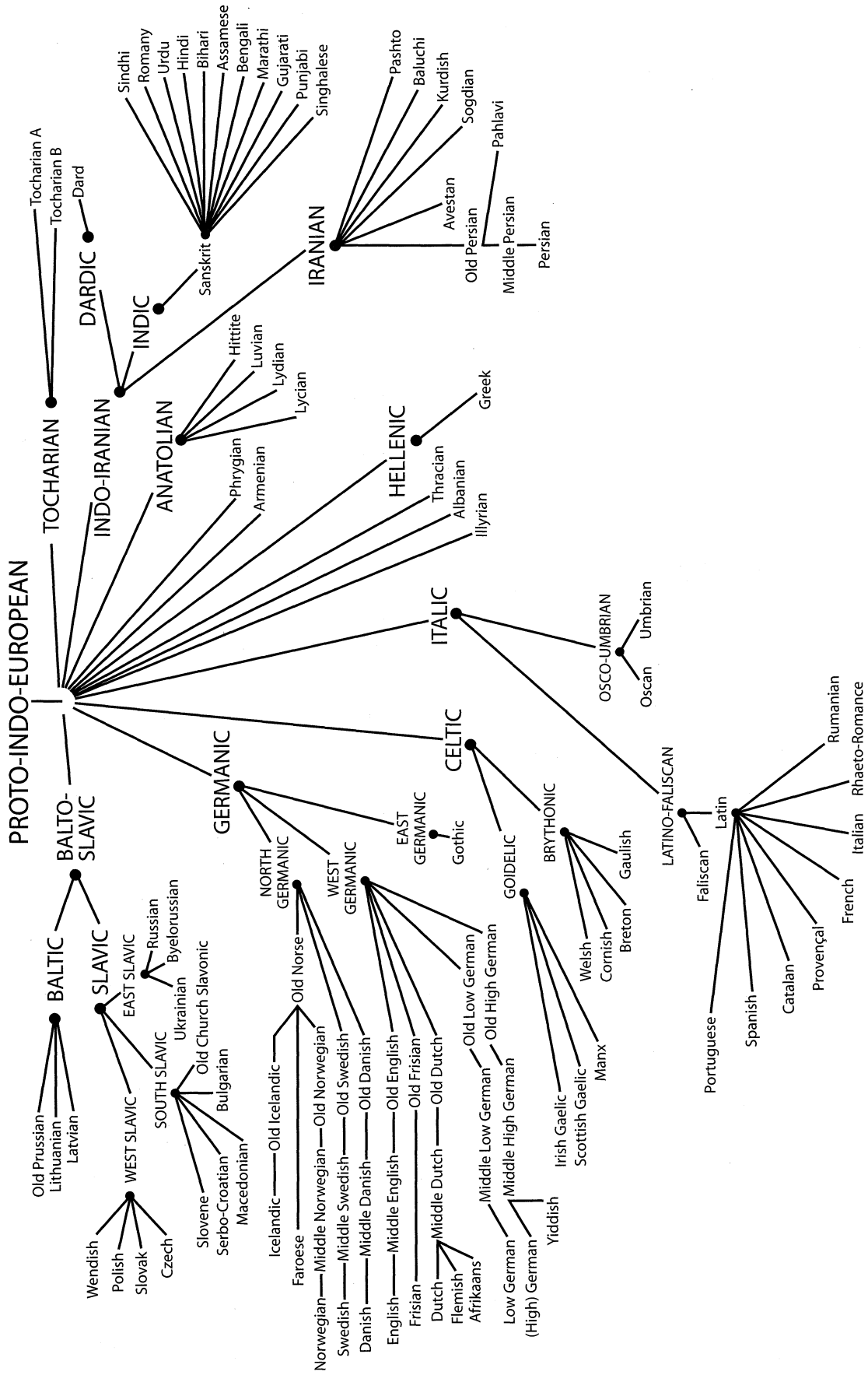


Figure 1. This chart shows the principal languages of the Indo-European family, arranged in a diagrammatic form that displays their genetic relations and loosely suggests their geographic distribution. Copyright © 1981 by Houghton Mifflin Company. Adapted and reproduced by permission from *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*.

INTRODUCTION

The Latin Language

The Latin language belongs to the Indo-European family of languages. The name “Indo-European” indicates the geographic area where these languages were originally spoken. The family includes most of the languages spoken in Europe, as well as those spoken as far east as ancient Persia, Afghanistan, and India. By the careful comparison of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax, scholars have shown that all these languages have descended from a common ancestor that is called either **Indo-European (IE)** or **Proto-Indo-European (PIE)**, which was probably spoken some time in the fifth millennium B.C.E. (see figure 1). Over time, it is supposed, the people who spoke this original language gradually dispersed throughout Europe, Asia, and India, and the language changed differently in different places until the variety of languages belonging to this family gradually appeared.

No direct evidence—that is, written or archaeological evidence—survives either for PIE or for the people who spoke it. What is known of the language comes from the comparative study of the languages that survive. The study of these languages began at the end of the eighteenth century when Sir William Jones, a lawyer and student of eastern languages, first asserted publicly that Greek, Latin, and the language of ancient India, Sanskrit, were descended from a common source. The scientific study of the Indo-European languages commenced with the work of Franz Bopp in the early part of the nineteenth century. He compared the forms of the verb in Latin, Greek, Sanskrit, ancient Persian, and the Germanic languages, of which English is one.

The Indo-European languages have been analyzed and divided into various subgroups, or dialects, and Latin belongs to one called **Italic** because the languages of this subgroup were all spoken on the Italian peninsula. Italic, like PIE, left behind no direct evidence, but the four languages that belong to this group—**Latin, Faliscan,**

Oscan, and **Umbrian**¹—are more closely related to each other than to the other Indo-European languages and thus are thought to derive from a single source.

The early speakers of the Latin language are known as *Latīnī*. By the early part of the first millennium B.C.E. they were living in many settlements in central Italy. Rome was only one of these settlements. While little is certain about Rome's early history, the traditional date for its founding is 753 B.C.E., and recent excavation gives some corroboration to this early date. Tradition also records that for the first 250 years of its existence, Rome was ruled by kings of Etruscan descent. Etruscan civilization dominated the central Italian peninsula until Rome's rise to power in the third century B.C.E. Latin borrowed many words from the Etruscan language, which is *not* related to PIE.

The first written evidence of the Latin language that has survived to our time appears in the form of inscriptions dated to the late seventh and early sixth centuries B.C.E. The language of these inscriptions is recognizably Latin, although very different from the Latin spoken and written several hundred years later at the height of Rome's power. These inscriptions come from many towns in central Italy and not only from Rome. Other evidence for the Latin of this period comes from citations of the language of an earlier time in later Latin authors.

According to Roman tradition, the Etruscans ruled as monarchs in Rome until 509 B.C.E., when the Romans overthrew their foreign rulers and established the Republic. Power passed into the hands of two annually elected magistrates called consuls, who, along with the senate, held political power in Rome. Over the next few centuries, Rome was engaged in two conflicts, one external and one internal. The Romans were almost continually at war against the other peoples of the Italian peninsula, as well as the other powers in the Mediterranean, most notably the Carthaginians, a people based in northern Africa. At the same time, the Romans struggled with their own internal conflict between the lower-class plebs and the aristocratic families who ruled them. Despite setbacks both external and internal, Rome gradually expanded its influence, through treaty and conquest, until by the end of the third century B.C.E. it controlled most of modern-day Italy and had made inroads into the eastern Mediterranean as well.

Latin literature first appears in the later part of this period of political expansion. The most prominent authors of this period whose works survive are the comic poets **Plautus** (254–184 B.C.E.) and **Terence** (185?–159), the epic poet **Ennius** (239–169), and the orator, historian, and essayist **Cato** (234–149). The language of the comedians is often thought to contain evidence of the way Latin was actually spoken at this time because the characters of the comic plays are drawn from all walks of life. Ennius, who spoke both Greek and Oscan in addition to Latin, borrowed and adapted many features of the Greek language and was one of the first writers of epic poetry in Latin. His style greatly influenced later poets, and he may be said to be the

1. Faliscan was spoken in the area of Italy called Etruria (central Italy), Oscan in Campania (southern Italy), and Umbrian in Umbria (north-central Italy). The Samnites, an ancient Italian people with whom Rome came into conflict early, spoke Oscan.

first to have established a *literary language*—a written language with increasingly strict rules of vocabulary and syntax. Together, these authors represent what may be called **early Latin**.

Over the next two centuries to the end of the first century B.C.E., Roman authors, much influenced by the Greek literature with which they had come into contact after the conquest of Greece, continued to develop a literary language in Latin. They established rules of spelling, morphology, syntax, and vocabulary, and also distinguished between correct usages for poetry and for prose. The result is usually called **classical Latin**, the language that was written and spoken² by the educated Roman populace during the period of the late Republic and early Empire (roughly 100 B.C.E.–100 C.E.).³ Among the authors who wrote classical Latin are, in prose: **Caesar** (100–44 B.C.E.), **Cicero** (106–43 B.C.E.), and **Livy** (59 B.C.E.–17 C.E.); and in poetry: **Catullus** (84?–54? B.C.E.), **Vergil** (70–19 B.C.E.), and **Horace** (65–8 B.C.E.).

This book introduces the student to the language written by these authors and others of the same period. Distinctions of usage between prose and poetry will be pointed out, but for the most part, the rules of classical Latin presented here may be presumed to hold true for the literature of this period as a whole.

Pronunciation of Classical Latin

Although there must have been variations in the pronunciation of classical Latin such as are evident in any modern language, there is considerable ancient evidence for a standard in pronunciation, and rules approximating that standard are presented here.⁴

The rules for pronouncing classical Latin have been reconstructed from several types of evidence:

1. the statements of Latin grammarians and Latin authors on specific points of Latin pronunciation. The Latin grammarians were active much later than the period assigned to classical Latin, but they cite the work of earlier Latin authors and confirm features of pronunciation known from other sources.
 2. the orthography, or spelling, of Latin words in inscriptions. Ancient spelling, both in Latin and in other ancient languages, was considerably less standardized than modern spelling. Variations in spelling usually indicate differences in pronunciation.
 3. the representation or transliteration of Latin words in other languages and the representation or transliteration of foreign words in Latin. The transliteration of names, in particular, provides valuable information about how names were pronounced at different periods of Roman history.
2. Some surviving texts, such as the orations of Cicero, suggest that classical Latin was both written *and* spoken.
3. There are, of course, variations in usage and style from author to author and from the beginning of this period to the end. It remains common to speak of Golden Age Latin (the Latin of first-century B.C.E. writers such as Caesar, Cicero, Vergil, and Horace) and Silver Age Latin (the Latin of first-century C.E. writers such as Seneca and Quintilian).
4. For this presentation of pronunciation the authors are indebted to W. S. Allen's *Vox Latina* (Cambridge, 1965).

4. the internal grammatical and poetic structure of Latin. This includes the evidence available from the metrical structure of Latin poetry.
5. the etymology of Latin words and the development of Latin words in the Romance languages descended from Latin.

Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is almost the same as the English alphabet. It lacks a **j** and a **w**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **k** is used in only a few words, mostly of foreign origin. **y** and **z** occur in transcriptions of names and other words borrowed from Greek.
2. **i** can be either a consonant or a vowel. In some Latin texts, **j** is used as the sign of consonantal **i**, but in this book **i** is used for both the consonant and the vowel.
3. **u** also can be either a consonant or a vowel. In the classical period (and for several centuries afterward), Romans used the letter **v** to represent both the consonant and the vowel, and **u** was simply a rounded version of this letter. Some modern editors use **u** for both consonant and vowel, while others maintain the convention of using **v** for the consonant and **u** for the vowel. This latter convention is the one followed in this book.
4. The capital letter **C**, in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma* (Γ), originally was used by the Etruscans, who did not distinguish between the sounds of English hard **g** and hard **c**. Even after Latin developed a separate new letter to represent hard **g**, capital **C** continued to represent hard **g** in abbreviations for certain first names (e.g., **C.** = Gaius).

Consonants

The Latin consonants are generally identical in pronunciation with their English equivalents. Exceptions are:

- b** as **b**, but **bs** as the **ps** of **taps**; **bt** as the **pt** of **apt**
- c** as the **c** of **cart** (hard **c**)
- g** as the **g** of **get** (hard **g**)
- h** as the **h** of **hat**

OBSERVATION

- h** represents the expelling of air (aspiration).
- i**, as consonant, as the **y** of **yawn**

OBSERVATIONS

1. **i** is consonantal at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel (**Iūnō**, pronounced “*Yūnō*”) and in the middle of a word when it falls between vowels (**biugis**, pronounced “*bi-yugis*”). **i** may also be consonantal in the middle of a compound (that is, a word made with a root word and a prefix (**iniustus** [**< in-** + **iustus**], pronounced “*in-yustus*”).
 2. An exception to this rule occurs in certain words borrowed from Greek, in which an initial **i** is pronounced as a vowel (**iambus**, pronounced “*i-ambus*”).
- n** as **n**, but **nc** as the **nk** of **bank**; **ng** as the **ng** of **hang**
 - qu** as the **qu** of **quit**

OBSERVATION

Although **qu** is written with a **-u**, this **u** is the consonantal **u** (**v**). This spelling convention is also used in the combinations **su** and **gu**, which in some Latin words are pronounced as the **su** of persuade and the **gu** of anguish.

r as a rolled **r**

s as the **s** of serpent

v (consonantal **u**) as the **w** of wet

x as the **x** of axe

z as the **dz** of gadzooks

OBSERVATION

z is a consonant representing the Greek zeta (**Z**), which represented the sound of two consonants in Greek (**zd** or **dz**).

ch as the **ch** of character

ph as the **p** of people

th as the **t** of tea

OBSERVATION

ch, **ph**, and **th** represent sounds introduced into Latin from Greek. Greek distinguished between the *unaspirated* and *aspirated* consonants **c** and **ch**, **p** and **ph**, and **t** and **th**. The **-h** represents the puff of air (aspiration) that is emitted after the consonant sound is made. This distinction between unaspirated and aspirated consonants is also made in modern French and in other Romance languages, *although not in English*: the English pronunciation of **c**, **p**, and **t** always includes aspiration. In order to distinguish in Latin words **ph** and **th** from **p** and **t**, it has become conventional to pronounce **ph** as the **ph** of **philosophy** and **th** as the **th** of **theater**. The pronunciations given above (people, tea) are to be preferred.

Vowels

Latin has two sets of five vowels:

<i>Short</i>	<i>Long</i>
a	ā
e	ē
i	ī
o	ō
u	ū

OBSERVATIONS

1. Vowels have both *quantity* and *quality*. *Quantity* refers to the *length* of a vowel. A Latin vowel marked with a **macron** or **long mark** (ˉ) is *long* and takes approximately twice as long to pronounce as a short vowel. Vowels not so marked are *short*. *Quality* refers to the way a vowel is pronounced. For example, **ā** and **ō** are the same in *quantity* but different in *quality*.
2. A vowel in a Latin word is either long or short *by nature*. It is important to realize that, for example, **a** and long **ā** are two different vowels, even if they are closely related.
3. Differences in vowel length often convey significant differences in meaning. For example, the word **alium** (with a short **a**-) means “another man”; the word **ālium** (with a long **ā**-) means “garlic.”

A MACRON ON A LONG VOWEL SHOULD BE CONSIDERED PART OF THE SPELLING OF A LATIN WORD. WHEN LEARNING NEW VOCABULARY, MEMORIZE ALL MACRONS AND ALWAYS WRITE THEM ON LONG VOWELS.⁵

The vowels are pronounced as follows:

a as the **a** of alert or the **u** of cup

ā as the **a** of father

e as the **e** of pet

ē as the **a** of fate

i as the **i** of fit

ī as the **ee** of feet

o as the **o** of soft or the **au** of caught

ō as the **o** of hope

u as the **u** of put

ū as the **oo** of fool

OBSERVATIONS

1. **a** and **ā** are very similar in quality and differ only in quantity. Care must be taken in the pronunciation of these two vowels. All other pairs of vowels (**e** and **ē**, etc.) differ *both* in quality *and* in quantity and are easier for the English speaker to differentiate.

2. **y** is a vowel representing the Greek *upsilon* (Υ). This vowel is pronounced as a French **u** (a sound in between the English **i** and **u**). It may be long or short; the long vowel is pronounced twice as long as the short.

Diphthongs

A diphthong is a *single* vocalic sound made from pronouncing *two vowels as one*. (The word *diphthong* in Greek means “double sound.”) There are six diphthongs in Latin, and they are pronounced as follows:

ae as the **i** of high

oe as the **oy** of boy

ei as the **ay** of day

ui as the **wi** of twin

au as the **ow** of how

eu as a combination of **e + u**

OBSERVATION

There is no English sound corresponding to the Latin diphthong **eu**. As its spelling indicates, it is a combination of the short vowels **e** and **u** pronounced as one sound. If Elmer Fudd pronounced “very” (**vewy**), the **ew** would closely resemble the Latin sound of **eu**.

5. All long vowels in this book are marked by macrons. Vowels not so marked are short.

Stress

Latin has a stress accent. This means that one syllable in a word is slightly *stressed* or emphasized when the word is pronounced. To determine which syllable is to be stressed, one must first divide a Latin word into syllables.

Syllabification

A syllable is a sound or succession of sounds uttered with a single breath-impulse. A LATIN WORD HAS AS MANY SYLLABLES AS IT HAS VOWELS OR DIPHTHONGS. THERE ARE NO SILENT VOWELS OR CONSONANTS IN LATIN.

When a word is divided into syllables,

1. a single consonant goes with the *following* vowel:

anima	a/ni/ma
aurum	au/rum
gladius	gla/di/us
vītaque	vī/ta/que

OBSERVATION

qu always counts as a *single* consonant. **su** and **gu** sometimes count as single consonants.

2. if there are two or more consonants in a row, the *last* consonant goes with the following syllable:

imperium	im/pe/ri/um
sānctus	sānc/tus
virumque	vi/rum/que
puella	pu/el/la

3. if, however, the combination of two consonants is a **mute** (c, k, t, p, ch, th, ph, g, d, b) or the **fricative** f followed by a **liquid** (l, r), the two consonants are kept together:⁶

patria	pa/tri/a
agricola	a/gri/co/la
ablātus	a/blā/tus

Accentuation

The *last* syllable in a Latin word is called the **ultima** (< *syllaba ultima*, “last syllable”). The *second* syllable from the end is called the **penult** (< *syllaba paenultima*, “almost-last syllable”). The *third* syllable from the end is called the **antepenult** (< *syllaba antepaenultima*, “before-the-almost-last syllable”).

6. A consonant that requires a stoppage of breath when pronounced is called a **mute**. When a **g** is pronounced, for example, the throat is contracted and breath is stopped. Similarly, when a **p** is pronounced, the lips are closed and breath is again stopped. A **fricative** is a consonant produced by forcing breath through a constricted passage. **l** and **r** are called **liquids** because their sounds are capable of being prolonged as vowels.

ONLY THE *PENULT* OR THE *ANTEPENULT* OF A LATIN WORD MAY BE STRESSED. *If a word has only two syllables, the penult is stressed.* The following words are stressed on the penult because they have two syllables *only*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the penult.

tamen	cōnsul
mūtāt	opus

If a word has more than two syllables, its stress is determined according to a rule called the **law of the penult**:

IF THE *PENULT* IS LONG, IT IS STRESSED. IF THE *PENULT* IS SHORT, THE *ANTEPENULT* IS STRESSED.

A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed* by two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same syllable* (**long by position**)

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by nature*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the penult.

inimīcus	figūra
magnārum	labōrēs
patiēmur	persaepe
poēta	perpauca

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by position*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the penult.

ocellis	contactum
magister	expressit
intellegenda	adversōs
cōnferri	dēportant

OBSERVATIONS

1. In words of more than two syllables, the number of syllables is not important for determining the syllable to be stressed. *Only* the length of the penult determines stress.
2. The lengths of the syllables *other* than the penult are not important for determining stress.

The following words are stressed on the antepenult because their penults are *short*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the antepenult.

scientia	tempora
aequora	mediocriter
audācia	populus
omnium	cēperis

• DRILLS A–C, PAGE 1, MAY NOW BE DONE.

LANGUAGE STUDY: VOCABULARY, MORPHOLOGY, AND SYNTAX

Elementary language study may be divided into three parts: vocabulary, morphology, and syntax.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary refers first to the acquisition of the English meanings of words in another language. Thus, the Latin word **puella** means “girl”; the word **superō** means “overcome, conquer.” In addition to English meanings, vocabulary also includes certain other important elements that give crucial information about gender (for nouns), stems, and parts of speech. A *full vocabulary entry* (the way the word appears in the dictionary) includes all these pieces of information. ALWAYS MEMORIZE THE FULL VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH NEW WORD TO BE LEARNED; THE ENGLISH MEANING ALONE WILL NEVER BE ENOUGH.

Morphology

Morphology refers to the study of the different *forms* words take in a given language. In English, for example, various forms of a verb must be learned:

1. the third-person singular present tense form of most English verbs is formed by the addition of -s or -es:

walk > walks go > goes

2. the past tense of many English verbs is formed by the addition of -ed:

walk > walked

Morphology extends as well to nouns, adjectives, and certain other parts of speech that have multiple forms. *The changing of form to convey changed meaning* is called **inflection**.

Some languages are more inflected than others. Thus the English noun regularly appears in only four forms:

boy (singular)	boys (plural)
boy's (singular possessive)	boys' (plural possessive)

The Latin noun, by contrast, regularly appears in ten or more forms. Since Latin is a more highly inflected language than English, Latin morphology is more extensive than English morphology and requires complete mastery.

Syntax

The *grammatical function of a word in a sentence* is the **syntax** of that word. In the English sentence “The woman gives the cat a toy,” “woman,” “cat,” and “toy” all have different grammatical functions that help convey the complete meaning of the sentence:

woman: subject
cat: indirect object
toy: direct object

The terms **subject**, **indirect object**, and **direct object** are examples of English syntax, and these and many other terms of English syntax are also used in Latin syntax. Accurate translation of a Latin sentence requires knowledge of the syntax of the words in that sentence. Throughout this book, new Latin syntactical terms are introduced and defined. These terms are always boldfaced at their first appearance. **LEARN ALL BOLDFACED SYNTACTICAL TERMS.**

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary

- agricola, agricolae** *m.* farmer
- **anima, animae** *f.* life force; soul¹
- dea, deae** *f.* goddess
- **fāma, fāmae** *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame
- fēmina, fēminae** *f.* woman; wife
- fīlia, fīliae** *f.* daughter
- īnsula, īnsulae** *f.* island
- Italia, Italiae** *f.* Italy
- nauta, nautae** *m.* sailor
- patria, patriae** *f.* country, homeland
- pecūnia, pecūniae** *f.* money
- poēta, poētae** *m.* poet
- puella, puellae** *f.* girl
- rēgīna, rēgīnae** *f.* queen
- via, viae** *f.* way, road, street, path
- ager, agrī** *m.* field
- **deus, deī** *m.* god
- **dominus, dominī** *m.* master, lord
- filius, filiī** *m.* son
- gladius, gladiī** *m.* sword
- liber, librī** *m.* book
- puer, puerī** *m.* boy
- servus, servī** *m.* slave
- vir, virī** *m.* man; husband
- aurum, aurī** *n.* gold
- bellum, bellī** *n.* war
- **cōnsilium, cōnsiliī** *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment
- dōnum, dōnī** *n.* gift
- factum, factī** *n.* deed
- **ferrum, ferrī** *n.* iron; sword
- oppidum, oppidī** *n.* town
- perīculum, perīculī** *n.* danger
- verbum, verbī** *n.* word
- **ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from
- **ad** (prep. + acc.) toward, to
- cum** (prep. + abl.) with
- **dē** (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning
- **ē, ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from
- **et** (conj.) and;
- et . . . et . . .** both . . . and . . .
- (adv.) even, also
- **in** (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against
- (prep. + abl.) in, on
- ō** (interj.) O
- **-que** (enclitic conj.) and

1. An arrow next to a vocabulary entry indicates that there is additional important information about this entry in the **vocabulary notes** that follow.

Vocabulary Notes

- **anima, animae** *f.* has a physical meaning, the “breath” of the wind or of a human being. By extension, it may mean the breath of life, the force that gives an animate being life (life force). **anima** is used of the part of a human being that departs from the dead body and journeys to another life in the underworld.
- **fāma, fāmae** *f.* derives from an Indo-European root that means “speak” (cf. Gk. *phēmí*; Skt. *bhāsh*, speak). The word **fāma** indicates primarily what is spoken publicly or by the people, and its basic meaning is “talk” or “rumor.” A **fāma** often told becomes a “story,” and when it is passed down from generation to generation, it becomes a “tradition.” A person’s **fāma** is his or her “reputation” or “fame.” This may be positive or negative. Finally, if the word is capitalized, **Fāma** is the goddess Rumor.
- **deus, deī** *m.* has certain common irregular forms in the plural. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING DECLENSION:

Nom./Voc.	deus	deī
Gen.	deī	deōrum or deum
Dat.	deō	deīs
Acc.	deum	deōs
Abl.	deō	deīs

There is no vocative singular of **deus**. Other, less common forms of the nominative/vocative plural are **deī** and **deī**. A less common form of the dative/ablative plural is **deīs**.

- The noun **dominus, dominī** *m.* is **cognate** with the Latin word for house (**domus**); that is, the two words **dominus** and **domus** are descended from the same linguistic root. The original meaning of **dominus** was “master of the house.”
- **cōnsilium, cōnsiliī** *n.* may mean the act of deliberating about something (deliberation), or it may mean the “plan” or “intention” that results from deliberating. It may also mean the capacity to deliberate (judgment). Finally, it may refer to a group of people who deliberate, a “council.”
- **ferrum, ferrī** *n.* means “iron.” By the rhetorical device **metonymy** (change of name) it also means “sword”—that is, something made of iron.

Prepositions

A preposition (< **praepōnō**, place before) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. The preposition and the noun or pronoun together are called a “prepositional phrase.” In Latin, prepositions are most often followed by one of two cases, the accusative or the ablative. Prepositions that require a noun in the accusative case are said to “take the accusative” and are marked in the vocabulary entry by the notation (*prep. + acc.*). Prepositions that require a noun in the ablative case are similarly said to “take the ablative” and are marked by the notation (*prep. + abl.*).

Prepositions that take the accusative emphasize the idea of motion toward, into, around, and through. Prepositions that take the ablative indicate one of the three functions of the ablative (separation, association/instrument, location). A few prepositions can take either case, and *their meanings differ according to which case they take*.

- The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, and **dē** all require a noun in the ablative case and express separation (from). However, they have distinct differences in meaning. **ā/ab** expresses motion *away* from a place; **ē/ex** expresses motion *out* from a place; **dē** expresses motion *down* from a place. These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.
- **ab** is used before words beginning with vowels or **h-**. Both **ā** and **ab** are used before words beginning with consonants, but **ā** is more frequent.
- **ex** is used before words beginning with vowels or **h-**. Both **ē** and **ex** are used before words beginning with consonants, but **ex** is more frequent.
- **ad** takes the accusative and expresses motion to or toward a place. Compare the meaning of **ad** with that of **in** (+ acc.) in the diagram that follows.
- **in** may take either the accusative or the ablative case. When it takes the accusative, it means “into” or “onto.” By extension of this meaning it may also mean “against,” especially when the noun in the accusative case refers to a person or people. When it takes the ablative case, it expresses location and means either “in” or “on.” These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

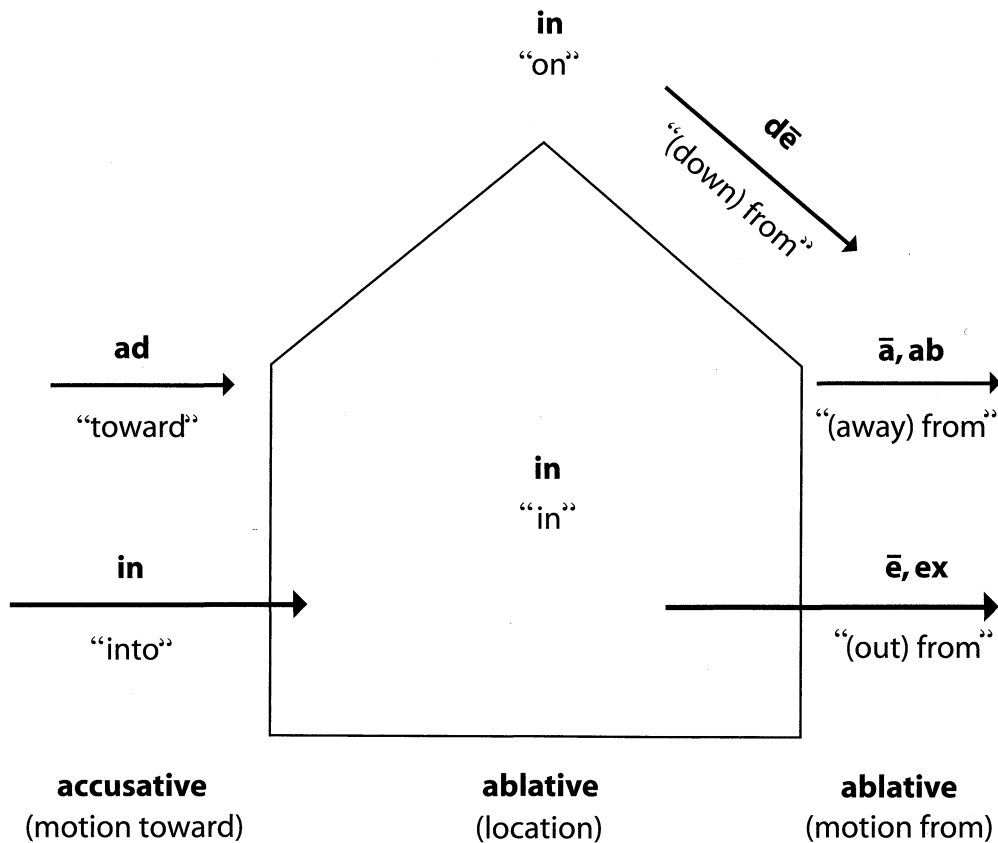


Figure 2. Prepositions

- **et** is a **coordinating conjunction**. This means that it connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. When two nouns are connected, they must be in the same case: for example, **nautārum et agricolārum** (of the sailors and of the farmers [genitive]). Parts of speech other than nouns may also be connected by **et**. For example, in the phrases "tall and snow-covered," "he sings and he dances," "in Italy and in Gaul," **et** could again be used to connect two adjectives, two verb phrases, or two prepositional phrases.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **et** is often used to mark *each element*: **et nautārum et agricolārum**, "both of the sailors and of the farmers." It is convenient to translate the first **et** with the English word "both." When such a parallel series is longer than two (**et nautārum et agricolārum et poetārum**), the first **et** is not translated (of the sailors and of the farmers and of the poets).

et may also be used as an *adverb* that usually qualifies a single word (noun, verb, adjective): **et vir**, "even the man," "the man also."

- **-que** is an enclitic conjunction. The word **enclitic** is derived from the Greek verb *enklīnō* (lean on), and an enclitic *leans on* or is directly attached to the word preceding it. The hyphen before **que** indicates that *it cannot stand alone as a separate word*. **-que** is attached to the second element of a closely related pair, whose elements are often opposite or complementary. **-que** should be translated "and" before the word to which it is attached: for example, **vir fēminaque** (husband *and* wife [subjects]). Like **et**, **-que** may connect grammatical elements other than nouns.

-que is used in place of the first **et** in the phrase **et . . . et . . .** by certain prose stylists (the historians Livy, Sallust, and Tacitus) and by many poets. Caesar and Cicero never use **-que . . . et . . .** The use of **-que . . . -que . . .** is found only in poetry and occasionally in the historians.

Derivatives and Cognates

Many words in English are *derived from* Latin words; that is, they descend directly from words in Latin. Such words are called **derivatives**. For example, the English word “counsel” is a derivative of the Latin word **cōnsilium**. In many instances, the differences in sound and spelling between an English word and its Latin parent are not significant enough to obscure the fact that the two words are related. Some English derivatives descend from the roots of Latin words. A **root** is the basic element or ultimate stem of a word that carries its meaning and from which many other words are made by the addition of prefixes and suffixes.

When an English and a Latin word are called **cognates** (< **cognātus**, **-a**, **-um**, related), they are related because they both descend from a common PIE word or root, but the English word is derived not from Latin but from another ancient language such as Greek. It is often impossible to tell that a word in Latin and a word in English are cognates because they have undergone radically different changes in pronunciation and spelling as they have developed in their respective language families. For example, the Latin word **quīnque** (five) is cognate with the English word “five,” but the words do not appear to be related.

In each chapter some English derivatives and cognates of the new Latin vocabulary are listed at the end of the vocabulary notes. These lists are intended in part to help the student remember the meanings of new vocabulary items. They will also help the student expand his or her English vocabulary and stimulate further interest in learning about the relations among words. The cognates are provided to show how the same root or word in PIE has given rise to a wide variety of seemingly unrelated words in English. Where only the root of an English word is related to the corresponding Latin word, the portion of the English word that descends from that root is boldfaced.²

	Derivatives	Cognates
ager	agrarian	acre
anima	animate	
bellum	bellicose	
cōnsilium	counsel	
dea, deus	deity	July
dominus	dominate	
factum	fact	thesis
fāma	famous	prophet; banal
filia, filius	affiliate	
īnsula	insulate; isolate	
liber	library	
nauta	nautical	astronaut; nausea
pecūnia	pecuniary	fee
perīculum	peril	fear; pirate
puella, puer	puerile	foal; encyclopedia
rēgīna	correct, regent	maharajah; right; rich
verbum	verb	word; irony
via	trivial, deviate	way; weigh
vir	virile, virtue	werewolf; world

2. For further information on these and other derivatives and cognates, consult the Indo-European Roots Appendix of the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. (Houghton-Mifflin, 2006).

§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case

A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing.³ Every noun in Latin has three properties: **gender**, **number**, and **case**.

GENDER—Latin nouns have the genders **masculine** or **feminine**. Nouns that are neither masculine nor feminine are called **neuter** (< **neuter**, **neutra**, **neutrum**, neither). In the vocabulary entry for each noun, gender is indicated by *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* **THIS INFORMATION MUST BE MEMORIZED FOR EACH NOUN.**

NUMBER—Latin nouns appear in the **singular** when referring to one and in the **plural** when referring to more than one.

CASE—Latin nouns occur in a variety of different forms in both the singular and the plural. Each different form or **case** is indicated by a special ending attached to a stem that remains constant. Each ending indicates the syntax, the grammatical function, that a noun has in a sentence. For example, when a Latin noun serves as the subject of a sentence, it has one case ending, but when it serves as the direct object in a sentence, it has a different case ending.

The parent language of Latin, Indo-European, had eight different cases for nouns, each case with its own grammatical functions. Latin has only six cases, which nevertheless express all the functions of the original eight.⁴ This is possible because one case in Latin has been made to perform multiple functions. The names of the Latin cases and their basic functions are:

Nominative Case

- used for the *subject* of a sentence
- used for the *predicate nominative*

The two essential elements of every sentence are the *subject* and the *predicate*. The **subject** is *that which is spoken about*, and the **predicate** is *all that is said about the subject*. For example:

John sneezed.

The waiter cleared the dishes from the table.

In these sentences, “John” and “the waiter” are subjects; “sneezed” and “cleared the dishes from the table” are predicates. Both “John” and “the waiter” would be in the nominative case in Latin, and the syntax of each would be **Nominative, Subject**.

3. There are, in fact, several kinds of nouns:

common nouns: man, book, city, dumpling

proper nouns: Mary, Italy, New York

collective nouns: crowd, tribe, senate, army

abstract nouns: love, beauty, slavery, citizenship

verbal nouns: running (gerund), to run (infinitive)

4. A few Latin nouns have a seventh case, the locative, used to express location in a place.

Certain verbs such as “be,” “become,” and “seem” are called **copulative** or **linking** verbs. A linking verb is *never* followed by a direct object but rather by *an element that is equivalent to the subject*, and the syntax of this element is **Predicate Nominative**. For example:

John is a waiter.
The frog became a prince.

In these sentences, “John” and “the frog” are subjects, while “a waiter” and “a prince” are Predicate Nominatives. Both the subjects and the Predicate Nominatives would be in the nominative case in Latin.

Genitive Case

- used to *qualify* or *limit* another noun in a variety of ways
- usually corresponds to a translation using the English preposition “of”

In the phrases “the house of friends,” “a fear of snakes,” and “a jar of pennies,” the words “of friends,” “of snakes,” and “of pennies” *qualify* or *limit* in a variety of ways the nouns on which they depend. “Of friends,” “of snakes,” and “of pennies” would be expressed in Latin by “friends,” “snakes,” and “pennies” in the genitive case *with no preposition*; that is, the genitive case ending *contains the idea of “of” within it*.

One idea commonly expressed by the genitive case is that of ownership or possession: “the book of the girl” (= the book belonging to the girl). The phrase “of the girl” would be expressed in Latin by the word “girl” in the genitive case, and the syntax of that word would be **Genitive of Possession**.

Dative Case

- used to express *the person or thing interested in* or *affected by* the action of a verb
- usually corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions “(with reference) to” or “for”

In the sentence “To the sailor the danger of the sea is real,” “to the sailor” expresses the person *with reference to whom* “the danger of the sea is real.” The phrase “to the sailor” would be expressed in Latin by the word “sailor” in the dative case *with no preposition*; that is, the dative case ending *contains the notion of “(with reference) to” within it*. The syntax of the word “sailor” in Latin in the dative case would be **Dative of Reference**.

In the sentence “The girl gives a toy to the cat” or “The girl gives the cat a toy,” “a toy” expresses the *direct* object of the verb, while “to the cat” or “cat” expresses the *indirect* object, the person or thing *indirectly* interested in or affected by the action of the verb. Again, “to the cat” or “cat” would be expressed in Latin in the dative case *with no preposition*, and the syntax of that word would be **Dative of Indirect Object**. This use of the dative case appears most often with verbs of *giving*, *showing*, and *telling*.

Accusative Case

- used for the *direct object* of a verb
- used following certain prepositions

In the sentence “The poet writes poems,” “poems” is the *direct object* of the verb “writes” because the action of the verb “writes” is directly exerted on the object “poems.” The word “poems” would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case, and the syntax of that word would be **Accusative, Direct Object**.

In addition to being used to express the direct object of a verb, the accusative case follows prepositions that express *motion toward, into, around, and through*. For example, to express the phrase “toward the field” in Latin, the preposition **ad** (toward) is followed by the word “field” in Latin in the accusative case.

Ablative Case

- used to express *separation* (original function of the ablative case); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English preposition “from”
- also expresses *association or instrument*; in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions “with” or “by”
- also expresses *location* (in space or time); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions “in,” “on,” or “at”

Separation

In the sentence “He came from Italy,” the phrase “from Italy” expresses motion from a place: “he” is *separated from* “Italy.” In the sentence “The king freed the people from slavery,” “the people” are *separated from* “slavery.” These two examples suggest the range of meaning expressed by the ablative’s separative function. The idea of going *from a place* (out from/away from/down from) usually requires a preposition and a noun in the ablative case. Thus, in the example above, “from Italy” would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **ab** ([away] from) and “Italy” in the ablative case. The idea of “from slavery” in the second example would be expressed by the word “slavery” in the ablative case and might be accompanied by a preposition.

Association/Instrument

In the sentence “The woman came to the party with a poet,” the phrase “with a poet” indicates that the woman was *accompanied by* a poet. The phrase “with a poet” would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **cum** (with) and “poet” in the ablative case; the syntax of that word would be **Ablative of Accompaniment**. NOTE THAT THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT *REQUIRES* THE PREPOSITION **CUM**.

In the sentence “The farmer is fighting with a sword,” the phrase “with a sword” indicates what the farmer *uses* to fight, or the *instrument by means of which* he is fighting. The phrase “with a sword” would be expressed in Latin by the word “sword” in the ablative case *with no preposition*; the syntax of that word would be **Ablative of Means** (or **Ablative of Instrument**). NOTE THAT *NO* PREPOSITION IS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

Location

In the sentences “Farmers work in fields” and “The queen lives on an island,” the phrases “in fields” and “on an island” express ideas of *location* or *place where*. The phrases “in fields” and “on an island” would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **in** (in, on) and the words “fields” and “island” in the ablative case. NOTE THAT SUCH AN ABLATIVE REQUIRES THE PREPOSITION **IN**.

Vocative Case

—used for *addressing* someone *directly*

In the sentence “Tell me, father, why you have come,” the word “father” expresses the person being directly addressed by the speaker of the sentence. The word “father” would be expressed in Latin in the vocative case. In Latin, a word in the vocative case is sometimes preceded by the interjection **ō** (O).

Summary of Cases and Their Basic Functions	
Case Name	Used to Express
Nominative	1. subject 2. predicate nominative
Genitive	“of”
Dative	“to,” “for”
Accusative	1. direct object 2. with certain prepositions
Ablative	1. “from” 2. “with,” “by (means of)” 3. “in,” “on”
Vocative	direct address

☛ DRILL 1, PAGE 7, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§2. The Five Declensions

Latin nouns are grouped in five different families called **declensions**. Each noun belongs to *one declension only*, and each declension has its own distinctive set of case endings. The five groups of nouns are most reliably distinguished and identified by the *genitive singular* ending of each declension:

	<i>Genitive Singular Ending</i>
1st declension	-ae
2nd declension	-ī
3rd declension	-is
4th declension	-ūs
5th declension	-eī/-ēī

A full vocabulary entry for a Latin noun contains, in the following order, the *nominative singular*, the *genitive singular*, a notation of gender, and the English meaning(s). For example:

puella, puellae *f.* girl
servus, servī *m.* slave
vir, virī *m.* man; husband
periculum, periculī *n.* danger

OBSERVATIONS

1. The **-ae** ending on the genitive singular of **puella** indicates that this noun belongs to the first declension.
2. The **-ī** endings on the genitive singular forms of **servus**, **vir**, and **periculum** indicate that these nouns all belong to the second declension. Even though the endings of their nominative singular forms differ, the endings of the genitive singular forms do not.

Finding the Stem

The genitive singular is given in the vocabulary for purposes of identifying the declension to which each noun belongs, but the genitive singular is also the form from which a **stem** is derived for use in making all other forms of the noun.

To find the stem of *any* noun, *remove the ending from the genitive singular* (the second element given in the vocabulary). What remains is the stem.

patria, patri/ae <i>f.</i> country	stem = patri-
puella, puell/ae <i>f.</i> girl	stem = puell-
liber, libr/ī <i>m.</i> book	stem = libr-
servus, serv/ī <i>m.</i> slave	stem = serv-
vir, vir/ī <i>m.</i> man; husband	stem = vir-

All the forms of a noun are created by taking the stem of that noun and adding the case endings that belong to its particular declension. When one generates a complete set of forms for a noun in Latin, one is said to **decline** the noun, and the resulting set of forms is called a **declension** of the noun.⁵

§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, some are masculine. There are no neuter first-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the First Declension		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nominative/Vocative	-a	-ae
Genitive	-ae	-ārum
Dative	-ae	-īs
Accusative	-am	-ās
Ablative	-ā	-īs

5. There are thus two meanings for the word “declension”: 1. the name for each of the five families of nouns (first declension, second declension, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for an individual noun.

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the first declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

puella, puellae <i>f.</i> girl		
stem = puell-		
		<i>Singular</i>
Nom./Voc.	puella	the girl (subject or predicate nominative) girl (direct address)
Gen.	puellae	of the girl
Dat.	puellae	to the girl/for the girl
Acc.	puellam	the girl (direct object)
Abl.	puellā	from the girl; by/with the girl; in the girl
		<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	puellae	the girls (subj. or pred. nom.) girls (d.a.)
Gen.	puellārum	of the girls
Dat.	puellis	to the girls/for the girls
Acc.	puellas	the girls (d.o.)
Abl.	puellis	from the girls; by/with the girls; in the girls

OBSERVATIONS

1. The abbreviations for the case names used in the model declension above are standard and appear frequently in this book, as do the abbreviations *subj.* (subject), *pred. nom.* (predicate nominative), *d.a.* (direct address), and *d.o.* (direct object).
2. In the first declension, as in most other declensions, the nominative and vocative endings in both singular and plural are identical and are therefore listed together.
3. Certain endings of the first declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ae** = genitive singular, dative singular, and nominative/vocative plural; **-is** = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence.
4. Two first-declension words in the vocabulary of this chapter, **dea, deae** *f.*, “goddess,” and **filia, filiae** *f.*, “daughter,” occasionally have irregular dative and ablative plural forms: **deābus** and **filiābus**, but these forms do not appear in this textbook.
5. The Latin language has *no definite article* (the) and *no indefinite article* (a, an). English definite or indefinite articles may be freely added in translations of Latin nouns as context demands. Thus, the noun translated above as “the girl,” “of the girl,” etc., could also be translated “a girl,” “of a girl,” etc. Sometimes it is appropriate to use no article: “money” or “of books.” Although there are words in Latin for “his,” “her,” and “their,” possessive adjectives such as these are often omitted in Latin. They may be freely added in English translations.

☛ DRILL 2–3, PAGE 9, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the second declension are masculine, some are feminine, and many are neuter with endings slightly different from masculine and feminine nouns.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Masculine/Feminine		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nominative	-us/— ⁶	-ī
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-ōs
Ablative	-ō	-īs
Vocative	-e	-ī

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

servus, servī <i>m.</i> slave		
stem = serv-		
<i>Singular</i>		
Nom.	servus	a slave (subj. or pred. nom.)
Gen.	servī	of a slave
Dat.	servō	to a slave/for a slave
Acc.	servum	a slave (d.o.)
Abl.	servō	from a slave; by/with a slave; in a slave
Voc.	serve	slave (d.a.)
<i>Plural</i>		
Nom./Voc.	servī	slaves (subj. or pred. nom.) slaves (d.a.)
Gen.	servōrum	of slaves
Dat.	servīs	to slaves/for slaves
Acc.	servōs	slaves (d.o.)
Abl.	servīs	from slaves; by/with slaves; in slaves

6. Most masculine and feminine nouns of the second declension use **-us** as the nominative singular ending. As is clear from the vocabulary entries, however, a number of nouns lack any nominative singular ending and instead use a *form of the stem of the noun* as the nominative singular form. Thus, **servus**, **servī** *m.* slave, but **puer**, **puerī** *m.* boys and **liber**, **librī** *m.* book.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the second declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ī** = genitive singular and nominative/vocative plural; **-ō** = dative singular and ablative singular; **-īs** = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. Context usually makes clear which form appears in a particular sentence.
2. Many endings of the second declension are either similar to or identical with corresponding endings of the first declension. Compare accusative singular **-um** to **-am**; genitive plural **-ōrum** to **-ārum**; dative and ablative plural **-īs** to **-ās**; and accusative plural **-ōs** to **-ās**.
3. Second-declension nouns whose stems end in **-i** have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

gladius, gladii or gladi m. sword

In the second form, the short **-i** of the stem has contracted with the **-ī** of the ending. This shortened form of the genitive singular is not given in the vocabulary entry for nouns whose stems end in **-i**, but it appears in drills, sentences, and readings.

4. The second declension is the only declension in which the vocative differs from the nominative, and it does so *only in the singular* for masculine/feminine nouns. For nouns whose nominative singular ending is **-us**, the vocative singular ending is **-e**. For the noun **filius** and proper names of the second declension whose nominative singular ending is **-ius**, the vocative singular ending is **-ī**. For other masculine and feminine nouns of this declension, the vocative singular is identical with the nominative singular. For example:

servus	vocative singular = serve
filius	vocative singular = filī
puer	vocative singular = puer

5. Every vocative plural is identical with the nominative plural in all declensions.
6. The noun **deus, deī m.** has certain irregular forms in the plural: **dī** (nom./voc. pl.), **deum** (gen. pl.), and **dīs** (dat./abl. pl.). For the full declension of this noun see the vocabulary note on p. 12.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Neuter

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nominative/Vocative	-um	-a
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-a
Ablative	-ō	-īs

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *neuter* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

perīculum, perīculī <i>n.</i> danger stem = perīcul-		
<i>Singular</i>		
Nom./Voc.	perīcul um	danger (subj. or pred. nom.) danger (d.a.)
Gen.	perīcul ī	of danger
Dat.	perīcul ō	to danger/for danger
Acc.	perīcul um	danger (d.o.)
Abl.	perīcul ō	from danger; by/with danger; in danger
<i>Plural</i>		
Nom./Voc.	perīcula	dangers (subj. or pred. nom.) dangers (d.a.)
Gen.	perīcul ōrum	of dangers
Dat.	perīcul īs	to dangers/for dangers
Acc.	perīcula	dangers (d.o.)
Abl.	perīcul īs	from dangers; by/with dangers; in dangers

OBSERVATIONS

1. Most of the endings for neuter nouns of the second declension are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns. Neuter nouns differ only in having **-um** in the nominative and vocative singular and **-a** in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural. ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL. Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence.
2. As is true for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, neuter nouns whose stems end in **-i** have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

cōnsilium, cōnsiliī or **cōnsilī** *n.* plan, advice; judgment

☛ DRILL 4, PAGE 15, MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary

- cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety
- ▶ **īra, īrae** *f.* anger, wrath
- poena, poenae** *f.* punishment, penalty
- sapientia, sapientiae** *f.* wisdom
- vīta, vītae** *f.* life

- ▶ **animus, animī** *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings
- ▶ **arma, armōrum** *n. pl.* arms, weapons
- studium, studiī** *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study
- vēlum, vēlī** *n.* sail

- ▶ **ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** (1-intr.) walk
- ▶ **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** (1-tr.) love
- ▶ **cōgitō** (1-tr.) think; ponder
- ▶ **dō, dare, dedī, datus** give, grant
 - ▶ **poenās dare** (idiom) to pay the penalty
 - ▶ **vēla dare** (idiom) to set sail
- ▶ **dōnō** (1-tr.) give; present, reward
- errō** (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake
- labōrō** (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed
- ▶ **mōnstrō** (1-tr.) show, point out
- ▶ **optō** (1-tr.) desire
- ▶ **vocō** (1-tr.) call; summon; name

- ▶ **dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus** owe; ought
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus** have, hold; consider
- ▶ **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus** order
- ▶ **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus** set in motion, stir (up), move
- ▶ **respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus** answer, respond
- ▶ **timeō, timēre, timuī, —** fear, be afraid (of)
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus** see

- ▶ **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** be; exist
- ▶ **possum, posse, potuī, —** be able, can

- cūr** (interrog. adv.) why
- ▶ **enim** (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for
- etenim** (conj.) and indeed; for in fact
- ▶ **nam** (conj.) for
- namque** (conj.) for in fact
- ▶ **-ne** (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question*
- ▶ **neque** or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not
 - neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .**
 - neither . . . nor . . .
- ▶ **nōn** (adv.) not
- sed** (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ When *īra* appears in the plural, it may be translated “(feelings of) anger.”
- ▶ **animus, animī** *m.* is the “(rational) soul” or “mind” of a human being. It is distinct from **anima**, which is the physical soul, that part of a human that would descend to the underworld. By comparison, Greek and English have one word, *psychē* and “soul” respectively, that is used for both. **animus** may also mean “heart” as the source of emotion and passion, or it may indicate a specific passion. In the plural, it often means “spirits” in the sense of “strong feelings,” and in certain contexts “anger,” “courage,” or “pride.”
- ▶ The second-declension noun **arma, armōrum** *n. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin. The vocabulary entry is given in the plural but is analogous in other respects to any other vocabulary entry for a noun: it gives the nominative, the genitive, the gender, and the meaning(s) of the word. All such entries also indicate that the word listed is plural.

Principal Parts

As is explained in §7, the fourth principal part of a verb is usually the perfect passive participle of that verb. In this book, two different endings of the perfect passive participle—**-us** and **-um**—are used in the vocabulary lists beginning each chapter. Verbs that are *transitive*—that express an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in **-us**. Verbs that are *intransitive*—that express an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in **-um**. For more on the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, see §11.

Certain intransitive verbs have no perfect passive participle. For some intransitive verbs a future active participle, whose ending is **-ūrus**, is supplied as the fourth principal part. This is true, for example, for the irregular intransitive verb **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**. The fourth principal part, **futūrus**, is a future active participle.

Certain verbs, both transitive and intransitive, have no fourth principal part at all.¹ When memorizing and reciting aloud such verbs, say “blank” for the missing fourth principal part.

- ▶ Most verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of **ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** (an intransitive verb) or **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** (a transitive verb). Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in **-āre, -āvī, -ātus** are identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-tr.) following the first principal part. Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in **-āre, -āvī, -ātum** are identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-intr.). No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS. For example, **optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus**, not **optō** (1-tr.).
- ▶ **cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus** takes two grammatical constructions. It takes a direct object, or it may also be used with the preposition **dē**.

Animam cōgitat.
Dē animā cōgitat.

She is pondering the soul.
She is thinking about the soul.

- ▶ **dō, dare, dedī, datus** is an irregular first-conjugation verb because its principal parts do not follow the pattern of other first-conjugation verbs, and its present stem, **da-**, contains a *short -a-*. However, two forms have **-ā-**: the second person singular present active indicative (**dās**) and the second person singular present active imperative (**dā**). (For the indicative see §9; for the imperative see §32.) MEMORIZE THESE FORMS. The third principal part, **dedī**, is called **reduplicated** because the first consonant of the root, **d-**, has been doubled with an intervening vowel. Like all verbs of *giving, showing, and telling*, **dō** regularly takes both a direct object and an indirect object.
- ▶ Two common idioms using **dō** are **poenās dare**, “to pay the penalty,” and **vēla dare**, “to set sail.” An **idiom** is an expression whose meaning cannot be rendered by a literal translation. Idioms are included in the vocabulary lists with their verbs in the infinitive. MEMORIZE EACH IDIOM AS A SEPARATE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

Nautae poenās dabunt.
Nautae vēla nōn dant.

The sailors will pay the penalty.
The sailors are not setting sail.

1. A missing fourth principal part indicates that no forms derived from this part occur in the Latin that has survived.

- **dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus** is a denominative verb. The term **denominative** is used of verbs that are derived from nouns or adjectives. The verb **dōnō** is derived from the noun **dōnum, dōnī n.** Two constructions regularly occur with this verb.

Poetae pecūniam dōnāmus.	We are giving the poet money.
	We are giving money to the poet.
Poetam pecūniā dōnāmus.	We are rewarding the poet with (by means of) money.

In the first sentence **dōnō** functions as an ordinary verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and takes a direct object and an indirect object. In this usage **dōnō** is a synonym of **dō**. In the second sentence **dōnō** means “present” or “reward” with a *person* as an Accusative, Direct Object and an Ablative of Means.

- **mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus** is a verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and thus takes both a direct object and an indirect object.
- **optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus** may take a direct object or an Object Infinitive (§13).

Cum agricolis labōrāre optat.	He desires to work with the farmers.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

- **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus** means “call” both in the sense of “summon” and in the sense of “name.” In the latter sense, it takes a direct object and another noun called a **Predicate Accusative**.

Patriam insulam vocō.	I call the island (d.o.) (my) homeland (Predicate Accusative).
-----------------------	--

- The verb **dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus** has two distinct meanings. When it takes a direct object, it is translated “owe.” When it is followed by a Complementary Infinitive, it is translated “ought” (§12).

Poetae pecūniam dēbeō.	I owe money to the poet.
Labōrāre dēbeō.	I ought to work.

To translate the past and future tenses of **dēbeō** with a Complementary Infinitive, use the English verb “have.”

Labōrāre dēbēbam.	I had (was having) to work.
Labōrāre dēbebō.	I shall have to work.

- **iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus** frequently takes an Object Infinitive (§13), most often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (§107). This accusative is translated as if it were a direct object of the form of **iubeō**.

Rēgīna nautam labōrāre iubet.	The queen orders the sailor to work.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

- **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus** means “set (something or someone) in motion,” either physically or emotionally.
- **respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus** takes a Dative of Indirect Object to express the person whom one answers (to whom one responds).

Respondēbis fēminae?	Will you answer the woman?
	Will you respond to the woman?

- **timeō, timēre, timuī**, — lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. **timeō** is transitive but may be used absolutely (§11). It may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference or by the preposition **dē** (as well as by other prepositions).

Agricola timet.	The farmer is afraid.
Agricola rēgīnam timet.	The farmer fears the queen.
Agricola rēgīnae timet.	The farmer fears for the queen.
Agricola dē filiō timet.	The farmer is afraid about (his) son.

- The principal parts of the irregular verb **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** derive from two different PIE roots, ***Ees-**, “be; exist” (the root for the first two principal parts) and ***bheu-**, “be, exist, grow” (for the third and fourth

principal parts).² The fourth principal part, **futūrus** (about to be), is the future active participle. **sum** has two different uses but is always intransitive. For the conjugation and uses of **sum** see §10.

- **possum, posse, potuī**, — is an intransitive verb that is regularly followed by a Complementary Infinitive (§12). It lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. For the conjugation of **possum** see §10.
- **enim** is called a **postpositive** conjunction (< **postpōnō**, put after) because it is regularly *placed after* the first word (or second word) in a sentence. **enim** is used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains (for) or confirms (in fact, indeed) a preceding one.

Rēgīna ad oppidum ambulat. Dōna enim dīs dare optat. (*enim* with explanation)
The queen is walking to the town. *For* she desires to give gifts to the gods.
Agricola vēla dare optat. Nihil enim timet. (*enim* with confirmation)
The farmer desires to set sail. *Indeed*, he is afraid of nothing.

enim is never placed first in a Latin sentence, but it is nearly always the first word in an English translation.

- **nam** is another conjunction used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains a preceding one. Unlike **enim**, **nam** is not postpositive.

Rēgīna ad oppidum ambulat. Nam dōna dīs dare optat.
The queen is walking to the town. *For* she desires to give gifts to the gods.

- **-ne** is an enclitic³ added to the first word of a sentence to indicate that it is a question. Its use in questions is *optional*, and it has no English translation. The word to which it is added is often a verb, since verbs often occur first in questions, but **-ne** may be added to other words as well.

Optāsne rēgīnam īnsulae vidēre? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?
Rēgīnamne īnsulae vidēre optās? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?

- **neque** or **nec** is a conjunction (and) *and* an adverb (not) at the same time.

Vir pugnat nec dē periculō cōgitat. The man fights and does not think about danger.

neque . . . neque . . . , nec . . . nec . . ., or a mixture of the two mark balanced pairs and is translated “neither . . . nor . . .”

Nec fēminae nec virō dōnum dabō. Neither to the woman nor to the man shall I give a gift.

When a parallel series is longer than two (**nec fēminae nec virō nec rēgīnae**), translate the first **nec** as “not” and say “and not” for the others (not to the woman and not to the man and not to the queen).

- **nōn** (adv.) almost always precedes the word it emphasizes.

Agricola dōna nōn optat. The farmer does not desire gifts.
Agricola agrum, nōn pecūniam, optat. The farmer desires a field, not money.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ambulō	somnambulist	
cūra	curious	
dō	donative; pardon	antidote; dose
habeō	habit; able	give; gavel
īra	irate	iron; hierarchy
moveō	mobile; emotion	
possum	possible; potent	despot; Padishah
sapientia	insipid; savant; savvy	
sum, esse	interest; absent; essence	am; is; yes; sin
fuī, futūrus	future	be; build; physics
videō	vision; visage; voyeur	guide; wise; idol
vīta	vital	bio-; quick; hygiene; whiskey
vocō	vocal; invoke; vowel	epic

2. An asterisk next to a form indicates that the form is hypothetical.

3. See the vocabulary note on **-que** (p. 13).

§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood

A verb is the part of speech that expresses action, existence, or occurrence. It is used to declare or assert something about the subject.⁴ Every verb form in Latin may have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **voice**, and **mood**. A *finite* verb form is *defined* or limited by *all five* of these properties.

PERSON—Latin verbs appear in the **first person** when the subject of the verb is the speaker or speakers (I, we), in the **second person** when the subject is the person addressed (you, you [pl.]), and in the **third person** when the subject is the person or thing spoken about (he, she, it, they, or any specific noun that could replace these pronouns: e.g., the boy, Cicero, dangers).⁵

NUMBER—Latin verbs appear in the **singular** when the subject is one and in the **plural** when the subject is more than one.⁵

TENSE—The tense of a Latin verb indicates both **time** and **aspect**:

1. time: present, past, or future
2. aspect: simple, progressive, repeated, or completed

Aspect refers to the way the action of a verb is looked at and in particular indicates the relation of the action to the passage of time.

A verb that has *simple aspect* represents an action as *simply* occurring.

Mom, I *see* a baby duck! (present time)

That boy *ate* two dinners. (past time)

The candidate *will lose* the election tomorrow. (future time)

A verb that has *progressive aspect* represents an action as being *in progress*.

The girl *is eating* an ice-cream cone. (present time)

The boy *was walking* to school when he saw a baby duck. (past time)

She *’ll be comin’* round the mountain when she comes. (future time)

A verb that has *repeated aspect* represents an action as *repeated* or habitual.

She *walks* to school every day. (present time)

The boy *used to play* soccer. (past time)

I *shall sit* here on and off for days and days. (future time)

A verb that has *completed aspect* represents an action as already *completed*.

I *have now finished* my lunch. (present time)

When they returned home, the sailors *had sailed* a thousand miles. (past time)

She *will have cleaned up* her room by the time Dad gets home. (future time)

4. There are, in fact, several kinds of verbs:

- transitive** verbs, which carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *catches* the mouse
- intransitive** verbs, which do *not* carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *sleeps*
- linking** (copulative) verbs, which equate the subject with a noun or adjective in the predicate: the cat *is* a thief; the cat *is* black.

5. A verb agrees with its subject in *person* and *number*. This is called **subject-verb agreement**.

It should be clear that verb tenses can share the same time but differ in aspect. The verbs in the following English sentences are all in past time; they differ only in aspect.

The boy <i>laughed</i> .	simple aspect
The boy <i>was laughing</i> .	progressive aspect
Every time his friend sang, the boy <i>laughed</i> .	repeated aspect
Because the boy <i>had laughed</i> , his friend was angry.	completed aspect

All the Latin tenses that express progressive aspect may also express repeated aspect. Context usually makes clear whether a progressive aspect or a repeated aspect translation is more appropriate.

VOICE—Latin verbs appear in the **active** voice when their subjects are performing the action of the verb. (The cat scratches.) They appear in the **passive** voice when their subjects are receiving the action of the verb. (The cat is scratched.)

MOOD—Latin verbs occur in one of three different moods based on the writer's or speaker's attitude toward the factuality or likelihood of the action expressed. One uses the **indicative** mood to represent something as factual or to ask a question of fact. (The cat *is scratching* the furniture. Why *is* the cat *scratching* the furniture?) One uses the **imperative** mood to give a command. (Mom, *scratch* my back.) To represent an action as *possible*, *wished for*, *doubtful*, or *nonfactual* in some other way, one uses the **subjunctive** mood. (*If only* my cat *would not scratch* the furniture. My cat *might scratch* your arm.)

§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview

Since Latin tenses have three possible times (present, past, future) and three possible aspects (simple, progressive/repeated, completed—the progressive and repeated always being grouped together in Latin), it would have been most efficient if Latin had had nine tenses corresponding to the nine possible combinations of time and aspect. In fact, Latin has only six tenses in the indicative mood. Three Latin tenses have two possible combinations of time and aspect. A list of the six tenses of the indicative mood and their times and aspects follows, with sample English translations for each.

1. **Present:** reports an action in *present* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She thinks. She is thinking. She thinks [every day/often/repeatedly].)
2. **Imperfect:** reports an action in *past* time with *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She was thinking. She used to think. She thought [every day/often/repeatedly].)
3. **Future:** reports an action in *future* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She will think. She will be thinking. She will think [every day/often/repeatedly].)
4. **Perfect:** reports either an action in *present* time with *completed* aspect (She has thought.)
or an action in *past* time with *simple* aspect. (She thought.)
5. **Pluperfect:** reports an action in *past* time with *completed* aspect. (She had thought.)
6. **Future Perfect:** reports an action in *future* time with *completed* aspect. (She will have thought.)

The chart below shows these six tenses arranged according to time and aspect with a sample verb showing the corresponding tense in English:

The Six Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood

		A S P E C T		
T		Simple	Progressive/Repeated	Completed
I	Present	Present "he sings"	Present "he is singing" "he sings (every day)"	Perfect "he has sung"
	Past	Perfect "he sang"	Imperfect "he was singing" "he sang (every day)"	Pluperfect "he had sung"
E	Future	Future "he will sing"	Future "he will be singing" "he will sing (every day)"	Future perfect "he will have sung"

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present indicative and the future indicative have both simple aspect and progressive/repeated aspect. Be flexible when considering how to translate these tenses. Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.
2. The perfect tense is unique among the indicative tenses in that it refers to *two different times* with *two different aspects* (present completed or past simple). Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.

☛ DRILL 5–6, PAGE 37, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts

The full vocabulary entry for a verb contains four **principal parts** and English meanings for the verb. The four principal parts are the given elements from which all the forms of a Latin verb are created. For example:

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move

Principal Part

1	moveō ⁶	first person sing. present active indicative	"I move"
2	movēre	present active infinitive ⁷	"to move"
3	mōvī	first person sing. perfect active indicative	"I moved"/"I have moved"
4	mōtus	perfect passive participle ⁸	"(having been) moved"

LEARN WHAT EACH PRINCIPAL PART IS AND HOW IT IS TO BE TRANSLATED. ALWAYS MEMORIZE ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS OF EACH VERB.

6. Latin verbs are named by the first principal part (**moveō, vocō**). By contrast, English verbs are named by the infinitive (to move, to call).

7. An **infinitive** is a verbal noun with the properties of tense and voice.

8. A **participle** is a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. As mentioned in the vocabulary note on principal parts (p. 26), the fourth principal part is usually but not always the perfect passive participle ending in either **-us** or **-um**. Certain verbs that lack perfect passive participles have future active participles as their fourth principal parts, which end in **-ūrus**.

§8. The Four Conjugations

Latin verbs are grouped in four different families called **conjugations**. Each verb belongs to one conjugation only, and each conjugation differs slightly from the others in how it creates certain forms. The four conjugations are distinguished and identified by the *vowel preceding the -re ending of the second principal part* (present active infinitive). The following sets of principal parts will serve as examples of the four conjugations:

1st conjugation	-ā-	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus call
2nd conjugation	-ē-	moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move
3rd conjugation	-e-	regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule
4th conjugation	-ī-	audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear

OBSERVATION

The -ē- indicating a second-conjugation verb is long, but the -e- indicating the third conjugation is short.

The finite forms of a Latin verb are created by:

1. taking a stem from one of the principal parts
2. sometimes adding an **infix**⁹ that indicates the tense
3. adding *personal endings* that indicate three things: person, number, and voice.

When one generates a complete set of forms of a particular tense in Latin, one is said to **conjugate** the verb in that tense, and the resulting set of forms is called a **conjugation** of that tense.¹⁰

Since verbs of the first and second conjugations form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative in the same ways, they are here introduced together.

Finding the Present Stem

For all conjugations the stem for the present, imperfect, and future active indicative is found by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*. This stem is called the **present stem**. All verb forms made with the present stem when taken together are called the **present system** of the verb. The vowel at the end of this stem is called the **stem vowel**. Thus, for example:

1st:	vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus call	present stem: vocā-
2nd:	moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move	present stem: movē-

☛ DRILL 7–8, PAGE 41, MAY NOW BE DONE.

9. An **infix** (< **infigō**, fasten in) is an inflectional element appearing in the middle of a word.

10. There are thus two meanings for the word “conjugation”: 1. the name for each of the four families of verbs (first conjugation, second conjugation, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for a particular tense of a given verb.

§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*)
2. add the **active personal endings** directly to the present stem

The active personal endings are:

Person	Singular	
1	-ō, -m	I
2	-s	you
3	-t	he, she, it
	Plural	
1	-mus	we
2	-tis	you (pl.)
3	-nt	they

OBSERVATIONS

1. The active personal endings are used to form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. Although two endings are given for the first person singular (**-ō, -m**), they are not interchangeable. The present active indicative and the future active indicative use **-ō**. The imperfect active indicative uses **-m**.

2. The active personal endings will be used to form many tenses and conjugations in Latin.

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Thus the present active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **moveō** are:

Present Stem:	vocā-		movē-	
<i>Singular</i>				
1	vocō	I call	moveō	I move
2	vocās	you call	movēs	you move
3	vocat	he, she, it calls	movet	he, she, it moves
<i>Plural</i>				
1	vocāmus	we call	movēmus	we move
2	vocātis	you (pl.) call	movētis	you (pl.) move
3	vocant	they call	movent	they move

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present active indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs has no infix to mark tense. The personal endings are added directly to the present stem.

2. In the first person singular of all first-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ā-** contracts with the **-ō** of the ending (***vocāō > vocō**).¹¹ THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

3. In the first person singular of all second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ē-** shortens before the **-ō** of the ending (***movēō > moveō**). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

11. The symbol > means "becomes."

4. In the third person singular and plural of both first- and second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowels (-ā- and -ē- respectively) shorten before the endings -t and -nt. A long vowel always shortens when it immediately precedes these two endings. The shortening of long vowels before certain final consonants is referred to in this book as the **long vowel rule**.

5. Although there are words in Latin for the personal pronouns “I,” “you,” etc., these are regularly omitted when they are the subjects of verbs. THE ACTIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS SUPPLY THE SUBJECTS, AND SO THESE PRONOUNS ARE NOT REQUIRED. In the third person singular, if no subject is expressed, the appropriate pronoun (he, she, or it) must be determined from context. If the subject is expressed, no pronoun should be supplied. Compare, for example:

ambulat	he, she, it walks
poēta ambulat	the poet walks

6. The English translations for the present-tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the present tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: “I am calling,” “I call (repeatedly),” etc.

Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the -re from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the imperfect active indicative: -bā-
3. add the *active personal endings* (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **moveō** are:

Present Stem:	vocā-		movē-	
Infix:	-bā-		-bā-	
<i>Singular</i>				
1	vocābam	I was calling	movēbam	I was moving
2	vocābās	you were calling	movēbās	you were moving
3	vocābat	he, she, it was calling	movēbat	he, she, it was moving
<i>Plural</i>				
1	vocābāmus	we were calling	movēbāmus	we were moving
2	vocābātis	you (pl.) were calling	movēbātis	you (pl.) were moving
3	vocābant	they were calling	movēbant	they were moving

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending -m, as they do before the endings -t and -nt. Thus the **long vowel rule** is:

THE ENDINGS -M, -T, AND -NT SHORTEN PRECEDING LONG VOWELS.

2. The English translations for the imperfect tense forms given above have progressive aspect. Because the imperfect tense also has repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: “I used to call,” “I called (repeatedly),” etc.

Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the future active indicative: **-bi-**
3. add the *active personal endings* (use **-ō** for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **movēō** are:

Present Stem:	vocā-		movē-	
Infix:	-bi-		-bi-	
<i>Singular</i>				
1	vocābō	I shall call	movēbō	I shall move
2	vocābis	you will call	movēbis	you will move
3	vocābit	he, she, it will call	movēbit	he, she, it will move
<i>Plural</i>				
1	vocābimus	we shall call	movēbimus	we shall move
2	vocābitis	you (pl.) will call	movēbitis	you (pl.) will move
3	vocābunt	they will call	movēbunt	they will move

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** contracts with the ending **-ō** to give the resulting form (**vocābiō* > **vocābō**; **movēbiō* > **movēbō**). MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION TO THE RULES FOR FORMING THE FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE.
2. In the third person plural, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** changes to **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
3. The English translations for the future tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the future tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: “I shall be calling,” “I shall call (repeatedly),” etc.

☛ DRILL 9, PAGE 45, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs *sum* and *possum*

The verb **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**,¹² “be, exist,” and the verb **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, —, “be able, can,” are irregular verbs. An **irregular verb** is a verb that does not belong to any of the four conjugations. **Sum** and **possum** have irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of these verbs are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

12. The fourth principal part of most verbs is the perfect passive participle (see §7). However, the fourth principal part of **sum**—**futūrus**—is a future active participle and is translated “about to be.”

Present Active Indicative of sum and possum				
<i>Singular</i>				
1	sum	I am	possum	I am able
2	es	you are	potes	you are able
3	est	he, she, it is	potest	he, she, it is able
<i>Plural</i>				
1	sumus	we are	possumus	we are able
2	estis	you (pl.) are	potestis	you (pl.) are able
3	sunt	they are	possunt	they are able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active indicative, the stem of **sum** shifts between **s-** (first person singular and plural, third person plural) and **es-** (second person singular and plural, third person singular). The active personal endings are familiar: **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.
2. The verb **possum** is in origin a combination of the Latin adjective **potis** or **pote** (able) and the verb **sum**. The adjective appears as a prefix: either **pos-** (added to forms of **sum** beginning with **s-**) or **pot-** (added to forms of **sum** beginning with **e-**).

Imperfect Active Indicative of sum and possum				
<i>Singular</i>				
1	eram	I was	poteram	I was able
2	erās	you were	poterās	you were able
3	erat	he, she, it was	poterat	he, she, it was able
<i>Plural</i>				
1	erāmus	we were	poterāmus	we were able
2	erātis	you (pl.) were	poterātis	you (pl.) were able
3	erant	they were	poterant	they were able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the imperfect active indicative, the stem of **sum** is **erā-**.¹³ The stem vowel **-ā-** in the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural shortens according to the long vowel rule. Compare this stem vowel (**-ā-**) with the sign of the imperfect active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (**-bā-**).
2. Since the stem of **sum** in the imperfect active indicative begins with **e-**, the prefix **pot-** is used throughout the imperfect active indicative conjugation of **possum**.
3. A strict English translation of the verb **sum** in the imperfect tense with progressive aspect would be “I was (being),” “you were (being),” etc. However, the English past tense is regularly used in contexts that make this progressive aspect clear. For example, in the phrase “when I was a girl,” the state of being a girl is understood to have occurred over time. Thus the past tense in English may express progressive aspect.

13. **erā-** was derived by the addition of **-ā-** to the original stem ***es-**. Whenever the single letter ***s-** appeared between vowels in Latin, it changed to **-r-**. This sound change is called **rhotacism** (< the Greek letter *rho*) and is thought to have occurred in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.

Future Active Indicative of **sum** and **possum***Singular*

1	erō	I shall be	poterō	I shall be able
2	eris	you will be	poteris	you will be able
3	erit	he, she, it will be	poterit	he, she, it will be able

Plural

1	erimus	we shall be	poterimus	we shall be able
2	eritis	you (pl.) will be	poteritis	you (pl.) will be able
3	erunt	they will be	poterunt	they will be able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the future active indicative, the stem of **sum** is **eri-**.¹⁴ Compare this stem vowel (-i-) with the sign of the future active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (-bi-). In the first person singular, the stem vowel -i- contracts with the -ō of the ending (*eriō > **erō**). In the third person plural, the -i- changes to a -u-, a remnant of an earlier form. Compare the third person plurals of the future active indicative conjugation of first- and second-conjugation verbs.

2. Since the stem of **sum** in the future active indicative begins with **e-**, the prefix **pot-** is used throughout the future active indicative conjugation of **possum**.

The Two Meanings of the Verb *sum*

The two meanings given for the verb **sum**, “be, exist,” must be carefully distinguished. For example:

Rēgīna est filia deae.

The queen *is* the daughter of a goddess.

Est rēgīna in insulā.

A queen *exists* on the island.

There is a queen on the island.

In the first sentence, **est** is a copulative or linking verb. It equates the subject (**rēgīna**, queen) with a Predicate Nominative (**filia**, daughter). When **sum** is used as a copulative verb, it is usually placed between the subject and the Predicate Nominative.

In the second sentence, **est** is *not* a copulative verb. It simply states that the subject (**rēgīna**, queen) exists. When **sum** is not copulative, it asserts the existence of the subject and often (though not always) precedes the subject. It is convenient to translate this use of **sum** with the English expletive “there” and the appropriate form of the verb “be,” as in the second translation offered above.¹⁵ Although “there” comes first in the translation, it is not the subject: it is the “queen” who exists.

☛ DRILL 10, PAGE 53, MAY NOW BE DONE.

14. **eri-** was derived by the addition of -i- to the original stem *es-, and, by rhotacism, the intervocalic -s- changed to an -r-.

15. An **expletive** is a word that stands in place of or anticipates a following word or phrase.

§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A **transitive verb** expresses an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing. The person or thing receiving the action is the direct object (§1). For example:

The dog *catches* the ball.
She *was sending* a package.

The verbs in these sentences (“catches” and “was sending”) are transitive (< *trānseō*, go across). The direct objects in these sentences (“ball” and “package”) would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case.

Many transitive verbs require direct objects to complete their meanings. Many transitive verbs, however, may be used **absolutely**; that is, they may occur without an expressed direct object. For example, to the question “What are you doing?” the response “I am writing” could be considered complete, although a direct object (book, some letters) is implied.

An **intransitive verb** expresses an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing. It cannot take a direct object. For example:

He *stands* on the corner.
I *shall go* home.

Two important types of intransitive verbs are copulative verbs¹⁶ and verbs that express motion (go, come, etc.). The actions of the verbs in these sentences are not exerted on direct objects. In the second sentence, the adverb “home” (= homeward) is *not* a direct object since the action of “shall go” is not exerted upon “home.”

Verbs that are transitive in English are often transitive in Latin. However, there are many important exceptions. These are indicated in the vocabulary lists and notes.

• DRILL 11, PAGE 57, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§12. Complementary Infinitive

An **infinitive** is an abstract verbal noun in the neuter singular. It is **indeclinable**; that is, although it is a noun, it does not have case endings, and it has limited syntactic functions. An infinitive has the verbal properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive).¹⁷ As noted in §7, the second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated “to _____.” For example: *movēre*, “to move.”

16. For a definition of copulative verbs see §1.

17. An infinitive (< *infinitivus*, not limited) is a verb form that is *not limited* by person and number.

An infinitive may be used to *complete* the meaning of another verb. Such an infinitive is called a **Complementary Infinitive** (< *compleō*, fill out). For example:

<i>Insulam vidēre</i> possum.	The island (d.o.) <i>to see</i> I am able. I am able <i>to see</i> the island.
<i>Labōrāre</i> dēbēmus.	<i>To work</i> we ought. We ought <i>to work</i> .

The syntax of each italicized word (*vidēre*, *labōrāre*) is **Complementary Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

In the first sentence the verbal idea begun with “I am able” is completed by the infinitive “to see”: the infinitive specifies what the subject of *possum* is able to do. In the second sentence the verbal idea begun with “we ought” is completed by the infinitive “to work”: the infinitive specifies what the subject of *dēbēmus* ought to do. Verbs that can take a Complementary Infinitive are identified in the vocabulary notes.

§13. Object Infinitive

An infinitive may be used as the *direct object* of a transitive verb. Such an infinitive is called an **Object Infinitive**. For example:

Agricola <i>labōrāre</i> optat.	The farmer <i>to work</i> desires. The farmer desires <i>to work</i> .
---------------------------------	---

The syntax of the italicized word (*labōrāre*) is **Object Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

The Object Infinitive may be understood as a variety of Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive *labōrāre* in the sentence above both is the direct object of *optat* and serves to complete the verbal idea begun with *optat*.

§14. Dative of the Possessor

A noun in the dative case is used to indicate the *person who possesses* something. This use is an extension of the case’s referential function, and a dative so used is called a **Dative of the Possessor**. For example:

<i>Dominō</i> est liber.	<i>To the master</i> there is a book. <i>The master</i> has a book.
Erat <i>fēminīs</i> cōnsilium.	There was <i>to the women</i> a plan. <i>The women</i> had a plan.

The syntax of each italicized word (*dominō*, *fēminīs*) is **Dative of the Possessor**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a sentence containing a Dative of the Possessor, the noun *possessed* appears in the nominative case as the subject of a form of the verb *sum*. The verb asserts the existence of the noun in the nominative case with reference to the person in the dative case.

2. The translations of these sentences move from the more to the less literal. In the less literal translation, the Dative of the Possessor becomes in English the subject of the verb “have,” and the nominative of the thing possessed becomes the direct object.
3. The Dative of the Possessor is *always* a person.

Expressions of Possession Compared

In addition to the Dative of the Possessor, Latin may report that someone possesses something in two other ways: with the verb **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**, “have, hold; consider,” and with the Genitive of Possession (see §1). Although these three constructions differ slightly in emphasis, the differences cannot always be represented in English translations. For example:

Dominus librum habet.	The master a book (d.o.) has. The master has a book.
Dominō est liber.	To the master there is a book. The master has a book.
Liber est domini.	The book is of the master. The book is the master’s.

The sentence **Dominus librum habet** is a neutral statement of ownership, in which equal stress is given to both possessor and thing possessed.

In the sentence **Dominō est liber** (Dative of the Possessor), the thing possessed receives slightly greater stress because it is the subject of the sentence. A sentence with a Dative of the Possessor asserts *both* the existence of the thing possessed *and* possession by the person in the dative.

In the sentence **Liber est domini**, the Genitive of Possession *in the predicate* lays stress on the possessor. The existence of the thing possessed is assumed, and the sentence asserts only its possession by the person in the genitive.

The first two sentences answer the question “What does the master have?” The third answers the question “Whose is the book?”

§15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order

Like any language, Latin seeks to be understood, and its aim is most often toward *clarity*. A sentence of Latin prose is not a puzzle to be figured out and not an ill-arranged version of English in a foreign tongue. Although it is rarely the same as the order of an English sentence with equivalent meaning, the word order of a Latin sentence is important and joins with the words themselves to convey the writer’s precise meaning. The same may be said of English, but because English words have far fewer inflectional endings than Latin words, fewer orders are available for conveying a particular meaning. In the sentence “The girl loves the boy,” “girl” is understood as the subject of the verb because it appears *before* the verb, and “boy” is understood as the direct object because it appears *after* the verb.

A greater degree of inflection of its nouns and verbs allows Latin a more flexible

word order than is possible in English. The same sentence (The girl loves the boy) could theoretically be written in Latin in six different orders. The three words **puella**, **puerum**, and **amat** could appear in any order, and basic syntax and meaning would be clear from the particular inflectional ending on each word.

Meaning may thus be conveyed by a variety of orders, but the determining factors in the order of a Latin sentence are **emphasis**, **balance**, and **economy**.

EMPHASIS—The two most important places in a Latin sentence are the beginning (first word) and the end (last word).¹⁸ If no special emphasis is given to any element of a sentence, the subject and the verb—the most important syntactic elements of a sentence—normally occupy these positions, the subject first and the verb last. The other elements of a sentence (e.g., direct object, indirect object, prepositional phrases) appear between the subject and the verb. This unemphatic Latin word order may be called **neutral** because although it contains two important positions (first and last), no special emphasis is placed on the words that occupy these positions.

When neutral order is *not* followed, the words in the first and last positions often receive special emphasis. For example:

Fēmina filiīs dōna dat. (neutral word order)	The woman to (her) sons gifts (d.o.) is giving. The woman is giving gifts to (her) sons.
Dōna fēmina filiīs dat. (dōna emphasized)	<i>Gifts</i> (d.o.) the woman to (her) sons is giving. The woman is giving <i>gifts</i> to (her) sons.

The second sentence violates neutral word order by placing the direct object first, ahead of the subject. Thus **dōna** receives additional emphasis.¹⁹ However, in the sentence **Dōna filiīs dat** (She gives gifts to [her] sons), *no additional emphasis* is placed on **dōna** because no subject expressed in the nominative case has been moved from its normal position at the beginning of the sentence.

BALANCE—Latin sentences often exhibit symmetrical arrangements and thereby achieve a kind of balance. For example, the placing of subject first and verb last gives equal weight to the beginning and end of a sentence. The use of conjunctions that signal parallelism such as *et . . . et . . .* also contributes to an impression of balance.

Latin writers often achieve *balance between contrasting phrases* by arranging grammatical elements in *parallel* sequence:

Rēgīna et pecūniam agricolīs et librōs poētīs dat.			
A	B	A	B
The queen both <i>money</i> (d.o.) to the farmers and <i>books</i> (d.o.) to the poets gives.			
The queen gives both <i>money to the farmers</i> and <i>books to the poets</i> .			

In this sentence the accusatives (**pecūniam** and **librōs**) and the datives (**agricolīs** and **poētīs**) are placed in a parallel ABAB arrangement.

18. The observations made here regarding the Latin sentence apply as well to Latin phrases and clauses.

19. Such emphasis is often hard to convey in an English translation, but stressing or italicizing the emphasized word(s) is sometimes effective.

Equally common is the arrangement of grammatical elements in inverted sequence:

Rēgīna et pecūniam agricolis et poētis librōs dat.

A B B A

The queen both money (d.o.) to the farmers and to the poets books (d.o.) gives.

The queen gives both money to the farmers and to the poets books.

In this sentence a grammatical sequence (accusative, dative) is reversed the second time it appears (dative, accusative). In this way, the contrasting parts of the sentence (**pecūniam agricolis** and **poētis librōs**) are balanced against each other. This ABBA, or inverted, arrangement is the rhetorical device **chiasmus** (< Greek letter *chi* [χ], in which the lines are crossed).

ECONOMY—Consider the following Latin phrase and its English translation:

librum poētae

the book [d.o.] of the poet

Because Latin has inflectional endings for its nouns and because Latin lacks a definite article (the), five words and a notation about syntax are required in English to translate what Latin expresses in two words. This comparison gives some indication of the *natural economy* of the Latin language.

In general, Latin writers use all the syntactic features of the language to express ideas in the shortest and clearest way. A common feature of Latin writing is called **ellipsis**, the omission of one or more words that can easily be supplied from context. For example:

Agricolis pecūniam rēgīna dat, poētis librōs.

To the farmers money (d.o.) the queen gives, to the poets books (d.o.).

To the farmers the queen gives money; to the poets [the queen gives] books.

In this sentence a grammatical sequence is set forth in the first clause (dative, accusative, nominative, verb). This pattern is then repeated in the second clause (dative, accusative), but the syntactic elements *common* to the two clauses (subject, verb) are omitted: *only the changed elements are expressed*. That is, the reader is expected to supply **rēgīna dat** to complete the second clause.

Latin sentences that contain ellipses of this kind may seem to exhibit a quality that is the very opposite of balance since one clause is longer and contains more grammatical elements than the other. However, the ready comprehension of a sentence with ellipsis is only possible because of an underlying sense of symmetry, a predisposition to make the parts of a sentence as balanced as possible.

Often grammatically shared elements are *distributed between* two balanced clauses. For example:

Pueri nautās in viā, in agrō agricolās vident.

The boys sailors (d.o.) in the street, in the field farmers (d.o.) see.

The boys [see] sailors in the street; [the boys] see farmers in the field.

The subject and verb, placed first and last, are common to both clauses. Ellipses of this kind create clauses and sentences that exhibit both balance (in length) and economy (in words).

Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences

Reading Latin means comprehending Latin in Latin. *English does not play a part in reading Latin*, but an important stage on the way to achieving reading ability in Latin is the translating of many Latin sentences and larger texts into English. Translation should usually be as literal as possible because the English rendering should replicate as closely as possible the Latin original. Literal translation allows student and teacher to be sure that the Latin text is being understood in the same way, particularly with reference to syntax. Moreover, literal translation trains the student to think in the syntactic patterns of Latin and thereby to achieve true *reading* proficiency more quickly. The following guidelines will help develop good habits for both translating and reading.

1. WHEN TRANSLATING A LATIN SENTENCE, GO IN ORDER FROM LEFT TO RIGHT. First translate in Latin word order, then give a second version, making minimum necessary changes for clear English. Going in order makes it possible to:
 - a. note and appreciate nuances of meaning signaled by particular word orders;
 - b. give correct sense when ambiguities arise;
 - c. most important, *read and understand Latin as it was written*.
2. ASSUME THAT THE SUBJECT OF A NEW SENTENCE IS THE SAME AS THE SUBJECT OF PRECEDING SENTENCE IF NO NEW NOMINATIVE SUBJECT IS EXPRESSED.
3. MAJOR GRAMMATICAL ELEMENTS (SUBJECT, INDIRECT OBJECT, DIRECT OBJECT), PARTICULARLY THOSE REFERRING TO *PEOPLE* RATHER THAN *THINGS*, TEND TO BE PLACED AT OR NEAR THE BEGINNING OF A SENTENCE.
4. GENITIVES ARE REGULARLY PLACED *AFTER* THE NOUNS THEY QUALIFY OR LIMIT.
5. ADVERBIAL ELEMENTS (ADVERBS, ADVERBIAL PHRASES) ARE REGULARLY PLACED *BEFORE* THE VERBS OR OTHER WORDS THEY MODIFY.
6. IN QUESTIONS, VERBS TEND TO BE PLACED *FIRST*.
7. COPULATIVE VERBS ARE GENERALLY PLACED *BETWEEN* SUBJECTS AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVES OR PREDICATE ADJECTIVES, BOTH OF WHICH TEND TO COME FIRST IN SENTENCES OR CLAUSES.
8. WHEN **SUM** MEANS “EXIST,” IT TENDS TO COME *BEFORE* ITS SUBJECT AND IS OFTEN FIRST IN A SENTENCE.
9. POSTPOSITIVE WORDS APPEAR IN THE SECOND OR THIRD POSITION IN A SENTENCE. A **postpositive** word does not appear first in a sentence, but, when it connects two sentences and indicates the logical relation between them, it may be translated first.

☛ DRILL 12–15, PAGE 61, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. The master Lysidamus asks his wife's slave a timorous question about the unwilling object of his affection.

Lys. sed etiamne habet nunc Casīna gladium?

Par. habet, duōs. (PLAUTUS, CASĪNA 690–91)

Lys. = Lysidamus

etiam (adv.) even

nunc (adv.) now

Casīna, Casīnae f. Casina

Par. = Pardalisca (slave of Lysidamus's wife)

duōs, masc. pl. acc. adj., two

2. A clever slave, Davus, is pretending not to understand his master's plan to stop his son's marriage.

Davo' sum, nōn Oedipus. (TERENCE, ANDRIA 194)

Davus, Davī m. Davus; Davo' = Davos, archaic nom. sing. for Davus

Oedipus, Oedipī m. Oedipus (who solved the riddle of the Sphinx)

3. In a letter to her husband, Protesilaus, Laodamia tells how long she watched the harbor after his departure for the war at Troy.

ut tē nōn poteram, poteram tua vēla vidēre. (OVID, HERŌIDES XIII.17)

ut (conj.) when

tē, personal pron., acc. sing., you

tua, neut. pl. acc. adj., your

4. A debatable view of the gods

Nōn dat deus beneficia. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, DE BENEFICIIS IV.5.1)

beneficium, beneficiī n. favor, benefit

5. The philosopher makes a fine distinction.

nunc enim amās mē, amīcus nōn es. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES, XXXV.1)

nunc (adv.) now

mē, personal pron., acc. sing., me

amīcus, amīcī m. friend

6. A remark attributed to Herodes Atticus (an Athenian who became a Roman consul in 107 C.E.) when he responded to a man attempting to appear to be what he was not

videō barbam et pallium; philosophum nōndum videō.

(AULUS GELLIUS, NOCTES ATTICAE IX.2.4)

barba, barbae f. beard

pallium, palliī n. cloak

philosophus, philosophī m. philosopher

nōndum (adv.) not yet

§16. Names in Latin I

Like any noun, each proper name in Latin belongs to a particular declension and is declined using the endings of that declension. For example:

Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* Romulus (legendary founder of Rome)

Remus, Remī *m.* Remus (brother of Romulus)

While legendary and fictional characters often had one name, a Roman man regularly had three names: a **praenōmen** (name in front), a **nōmen** (name), and a **cognōmen** (additional name).¹ For example:

Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla, Lūcīi Cornēliī Sullae *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla

praenōmen nōmen cognōmen

The *praenōmen* was the name for an individual and is equivalent to a first name in English. The *nōmen* was the name of the **gēns** (clan or group of families) to which a person belonged and is equivalent to a last name. The *cognōmen* often indicated a particular family or a smaller group of families within the *gēns*. In the example above, **Lūcius** is a first name, **Cornēlius** is the name of the clan to which he belongs, and **Sulla** is a particular family within that clan.² A Roman might be addressed by his *praenōmen* alone (**Lūcī**), by a combination of his *praenōmen* and *nōmen* (**Lūcī Cornēli**), or by his *cognōmen* alone (**Sulla**).

There were very few *praenōmina* in common use in Latin, and they were often abbreviated. The most common *praenōmina* and their abbreviations are:

A.	Aulus, Aulī <i>m.</i> Aulus	P.	Publius, Publī <i>m.</i> Publius
App.	Appius, Appiī <i>m.</i> Appius	Q.	Quintus, Quintī <i>m.</i> Quintus
C. ³	Gaius, ⁴ Gaī <i>m.</i> Gaius	Ser.	Servius, Serviī <i>m.</i> Servius
Cn. ³	Gnaeus, Gnaeī <i>m.</i> Gnaeus	Sex.	Sextus, Sextī <i>m.</i> Sextus
D.	Decimus, Decimī <i>m.</i> Decimus	Sp.	Spurius, Spuriī <i>m.</i> Spurius
L.	Lūcius, Lūcī <i>m.</i> Lucius	T.	Tītus, Tīti <i>m.</i> Titus
M.	Marcus, Marci <i>m.</i> Marcus	Ti.	Tiberius, Tiberiī <i>m.</i> Tiberius
M'	Manius, Maniī <i>m.</i> Manius		

OBSERVATION

All these *praenōmina* belong to the second declension.

1. The plurals of *praenōmen*, *nōmen*, and *cognōmen* are **praenōmina**, **nōmina**, and **cognōmina**.

2. Sometimes the *cognōmen* was based on some attribute of an old member of a family. An early hero of Rome, for example, **Gaius Mūcius**, earned the *cognōmen* **Scaevola** (Lefty) because when he was captured in the camp of an enemy king, he defiantly burned his right hand to demonstrate the stubborn will of the Roman people. The name **Mūcius Scaevola** then passed on to his descendants. The origins of many *cognōmina*, however, are unknown.

3. A capital C is in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma*. In the abbreviations C. and Cn. it still represents a sound equivalent to English and Latin G.

4. **Gaius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *Gaiius. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, -ai-, which is pronounced exactly the same as -ae-. The second -i- is consonantal and is thus pronounced like English -y-. Only one -ī is written in the genitive and vocative singular forms, but they are pronounced as if they were spelled *Gaī (with a consonantal and a vocalic i).

A Roman woman had only a single name, and this was derived from the name of the *gēns* to which she belonged. The Roman writer Cicero, for example, had the *nōmen* **Tullius**. His daughter was therefore named **Tullia, Tulliae f.**

The preceding bold faced names and following names that belong to the first or second declension appear in the sentences and readings throughout this book. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR. When translating proper names into English, always give the nominative form of the name. For example, **Marcō librum dabō**, “I shall give a book to *Marcus*.”

Poets⁵

C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valerīi Catullī m. Gaius Valerius Catullus (Catullus)

Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātīi Flaccī m. Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace)

Historical and Legendary Figures⁵

Aenēās, Aenēae m. Aeneas; **Aenēān** = *acc. sing.*; **Aenēā** = *voc. sing.*⁶

M. Antōnius, M. Antōniī m. Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony)

L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēliī Sullae m. Lucius Cornelius Sulla (Sulla)

Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeiī Magnī m. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great)

Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōniī Gracchī m. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus

C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōniī Gracchī m. Gaius Sempronius Gracchus

L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae m. Lucius Sergius Catilina (Catiline)

Famous Women⁷

Iūlia, Iūliae f. Julia

Līvia, Līviae f. Livia

Place Names

Graecia, Graeciae f. Greece

Īlium, Īliī n. Ilium, Troy

Troia, Troiae f. Troy

5. **Catullus** and **Horace** were the two greatest Latin lyric poets. **Aeneas** is the legendary Trojan son of Venus and the subject of Vergil's epic poem, the *Aeneid*. The **Gracchi**, as the two brothers Tiberius and Gaius are often called, were prominent in the political struggles at the end of the second century B.C.E. Each was murdered by members of the senatorial class after attempting to introduce various legal reforms. **Sulla** was a successful general and conservative politician of the late second and early first centuries B.C.E. In 63 B.C.E., **Catiline** led a conspiracy of dissatisfied nobles and debtors that was suppressed by Cicero when he was consul. **Pompey** (who chose the *cognōmen* “Great” for himself) was the most powerful man in Rome until the rise of Julius Caesar. **Antony** was Caesar's right-hand man and spent the years following Caesar's death in 44 B.C.E. fighting over Caesar's legacy.

6. **Aenēās** is a first-declension noun with an irregular nominative singular (**Aenēās**).

7. **Livia** was Augustus's wife. **Julia** is the name of both the daughter and the granddaughter of Augustus, each notorious.

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary

- diligentia, diligentiae** *f.* diligence
- ▶ **incola, incolae** *m.* inhabitant
 - mora, morae** *f.* delay
 - ▶ **prōvincia, prōvinciae** *f.* province
 - terra, terrae** *f.* land, earth
-
- ▶ **amīcus, amīcī** *m.* friend
 - ▶ **forum, forī** *n.* public square, marketplace, forum
 - ▶ **imperium, imperiū** *n.* power, authority, command; empire
 - ▶ **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.* (personal) enemy
 - odium, odii** *n.* hatred
 - ▶ **populus, populī** *m.* (the) people; populace
 - ▶ **Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Romans
-
- ▶ **nihil** or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing
- laudō** (1-tr.) praise
- ▶ **pugnō** (1-intr.) fight
 - superō** (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass
-
- ▶ **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus** hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy
 - videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus** *passive*, be seen; seem (§26)
- eō, ire, iī/ivī, itum** go (§21)
- ▶ **amīcus, -a, -um** friendly (+ dat.)
 - ▶ **inimīcus, -a, -um** unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
 - bonus, -a, -um** good
 - ▶ **laetus, -a, -um** happy
 - ▶ **liber, libera, liberum** free
 - ▶ **magnus, -a, -um** large, big; great
 - malus, -a, -um** bad, evil
 - miser, misera, miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable
 - multus, -a, -um** much, many
 - parvus, -a, -um** small, little
 - ▶ **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** beautiful, handsome
 - Rōmānus, -a, -um** Roman
-
- ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) by (§25)
- ▶ **atque** or **ac** (conj.) and (also)
 - ▶ **mox** (adv.) soon; then
 - nunc** (adv.) now
 - ▶ **prō** (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of
 - propter** (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
 - semper** (adv.) always
 - sine** (prep. + abl.) without

Vocabulary Notes

- **incola, incolae** *m.* appears as a feminine noun in a few passages in Latin literature.
- **prōvincia, prōvinciae** *f.* is the term applied to a legally defined territory outside of Italy that was acquired by the Romans and made part of their *imperium*. The first Roman province was **Sicilia, Siciliae** *f.* Sicily.
- **amīcus, amīcī** *m.* and **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.* are substantives of the adjectives **amīcus, -a, -um** and **inimīcus, -a, -um** (§19). These and certain other common substantives require their own vocabulary entries.
- **forum, forī** *n.* refers to the center of a town where business, politics, entertainment, and public life take place. The Roman forum (**Forum Rōmānum**) housed the law courts and many major temples.
- **imperium, imperīi** *n.* may mean simply a “command,” “order,” or the “authority” that a person in power has to give a command. When a Roman general or legate was sent to a province in order to govern, he was given **imperium**—that is, “power” or “authority”—over that province. By extension from these specific cases the word came to mean “supreme power,” and finally, in the Imperial period, it came to be the word used to describe the “empire.”
- **inimīcus, inimīcī** *m.* means a “personal enemy” as opposed to a public or political enemy.
- **populus, populī** *m.* is a **collective noun**, a noun that denotes a collection of persons regarded as a single entity. If it is used in the plural, it refers to several peoples.

Populus Rōmānus nōn timet.
Dī populōs Italiae amant.

The Roman populace is (people are) not afraid.
The gods love the peoples (populaces) of Italy.

- **Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the adjective **Rōmānus, -a, -um**. Although **Rōmānī** is masculine, it may refer to a group of mixed gender.
- **nihil** is an *indeclinable neuter singular* noun. A noun that is **indeclinable** lacks case endings and has only one form. **nihil** may perform only the functions of the nominative or the accusative case. **nīl** is a contracted form of **nihil**: the **-h-** has dropped out, and the two **-i-**'s have contracted into one **-ī-**.
- **pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum** is an intransitive verb. It often takes an Ablative of Accompaniment that indicates the person *against* whom one is fighting.

Servī cum dominīs pugnant.

The slaves are fighting with (= against) the masters.

- **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus** may mean “hold” something in one’s hands or “grasp” something with one’s intellect. It has an accessory idea of maintaining possession of something once held or grasped. It may also mean “occupy” in the sense of holding to one’s place of habitation.

Adjectives

- Most first-second-declension adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms that follow exactly the pattern of **amīcus, amīca, amīcum**. Thus they are given in the vocabulary list in a shortened form (e.g., **inimīcus, -a, -um**). However, when learning new adjectives, ALWAYS WRITE OUT ADJECTIVE ENTRIES IN FULL (e.g., **inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum**). Adjectives that do not follow this pattern are written out in full in the vocabulary lists.

Both **amīcus, -a, -um** and **inimīcus, -a, -um** are often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the *person to whom* someone is friendly or unfriendly. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Rēgīna amīca dōnum virō dōnat.
Rēgīna animam virīs inimīcam habet.

The friendly queen is giving a gift to the man.
The queen has a soul hostile to men.

- **inimīcus, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **amīcus**.
- The most common meaning for **laetus, -a, -um** in all periods of Latin literature is “happy,” but when it describes plants, crops, or soil, it may mean “flourishing” or “fertile.” The same word is used metaphorically of literary or oratorical style, in which context its closest English equivalents are “rich” or “luxuriant.” When it describes omens or weather, **laetus** often carries the notion of “favorable” or “propitious.”

Laetī sunt nautae.
Agrōs laetōs agricolae videō.

The sailors are happy.
I see the flourishing fields of the farmer.

- ▶ **liber, libera, liberum** means “free” both in a general sense (unrestrained, open) and in a social sense (free as opposed to enslaved).
- ▶ **magnus, -a, -um** has a quantitative sense (big, large) and a qualitative sense (great).
- ▶ The stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-** and thus, for example, the masculine singular genitive is **pulchrī**. Latin does not distinguish between “handsome” and “beautiful”; the adjective is used equally of men and women.
- ▶ **atque** and its alternate form **ac** are coordinating conjunctions. They connect a more particular or emphatic element or clause to what has gone before and thus may sometimes be translated “and (also).” **atque** or **ac** also may introduce a new point or aspect to a subject already under discussion. While there is no difference in meaning between the two words, **atque** is used before words beginning with vowels and words that begin with **h-**. Both are used before words beginning with consonants.
- ▶ The basic meaning of the adverb **mox** is “soon.” By extension from this basic meaning it may mean “then” to mark the next in a series of events or actions.

Poēta in viam ambulat. Mox rēgīnam vidēbit.

The poet is walking into the street. *Soon* he will see the queen.

Poēta iram virōrum cōgitābit, mox deōrum.

The poet will ponder the anger of men, *then* [the anger] of the gods.

- ▶ The preposition **prō** has several distinct meanings illustrated in the following sentences:

Est via prō oppidō.

There is a street *in front of* the town.

Prō filiīs labōrat.

He works *on behalf of* (his) sons.

Prō factīs poenās dabit.

He will pay the penalty *in return for* (*in exchange for*) (his) deeds.

	Derivatives	Cognates
bonus	bonanza; boon	
forum	foreign, forensic	door
imperium	imperial	
malus	malice; malady	
nihil	nihilistic; annihilate	
pugnō	pugnacious; impugn	pygmy
teneō	obtain; tenet; tenacious	tendon; tone
terra	territory	toast; thirst

§17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives

An **adjective** describes or modifies a noun. Examples of adjectives in English are “good,” “happy,” “green,” “generous.”

The vocabulary entry for a first-second-declension adjective contains the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms, followed by the English meaning(s). For example:

bonus, bona, bonum good

With very few exceptions, Latin nouns have only one gender and belong to only one declension. Adjectives, however, have *all genders*, and first-second-declension adjectives use endings borrowed from the first declension when modifying feminine nouns and from the second declension when modifying masculine and neuter nouns.

Like nouns, adjectives are declined. To decline a first-second-declension adjective, take the *stem from the feminine singular nominative form by dropping the -a* and add endings familiar from the first and second declensions of nouns. For example:

bonus, bona, bonum						
Stem: bon-						
	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona

OBSERVATIONS

1. For first-second-declension adjectives, the endings of masculine/feminine second-declension nouns are used for masculine forms; the endings of first-declension nouns are used for feminine forms; and the endings of neuter second-declension nouns are used for neuter forms.
2. Adjectives whose masculine singular nominative ends in **-us** have a separate vocative singular ending (**-e**). All other vocative forms of adjectives are identical with the nominative forms.
3. As is true for certain masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, some adjectives lack a masculine singular nominative ending and use instead a version of the stem as the masculine singular nominative. For example:

miser, misera, miserum	wretched, pitiable, miserable
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome

For these adjectives also, the stem is taken from the feminine singular nominative. Thus the stem of **miser, misera, miserum** is **miser-**, and the stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-**.

§18. Noun-Adjective Agreement

Adjectives are usually placed *after* the nouns they modify, but adjectives of size or quantity often *precede* their nouns. Although a Latin adjective is usually placed after its noun, it is best translated before. For example:

fēmina bona	good woman
multum aurum	much gold

When a noun is modified by two or more adjectives, **et** or **-que** is regularly used to connect the modifiers:

vir magnus et bonus	a great and good man
----------------------------	----------------------

Adjectives must always agree with the nouns they modify in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. This is called **noun-adjective agreement**. For example:

deam pulchram	a beautiful goddess (d.o.)
servōrum miserōrum	of miserable slaves
poēta bonus	a good poet (subj.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because the noun **deam** is feminine singular accusative, the form of the adjective **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** that modifies it must be feminine singular accusative. Because the noun **servōrum** is masculine plural genitive, the form of the adjective **miser**, **miserā**, **miserum** must be masculine plural genitive.
2. Because the noun **poēta** is masculine singular nominative, the form of the adjective **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum** that modifies it must be masculine singular nominative. Although **poēta** is a first-declension noun, it is masculine in gender, and the adjective that modifies it must have a masculine (i.e., second-declension) ending. **bonus** does not have the same ending as **poēta**, but it agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

☛ DRILL 17–18, PAGE 83, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§19. Substantive Use of the Adjective

Sometimes an adjective stands alone and does not modify a noun. When this occurs, the adjective is being **used substantively** (as a noun) and is called a **substantive**. When adjectives are used as substantives, they are translated with the addition of the English words “man,” “woman,” “thing” (sing.) or “men,” “women,” “things” (pl.), depending on the gender and number indicated by the ending of the adjective.¹ Case, as always, determines syntax. For example:

Laetus bonam amat.	<i>The happy man the good woman (d.o.) loves.</i>
	<i>The happy man loves the good woman.</i>
Sunt multa in oppidō.	<i>There are many things in the town.</i>

1. The substantive use of the masculine plural may refer to groups of mixed gender. Hence, **boni**, for example, may be translated “good people” to indicate that it refers to both men and women.

Because **laetus** has a masculine singular ending, the word “man” is added to the translation; because **bonam** has a feminine singular ending, the word “woman” is added to the translation. Because **multa** has a neuter plural ending, the word “things” is added to the translation.

Some Latin adjectives are so commonly used as substantives that they have become nouns: **amīcus**, **amīcī m.**, “friend” (friendly man); **inimīcus**, **inimīcī m.**, “(personal) enemy” (unfriendly man); **Rōmānī**, **Rōmānōrum m. pl.**, “(the) Romans” (Roman men).

☛ DRILL 19, PAGE 87, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§20. Predicate Adjective

Like nouns, adjectives may appear with copulative verbs. When an adjective functions in this way, it is called a **Predicate Adjective**, and it must agree with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. For example:

Liber est <i>malus</i>.	The book is <i>bad</i> .
<i>Miserī</i> erant servī.	<i>Miserable</i> were the slaves. The slaves were <i>miserable</i> .
Puerōs iubēbō esse <i>bonōs</i>.	The boys I shall order to be <i>good</i> . I shall order the boys to be <i>good</i> .

The syntax of **malus** and **miserī** is **Predicate Adjective in the nominative case**. The syntax of **bonōs** is **Predicate Adjective in the accusative case**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences, **malus**, **miserī**, and **bonōs** agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case.
2. Predicate adjectives may sometimes be viewed as substantives. Thus the second sentence may be translated “The slaves were miserable men.” If the adjective **miserī**, for example, is understood as a substantive, its syntax is Predicate Nominative.

☛ DRILL 19–20, PAGE 91, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§21. The Irregular Verb *eō*

The verb *eō*, *īre*, *īi/īvī*, *itum*, “go,” is an irregular intransitive verb. It has irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of *eō* are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

	Active Indicative		
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Singular</i>			
1	<i>eō</i>	<i>ībam</i>	<i>ībō</i>
2	<i>īs</i>	<i>ībās</i>	<i>ībīs</i>
3	<i>it</i>	<i>ībat</i>	<i>ībit</i>
<i>Plural</i>			
1	<i>īmus</i>	<i>ībāmus</i>	<i>ībimus</i>
2	<i>ītis</i>	<i>ībātis</i>	<i>ībītis</i>
3	<i>eunt</i>	<i>ībant</i>	<i>ībunt</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although the second principal part of *eō* has an *ī-* before the *-re* ending, it is *not* a fourth-conjugation verb.
2. In the present active indicative, the stem of *eō* shifts between *e-* (first person singular and third person plural) and *ī-*. (The *ī-* shortens in the third person singular according to the long vowel rule.) The *-u-* in the third person plural is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural.
3. In the imperfect and future active indicative, the stem of *eō* is always *ī-*. The infixes *-bā-* and *-bi-* are used to form these two tenses.
4. For all tenses of *eō*, the active personal endings are familiar: *-ō/-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*.

☛ DRILL 21, PAGE 93, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§22. Introduction to the Passive Voice

The subject of a verb in the *active* voice *performs the action* of the verb. When a verb is in the *passive* voice, the subject does not perform but rather *receives the action* of the verb (see §5). For example:

The master *summons* the slave.
The master *is summoned* by the slave.

In the first sentence the subject, “master,” performs the action of the verb, “summons,” and the verb “summons” is in the active voice. The master is doing the summoning. In the second sentence the subject, “master,” receives the action of the verb, “is summoned,” and the verb “is summoned” is in the *passive* voice. The master is being summoned.

OBSERVATION

In Latin, as in English, any *transitive verb*—one that takes a direct object—may be found in both the active voice and the passive voice. An *intransitive verb*—one that does not take a direct object—is generally not found in the passive voice in Latin.²

The Latin translation of the first sentence above is:

Dominus servum vocat.

The verb **vocat** is third person singular present active indicative. In the second sentence, the Latin translation of the verb “is summoned” requires a verb in the third person singular present indicative, but since the subject, “master,” receives the action of the verb, the voice must be *passive*.

All English passive forms are called **compound forms** (< *compōnō*, put together) because they are made of at least two separate words. For example, “is summoned” is a compound of “is” (the third person singular present indicative of the verb “be”) and “summoned” (the past participle of the verb “summon”). Some Latin tenses use compound forms in the passive, but many are uncompounded.

● DRILL 22, PAGE 97, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§23. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Passive Personal Endings

The present, imperfect, and future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations are formed exactly as are their active counterparts, except that **passive personal endings** are added instead of active personal endings.

Person	Active Personal Endings	Passive Personal Endings
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
1 I	-ō, -m	-or, -r
2 you	-s	-ris/-re
3 he, she, it	-t	-tur
	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1 we	-mus	-mur
2 you (pl.)	-tis	-mini
3 they	-nt	-ntur

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although two endings are given for the first person singular passive (-or, -r), they are *not* interchangeable. Rather, when an active form ends in -ō, its corresponding passive form ends in -or. When an active form ends in -m, its corresponding passive form ends in -r.
2. The second person singular endings -ris and -re *are* interchangeable. There is no distinction in meaning.

2. For the impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs, see §54.

3. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending **-r** and the third person plural ending **-ntur**. Thus, the complete **LONG VOWEL RULE** is:

LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE THE ENDINGS -M, -T, -NT, -R, AND -NTUR.

MEMORIZE THIS RULE.

4. The passive personal endings are used to form many tenses in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Nearly every form of the present passive system may be formed by replacing the active personal ending of a particular form with the equivalent passive ending.

Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the *passive personal endings* (use **-or** for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the present passive indicative conjugation of **vocō**, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: vocā-		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>					
1	vocō	I call	vocor	I am (being) called	
2	vocās	you call	vocāris/ vocāre	you are (being) called	
3	vocat	he, she, it calls	vocātur	he, she, it is (being) called	
<i>Plural</i>					
1	vocāmus	we call	vocāmur	we are (being) called	
2	vocātis	you (pl.) call	vocāmini	you (pl.) are (being) called	
3	vocant	they call	vocantur	they are (being) called	

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the stem vowel **-ā-** contracts with the ending **-or** (***vocāor** > **vocor**). In the first person singular of second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ē-** shortens before the ending **-or** (e.g., ***movēor** > **moveor**).
2. For verbs of both the first and second conjugations, whenever the ending **-re** is used, the second person singular present passive indicative resembles exactly the present active infinitive (e.g., **vocāre**). Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence. ALWAYS WRITE OUT ALL ALTERNATE FORMS COMPLETELY WHEN DOING DRILLS OR EXERCISES.
3. Long vowels shorten before the third person plural ending **-ntur** according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do not shorten before the third person singular ending **-tur**.
4. The English translations for the present passive forms given above reflect the fact that these forms, like their active counterparts, may indicate either simple or progressive/repeated aspect. For example, **vocor** may be translated "I am called" (simple aspect), "I am called (repeatedly)" (repeated aspect), or "I am being called" (progressive aspect).

Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the imperfect indicative: **-bā-**
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use **-r** for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the imperfect passive indicative conjugation of **vocō**, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: vocā-					
Infix: -bā-					
		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>					
1	vocābam	I was calling	vocābar	I was being called	
2	vocābās	you were calling	vocābāris/ vocābāre	you were being called	
3	vocābat	he, she, it was calling	vocābātur	he, she, it was being called	
<i>Plural</i>					
1	vocābāmus	we were calling	vocābāmur	we were being called	
2	vocābātis	you (pl.) were calling	vocābāmini	you (pl.) were being called	
3	vocābant	they were calling	vocābantur	they were being called	

OBSERVATION

Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending **-r** and the third person plural ending **-ntur** according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do *not* shorten before the third person singular ending **-tur**.

Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the future indicative: **-bi-**
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use **-or** for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the future passive indicative conjugation of **vocō**, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem:	vocā-			
Infix:	-bi-			
		ACTIVE		PASSIVE
<i>Singular</i>				
1	vocābō	I shall call	vocābor	I shall be called
2	vocābis	you will call	vocāberis/ vocābere	you will be called
3	vocābit	he, she, it will call	vocābitur	he, she, it will be called
<i>Plural</i>				
1	vocābimus	we shall call	vocābimur	we shall be called
2	vocābitis	you (pl.) will call	vocābiminī	you (pl.) will be called
3	vocābunt	they will call	vocābuntur	they will be called

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** contracts with the ending **-or** to give the resulting form (*vocābior > **vocābor**).
2. In the second person singular passive, the **-i-** of **-bi-** changes to **-e-** before the endings **-ris** and **-re**. The following mnemonic device may be useful:

BEFORE **-RIS** AND **-RE**, **-I-** TURNS TO **-E-**.

3. In the third person plural, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** changes to **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future passive indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

§24. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative

A **synopsis** (< Greek *synopsis*, a seeing all together) is a brief summary or condensed view of the forms of a Latin verb. Generating a synopsis is a systematic way of reviewing and sharpening one's knowledge of verb morphology. To make a synopsis, one chooses at random a verb and then a person and number for the subject. Then the principal parts for that verb are generated, followed by the forms of the verb in all tenses in the given person and number. Here is a model synopsis for **timeō** in the third person singular.

Principal Parts:	timeō, timēre, timuī, —			
Person and Number:	3rd sing.			
<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
Present	timet	he, she, it fears	timētur	he, she, it is (being) feared
Imperfect	timēbat	he, she, it was fearing	timēbātur	he, she, it was being feared
Future	timēbit	he, she, it will fear	timēbitur	he, she, it will be feared

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis, basic English translations should be given for indicative forms.

§25. Ablative of Personal Agent

The preposition **ā/ab** followed by a noun in the ablative case is frequently used with verbs in the passive voice to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb is done. The preposition **ā/ab** is translated “by,”³ and an ablative so used is called an **Ablative of Personal Agent**. For example:

Filius ā rēgīnā vocābātur.	The son <i>by the queen</i> was being summoned.
	The son was being summoned <i>by the queen</i> .

The syntax of **rēgīnā** is **Ablative of Personal Agent**.

The Ablative of Personal Agent expresses the person *by whose agency* an action is performed. Thus it is quite different from the Ablative of Means, which expresses the inanimate tool or instrument *by means of which* an action is performed. For example:

Nautae verbis poētae moventur.	The sailors <i>by (means of) the words</i> of the poet are (being) stirred up.
	The sailors are (being) stirred up <i>by the words</i> of the poet.
Nautae ā poētā moventur.	The sailors <i>by (the agency of) the poet</i> are (being) stirred up.
	The sailors are (being) stirred up <i>by the poet</i> .

No preposition is used with the Ablative of Means, while the preposition **ā/ab** must be used with the Ablative of Personal Agent.

§26. The Uses of *habēō* and *videō* in the Passive Voice

When **habēō** appears in the passive voice with the meaning “be considered,” it takes a Predicate Nominative or a Predicate Adjective in the Nominative Case. For example:

Deus vir habētur.	A god the man is considered.
	The man is considered a god.
Bona habēbantur cōnsilia fēminārum.	Good were being considered the plans of the women.
	The plans of the women were being considered good.

3. Although it is convenient to translate the Ablative of Personal Agent with the English preposition “by,” in Latin the agent of an action in the passive is understood as the person *from* whom the action originates, and thus Latin uses the preposition **ā/ab**.

When **videō** appears in the passive voice with the meaning “seem,” it takes a Predicate Nominative or a Predicate Adjective in the Nominative Case. For example:

Dea fēmina esse vidētur.	A goddess the woman to be seems. The woman seems to be a goddess.
Miser rēgīnae poēta vidētur.	Wretched to the queen the poet seems. The poet seems wretched to the queen.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Both a Complementary Infinitive (as in the first sentence) and a Dative of Reference (as in the second sentence) may accompany the verb **videō** meaning “seem.”
2. Sometimes a Complementary Infinitive alone appears with **videō** meaning “seem.” For example:

Patriam amāre vidēris. You seem to love (your) country.

In the sentences above, passive forms of **habeō** and **videō** function as copulative verbs. Passive forms of both verbs may also have passive meanings such as “be held,” “be seen.” An Ablative of Personal Agent often makes clear the passive meaning of the verb. For example:

Dominus ā servīs vidētur. The master is seen by (his) slaves.

§27. Ablative of Manner

A noun in the ablative case may express the *way* or *manner* in which an action is performed. An ablative so used is called an **Ablative of Manner**. When a noun functioning as an Ablative of Manner is *not modified by an adjective*, the preposition **cum** must be used. When a noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** is optional. For example:

Agricolae cum studiō labōrābant.	The farmers <i>with zeal</i> were working. The farmers were working <i>with zeal</i> . The farmers were working <i>zealously</i> .
Magnā (cum) cūrā in viā ambulābō.	<i>With great care</i> in the street I shall walk. I shall walk in the street <i>with great care</i> . I shall walk in the street <i>very carefully</i> .

The syntax of each italicized word (**studiō**, **cūrā**) is **Ablative of Manner**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **cum** is required because no adjective modifies **studiō**.
2. In the second sentence, because **magnā** modifies **cūrā**, **cum** is optional. If **cum** does occur, it usually appears between the adjective and the noun, as shown above, because it is the least important element of the phrase, and greater balance of the important elements (**magnā** and **cūrā**) is achieved.
3. An Ablative of Manner may often be translated—less literally—by an English adverb ending in “-ly.” In the translation of the second sentence, the word “very” must be used to represent the force of the adjective **magnā**.

§28. Subject Infinitive

The infinitive is an indeclinable verbal noun in the neuter singular (see §12). The infinitive may be used as the *subject* of another verb. Such an infinitive is called a **Subject Infinitive**. For example:

Bonum est *labōrāre*.

Good is *to work*.

To work is good.

Working is good.

Pulchrum est patriam *amāre*.

Beautiful is the country (d.o.) *to love*.

To love the country is beautiful.

Loving (one's) country is beautiful.

The syntax of each italicized word (**labōrāre**, **amāre**) is **Subject Infinitive**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences **bonum** and **pulchrum** are neuter singular nominative to agree with the subject infinitives they modify. The syntax of each is Predicate Adjective in the nominative case. They may also be considered substantives functioning as Predicate Nominatives (*To work is a good thing*, *To love (one's) country is a beautiful thing*).
2. The Subject Infinitive may take a direct object. In the second sentence **patriam** is the direct object of the infinitive **amāre**.
3. Each of the two subject infinitives in the sentences above may also be translated with an English gerund, also a verbal noun: "working," "loving."
4. When translating sentences with subject infinitives, it is often convenient to add the English expletive "it."⁴ For example: "It is good to work."

§29. Apposition

Sometimes a noun receives further definition or limitation from another noun placed next to it and often set off in commas. The second noun is called an **appositive** (< **ad-pōnō**, place near to) or is said to be **in apposition to** the noun before it. A noun in apposition must be in the same case as the word that it defines or limits.

Rēgīna, fēmina bona et magna, patriam *Italiam* amat.

The queen, a good and great *woman*, (her) country (d.o.) *Italy* loves.

The queen, a good and great *woman*, loves (her) country, *Italy*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Rēgīna** is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the verb. **Fēmina** is nominative because it is *in apposition to* or is an *appositive of* **rēgīna**. **Fēmina bona et magna** defines **rēgīna**.
2. **Patriam** is in the accusative case because it is the direct object of the verb. **Italiam** is accusative because it is *in apposition to* or is an *appositive of* **patriam**.

☛ DRILL 25–29, PAGE 107, MAY NOW BE DONE.

4. For the meaning of "expletive," see §10.

Short Readings

1. With his lovesick son in mind, an old man makes this observation.

. . . lepidumst amāre semper. (PLAUTUS, *CISTELLĀRIA* 312)

lepidus, -a, -um pleasant, agreeable; **lepidumst = lepidum est**⁵

2. An old man desires his friend to be understanding about his newfound crush.

hūmānum amārest, hūmānum autem ignōscerest. (PLAUTUS, *MERCĀTOR* 320)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

amārest = amāre est⁵

autem (postpositive adv.) however; moreover

ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus forgive, pardon; **ignōscerest = ignōscere est**⁵

3. In a discussion about poverty, the lives of ancient philosophers call to mind the following line of the comic poet Caecilius Statius.

saepe est etiam sub palliolō sordidō sapientia.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNES* III.56)

saepe (adv.) often

etiam (adv.) even

sub (prep. + abl.) under

palliolum, pallioli *n.* little cloak

sordidus, -a, -um dirty, grimy, unwashed

4. The poet describes the bliss of two lovers.

mūtuīs animīs amant amantur. (CATULLUS XLV.20)

mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual

5. The historian reports the senators' response to Cato's speech about the punishment of the Catilinarian conspirators.

Catō clārus atque magnus habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 53)

Catō = nom. sing., (Marcus Porcius) Cato

clārus, -a, -um bright, clear; famous; honorable

6. Macareus, one of Odysseus's men, speaks wearily.

. . . rursus inīre fretum, rursus vēla dare iubēmur. (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSES* XIV.437)

rursus (adv.) again

inēō, inīre, iniī, initus go into

fretum, fretī *n.* sea

5. When **es** or **est** follows a word ending in **-m** or **-e**, it may drop the initial **e-** and join the preceding word. This is called **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphairēsis*, taking away).

7. The historian reports the command of the leader Camillus to the Roman soldiers starving at the time of the siege of the Gauls. (The soldiers and other Romans had been about to pay ransom for their freedom.)

suōs in acervum conicere sarcinās et arma aptāre ferrōque nōn aurō recipērāre
patriam iubet . . . (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* V.49.3)

suus, -a, -um his own

acervus, acervī *m.* heap, pile

coniciō, conicere,⁶ **coniēcī, coniectus** throw
together

sarcina, sarcinae *f.* pack, bundle

aptō (1-tr.) fit, put on

reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain

Two Roman proverbs

8. Incertus animus dīmidium est sapientiae. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* I52)

incertus, -a, -um uncertain

dīmidium, dīmidī *n.* half

9. Patientia animī occultās dīvitias habet. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* P7)

patientia, patientiae *f.* forbearance, patience

occultus, -a, -um hidden

dīvitiae, dīvitiarum *f. pl.* wealth, riches

6. **coniciō** and **conicere** are pronounced as if they were spelled *coniiciō and *coniicere (with a consonantal and a vocalic -i-).

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary

- ▶ **causa, causae** *f.* reason, cause; case
- ▶ **glōria, glōriae** *f.* renown, glory
- ▶ **invidia, invidiae** *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment
- ▶ **sententia, sententiae** *f.* thought, feeling; opinion

- ▶ **altum, altī** *n.* deep sea; height
- ▶ **auxilium, auxiliī** *n.* aid, help
 - ▶ **auxilia, auxiliōrum** *n. pl.* auxiliary troops
- ▶ **caelum, caelī** *n.* sky, heaven
- ▶ **socius, sociī** *m.* ally, comrade

- ego, meī** (personal pron.) I; me (§38)
- nōs, nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (§38)
- tū, tuī** (personal pron.) you (§38)
- vōs, vestrum/vestrī** (personal pron.) you (pl.) (§38)
- is, ea, id** (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (§38)

- ▶ **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus** drive; do; spend, conduct
 - ▶ **causam agere** (idiom) to plead a case
- ▶ **canō, canere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of)
- ▶ **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus** take (up), capture; win
 - ▶ **cōnsilium capere** (idiom) to form a plan
- ▶ **dīcō, dīcere, dixī, dictus** say, speak, tell
- ▶ **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus** lead; consider
- ▶ **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** make; do

- ▶ **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus** bear; manage, conduct; perform
 - ▶ **bellum gerere** (idiom) to wage war
- ▶ **mittō, mittere, misī, missus** send
- ▶ **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** put, place; set aside
 - ▶ **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus** rule, control
 - ▶ **scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus** write

- ▶ **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus** hear, listen (to)
- ▶ **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive; feel
- ▶ **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum** come

- is, ea, id** (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those (§38)
 - ▶ **altus, -a, -um** tall, high; deep
 - ▶ **clārus, -a, -um** bright, clear; famous
 - ▶ **cupīdus, -a, -um** desirous (+ gen.)
 - ▶ **meus, -a, -um** my, mine (§39)
 - ▶ **noster, nostra, nostrum** our, ours (§39)
 - ▶ **paucī, paucae, pauca** few
 - ▶ **socius, -a, -um** allied
 - ▶ **tuus, -a, -um** your, yours (§39)
 - ▶ **validus, -a, -um** strong; healthy
 - ▶ **vester, vestra, vestrum** your (pl.), yours (pl.) (§39)

- ▶ **per** (prep. + acc.) through; by
- ▶ **quidem** (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least
 - ▶ **equidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part
 - ▶ **nē . . . quidem** not even

Vocabulary Notes

- The noun **causa, causae** *f.* has a general meaning of “reason” or “cause” and a more particular meaning of legal “case.”
- **sententia, sententiae** *f.* is derived from the verb **sentīō** and refers to an opinion, either privately held (thought, feeling) or publicly given (vote, opinion). In the former sense, it may refer to the meaning underlying a speech or an expression. In the latter sense, it may mean the “judgment” or “sentence” of a court. It may also refer to a written or spoken “sentence.”
- **altum, altī** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **altus, -a, -um** and may mean either “deep sea” or “height.”
- **auxilium, auxiliī** *n.* is an **abstract noun**, a noun that denotes something that cannot be perceived by the senses (e.g., wisdom, happiness, slavery). The plural of an abstract noun in Latin is often used with a concrete meaning. Thus, in military contexts, the plural of **auxilium**—**auxilia, auxiliōrum** *n. pl.*—means “auxiliary troops,” troops of allied soldiers, not citizens.
- **socius, sociī** *m.* is a substantive of the adjective **socius, -a, -um**. It is used both in personal contexts (comrade) and in legal and political ones (ally). It is often used of cities or peoples from outside Italy that were allies of Rome.
- **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus** is a verb describing action generally, its particular meanings being derived from context and from the specific direct objects accompanying the verb. It may mean “drive” (cattle, goats, plunder, a chariot, the winds); “do,” “act,” “manage,” “plead” (a court case); or “spend,” “conduct” (time, life).
- **canō, canere, cecinī, cantus** is a transitive verb and thus takes a direct object. The third principal part, **cecini**, is reduplicated (cf. **dedī**).

Poēta bellum canēbat.

The poet was singing of war.

The translation includes the preposition “of” because this is the common English expression. In Latin the direct object of this verb is always accusative.

- In the third principal part of **capīō, capere, cēpī, captus**, the root vowel changes to a long **-ē-**. The change of the vowel indicates a change in tense. A change in root vowel that corresponds to a change in meaning is called **ablaut**. This phenomenon is common to all PIE languages. Cf. English **sing, sang, sung; song**.
- **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus** is a verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and thus may take a direct object and an indirect object.
- **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus** has a concrete and an abstract meaning: “lead” and “consider.”
- In the third principal part of **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-** (cf. **capīō**). **faciō** is a transitive verb that means “make,” “do.” “Make” includes ideas of creating, causing, or representing something. “Do” means perform or carry out an action, a deed, a crime, orders, etc. In the passive voice of the present system, **faciō** has irregular forms made from the verb **fiō** (§126). Until these forms are learned, synopses of **faciō** should include active forms only.
- **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus** has three distinct meanings: 1. “bear” or “carry” (equipment, clothing); 2. “have” or “bear” as a permanent or temporary feature of body or mind (wounds, reputation, anger); or 3. “manage,” “conduct,” or “perform” (oneself, business, political office). The first of these three meanings is found only in poetry.
- In the third principal part of **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ī-**. **mittō** is regularly found with two constructions indicating the recipient: **ad** + accusative or a Dative of Reference.

Agricola ad filiū pecūniam mittit.

The farmer sends money to (his) son.

Agricola filiō pecūniam mittit.

The farmer sends money to (his) son.

When **mittō** is accompanied by **ad** + accusative, the prepositional phrase emphasizes motion toward someone or something. With a Dative of Reference, the person for whom something is meant is emphasized (i.e., The farmer sends money meant for his son).

- **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** has two distinct meanings: “put,” “place,” or “set aside.” Compare the following sentences:

Incolae arma in oppidō pōnunt.

The inhabitants are placing weapons in the town.

Incolae arma pōnunt.

The inhabitants are setting aside (their) weapons.

Context usually makes clear which meaning is appropriate.

- **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus** is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely. When it takes a direct object, it may be translated either “hear” or “listen to.” When it is used absolutely, it may be translated either “hear” or “listen.”

Rēgīna incolās audit.	The queen listens to/hears the inhabitants.
Rēgīna audit.	The queen listens/hears.

- In the third principal part of **sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. The **-ē-** in the fourth principal part is long before **-ns-**. A SHORT VOWEL BEFORE **-ns-** ALWAYS BECOMES LONG (e.g., **īnsula**). The basic meaning of **sentīō** is “perceive through one of the senses.” Thus it has an intellectual sense (perceive, observe, notice) and a more physical or emotional sense (experience, feel, suffer).
- In the third principal part of **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. **veniō** is an intransitive verb.
- The basic meaning of **clārus, -a, -um** is the visual idea of “bright” or “clear.” In this sense, it regularly describes such things as sky, color, or lightning. It has a transferred sense of “evident” or “manifest” when describing more abstract concepts (plans, affairs). When applied to people, it means “famous” or “distinguished.”
- **cupidus, -a, -um** is an adjective often found with an Objective Genitive (§36).
- Because the adjective **paucī, paucae, pauca** means “few,” it appears only in the plural, and its vocabulary entry includes the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural nominative forms. The stem is **pauc-**. This word often appears with a Partitive Genitive (§34).
- **per** is a preposition that takes the accusative case and expresses motion “through” space or time. It may also be translated “throughout” or “along.” **per** also expresses ideas of means or agency (often with personal pronouns) and may sometimes be translated “by.”

Per viās oppidī ambulābimus.	We shall walk through the streets of the town.
Sententia populī per bonōs mōnstrātur.	The opinion of the people is being shown through (by) the good men.
Oppidum per arma tenēbant.	They were holding the town through (by) arms.

- **quidem** is a postpositive adverb that usually emphasizes (indeed, certainly) or limits (at least) the word immediately preceding it.

Pulchrum quidem est amāre.	Beautiful indeed it is to love. (emphasizes)
Mihi quidem malum est bellum.	To me at least war is bad. (limits)

quidem can also emphasize or limit an entire sentence.

- **equidem** (the particle **e-** + **quidem**) is an adverb that usually occurs with a verb in the first person singular or plural. It is used to emphasize something about oneself or to affirm one’s own opinion. **equidem** is not postpositive.

Equidem prō patriā pugnābō.	I for my part shall fight for the country.
------------------------------------	--

- **nē . . . quidem** is translated “not even” and surrounds the word or words being qualified.

Rēgīna nē filiō quidem aurum dat.	The queen is giving gold not even to (her) son.
--	---

	Derivatives	Cognates
agō	act, agent	agony; pedagogue; protagonist; axiom
auxilium	auxiliary	wax
caelum	celestial	
canō	cantata; chant, incentive	hen
capiō	capture; perceive; municipal	have; haven; hawk; gaff
clārus	calendar; declare	low; hale
decem	December; decimal; dime; dozen	seventeen; dean; decade; ten
dīcō	dictate; ditto; ditty	token; paradigm; theodicy
dūcō	abduct; duke; produce	tug; tow; team
ego	ego	I
meī		me; myself
gerō	gerund	
invidia	invidious; envy	
is	id; identify; iterate	
mittō	missive; intermittent	
nōs	nostrum	us; our
paucī	paucity; poco	pony
scribō	scribble; manuscript	
sentīō	sentence; sentiment; sense	send
socius	social; society; associate	
validus	invalid; valence; avail	wield
veniō	event; covenant; prevent	come

§30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

Verbs of the third conjugation are distinguished by a short **-e-** at the end of the present stem. For example:

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule Present Stem: **rege-**

A subgroup of the third conjugation (third i-stem) is further distinguished by an **-i-** before the **-ō** ending of the first principal part. For example:

capīō, capere, cēpī, captus take, capture Present Stem: **cape-**

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are distinguished by a long **-ī-** at the end of the present stem and an **-i-** before the **-ō** ending of the first principal part. For example:

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear, listen (to) Present Stem: **audī-**

To form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs, infixes, endings, or both are added directly to the present stem. By contrast, to form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of third-, third i-stem-, and fourth-conjugation verbs, CERTAIN REGULAR CHANGES MUST BE MADE IN THE STEM VOWELS BEFORE INFIXES OR ENDINGS CAN BE ADDED.

Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the present active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

<i>3rd</i>	<i>3rd i-stem</i>	<i>4th</i>
-e- → -i-	-e- → -i-	-ī- stays as is

3. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use **-ō** or **-or** for first person singular) directly to the *changed* present stem

Thus the present active and passive indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:						
	regi-		capi-		audi- (no change)	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
1	regō	regor	capiō	capior	audiō	audior
2	regis	regeris/ regere	capis	caperis/ capere	audis	audīris/ audīre
3	regit	regitur	capit	capitur	audit	auditur
<i>Plural</i>						
1	regimus	regimur	capimus	capimur	audīmus	audīmur
2	regitis	regiminī	capitis	capiminī	audītis	audīminī
3	regunt	reguntur	capiant	capiantur	audiunt	audiuntur

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of all third-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** at the end of the changed present stem contracts with the endings **-ō** and **-or** (e.g., *regiō > **regō**; *regior > **regor**). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.
2. In the third person plural of all third-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** changes to **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
3. In the first person singular of all third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** at the end of the changed present stem does *not* contract with the endings **-ō** and **-or**. THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.
4. In the third person plural of all third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** is followed by **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
5. In the second person singular passive indicative of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** changes to an **-e-** before the endings **-ris** and **-re**.¹ MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
6. In the present indicative, third-i-stem-conjugation verbs differ from third-conjugation verbs only in the first person singular and the third person plural.
7. In the first person singular of fourth-conjugation verbs, the **-ī-** at the end of the present stem shortens before the endings **-ō** and **-or** (e.g., *audiō > **audiō**; *audīor > **audior**). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.
8. In the third person plural of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the **-ī-** is shortened to **-i-** and is followed by **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
9. In the third person singular active of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ī-** shortens according to the long vowel rule.
10. Third-i-stem-conjugation verbs and fourth-conjugation verbs are identical in the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural.

1. The original stem vowel of the third conjugation was **-i-**, but this **-i-** changed to **-e-** before the **-re** ending of the present active infinitive.

Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third,
Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the imperfect active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
-e- → -ē-	-e- → -iē-	-ī- → -iē-

3. add the *infix* for the imperfect indicative: **-bā-**
4. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use **-m** or **-r** for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:						
Infix:	regē- -bā-		capiē- -bā-		audiē- -bā-	
<i>Singular</i>						
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
1	regēbam	regēbar	capiēbam	capiēbar	audiēbam	audiēbar
2	regēbās	regēbāris/ regēbāre	capiēbās	capiēbāris/ capiēbāre	audiēbās	audiēbāris/ audiēbāre
3	regēbat	regēbātur	capiēbat	capiēbātur	audiēbat	audiēbātur
<i>Plural</i>						
1	regēbāmus	regēbāmur	capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
2	regēbātis	regēbāmini	capiēbātis	capiēbāmini	audiēbātis	audiēbāmini
3	regēbant	regēbantur	capiēbant	capiēbantur	audiēbant	audiēbantur

OBSERVATIONS

1. The changed present stem of third-conjugation verbs (e.g., **regē-**) is identical with the present stem of second-conjugation verbs (e.g., **movē-**). As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third-conjugation verbs resembles that of second-conjugation verbs.
2. The imperfect indicative of both third-i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs has **-iē-** before the infix **-bā-**. As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third-i-stem-conjugation verbs resembles that of fourth-conjugation verbs.
3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third,
Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the future active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

<i>3rd</i>	<i>3rd i-stem</i>	<i>4th</i>
-e- → -ē-	-e- → -iē-	-ī- → -iē-

3. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use **-m** or **-r** for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:						
	<i>regē-</i>		<i>capiē-</i>		<i>audiē-</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
1	regam	regar	capiam	capiar	audiam	audiar
2	regēs	regēris/ regēre	capiēs	capiēris/ capiēre	audiēs	audiēris/ audiēre
3	reget	regētur	capiet	capiētur	audiet	audiētur
<i>Plural</i>						
1	regēmus	regēmur	capiēmus	capiēmur	audiēmus	audiēmur
2	regētis	regēmini	capiētis	capiēmini	audiētis	audiēmini
3	regent	regentur	cipient	cipientur	audient	audientur

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of third-conjugation verbs, **-ā** appears rather than **-ē** before the endings **-m** and **-r**. Similarly, in the first person singular of third-i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs, **-iā** rather than **-iē** appears before the endings **-m** and **-r**. MEMORIZE THESE EXCEPTIONS. In all cases, **-ā** shortens before **-m** and **-r** according to the long vowel rule. In all other persons, the sign of the future is **-ē**.

2. The infix **-bi-**, used to mark the future tense of first- and second-conjugation verbs, is not used in the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations. For these conjugations the sign of the future is **-ē**. The following mnemonic device may be useful:

IN CONJUGATIONS 4 AND 3, THE SIGN OF THE FUTURE IS LONG **-ē**.

3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

☛ DRILL 30, PAGE 127, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs

The infinitive has been defined as a verbal noun with the properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive) (§12). The second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated “to_____.” To form the present passive infinitive for verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, CHANGE THE FINAL **-E** OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE TO **-Ī**. For example:

<i>Present Active Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Passive Infinitive</i>
vocāre (to call)	vocārī (to be called)
movēre (to move)	movērī (to be moved)
audīre (to hear)	audīrī (to be heard)

To form the present passive infinitive of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, DROP THE FINAL **-ERE** OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE AND ADD **-Ī**.² For example:

<i>Present Active Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Passive Infinitive</i>
regere (to rule)	regī (to be ruled)
capere (to capture)	capī (to be captured)

§32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs

The imperative mood has been identified as the mood used for giving direct commands (see §5). Each of the verbs italicized below would be rendered in Latin by a verb in the imperative mood:

Eat your vegetables!
Give me a sword.
Listen, friends.

Commands such as these are addressed either to “you” (singular) or “you” (plural). These second-person subjects are seldom expressed in Latin or English. Because imperatives are in the second person, they are often (but not always) found with nouns in the vocative case that indicate the persons to whom the commands are addressed. In the third sentence above, for example, “friends” would be vocative plural.

To form the present active imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem *and make no changes*
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add **-te**

<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Present Active Imperative Sing.</i>	<i>Present Active Imperative Pl.</i>
vocā-	vocā summon	vocāte summon (pl.)
movē-	movē move	movēte move (pl.)
rege-	rege rule	regite rule (pl.)
cape-	cape take	capite capture (pl.)
audī-	audī listen	audīte listen (pl.)

2. The present passive infinitive of **faciō** is supplied by another verb. See §126.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active imperative plural of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-e-** changes to **-i-** before the ending **-te**. Compare this stem vowel change to the change that occurs in the present active and passive indicative of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs (e.g., **rege-** > **regi-**).
2. The present active imperative singular of **dō** is **dā**. Although the stem has a short **-a-**, the **-a-** is lengthened in the imperative singular form (**dā**) by analogy with other first-conjugation verbs.
3. The imperatives of **eō** are regularly formed: **ī** (singular) and **īte** (plural).³
4. Present imperatives are so called because they are formed with the present stem, but imperatives look to the future and are future in time. Some verbs have alternate imperative forms that are called future imperatives. Such forms are identified in the vocabulary notes and in readings.

Four third-conjugation verbs (**dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, **ferō**⁴) have irregular present active imperative forms in the singular. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

<i>Present Active Imperative Sing.</i>		<i>Present Active Imperative Pl.</i>	
dīc	say	dīcite	say (pl.)
dūc	lead	dūcite	lead (pl.)
fac	make	facite	make (pl.)
fer	carry	ferte	carry (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The singular forms of these imperatives lack a stem vowel.
2. **Dīcō**, **dūcō**, and **faciō** have regular imperative forms in the plural. The imperative of **ferō** is irregular in the plural also, where it again lacks a stem vowel.

To form the present passive imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem and add **-re**
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add **-minī**

<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Pres. Passive Imperative Sing.</i>		<i>Pres. Passive Imperative Pl.</i>	
vocā-	vocāre	be summoned	vocāminī	be summoned (pl.)
movē-	movēre	be moved	movēminī	be moved (pl.)
rege-	regere	be ruled	regiminī	be ruled (pl.)
cape-	capere	be taken	capiminī	be captured (pl.)
audī-	audīre	be heard	audīminī	be heard (pl.)

3. The irregular verb **possum** has no imperative forms. The imperative forms of **sum** are **es** (singular) and **este** (plural). Both forms are rare except in compounds of **sum**.

4. The verb **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, “bring,” “bear,” “carry,” “endure,” is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system, which are presented in §43.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present passive imperative plural of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-e-** changes to **-i-** before the ending **-mini**.
2. Both the singular and plural present passive imperative are identical in form with the second person singular and plural present passive indicative. In addition, the singular present passive imperative for all verbs is identical in form with the present active infinitive. For example:

vocāmini	be summoned (pl.) (imperative)
	you are being summoned (indicative)
vocāre	be summoned (imperative)
	you are being summoned (indicative)
	to summon (infinitive)

Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence.

Dīcō and **dūcō** have regular present passive imperatives. The present passive imperative singular of **ferō** is **ferre** (be carried). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM. The plural is regular (**ferimini**, be carried [pl.]). **Faciō** does not have passive imperatives.

The present active imperatives of **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, “drive,” “do,” **age** and **agite**, are often used in colloquial Latin to strengthen other commands. They may be translated “come on!” For example:

<i>Age, dōnā puellis dōnā!</i>	<i>Come on, give gifts to the girls!</i>
<i>Agite, ō virī, pugnāte!</i>	<i>Come on, o men, fight!</i>

§33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

In a synopsis imperatives are always given in the second person singular and plural. Here is a model synopsis of **capīō** in the first person plural.

Principal Parts: capīō, capere, cēpī, captus				
Person and Number: 1st pl.				
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	capimus	we are capturing	capimur	we are (being) captured
Imperfect	capiebāmus	we were capturing	capiebāmur	we were being captured
Future	capiemus	we shall capture	capiemur	we shall be captured
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	capere	to capture	capī	to be captured
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	cape	capture	capere	be captured
Plural	capite	capture (pl.)	capimini	be captured (pl.)

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative and imperative forms.

§34. Partitive Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case represents the *whole* of which another noun is a *part*, it is called a **Partitive Genitive**.⁵ For example:

Multi <i>incolārum</i> nōn labōrābunt.	Many <i>of the inhabitants</i> will not work.
Nihil <i>odiī</i> habeō.	Nothing (d.o.) <i>of hatred</i> I have. I have nothing <i>of hatred</i> .

The syntax of each italicized word (*incolārum*, *odiī*) is **Partitive Genitive**.

§35. Subjective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *performing a verbal action implied in another noun*, it is called a **Subjective Genitive**. For example:

Magnum erat odium <i>malī</i> in bonōs.
Great was the hatred <i>of the bad man</i> against good men.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (*malī*) is **Subjective Genitive** since the bad man *feels* or *performs the action* of hating implied by the noun **odium**: the bad man (subject) *hates* the good men.

§36. Objective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *receiving a verbal action implied in another noun*, it is called an **Objective Genitive**. For example:

Propter odium <i>dominōrum</i> servī nōn labōrant.
On account of (their) hatred <i>of (their) masters</i> , the slaves are not working.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (*dominōrum*) is **Objective Genitive** since the masters *receive* or *are objects of* the action of hating implied by the noun **odium**: the slaves *hate* their masters (d.o.).
2. An Objective Genitive is often translated more idiomatically into English with the preposition “for.” Thus the sentence above may be translated “On account of (their) hatred for (their) masters, the slaves are not working.”

In addition to depending on other nouns, an Objective Genitive may appear with certain adjectives and verbs. For example:

Vir <i>aurī cupidus</i> poenās dabit.	A man <i>of gold desirous</i> will pay the penalty.
(<i>cupidus</i> , -a, -um desirous)	A man <i>desirous of gold</i> will pay the penalty.

In this sentence the Objective Genitive (*aurī*) depends on the adjective **cupidus**.

5. The Partitive Genitive is also known as the Genitive of the Divided Whole.

Subjective and Objective Genitives may appear together, and word order may help to distinguish between them. For example:

Magnum erat *malī odium bonōrum*.

Great was *of the bad man* (Subjective Genitive) the hatred *of good men* (Objective Genitive).

The hatred *of the bad man for good men* was great.

A Subjective Genitive often precedes and an Objective Genitive often follows the noun on which both depend. It is possible, however, that this sentence means “The hatred of the good men (Subjective Genitive) for the bad man (Objective Genitive) was great.” Context usually makes clear whether a particular genitive is subjective or objective.

§37. Ablative of Respect

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* is used to *limit* or further *specify* the meaning of an adjective or a verb, it is called an **Ablative of Respect**. For example:

Bonus *cōnsiliō* erat Gracchus.

Good *in respect to judgment* was Gracchus.

Gracchus was good *in judgment*.

Meā *sententiā* imperium habēre dēbēs.

(*meus, -a, -um* my)

(*sententia, sententiae* f. opinion)

In respect to my opinion power (d.o.) to have you ought.

In my opinion you ought to have power.

Gaius Marcum *diligentiā* superat.

Gaius Marcus (d.o.) *in respect to diligence* surpasses.

Gaius surpasses Marcus *in diligence*.

The syntax of each italicized word (*cōnsiliō*, *sententiā*, *diligentiā*) is **Ablative of Respect**.

● DRILL 34–37, PAGE 149, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§38. Personal Pronouns

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, and a **personal pronoun** represents the speaker(s) or writer(s) (I, we), the one(s) spoken to (you, you [pl.]), or the one(s) spoken about (he, she, it, they).

Like nouns, personal pronouns in Latin are declined, and their declensions must be memorized. For the first- and second-person personal pronouns, MEMORIZE DOWN THE SINGULAR AND DOWN THE PLURAL.

	First Person		Second Person	
	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>	
Nom.	ego	I	tū	you
Gen.	meī	of me	tuī	of you
Dat.	mihi	to/for me	tibi	to/for you
Acc.	mē	me (d.o.)	tē	you (d.o.)
Abl.	mē	from me (etc.)	tē	from you (etc.)
	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
Nom.	nōs	we	vōs	you (pl.)
Gen.	nostrum/ nostrī	of us	vestrum/ vestrī	of you (pl.)
Dat.	nōbīs	to/for us	vōbīs	to/for you (pl.)
Acc.	nōs	us (d.o.)	vōs	you (pl.) (d.o.)
Abl.	nōbīs	from us (etc.)	vōbīs	from you (pl.) (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Personal pronouns do not have vocative forms.
2. Since the inflectional endings of finite verbs indicate the subject (-ō = "I," -s = "you," etc.), the nominative forms of all personal pronouns are not required in a Latin sentence. Nominative case forms of personal pronouns are most often used for added emphasis. For example:

Ego ambulō, nōn tū. *I am walking, not you.*

3. In the singular the genitive forms of the first- and second-person personal pronouns (**meī**, **tuī**) are used *only* as Partitive or Objective Genitives (§§34 and 36). In the plural these functions of the genitive are distinguished by different endings: **nostrum**, **vestrum** = Partitive, **nostrī**, **vestrī** = Objective. For example:

Habēsne odium meī?	Do you have a hatred of <i>me</i> ? (objective)
Multī nostrum rēginam amant.	Many of <i>us</i> love the queen. (partitive)
Magnum erat odium vestrī.	Hatred of <i>you (pl.)</i> was great. (objective)

4. When a first- or second-person personal pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus, **mēcum** (with me), **nōbīscum** (with us), **tēcum** (with you), and **vōbīscum** (with you [pl.]).

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE THIRD-PERSON PERSONAL PRONOUN ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL (**is, ea, id, eius, eius, eius . . .**).

Third Person						
<i>Singular</i>						
	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	is	he	ea	she	id	it
Gen.	eius	of him	eius	of her	eius	of it
Dat.	eī	to/for him	eī	to/for her	eī	to/for it
Acc.	eum	him (d.o.)	eam	her (d.o.)	id	it (d.o.)
Abl.	eō	from him (etc.)	eā	from her (etc.)	eō	from it (etc.)
<i>Plural</i>						
	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	eī/iī	they	eae	they	ea	they
Gen.	eōrum	of them	eārum	of them	eōrum	of them
Dat.	eīs/iīs	to/for them	eīs/iīs	to/for them	eīs/iīs	to/for them
Acc.	eōs	them (d.o.)	eās	them (d.o.)	ea	them (d.o.)
Abl.	eīs/iīs	from them (etc.)	eīs/iīs	from them (etc.)	eīs/iīs	from them (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Eius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *eiius. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong **ei-**. The second **-i-** is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English y.
2. All forms of **is, ea, id** are disyllabic with these exceptions: **is, id** (monosyllabic), **eōrum, eārum, eōrum** (trissyllabic).
3. When a form of **is, ea, id** refers to a person or thing previously mentioned, it agrees in *gender* and *number* with the noun to which it refers. For example:

Liber pulcher puellae dabitur. Eumne habēs?

The beautiful book will be given to the girl. Do you have it? (**eum** refers to **liber**)

The personal pronoun **is, ea, id** was in origin a demonstrative adjective (this, that; these, those), and the demonstrative adjective remained in use. A **demonstrative adjective** (< **dēmōnstrō**, point out) regularly precedes the noun it modifies and serves to *point out* that noun. For example:

eum virum	this (or that) man (d.o.) (eum is a demonstrative adj. modifying virum)
ea perīcula	these (or those) dangers (subj. or d.o.) (ea is a demonstrative adj. modifying perīcula)

§39. Possessive Adjectives

A noun in the genitive case may express ownership or possession: **liber puerī** (the book of the boy) (§1). However, the genitives of the first- and second-person personal pronouns (**meī, nostrum/nostri, tuī, vestrum/vestri**) are not used to express possession (§38). There are instead **possessive adjectives** that correspond to each personal pronoun:

Personal Pronoun		Corresponding Possessive Adjective	
ego	I	meus, -a, -um	my, mine
nōs	we	noster, nostra, nostrum	our, ours
tū	you	tuus, -a, -um	your, yours
vōs	you (pl.)	vester, vestra, vestrum	your, yours (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Meus, noster, tuus, and vester** are all first-second-declension adjectives.
2. Like all adjectives, possessive adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. They may precede or follow the nouns they modify. For example:

meās filiās	my daughters (d.o.)
patriā nostrā	from our homeland (etc.)
dominus vester	your (pl.) master (subj.)

3. Possessive adjectives may function as substantives. For example:

meōrum	of my men <i>or</i> of my things
tuōs	your men (d.o.)

4. The masculine singular vocative form of **meus** is **mī**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR VOCATIVE FORM.
5. Possessive adjectives are often omitted if the meaning is clear without them, but they are used for added clarity, emphasis, or contrast.

The third-person personal pronoun (**is, ea, id**) does not have a corresponding possessive adjective. Rather, the genitive singular and genitive plural forms are used as Genitives of Possession. For example:

librōs eius	the books (d.o.) <i>of him/of her</i> <i>his/her</i> books (d.o.)
rēgīna eōrum	the queen (subj.) <i>of them</i> (m.) <i>their</i> queen (subj.)

Summary of Possession			
First Person	meus filius noster filius	my son our son	meus and noster are possessive adjectives modifying filius
Second Person	tuus filius vester filius	your son your (pl.) son	tuus and vester are possessive adjectives modifying filius
Third Person	filius eius filius eōrum	his/her son their son	eius and eōrum are personal pronouns in the genitive case expressing possession

☛ DRILL 38–39, PAGE 153, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. Andronicus translates the first line of Homer's *Odyssey* into Latin.

Virum mihi, Camēna, īsece versūtum . . . (LIVIUS ANDRONICUS, *ODYSSEY FRAG.* 1)

Camēna, Camēnae *f.* Camena, any one of the Italic divinities connected with springs and waters and identified with the (Greek) Muses

īsecō, īsecere, īsexī, — tell of

versūtus, -a, -um versatile, cunning

2. His beloved prostitute Lemniselenis greets the slave Toxilus with a question.

Toxile mī, cūr ego sine tē sum?

cūr tū autem sine mē's? (PLAUTUS, *PERSA* 763–64)

Toxilus, Toxilī *m.* Toxilus

autem (adv.) moreover

mē's = mē es⁶

3. One drunk slave sings the following to another.

ego tū sum, tū es ego: ūnanimī sumus. (PLAUTUS, *STICHUS* 731)

ūnanimus, -a, -um of one mind; harmonious

4. Demea wonders that his brother Micio is not more upset about his nephew's troubles.

De. Dīc mihi,

nōn clāmās? nōn īnsānīs?

Mi. Nōn. (TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 725–27)

De. = Demea

clāmō (1-intr.) shout

īnsāniō, īnsānīre, īnsāniī/īnsānīvī, īnsānītum be mad, rage

Mi. = Micio

5. A fragment from a comic play

audīte, puerī, pauca: vōs succēdite. (L. AFRANIUS, *TOGĀTAE FRAG.* 153)

succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum approach, draw near

6. Varro explains the different shades of meaning of certain Latin verbs.

potest[†] enim aliquid facere et nōn agere, ut poēta facit fābulam et nōn agit; contrā āctor agit et nōn facit, . . . contrā imperātor . . . neque facit neque agit sed gerit . . .

(VARRO, *DE LINGUĀ LATĪNĀ* VI.77)

[†]**potest**, *subject is "one"*

aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something

ut (conj.) as

fābula, fābulae *f.* story, tale; play, drama

contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn

āctor = *masc. sing. nom.*, doer, actor

imperātor = *masc. sing. nom.*, general, commander

6. When *es* or *est* follows a word ending in **-m** or **-e**, it may drop the initial **e-** and join the preceding word. This is called **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphaeresis*, taking away).

7. In a discussion of immortality the Roman epic poet Ennius is paraphrased.

Rōmulus in caelō cum dīs agit aevum. (CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNES* I.28)
 aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; life

8. A Stoic view of the gods

magna dī cūrānt, parva neglegunt. (CICERO, *DE NATŪRĀ DEŌRUM* II.167)
 cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after
 neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus overlook, neglect

Some Roman proverbs

9. amāre et sapere vix deō concēditur. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A22)

sapiō, sapere, sapiī/sapīvī, — be intelligent, show good sense, be sensible
 vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly
 concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus concede, grant; permit

10. animō virum pudīcae nōn oculō eligunt. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A36)

pudīcus, -a, -um chaste, pure, honorable
 oculus, oculī *m.* eye
 eligō, eligere, elēgī, elēctus select, choose

11. numquam perīclum sine perīclō vincitur. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* N7)

numquam (adv.) never
 perīclum, perīclō = perīculum, perīculō
 vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome

12. satis est superāre inimīcum, nimium est perdere. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* S44)

satis (indeclinable subst.) enough
 nimium (indeclinable subst.) too much
 perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus destroy

13. With these opening words the poet suggests that his epic poem will be a blend of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*.

Arma virumque canō . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.1)

14. In expressing his preference for country life over life in the city, the poet makes a bold claim.

nātūram expellēs furcā, tamen ūsque recurret. (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.10.24)
 nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature
 expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus drive out
 furca, furcae *f.* pitchfork
 tamen (adv.) nevertheless
 ūsque (adv.) continuously
 recurrō, recurrere, recurrī, recursum
 run back, rush back

15. The chorus of a tragic play comments on the nature of rulers.

metuī cupiunt metuīque timent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 73)

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread

cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus desire, long for, want

16. The philosopher summarizes the difference between his own attitude toward wealth and his brother's.

. . . dīvitiae meae sunt, tū es dīvitiārum. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VII.22.5)

dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* riches, wealth

17. The poet has a brief message for Sabidius.

Nōn amo† tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē;

hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo* tē. (MARTIAL I.32)

†The -ō of **amō** here scans *short*.

Sabidius, Sabidī *m.* Sabidius (an acquaintance of the poet)

quārē (interrog. adv.) why

hoc = *neut. sing. acc. of demonstr. pron.*, this thing

tantum (adv.) only

18. A Roman inscription

Cape mē; tua sum. (*CIL* I.1499)

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary

- ▶ **amīcītia, amīcītiaē** *f.* friendship
 - ▶ **inimīcītia, inimīcītiaē** *f.* enmity, hostility
- ▶ **fātum, fātī** *n.* destiny, fate
 - ▶ **proelium, proeliū** *n.* battle
- ▶ —, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (§44)
- ▶ —, **nostrum/nostri** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (§44)
- ▶ —, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (§44)
- ▶ —, **vestrum/vestri** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (§44)
- ▶ —, **suī** (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (§44)
- ▶ **accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus** receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of)
- ▶ **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw
 - ▶ **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum** go to, come to, approach
 - ▶ **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum** go away, depart
- ▶ **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus** kill
- ▶ **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** complete, accomplish
- ▶ **abeō, abire, abiī, abitum** go away
- ▶ **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring, bear, carry; endure (§43)
 - ▶ **sē ferre** (idiom) to proceed (quickly)
- ▶ **meminī, meminisse** (defective verb) remember
- ▶ **ōdī, ōdisse** (defective verb) hate
- ▶ **redeō, redire, rediī, reditum** go back, return
- dūrus, -a, -um** hard; harsh
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (§46)
- meus, -a, -um** my (own) (§45)
- noster, nostra, nostrum** our (own) (§45)
- ▶ **pius, -a, -um** dutiful, loyal
 - ▶ **impius, -a, -um** disloyal, wicked
- suus, -a, -um** his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (§45)
- tuus, -a, -um** your (own) (§45)
- vester, vestra, vestrum** your (pl.) (own) (§45)
- bene** (adv.) well
- etsī** (conj.) although
- ▶ **male** (adv.) badly
- multum** (adv.) much, a lot
- nisi** (conj.) if . . . not, unless
- postquam** (conj.) after
- quamquam** (conj.) although
- quoniam** (conj.) since, because
- sī** (conj.) if
- ▶ **sic** (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way
- ▶ **tamen** (adv.) nevertheless
- ▶ **ubi** (conj.) when; (interrog. adv.) where, when
- ▶ **ut** (conj.) as; when
- valdē** (adv.) strongly

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **amīcītia, amīcītiaē f.** and **inimīcītia, inimīcītiaē f.** are both abstract nouns. They are formed by the addition of the suffix **-tia** to the stems of **amīcus, -a, -um** and **inimīcus, -a, -um**. All abstract nouns of this type are thus first-declension nouns. A **suffix** (< **suffigō**, fasten beneath [as a support]) is a unit of meaning added to the end of a word to produce another word.
- ▶ **inimīcītia** usually appears in the plural to indicate not the abstract notion of “enmity” but a concrete instance of it. The plural may be translated “unfriendly relations,” “hostilities.”
- ▶ **fātum, fātī n.** is derived from a verb that means “utter”; hence, its basic meaning is an “utterance” (cf. **fāma**). Through the meaning of “prophetic utterance” or “oracle” it came to mean “destiny” or “fate.” With reference to an individual the plural often means “ill fate” and thus “death.” When capitalized in the plural, **Fāta** refers to the divine “Fates.”
- ▶ **—, meī; —, nostrum/nostrī; —, tuī; —, vestrum/vestrī; and —, suī** are reflexive pronouns. Because they are reflexive pronouns, they do not have nominative forms. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR. For the forms and meanings of these words see §44.

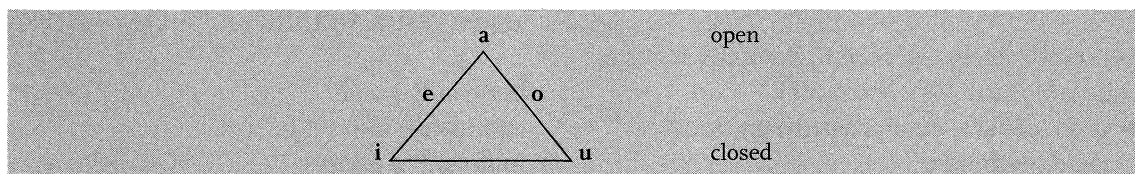
Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening

A **compound verb** (< **compōnō**, put together) is a verb formed from the combination of a simple, or uncompounded, verb and a prefix. A **prefix** (< **praefigō**, fasten in front) is a unit of meaning added to the beginning of a word to produce another word. Most prefixes in Latin are derived from adverbs, and many prefixes have corresponding prepositions. A prefix has a basic meaning, and the meaning of a compound Latin verb can sometimes be deduced by combining the meaning of the simple verb with the basic meaning of the prefix. Thus **accēdō** is a compound formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** (to, toward) to **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum**, “go,” and this compound means “go toward,” “approach.” However, the meanings of many compound verbs cannot be deduced in this way, and for this reason compound verbs are given as separate vocabulary entries.

When a prefix is combined with a simple verb, two kinds of phonetic change¹ may occur: assimilation and vowel weakening. **Assimilation** (< **assimilō**, make similar to) occurs when the prefix ends in a consonant and that consonant *changes to become similar to or identical with* the sound of the first consonant of the simple verb. For example: **ad + cēdō > accēdō**. The **-d** at the end of **ad** *assimilates to* the **c-** at the beginning of **cēdō**.

Vowel weakening refers to the change in the quality of the vowel of a stem. For example: **ad- + capiō > accipiō**. When the compound **accipiō** was formed, the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **capiō** caused the **-a-** of the stem **cap-** to change (weaken) into **-i-**. Vowel weakening is due to an earlier accentual system in Latin, whereby only the first syllable of a word was stressed. The other, unstressed syllables were regularly pronounced more weakly than they would have been if accented. When the first syllable of a simple verb was no longer the initial syllable (because of the addition of a prefix), it was more weakly pronounced.

The vowels of Latin (as of English) are regularly represented by the **vowel triangle**:



The vowel **a** is described as **open** because the tongue is placed at the bottom of the mouth, and the mouth is as open as possible when it is pronounced. The vowels **i** and **u** at the bottom of the triangle are described as **closed** because the tongue is raised when the vowels are pronounced and the mouth is more closed. **e** and **o** are in between. When vowel weakening occurs, open vowels become more closed. When initial vowels become **medial** (i.e., not first), the following instances of vowel weakening are most frequent:

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. a → i before a single consonant <i>except -r</i> 2. a → e before two consonants <i>and</i> before -r 3. e → i before a single consonant <i>except -r</i> 	<p>Example</p> <p>per- + faciō > perficiō</p> <p>per- + factus > perfectus</p> <p>per- + teneō > pertineō</p>
--	---

There are compound verbs in which vowel weakening does not occur. The compounds of **audiō, dūcō, gerō, mittō, moveō, pōnō, scribō, sentiō, veniō, and videō**—all verbs from previous chapters—do not show

1. A **phonetic change** is an alteration in pronunciation with a corresponding change in spelling.

vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF ONE OF THESE VERBS APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN. Instances of vowel weakening or retention of the simple verb within the compound are cited in the vocabulary notes.

The concepts and rules of assimilation and vowel weakening highlight and explain the similarities between sets of principal parts. (Cf. **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** with **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus**.) Familiarity with these rules will aid in the speedy acquisition of new vocabulary by making similarities in patterns of principal parts more apparent and by making it possible to anticipate the patterns of other compound verbs.

- ▶ **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **capiō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. Its basic meaning is “take to oneself,” “receive.” **accipiō** may also mean “hear (of)” (receive through one’s ears). By extension of this meaning **accipiō** may refer to understanding information received and thus may mean “learn (of).” Compare **audiō**, whose meaning is more restricted. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **CAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ACCIPIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **CAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- ▶ **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum** is an intransitive verb. In addition to its basic meaning of “go” or “move,” it may mean “yield” to a person or idea or “withdraw” from a place or activity. Compounds of **cēdō** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **CĒDŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- ▶ **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **cēdō**, and its basic meaning is “go to” or “come to.” **accēdō** is usually intransitive in prose authors and is regularly followed by **ad** + accusative. The preposition **ad** repeats the prefix **ad-** and often cannot be translated.

Auxilia ad oppidum accēdēbant.

The auxiliary troops were approaching (toward) the town.

- ▶ **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **cēdō**. It is an intransitive verb.
- ▶ **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **inter-** to **faciō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening.
- ▶ **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **faciō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **FACIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **INTERFICIŌ** AND **PERFICIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FACIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- ▶ **abeō, abire, abī, abitum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to the irregular verb **eō**, and its basic meaning is “go away.” **abeō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of **eō** in the perfect active indicative, see §41.
- ▶ **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system (§43). **ferō** derives from two PIE roots: ***bher-** and ***telA-**. **ferō** may mean “bring,” “bear,” or “carry,” and by extension “endure” (hardships, troubles). **ferō** may also mean “say,” “report,” particularly when a common story or a myth is being reported. When **ferō** takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the idiom means “proceed (quickly).”

Auxilium virīs prōvinciae ferō.

I am bringing aid to the men of the province.

Multa mala tulī.

I have endured many evil things.

Mē ad prōvinciam ferēbam.

I was proceeding (quickly) to the province.

- ▶ **meminī, meminisse** is a **defective verb**, a verb that lacks certain normal inflected forms. **meminī** has forms of the perfect active system only (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is **memin-**. The second principal part, **meminisse**, is the perfect active infinitive (§105), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to remember).

meminī often takes an Objective Genitive.² **meminī** may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. It may also take an Object Infinitive.

2. The Objective Genitive that appears with **meminī** is also called the Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting.

Meministine patriae?	Do you remember (your) homeland? (Objective Genitive)
Id memineram.	I was remembering it. (Accusative, Direct Object)
Semper tuū meminero.	I shall always remember you. (Objective Genitive)

meminī has no present active imperative forms, but it uses instead the future active imperative forms **mementō** (singular) and **mementōte** (plural) with present meanings. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

- **ōdī, ōdisse** is a defective verb. **ōdī** has forms of the perfect active system only (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is **ōd-**. The second principal part, **ōdisse**, is the perfect active infinitive (§105), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to hate).

Malōs ōdimus.	We hate bad men.
Malōs ōderātis.	You (pl.) used to hate bad men.
Malōs ōderō.	I shall hate bad men.

ōdī has no imperative forms.

- **redeō, redire, rediī, reditum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **red-** to **eō**, and its basic meaning is “go back.” **redeō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of **eō** in the perfect active indicative, see §41.
- **pius, -a, -um** describes a person who acts in accordance with duty to one’s family, one’s country, or one’s gods. When **pius** describes a thing (war, weapon, cause), the dutifulness of a person has been transferred to the thing. **impius, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **pius**. Neither **pius** nor **impius** has a masculine singular vocative in classical Latin.
- **male**, “badly,” includes the following range of meanings: “wickedly,” “wrongfully”; “poorly,” “scarcely”; “inopportunistly,” “ill-advisedly.”
- The adverb **sic** indicates that the action of the verb it modifies is being done in a manner that has just been indicated in a preceding clause or sentence or is about to be indicated in a following clause or sentence.

Sic pugnābant.	They were fighting in such a way (as I have just described).
	They were fighting in such a way (as I shall now describe).

- The adverb **tamen** regularly occurs in a main clause following a concessive clause. **tamen** may also occur without an expressed concession in the preceding clause or sentence to indicate that the statement that includes **tamen** is true in spite of what has just been said.

Quamquam bonam famam optās, tamen cum incolis malis nōn pugnās.
Although you desire a good reputation, nevertheless you are not fighting against the bad inhabitants.
Dominus nōn est in agrīs. Servus tamen cum diligentia labōrat.
The master is not in the fields. Nevertheless, the slave is working diligently.

- **ubi** may be used as a subordinating conjunction (when) that introduces a temporal clause or as an interrogative adverb (when, where) that introduces a question.

Ubi ad oppidum venit, labōrāre nōn optat.	When she comes to the town, she does not desire to work.
Ubi veniet? Ubi est?	When will she come? Where is she?

- **ut** may mean “as” and introduce a comparative clause or “when” and introduce a temporal clause (§48). A comparative clause introduced by **ut** provides a standard of comparison for a main clause, which often includes the adverb **sic**. **ut** meaning “as” may also introduce virtual parenthetical remarks.

Ut agricola agrōs, sic poēta verba cōgitat.
As a farmer [ponders] the fields, so a poet ponders words.
Bonum est sapientia, ut mihi vidētur.
Wisdom is a good thing, as it seems to me.

	Derivatives	Cognates
cēdō	ancestor; cease, cede; necessary	
ferō, ferre	circumference; differ; suffer; fertile; aquifer; vociferous	bear; bier; barrow; burly; burden; birth; bring; euphoria; periphery; paraphernalia
tulī, lātus	relate; collate; superlative; legislator	toll; tolerate; extol; (perhaps) Atlas
—, suī	suicide	self; swami; secede; secret; sober; ethnic; Sinn Fein

§40. The Perfect Active System

Since the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of all conjugations are formed with a stem taken from the second principal part, it is convenient to say that these tenses belong to the present system of the verb (§8).

The remaining three tenses of the active indicative, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are said to belong to the **perfect active system** because they are all formed with a stem taken from the third principal part (first person singular perfect active indicative).

Each of the three tenses of the perfect active system (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect) is formed in the same way for *all* verbs of *all* conjugations and for **sum** and **possum**.

Finding the Perfect Active Stem

For all verbs the stem for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active indicative is found by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part. This stem is called the **perfect active stem**. For example:

<i>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus</i> call	Perfect Active Stem:	vocāv-
<i>moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus</i> move	Perfect Active Stem:	mōv-
<i>regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus</i> rule	Perfect Active Stem:	rēx-
<i>capiō, capere, cēpī, captus</i> take	Perfect Active Stem:	cēp-
<i>audiō, audire, audīvī, audītus</i> hear	Perfect Active Stem:	audīv-
<i>sum, esse, fuī, futūrus</i> be	Perfect Active Stem:	fu-
<i>possum, posse, potuī, —</i> be able	Perfect Active Stem:	potu-

§41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect active indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part)
2. add the **perfect active personal endings** directly to the perfect active stem

The perfect active personal endings are:

<i>Person</i>	<i>Singular</i>	
1st	-ī	I
2nd	-istī	you
3rd	-it	he, she, it
	<i>Plural</i>	
1st	-imus	we
2nd	-istis	you (pl.)
3rd	-ērunt or -ēre	they

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect active personal endings are used to form the perfect active indicative of all verbs in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.
2. There are two possible endings in the third person plural, **-ērunt** or **-ēre**. **-ēre** is the older ending, and certain authors in all periods preferred it to **-ērunt**. There is no distinction in meaning. MEMORIZE BOTH ENDINGS.

Thus the perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: rēx-	
<i>Singular</i>	
1 rēxī	I ruled; I have ruled
2 rēxistī	you ruled; you have ruled
3 rēxit	he, she, it ruled; he, she, it has ruled
<i>Plural</i>	
1 rēximus	we ruled; we have ruled
2 rēxistis	you (pl.) ruled; you (pl.) have ruled
3 rēxērunt/rēxēre	they ruled; they have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first person singular perfect active indicative is the third principal part.
2. The perfect is the only tense of the indicative that has two different times with two different aspects (see §6). It is therefore important always to keep in mind two translations. For example, **rēxī** may be translated “I ruled” (past time, simple aspect) or “I have ruled” (present time, completed aspect). Context usually makes clear which translation is correct.

Eō has two third principal parts, **īī** and **īvī**, with two corresponding perfect active stems, **i-** and **iv-**. The perfect active indicative conjugation formed from **iv-** is regular, but the conjugation formed from **i-** displays certain irregularities. MEMORIZE THIS CONJUGATION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1 īī	iimus/imus
2 īstī	istis
3 īit/īt	iērunt/iēre

OBSERVATION

The second person singular and plural perfect active indicative (**īstī**, **istis**) are contractions of the stem, **i-**, with the endings **-istī** and **-istis**. The third person singular and first person plural perfect active indicative may be contracted (**īit**, **iimus**) or uncontracted (**īit**, **iimus**). The **ī-** of **īit** does not shorten before final **-t**.

Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part)
2. add the *infix* **-erā-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:	rēx-	
Infix:	-erā-	
<i>Singular</i>		
1	rēxeram	I had ruled
2	rēxerās	you had ruled
3	rēxerat	he, she, it had ruled
<i>Plural</i>		
1	rēxerāmus	we had ruled
2	rēxerātis	you (pl.) had ruled
3	rēxerant	they had ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural, the **-ā-** of the infix shortens according to the long vowel rule.
2. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the imperfect active indicative of **sum**. For example: **rēxeram** = **rēx-** + **eram**.
3. The English word “had” is always used in translating the pluperfect indicative. This tense is used to indicate an event that was completed *before another past event*. The pluperfect tense has past time with completed aspect.
4. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation of **eō** is regularly formed from both stems.

Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect active indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part)
2. add the *infix* **-eri-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-ō** for first person singular)

Thus the future perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:	rēx-	
Infix:	-eri-	
<i>Singular</i>		
1	rēxerō	I shall have ruled
2	rēxeris	you will have ruled
3	rēxerit	he, she, it will have ruled
<i>Plural</i>		
1	rēxerimus	we shall have ruled
2	rēxeritis	you (pl.) will have ruled
3	rēxerint	they will have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the **-i-** of the infix **-eri-** contracts with the ending **-ō** (***rēxeriō** > **rēxerō**).
2. The future perfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the future active indicative of **sum**. For example: **rēxerō** = **rēx-** + **erō**. The third person plural, however, is **rēxerint**.

3. The future perfect indicative is used to indicate an event that will be completed at a future time. It has future time with completed aspect.
4. The future perfect active indicative conjugation of **eō** is regularly formed from both stems.

§42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative System, Infinitive, and Imperative

Here is a model synopsis of **sentīō** in the third person plural. It includes the forms of the perfect active indicative system.

Principal Parts: sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus				
Person and Number: 3rd pl.				
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	sentīunt	they perceive	sentīuntur	they are (being) perceived
Imperfect	sentīēbant	they were perceiving	sentīēbantur	they were being perceived
Future	sentient	they will perceive	sentientur	they will be perceived
Perfect	sēnsērunt/ sēnsēre	1. they perceived 2. they have perceived		
Pluperfect	sēnserant	they had perceived		
Future Perfect	sēnserint	they will have perceived		
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	sentīre	to perceive	sentīrī	to be perceived
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	sentī	perceive	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	perceive (pl.)	sentīminī	be perceived (pl.)

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, infinitive, and imperative forms. The perfect indicative always requires two translations, one that is past time with simple aspect and one that is present time with completed aspect.

☛ DRILL 40–42, PAGE 177, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō*

The verb **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, “bring, bear, carry; endure,” is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative, which are italicized below. These irregular forms lack the stem vowel, but the remaining forms of the present system are conjugated regularly as if the present stem were **fere-**. All the forms of the perfect active system are regular.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS.

Present Indicative		Present Infinitive	
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Sing.		Sing.	
1 ferō	feror	ferre	ferri
2 fers	ferris/ferre	Present Imperative	
3 fert	fertur	Active	Passive
Pl.		Sing.	
1 ferimus	ferimur	fer	ferre
2 fertis	ferimini	Pl.	
3 ferunt	feruntur	ferte	ferimini

☛ DRILL 43, PAGE 189, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§44. Reflexive Pronouns

A **reflexive pronoun** *bends back* (< **reflectō**, bend back) or *refers* to the subject of the clause or sentence in which it appears. For example:

I saw *myself* in the mirror.

The women spoke among *themselves*.

Each italicized word is a reflexive pronoun because it refers to the subject of the sentence in which it appears.

In Latin, reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons borrow the forms of the personal pronouns.

First Person		Second Person	
Singular		Singular	
Nom.	—	—	
Gen.	meī of myself	tuī of yourself	
Dat.	mihi to/for myself	tibi to/for yourself	
Acc.	mē myself (d.o.)	tē yourself (d.o.)	
Abl.	mē from myself (etc.)	tē from yourself (etc.)	
Plural		Plural	
Nom.	—	—	
Gen.	nostrum/ nostrī of ourselves	vestrum/ vestrī of yourselves	
Dat.	nōbīs to/for ourselves	vōbīs to/for yourselves	
Acc.	nōs ourselves (d.o.)	vōs yourselves (d.o.)	
Abl.	nōbīs from ourselves (etc.)	vōbīs from yourselves (etc.)	

For the third person *one* reflexive pronoun functions as both the singular and the plural. The third-person reflexive pronoun is not borrowed from the third-person personal pronoun and must be memorized.

Third Person		
<i>Singular/Plural</i>		
Nom.	—	
Gen.	suī	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves
Dat.	sibi	to/for himself, to/for herself, to/for itself, to/for themselves
Acc.	sē/sēsē	himself (d.o.), herself (d.o.), itself (d.o.), themselves (d.o.)
Abl.	sē/sēsē	from himself, from herself, from itself, from themselves (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no nominative forms of the reflexive pronouns because reflexive pronouns *refer to but never are* the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear. The alternate accusative and ablative forms **sē** and **sēsē** are interchangeable, although originally **sēsē** may have conveyed greater emphasis.
2. The genitive forms of reflexive pronouns, like those of personal pronouns, can be used as Partitive or Objective Genitives only.
3. The first and second persons of the personal and reflexive pronouns differ in translation only. For example:

Mē videt.	He see <i>me</i> . (mē is a personal pron.)
Mē videō.	I see <i>myself</i> . (mē is a reflexive pron.)

The third person of the personal and reflexive pronouns differs in both form and translation. For example:

Eum videt.	He (person A) sees <i>him</i> (person B). (eum is a personal pron.)
Sē videt.	He sees <i>himself</i> . (sē is a reflexive pron.)

4. The correct translation of the third-person reflexive pronoun is determined by the subject. For example:

Puer sē in periculō pōnit.	The boy is putting <i>himself</i> in danger.
Incolae sē regēbant.	The inhabitants were ruling <i>themselves</i> .

5. When a reflexive pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is attached directly to the pronoun. For example: **tēcum** (with yourself), **nōbiscum** (with ourselves), **sēcum** (with himself, with herself, with itself, with themselves).
6. When followed by a reflexive pronoun, the preposition **per** may be translated “for one’s own sake” or “by oneself (alone).” For example:

Optātur per sē sapientia.	Wisdom is desired <i>for its own sake</i> .
Per mē populum regam.	<i>By myself</i> I shall rule the people.

§45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives

The genitive forms of the reflexive pronouns are not used to express possession. There are instead **reflexive-possessive adjectives** that correspond to each reflexive pronoun.

Reflexive Pronoun		Reflexive-Possessive Adjective	
—, meī	of myself, etc.	meus, -a, -um	my (own)
—, nostrum/nostrī	of ourselves, etc.	noster, nostra, nostrum	our (own)
—, tuī	of yourself, etc.	tuus, -a, -um	your (own)
—, vestrum/vestrī	of yourselves, etc.	vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.) (own)
—, suī	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, etc.	suus, -a, -um	his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first- and second-person reflexive-possessive adjectives are borrowed from the possessive adjectives and differ in translation only. For example:

Meōs librōs habēs.	You have <i>my</i> books. (meōs is a possessive adj.)
Meōs librōs habeō.	I have <i>my (own)</i> books. (meōs is a reflexive-possessive adj.)

2. The third-person reflexive-possessive adjective is not borrowed from a possessive adjective form, and it is used for both singular and plural. For example:

Suam patriam amat.	She loves <i>her (own)</i> homeland.
Suam patriam laudant.	They praise <i>their (own)</i> homeland.

§46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum is an intensive adjective. An **intensive adjective** emphasizes or intensifies the noun it modifies.³ **MEMORIZE ITS DECLENSION ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.**

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Ipse** does not have vocative forms.
2. The declension of **ipse** differs from that of ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the genitive and dative singular only.

The translation of **ipse** depends on the word it modifies or replaces. Words such as “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” or “themselves” may be used. When **ipse** modifies

3. **Ipse** is sometimes used as a substantive. When **ipse** is used as a substantive, it may be called an **intensive pronoun**.

the unexpressed subject of a verb, phrases such as “I myself,” “he himself,” “she herself,” “they themselves” may be used. For example:

<i>Catīna ipse ad prōvinciam it.</i>	Catiline <i>himself</i> is going to the province.
<i>Ipsa ad prōvinciam ībam.</i>	<i>I myself</i> (f.) was going to the province.
<i>Antōnius causam ipsam cōgitat.</i>	Antony is pondering the case <i>itself</i> .

Ipse may also serve to identify a particular person or thing and may then be translated “very.”

<i>In ipsīs agrīs rēgīnae eram.</i>	I was in the <i>very</i> fields of the queen.
-------------------------------------	---

Ipse often appears in sentences containing reflexive pronouns and modifies the subject or the reflexive pronoun. For example:

<i>Ipse prō sē pugnābat.</i>	He <i>himself</i> was fighting for himself.
<i>Prō sē ipsō pugnābat.</i>	He was fighting for his <i>very</i> self.

In the first sentence, **ipse** intensifies the subject of the verbal action (he). In the second sentence, **ipsō** intensifies the reflexive pronoun (himself).

☛ DRILL 44–46, PAGE 193, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§47. Adverbs I

An adverb may modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Some examples of English adverbs are “not,” “happily,” “well,” “very.” Many Latin words are identified as adverbs in the vocabulary entries, but other adverbs may be formed from adjectives.

To form adverbs from first-second-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem (by dropping the ending of the feminine singular nominative)
2. add the ending *-ē*

Thus, for example:

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Stem</i>	<i>Adverb</i>	
<i>altus, alta, altum</i>	<i>alt-</i>	<i>altē</i>	highly, deeply
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchr-</i>	<i>pulchrē</i>	beautifully

Some first-second-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs, and some have irregularly formed adverbs. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON IRREGULAR ADVERBS:

<i>Adjective</i>	<i>Irregular Adverb</i>	
<i>multus, -a, -um</i>	<i>multum</i>	much, a lot
<i>bonus, -a, -um</i>	<i>bene</i>	well
<i>malus, -a, -um</i>	<i>male</i>	badly
<i>validus, -a, -um</i>	<i>validē</i>	strongly (regularly formed)
	<i>valdē</i>	strongly (irregularly formed)

OBSERVATION

Certain adjectives, such as **validus**, **-a**, **-um**, have both a regularly and an irregularly formed adverb. Irregularities such as these are mentioned in the vocabulary notes.⁴

Adverbs are usually placed directly before the words they modify. For example:

Puellam nōn amō.	The girl (d.o.) I do <i>not</i> love. (nōn modifies amō) I do <i>not</i> love the girl.
Poēta pulchrē canēbat.	The poet <i>beautifully</i> was singing. (pulchrē modifies canēbat) The poet was singing <i>beautifully</i> .

The Ablative of Manner (§27) represents an alternate way of expressing an adverbial idea. The Ablative of Manner, however, requires a noun in the ablative case and most often modifies verbs.

When certain adjectives modify the subjects (usually not expressed) of verbs, they may have the force of adverbs. For example:

Vēla dabant laetī.	They were setting sail, happy. They were setting sail <i>happily</i> .
---------------------------	---

☛ DRILL 47, PAGE 201, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§48. Subordinate Clauses I

In Latin, as in English, there are three types of sentences: simple, compound, and complex. A **simple sentence** has one subject and one predicate (e.g., I cooked the dinner). A **compound sentence** has more than one subject and predicate joined by a coordinating conjunction such as “and,” “but,” “or,” “for,” “nor” (e.g., I cooked the dinner, and you slept). A **complex sentence** has one or more than one independent clause combined with one or more than one dependent clause (e.g., When I was cooking the dinner, you were sleeping).

Simple and compound sentences contain *independent clauses* only, but complex sentences contain *dependent* or *subordinate clauses* as well. An **independent clause** contains a subject and a verb and expresses a complete thought, and it *may stand alone* as a simple sentence. If it is part of a larger sentence, an independent clause is often called a **main clause**. A **dependent** or **subordinate clause** contains a subject and a verb, but it *cannot stand alone* as a complete sentence.

Subordinate clauses in both Latin and English are introduced by a wide variety of subordinating conjunctions. A **subordinating conjunction** is a conjunction that introduces a subordinate clause. The Latin subordinating conjunctions introduced in this chapter and their corresponding English meanings are:

4. In the case of **valdē**, the stress on the antepenult (**vālidē**) resulted in a weakly pronounced penult, and the unstressed penult eventually dropped out altogether. The loss of a syllable in the middle of a word is called **syncope** (< Greek *synkope*, cutting together). For a similar development compare Latin **tabula** with its English derivative, “table.”

Latin	English	Type of Clause Introduced
postquam	after	Temporal
ubi	when	Temporal
ut	when	Temporal
quoniam	since, because	Causal
ut	as	Comparative
etsi	although	Concessive
quamquam	although	Concessive
sī	if	Conditional
nisi	if . . . not, unless	Conditional

OBSERVATION

The subordinating conjunctions in this chapter introduce five types of subordinate clauses: *temporal*, *causal*, *comparative*, *concessive*, and *conditional*. A **temporal clause** indicates a particular relation in time of the event in the subordinate clause to the event in the main clause. A **causal clause** gives the reason for the event in the main clause. A **comparative clause** expresses a standard to which an event in the main clause is compared. A **concessive clause** reports an event in spite of which the event in the main clause occurs. A **conditional clause** states a condition under which the event in the main clause occurs.

A subordinate clause in a complex sentence in either English or Latin may appear either before or after the main clause:

Ubi dixit, audiēbam.

When he spoke, I was listening.

Audiēbam ubi dixit.

I was listening when he spoke.

When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, it is set off by a comma. When the subordinate clause follows the main clause, most often no comma is used.

In Latin, when an expressed subject is common to both the subordinate clause and the main clause, the order is often as follows:

Rēgīna, quoniam bellum gerēbat, arma optābat.

The queen, since war (d.o.) she was waging, arms (d.o.) was desiring.

The queen, since she was waging war, was desiring arms.

Since the queen was waging war, she was desiring arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The placement of **rēgīna** in first position signals that this word is the subject of both the verb in the main clause and the verb in the subordinate clause. For greater cohesion and economy—**rēgīna** does not have to be repeated in the subordinate clause—the main clause **rēgīna arma optābat** surrounds the subordinate clause.
2. The third translation given above is to be preferred for correct English and requires the addition of the English pronoun “she” to begin the main clause.

☛ DRILL 48, PAGE 203, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§49. Conditional Sentences I

A **conditional sentence** is the name given to a complex sentence that includes a *condition* or conditional clause—a type of subordinate clause—and a main clause. For example:

If he has friends, he does not desire money.
If he had friends, he was not desiring money.
If we capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.
If we had captured the town, the poets would have sung of our deeds.

The italicized portion of each of these sentences states the condition that must occur in order for the main clause to occur. For example, only “if we capture the town” will “the poet sing of our deeds.” The subordinate clause or “if clause” of a conditional sentence is called a **protasis** (< Greek *protasis*, proposition). The main clause is called an **apodosis** (< Greek *apodosis*, giving back, return). Both in Latin and in English the protasis may precede or follow the apodosis. For example:

Protasis	Apodosis
If he has friends,	he does not desire money.
Apodosis	Protasis
He does not desire money	if he has friends.

There are three classes of conditional sentences in Latin: simple, future, and contrary-to-fact. **Simple** conditional sentences make statements of fact about present or past time (the first two sentences above are simple conditional sentences). **Future** conditional sentences make statements about the future (the third sentence above is a future conditional sentence). **Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis are not occurring now or did not occur in the past (the fourth sentence above is a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence). In this section only simple and future conditional sentences in Latin are introduced.⁵ The protases of all kinds of conditional sentences in Latin are most commonly introduced by **sī** (if) or **nisi** (if . . . not, unless).

Simple Conditional Sentences

Simple conditional sentences are of two types: present or past. In a **Present Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present indicative*. In a **Past Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in *any past tense of the indicative*. The first two sentences above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Sī amīcōs habet, pecūniam nōn optat. (Present Simple)
 If he *has* friends, he *does not desire* money.
Sī amīcōs habēbat, pecūniam nōn optābat. (Past Simple)
 If he (*repeatedly*) *had* friends, he (*repeatedly*) *did not desire* money.

5. For contrary-to-fact conditional sentences, see §71.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Simple conditional sentences make simple factual statements about the present or the past in the indicative mood, the mood used to express something as factual. They may have a *particular* meaning, stating something about a particular moment in time, or a *generalizing* meaning, making a general statement. Context usually makes clear whether a simple conditional sentence is particular or general.
2. The syntax of, for example, *habēbat* is **imperfect indicative** in the **protasis** of a **Past Simple** conditional sentence.⁶

Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences

One kind of future conditional sentence is called the **Future More Vivid** because it vividly imagines future events in the indicative mood.⁷ In a Future More Vivid conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *future indicative*. The third sentence above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Sī oppidum capiēmus, poētae nostra facta canent.
 If we *shall capture* the town, the poets *will sing* of our deeds.
 If we *capture* the town, the poets *will sing* of our deeds.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Future More Vivid conditional sentence in Latin requires the future indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis because both events will occur in the future. The second translation above is to be preferred, however, since in English the present tense is commonly used in the protasis of such a conditional sentence. The English phrase “if we capture” is understood to refer to future time because the verb in the main clause clearly indicates future time.
2. The syntax of, for example, *canent* is **future indicative** in the **apodosis** of a **Future More Vivid** conditional sentence.

The *future perfect indicative* may sometimes appear in the protasis of a future conditional sentence in combination with a *future indicative* in the apodosis. Such a conditional sentence is called a **Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis**. The future perfect may emphasize the speed or completeness with which the action in the protasis will be done. For example:

Sī oppidum cēperimus, poētae nostra facta canent.
 If we *shall have captured* the town, the poets *will sing* of our deeds.
 If we *capture* the town, the poets *will sing* of our deeds.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Since English cannot easily express the special emphasis indicated by the future perfect in the protasis, once again the English present tense is to be preferred in translation. Thus the translations of Future More Vivid and Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis conditional sentences are the same.
2. The syntax of, for example, *cēperimus* is **future perfect indicative** in the **protasis** of a **Future More Vivid** conditional sentence **with Emphatic Protasis**.

6. The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

7. For Future Less Vivid conditional sentences, see §71.

In all future conditional sentences, it is possible to replace the future indicative in the apodosis with an *imperative* since commands look to future time. For example:

Sī rēgīnam vidēre optābis, venī ad forum.

If the queen (d.o.) to see you desire, *come* to the forum.

If you desire to see the queen, *come* to the forum.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the imperative **venī** is used instead of a future indicative in the apodosis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences		
Name	Verbs in Latin	Verbs in English ⁸
Present Simple	Present Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Past Simple	Any Past Tense of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Future More Vivid ⁹	Future Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis
Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis ¹⁰	Future Perfect Indicative in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis

☛ DRILL 49, PAGE 207, MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. The model verb "do" is used in English translation formulas.

9. This name is commonly abbreviated FMV.

10. This name is commonly abbreviated FMVE.

Short Readings

1. A quick exchange between two slaves

Euclio: Tacē atque abī intrō. *Staphyla*: Taceō atque abeō. (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 103)

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent

intrō (adv.) within, inside

2. The old Nicobulus gives his slave an important command.

Cape hoc tibi aurum, Chr̄ysale, ī, fer filiō. (PLAUTUS, *BACCHIDES* 1059)

hoc = *neut. sing. acc. of demonstrative adj.*, this

Chr̄ysalus, Chr̄ysalī *m.* Chrysalus

3. An example of Ennian alliteration in a scornful remark perhaps uttered by Romulus against Titus Tatius, a Sabine king

Ō Tite, tūte, Tatī, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulistī. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* I.104)

Titus Tatius, Titī Tatī *m.* Titus Tatius

tūte = *emphatic form of tū*

tantus, -a, -um so great, so much

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; tyrant

4. Cato gives a summary of the essence of agriculture.

quid est agrum bene colere? bene arāre. quid est secundum? arāre. quid tertium?

stercorāre. (CATO, *DĒ AGRĪ CULTŪRĀ* 61)

quid = *neut. sing. nom. of interrog. pron.*, what

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend

arō (1-tr.) plough, till

secundus, -a, -um second

tertius, -a, -um third

stercorō (1-tr.) spread with manure

5. A keen comparison

sīc multī librōs dēgustant ut convīvae dēliciās. ([VARRO], *SENTENTIAE* 86)

dēgustō (1-tr.) take a taste of

cōnvīva, convīvae *m.* dinner guest

dēliciae, dēliciārum *f. pl.* delicacies

6. The orator identifies what is of value to the Romans.

ōdit populus Rōmānus prīvātam luxuriam, pūblicam magnificentiam dīligit.

(CICERO, *PRŌ MURĒNĀ* 76)

prīvātus, -a, -um private

luxuria, luxuriae *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury

pūblicus, -a, -um public

magnificentia, magnificentiae *f.* magnificence, sumptuousness

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus value, esteem, love

7. One of the interlocutors in a philosophical dialogue offers a persuasive analogy.

. . . ut ager . . . sine culturā frūctuōsus esse nōn potest, sīc sine doctrīnā animus . . .

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* II.5)

culturā, culturāe *f.* cultivation

frūctuōsus, -a, -um fruitful

doctrīna, doctrīnae *f.* training, instruction

8. A Roman proverb

Avārus miseriae causa est suae. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A14)

avārus, -a, -um greedy

miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

9. A distressed Queen Dido calls to her men as Aeneas and the Trojans sail away.

. . . īte,

ferite citi flammās, date tēla, impellite rēmōs! (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.593–94)

citus, -a, -um swift, quick

flamma, flammae *f.* flame, fire

tēlum, tēli *n.* weapon; spear

impellō, impellere, impulī, impulsus set in motion, drive forward

rēmūs, rēmī *m.* oar

10. The poet concludes a poem to a wealthy but always worried friend, who insists on trying to make the poet worry as well.

ut tū fortūnam, sīc nōs tē, Celse, ferēmūs. (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.8.17)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune

Celsus, Celsī *m.* Celsus

11. The poet describes an emotional difficulty.

ōderō sī poterō; sī nōn, invītus amābō. (OVID, *AMORES* III.11.35)

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

12. Advice to a would-be lover

rīserit, arrīdē; sī flēbit, flēre mementō. (OVID, *ARS AMATŌRIA* II.201)

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus laugh; **rīserit**, *subject is "she"*

arrīdeō, arrīdēre, arrīsī, arrīsus laugh with

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep

13. Apollo's command to the poet

dūc, age, discipulōs ad mea templa tuōs . . . (OVID, *ARS AMATŌRIA* II.493)

discipulus, discipulī *m.* pupil, follower

templum, templī *n.* temple

14. A portion of Queen Clytaemnestra's soliloquy

tēcum ipsa nunc ēvolve fēmineōs dolōs . . . (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 116)

ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvī, ēvolūtus unroll; turn over (in one's mind)

fēmineus, -a, -um of or belonging to a woman, feminine

dolus, dolī m. deceit, trick, cunning

15. When Clytaemnestra hesitates to carry through their deadly plan, her lover and partner-in-crime, Aegisthus, urges her to action.

nec rēgna socium ferre nec taedae sciunt. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 259)

rēgnum, rēgnī n. kingdom, realm; *pl.* kingship, power

taeda, taedae f. (marriage) torch

sciō, scīre, scī/scīvī, scītus know (how) (+ *infin.*)

16. Aegisthus speaks bravely about the possible consequences of his planned actions.

exilia mihi sunt haud nova; assuēvī malīs. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 302)

exilium, exiliī n. exile

haud (*adv.*) not at all, by no means

novus, -a, -um new

assuēscō, assuēscere, assuēvī, assuētum become accustomed; *perfect*, be accustomed (+ *dat.*)

17. Cassandra addresses the god Apollo, her nemesis.

recēde, Phoebe, iam nōn sum tua. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 722)

recēdō (re- + cēdō) go back, withdraw

Phoebus, Phoebī m. Phoebus (Apollo)

iam (*adv.*) now; by now

18. The beginning and end of the Chorus's closing reflection on human nature

fātis agimur; cēdite fātis.

multī ad fātum

vēnēre suum dum fāta timent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *OEDIPUS* 980; 993–94)

dum (*conj.*) while

19. The philosopher begins his discussion of the happy life with a comment about himself.

cum multīs inimicitīās gessī et in grātiam ex odiō, sī modo ūlla inter malōs grātia

est, redī; mihi ipsī nōndum amīcus sum. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VII.2.3)

grātia, grātiae f. favor; friendly feeling

modo (*adv.*) at all

ūllus, -a, -um any

inter (*prep.* + *acc.*) between; among

nōndum (*adv.*) not yet

20. An irritated dinner guest finds fault with another diner.

in aliō pēduclum vidēs, in tē ricinum nōn vidēs. (PETRONIUS, *SATYRICON* 57.7)

alius, alia, aliud other, another
pēduc(u)lum, pēduc(u)lī *m.* louse
ricinus, ricinī *m.* tick

21. In a passage examining Cicero's reasoning in his legal speeches, Quintilian ponders the rationale behind the following defense of murder.

sī occīdī, rēctē fēcī; sed nōn occīdī. (QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTĪTŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* IV.5.13)

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill
rēctē (adv.) rightly, justly

22. Each reader's capacity determines how he evaluates the books he reads.

. . . habent sua fāta libellī. (TERENTIANUS MAURUS, *DE SYLLABIS* 1286)

libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book

Four gravestone inscriptions

23. NFFNSNC (Nōn fuī. Fuī. Nōn sum. Nōn cūrō.) (*CIL* V.2893)

cūrō (1-intr.) worry, care

24. . . . nōn fueram, nōn sum, nesciō, nōn ad mē pertinet. (*CIL* V.3415)

nesciō, nescīre, nescī/nescīvī, nescītus not know
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinūī, pertentus pertain, matter

25. Plōtia C.l. Thalassia virīs suīs et amīcīs amāra fuit numquam. (*CIL* VI.7595)

Plōtia, Plōtiaē *f.* Plotia
C.l. = Gaī liberta; liberta, libertae *f.* freedwoman
Thalassius, -a, -um Thalassian
amārus, -a, -um bitter
numquam (adv.) never

26. Fātīs cessit suīs. (*CIL* X.7658)

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary

- ▶ **Athēnae, Athēnārum** *f. pl.* Athens
- Rōma, Rōmae** *f.* Rome

- dictum, dictī** *n.* word; saying
- domus, domī** *f.* house, home

- ▶ **amor, amōris** *m.* love
- animal, animālis, -ium** *n.* animal
- ▶ **carmen, carminis** *n.* song, poem
- ▶ **Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.* Carthage
- ▶ **cīvis, cīvis, -ium** *m. or f.* citizen
- corpus, corporis** *n.* body
- ▶ **homō, hominis** *m.* human being, man
- ▶ **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.* (public) enemy
- ▶ **iūs, iūris** *n.* right, law; judgment; court
- ▶ **mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* sea
- māter, mātris** *f.* mother
- ▶ **mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude
- mīles, mīlitis** *m.* soldier
- ▶ **moenia, moenium** *n. pl.* (city) walls
- pater, patris** *m.* father
 - ▶ **patrēs cōnscrīptī, voc. pl.** enrolled fathers, senators
- rēx, rēgis** *m.* king
- ▶ **rūs, rūris** *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side)
- ▶ **servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* slavery
- timor, timōris** *m.* fear
- ▶ **urbs, urbis, -ium** *f.* city
- ▶ **vīs, —, -ium** *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.,* strength (§55)

- ▶ **liberō** (1-tr.) free

- ▶ **careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus** lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.)

- ▶ **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** choose; read
 - ▶ **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus** understand
- ▶ **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus** live, be alive

- ācer, ācris, ācre** sharp, keen; fierce
- ▶ **facilis, facile** easy
 - ▶ **difficilis, difficile** difficult
- ▶ **fēlix, fēlicis** lucky, fortunate, happy
 - īnfēlix, īnfēlicis** unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy
- fortis, forte** brave; strong
- ingēns, ingentis** huge, vast; remarkable
- omnis, omne** every; all

- ▶ **autem** (postpositive conj.) however; moreover
- difficulter** (adv.) with difficulty
- facile** (adv.) easily; readily
- inter** (prep. + acc.) between, among; during
- ▶ **iūre** (adv.) rightly, justly
- omnīnō** (adv.) entirely; at all
- ▶ **sub** (prep. + acc.) under; up to (prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near
- umquam** (adv.) ever
- numquam** (adv.) never

Vocabulary Notes

- **Athēnae, Athēnārum** *f. pl.* appears in the plural only. (In English, too, the “s” on the end of Athens indicates that the name is plural in form.)
- The plural of **amor, amōris** *m.* may be translated “(feelings of) love,” “affection,” “love affair,” or “object of affection.” In Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is often used with a concrete meaning. When capitalized, **Amor** refers to the god Cupid.
- **carmen, carminis** *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **canō**. The basic meaning of **carmen** is thus something sung or chanted. It may mean a hymn, a ritual utterance, or an incantation. Since ancient poetry was often sung and always spoken out loud, **carmen** may describe a poem, a play, or a part of a play, regardless of whether it was actually sung. It may also refer abstractly to “poetry” or “song.”
- **Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.* (often spelled with a **K**) was a city in northern Africa and the capital of the Carthaginian or Phoenician empire. The Carthaginian empire was the most powerful in the western Mediterranean until Rome’s expansion. War broke out between Rome and Carthage in the third century B.C.E. and again in the middle of the second century B.C.E. These wars are referred to as the Punic wars (< **Pūnicus, -a, -um**, Phoenician, Carthaginian). The last of the Punic wars ended with the destruction of Carthage. Its legendary founder and queen was Dido, whom Aeneas encounters in the *Aeneid*.
- **cīvis, cīvis, -ium** *m. or f.* means “citizen” of a political unit as opposed to a foreigner, noncitizen, or slave. It may also mean “fellow citizen” or “countryman,” particularly in political addresses.
- The basic meaning of **homō, hominis** *m.* is “human being” as distinct from anything nonhuman (gods, animals). **homō** is more neutral than **vir**, which is always explicitly male and may convey the notion of a man of honor or principle. The plural forms of **homō** are often used to mean “people” in general as opposed to **populus**, which means a particular “people” or “populace.”

Hominēs multa impia dīcunt.

People say many wicked things.

- **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.* is a “public enemy” of a country as opposed to **inimīcus**, a “personal enemy.”
- **iūs, iūris** *n.* expresses the abstract notion of “law” or “right,” rather than a particular law, for which Latin uses the word **lēx**. It may also refer to “right” in the sense of “rights of citizens.” **iūs** may also mean “judgment” or “court” (the place of judgment).
- **mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* has an asterisk before the genitive plural ending because the form ***marium** does not occur in the Latin literature that survives. Although the genitive form **marum** does occur, **mare** displays all other i-stem features.
- **mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* may mean “mind” as the seat of intellectual activity, “intention” or “purpose” as a result of that intellectual activity, or “frame of mind,” “attitude.”
- **moenia, moenium** *n. pl.* is the word for the walls that surround a city for defense.
- The phrase **patrēs cōnscrīptī**, most frequently seen in the vocative case, means “fathers (having been enrolled)” (in the senate) (< **cōnscrībō** [**con-** + **scrībō**], **cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus**, enroll). It is a frequent appellation for the collective Roman senate. The phrase occasionally appears in other cases. The plural **patrēs** without the participle **cōnscrīptī** may also be used to mean “senators.”
- **rūs, rūris** *n.* means the “countryside” as opposed to the city and often appears in the plural as well with this meaning. Its locative form is **rūrī**.
- **servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tūs** to the stem of the noun **servus**.
- The final **-bs** of **urbs** is pronounced as **ps** in “taps.” **urbs** often refers specifically to Rome, while **oppidum** designates a smaller town in Italy.
- **vīs, —, -ium** *f.* is an irregular third-declension noun. (For the full declension of **vīs** see §55.) In the singular, **vīs** has the meaning “force,” “power,” or “violence,” while in the plural it means “(physical or mental) strength.”

Incolae oppidum vī cēpērunt.

The inhabitants captured the town by force.

Vīrēs nautārum superābantur.

The strength of the sailors was being overcome.

- **liberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus** is a transitive verb that is often accompanied by an Ablative of Separation (§58).

Incolās periculō liberāvimus.

We freed the inhabitants from danger.

- **careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus** is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, **caritūrus** (about to lack), is a future active participle. In addition to its basic meanings of “lack” and “be without,” **careō** may mean “be free from.” **careō** takes an Ablative of Separation (§58) that may be translated as a direct object in English.

Agricola amīcīs nōn caret.

The farmer does not lack friends.

The farmer is not without friends.

Filius rēgīnae cūrīs caruit.

The son of the queen was free from cares.

- **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** may mean “gather” (shells, bones, spoils of war) or “choose” (leaders, judges). Through the notion of gathering something with one’s eyes and observing something, it comes to have the particular meaning of “read.”
- **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **inter-** to **legō**. In compounds **inter-** often means “thoroughly.” From the notion of thoroughly reading or observing something, **intellegō** comes to mean “understand.”
- **vīvō, vivere, vīxī, vīctūrus** is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, **vīctūrus** (about to live), is a future active participle.
- In addition to meaning “easy,” **facilis, facile** may be used of materials that are easy to work (tractable); of people or things that move with ease (nimble, agile); and of gods or people that are easily moved (favorable, gracious, indulgent).
- **difficilis, difficile** is an adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **facilis**. **difficilis** exhibits regular vowel weakening of the stem vowel. In addition to meaning “difficult,” **difficilis** may be used of people or animals that are hard to move (stubborn, inflexible, intractable).
- When **fēlix, fēlicis** describes plants, trees, land, etc., it means “fruitful,” “rich,” or “productive.” It may often have a more expanded meaning of “lucky” or “auspicious” for omens and the like. A person who is **fēlix** is “fortunate” and by extension “happy.”
- **autem** is a postpositive conjunction that joins two sentences or clauses. Most often **autem** adds a thought that is in opposition to a previous one (however), but sometimes the new thought is merely a different, additional idea (moreover).

Nihil scribō. Multa autem legō.

I write nothing. However, I read many things.

Antōnius bene dicit. Bene autem scribit.

Antony speaks well. Moreover, he writes well.

- The adverb **iūre** is in origin the ablative singular of **iūs**.
- Like **in**, the preposition **sub** takes both the accusative and the ablative. When it takes the accusative, it conveys an idea either of motion “under” or of motion from below “up to” a place (city walls, mountains). When it takes an ablative, it indicates something “under” which someone or something is located. It can also mean “at the foot of,” “close up to,” or “near” (city walls, mountains).

Militēs sub moenia mīsit.

He sent the soldiers up to the city walls.

Erant militēs sub oppidō.

There were soldiers close up to/at the foot of the town.

	Derivatives
ācer	vinegar; acrid; eager
careō	caret
cīvis	civil; city
fortis	fort; forte; effort; force
homō	homicide; hombre; homage
hostis	host; hostile
iūs	jury; injury; perjure; just
legō	legend; legible; collect; lectern
mare	maritime; marine
māter	maternal; matrix; matrimony
mēns	mental; demented
pater	paternal; patrician; patron
paucī	paucity; poco
rūs	rural; rustic
vīs	vim; violate; violent

Cognates

ear; acute; hammer; heaven; acme; acrobat
 castrate; castle; chaste; caste; incest
 Shiva; cemetery
 barrow; iceberg; borough; burglar
 bridegroom; chameleon; humble
 guest
 lexicon; dyslexia; -logue; logic
 mermaid; meerschaum; marsh; morass
 mother; metropolis; material; Demeter
 mind; automatic; maenad; mentor; mania; mantra
 father; patriarch
 pony
 room; rummage; ream

§50. The Perfect Passive System

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative are all formed with the fourth principal part combined with forms of the verb **sum**. These two parts are written separately, and all forms of the perfect passive system are **compound verb forms**.

The fourth principal part has been identified as the perfect passive participle, and the participle has been defined as a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. Although the perfect passive participle of a transitive verb appears in the vocabulary entry with the ending **-us**,¹ it may also be written with a full set of adjective endings: **-us, -a, -um**. For example: **rēctus, -a, -um**. When this adjective joins with forms of **sum** to make compound forms in the perfect passive system, it always agrees with the *subject of the verb* and therefore is *always in the nominative case*. The subject also determines the *gender* and *number*.

§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the present tense of **sum**

Thus the perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus, -a, -um**

Singular

1	rēctus, -a, -um sum	I was ruled; I have been ruled
2	rēctus, -a, -um es	you were ruled; you have been ruled
3	rēctus, -a, -um est	he, she, it was ruled; he, she, it has been ruled

Plural

1	rēctī, -ae, -a sumus	we were ruled; we have been ruled
2	rēctī, -ae, -a estis	you (pl.) were ruled; you (pl.) have been ruled
3	rēctī, -ae, -a sunt	they were ruled; they have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises cannot be translated word by word but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the two meanings of the perfect tense (past time with simple aspect or present time with completed aspect). In all compound forms in Latin it is common for the form of **sum** to appear after the participle; however, these forms are often reversed, and other words may intervene. For example, **rēctus est** and **est rēctus** are equally correct.
2. The perfect passive participle ends in **-us** (sing.) or **-ī** (pl.) if the subject is masculine, **-a** (sing.) or **-ae** (pl.) if the subject is feminine, **-um** (sing.) or **-a** (pl.) if the subject is neuter. For example:

1. The perfect passive participle of *intransitive verbs* is given with the neuter ending **-um**. Remember that intransitive verbs are generally not found in the passive voice, but see §54.

§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 109

Rēctus est.	He was/has been ruled.
Rēctae sumus.	We (fem.) were/have been ruled.
Oppida rēcta sunt.	The towns were/have been ruled.

Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect tense of **sum**

Thus the pluperfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um	
<i>Singular</i>	
1 rēctus, -a, -um eram	I had been ruled
2 rēctus, -a, -um erās	you had been ruled
3 rēctus, -a, -um erat	he, she, it had been ruled
<i>Plural</i>	
1 rēctī, -ae, -a erāmus	we had been ruled
2 rēctī, -ae, -a erātis	you (pl.) had been ruled
3 rēctī, -ae, -a erant	they had been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises cannot be translated word by word but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the meaning of the pluperfect tense (past time with completed aspect). The English words “had been” always appear in translations of the pluperfect passive indicative.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Rēcta erat.	She had been ruled.
Nautae rēctī erant.	The sailors had been ruled.

Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect passive indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the future tense of **sum**

Thus the future perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um	
<i>Singular</i>	
1 rēctus, -a, -um erō	I shall have been ruled
2 rēctus, -a, -um eris	you will have been ruled
3 rēctus, -a, -um erit	he, she, it will have been ruled
<i>Plural</i>	
1 rēctī, -ae, -a erimus	we shall have been ruled
2 rēctī, -ae, -a eritis	you (pl.) will have been ruled
3 rēctī, -ae, -a erunt	they will have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the future perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises cannot be translated word by word but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the meaning of the future perfect tense (future time with completed aspect).

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Oppidum rēctum erit.
Rēctī erunt.

The town will have been ruled.
They (masc.) will have been ruled.

§52. Synopsis IV: Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the perfect passive system, one chooses a gender for the subject in addition to a verb, a person, and a number because the compound forms of the perfect passive system include an adjective (the perfect passive participle) that always agrees with the subject of the verb. Here is a model synopsis of **agō** in the first person singular feminine:

Principal Parts: agō, agere, ēgī, āctus				
Person, Number, and Gender: 1st sing. f.				
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	agō	I drive	agor	I am (being) driven
Imperfect	agēbam	I was driving	agēbar	I was being driven
Future	agam	I shall drive	agar	I shall be driven
Perfect	ēgī	1. I drove 2. I have driven	ācta sum	1. I was driven 2. I have been driven
Pluperfect	ēgeram	I had driven	ācta eram	I had been driven
Future Perfect	ēgerō	I shall have driven	ācta erō	I shall have been driven
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	agere	to drive	agī	to be driven
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	age	drive	agere	be driven
Plural	agite	drive (pl.)	agimini	be driven (pl.)

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, infinitive, and imperative forms. The perfect indicative always requires two translations, one that is past time with simple aspect and one that is present time with completed aspect.

☛ DRILL 50–52, PAGE 227, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§53. The Omission of *sum* in Compound Verb Forms; A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle

In the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the forms of **sum** are frequently omitted, or one form of **sum** may apply to more than one participle. For example:

Postquam oppidum *captum* [est], miserī erant incolae.

After the town (*was*) *captured*, wretched were the inhabitants.

After the town *was captured*, the inhabitants were wretched.

Poēta ā populō et vīsus et audītus est.

The poet by the people both (*was*) *seen* and *was heard*.

The poet *was* both *seen* and *heard* by the people.

OBSERVATION

The tense of the compound verb form from which **sum** has been omitted is most often perfect, and the tense of **sum** omitted is present. In special contexts, the tense may be assumed to be pluperfect or future perfect.

Apart from its use in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative, the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part) may be used like any other first-second-declension adjective. It is then translated “(having been) _____ed.” For example:

Servōs *captōs* vīdimus.

The slaves (*having been*) *captured* (d.o.)
we saw.

We saw the *captured* slaves.

Fēminīs *interfectōrum* auxilium dabō.

To the wives *of the* (*having been*) *killed men*
aid I shall give.

I shall give aid to the wives *of the killed men*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect passive participle in the first sentence agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. The parentheses indicate that the words “having been” may be omitted from the translation.
2. The perfect passive participle in the second sentence is used substantively. Certain substantives of perfect passive participles are so common that they are considered neuter second-declension nouns. For example: **factum**, **factī** *n.* deed ([having been] done thing); **dictum**, **dictī** *n.* word ([having been] said thing).
3. When the perfect passive participle appears alone as an adjective (i.e., *not* in a compound verb form), the action it describes is always already completed at the time of the main verb. For example, “we saw” the slaves when they had already been “captured.”

§54. Impersonal Passive

Intransitive verbs whose fourth principal parts end in **-um** ordinarily do not have any forms in the passive voice. Sometimes, however, such verbs appear in *third person singular* passive forms with *no expressed subjects*. The third person singular passive (in any tense and any mood) of an intransitive verb is called the **impersonal passive**. (The word **impersonal** means “having no personal subject.”) Such a form reports and emphasizes that the action of the verb is being done (will be done, was done, etc.) but gives no indication of who performs that action. For example:

Per viās errātur.	Through the streets wandering is being done.
	There is (a) wandering through the streets.
Bene pugnātum est in prōvinciā.	Fighting was done well in the province.
	There was good fighting in the province.

OBSERVATIONS

1. It is convenient to translate an impersonal passive using the English gerund, a verbal noun ending in “-ing.”
2. Compound verb forms that are impersonal passives always have a perfect passive participle ending in the neuter nominative singular **-um** (e.g., **pugnātum est**). This neuter ending on the participle indicates that this form is impersonal.
3. Since an impersonal passive is a finite verb form, it may be modified by an adverb, as in the second sentence. In an English translation using the gerund, however, an adjective is used to modify the verbal noun.

☛ DRILL 53–54, PAGE 237, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§55. Noun Morphology: Third Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE THIRD DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-IS**.

Gender Note: The third declension contains masculine nouns and feminine nouns, which have a common set of endings, and neuter nouns, which have endings slightly different from those of the masculine/feminine nouns.

Case Endings of the Third Declension					
Masculine/Feminine			Neuter		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	— ²	-ēs	Nom./Voc.	— ²	-a
Gen.	-is	-um	Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ibus	Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs	Acc.	— ²	-a
Abl.	-e	-ibus	Abl.	-e	-ibus

2. Nouns of the third declension show wide variation in the nominative singular, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDING. The neuter singular accusative is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NEUTER SINGULAR ACCUSATIVE ENDING.

MEMORIZE EACH OF THESE TWO SETS OF ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a masculine or feminine noun or a neuter noun of the third declension, add the appropriate endings to the stem.³ For example:

	mīles, mīlitis <i>m.</i> soldier stem = mīlit-	corpus, corporis <i>n.</i> body stem = corpor-
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
Nom./Voc.	mīles	corpus
Gen.	mīlitis	corporis
Dat.	mīlitī	corporī
Acc.	mīlitem	corpus
Abl.	mīlite	corpore
	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	mīlitēs	corpora
Gen.	mīlitum	corporum
Dat.	mīlitibus	corporibus
Acc.	mīlitēs	corpora
Abl.	mīlitibus	corporibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns are used to mark more than one case: **-ēs** = nominative/vocative plural and accusative plural; **-ibus** = dative plural and ablative plural.

2. Most of the endings for neuter third-declension nouns are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns. Neuter nouns differ only in having **-a** in the nominative/vocative and accusative plural. The neuter singular nominative is supplied by the vocabulary entry only, and the accusative singular is always identical with the nominative singular. REMEMBER: ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL.

3. REMEMBER: TO FIND THE STEM OF ANY NOUN, REMOVE THE ENDING FROM THE GENITIVE SINGULAR FORM.

Third-Declension i-Stem Nouns

Some nouns of the third declension have a genitive plural ending **-ium** instead of **-um** and certain other slightly different endings. These nouns are called **third-declension i-stem nouns**.

Case Endings of the Third-Declension i-Stem					
Masculine/Feminine			Neuter		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	— ⁴	-ēs	Nom./Voc.	— ⁴	-ia
Gen.	-is	-ium	Gen.	-is	-ium
Dat.	-ī	-ibus	Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs/-īs	Acc.	— ⁴	-ia
Abl.	-e	-ibus	Abl.	-ī	-ibus

MEMORIZE EACH OF THESE TWO SETS OF ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a masculine or feminine third-declension i-stem noun or a neuter third-declension i-stem noun, add the appropriate endings to the stem. For example:

	urbs, urbis, -ium <i>f.</i> city stem = urb-	animal, animālis, -ium <i>n.</i> animal stem = animāl-
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
Nom./Voc.	urbs	animal
Gen.	urbis	animālis
Dat.	urbī	animālī
Acc.	urbem	animal
Abl.	urbe	animālī
	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	urbēs	animālia
Gen.	urbium	animālium
Dat.	urbibus	animālībus
Acc.	urbēs/urbīs	animālia
Abl.	urbibus	animālībus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The vocabulary entry for every i-stem noun in this book contains the genitive plural ending (**-ium**) following the full genitive singular. This additional vocabulary element serves to identify each i-stem noun as such and must be memorized.
2. There are two endings for the accusative plural of masculine/feminine i-stem nouns (**-ēs/-īs**) with no difference in meaning. Masculine/feminine i-stem nouns differ from ordinary third-declension nouns in the *genitive and accusative plural only*.

4. Nouns of the third-declension i-stem show wide variation in the nominative singular, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDING. The neuter singular accusative is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NEUTER SINGULAR ACCUSATIVE ENDING.

3. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from all other nouns of the third declension in having **-ī** (not **-e**) as the ablative singular ending. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from ordinary neuter third-declension nouns in having **-ia** (not **-a**) as the nominative and accusative plural ending.
4. There are a few masculine/feminine i-stem nouns that sometimes use **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular. Such nouns are identified in the vocabulary notes.

Among nouns of the third declension, there are many possible forms in the nominative singular and notable differences in the spellings of the nominative singular and genitive singular, from where the stem is taken. In addition, some nouns belong to the i-stem group, and others do not. All such important information for each noun is contained in the vocabulary entry. Therefore, memorizing full vocabulary entries for every third-declension noun is essential.

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in gender, number, and case, first-second-declension adjectives are able to modify third-declension nouns. For example:

militēs bonī	good soldiers (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
corpus validum	strong body (neut. sing. nom./voc./acc.)
urbis pulchrae	of the beautiful city (fem. sing. gen.)
multis animālibus	to/for/from (etc.) many animals (neut. pl. dat./abl.)

The Irregular Third-Declension Noun *vīs*

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THIS IMPORTANT IRREGULAR THIRD-DECLENSION NOUN:

vīs , —, -ium	<i>f.</i> force, power; violence; <i>pl.</i> strength	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	vīs	vīrēs
Gen.	—	vīrium
Dat.	—	vīribus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs/vīrīs
Abl.	vī	vīribus

OBSERVATIONS

- The genitive and dative singular forms do not appear in the Latin literature that survives. MEMORIZE A BLANK AS THE SECOND ELEMENT OF THE VOCABULARY ENTRY AND BLANKS FOR THESE TWO FORMS IN THE DECLENSION.
- In the plural **vīs** is a third-declension i-stem noun with the stem **vīr-**. The **-s-** of the original stem ***vīs-** has changed to **-r-** because of rhotacism (see n. 13, p. 36).

☛ DRILL 55, PAGE 241, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§56. Third-Declension Adjectives

All adjectives that are declined in Latin borrow endings from the declensions of nouns. There are two groups of adjectives only: first-second-declension adjectives, such as **bonus, bona, bonum** (§17), and **third-declension adjectives**, which borrow their endings from third-declension nouns using *all i-stem features* all the time.

Third-declension adjectives may have three forms (m., f., n.), two forms (m./f., n.), or one form (m./f./n.) in the nominative singular. For example:

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce (three forms)
fortis, forte brave; strong (two forms)
fēlix, fēlicis lucky, fortunate, happy (one form)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a third-declension adjective has three forms in the nominative singular, the vocabulary entry contains the same elements as the entry for a first-second-declension adjective: the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative.
2. When a third-declension adjective has two forms in the nominative singular, of which the first ends in **-is** and the second ends in **-e**, the first form is the nominative singular for both masculine and feminine, and the second form is the neuter singular nominative.
3. Certain third-declension adjectives have only one nominative singular form for masculine, feminine, and neuter. In the vocabulary entry, this form is followed by the *genitive singular*.

To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with three or two nominative singular forms, take the *feminine singular nominative* and drop the ending **-is**. To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with one nominative singular form, take the *genitive singular* and drop the ending **-is**. Thus, for the examples above:

ācer, ācris, ācre Stem = **ācr-**
fortis, forte Stem = **fort-**
fēlix, fēlicis Stem = **fēlic-**

To decline a third-declension adjective, add these endings to the stem:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	—	—	—	-ēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	-is	-is	-is	-ium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-em	—	-ēs/-īs	-ēs/-īs	-ia
Abl.	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Third-declension adjectives show wide variation in the nominative singular, where there may be three endings, two endings, or one ending. **MEMORIZE THE VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVE.** The neuter singular accusative is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending.
2. *All third-declension adjectives use all i-stem features.* The ablative singular ending for all genders is **-ī**, an ending borrowed from neuter i-stem nouns. The plural endings include all i-stem features borrowed from third-declension i-stem nouns: **-ia** in the neuter nominative/vocative and accusative, **-ium** in the genitive, **-īs** as an alternate for **-ēs** in the masculine/feminine accusative.

The adjective **fortis**, **forte**, for example, declines as follows:

Stem: fort-	Singular		Plural	
	M./F.	N.	M./F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs/fortīs	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in gender, number, and case, both first-second-declension adjectives and third-declension adjectives are able to modify nouns of all declensions. For example:

nautae ācrēs	fierce sailors (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
fortia facta	brave deeds (neut. pl. nom./voc./acc.)
fēlicīs virōs	fortunate men (masc. pl. acc.)
rēgis fortis	of a brave king (masc. sing. gen.)
mente ācrī	by a keen mind (fem. sing. abl.)

☛ DRILL 56, PAGE 247, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§57. Adverbs II

To form adverbs from third-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem⁵
2. add the ending **-iter**

Thus, for example:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb	
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācr-	ācritēr	fiercely
fortis, forte	fort-	fortitēr	bravely, strongly
fēlix, fēlicis	fēlic-	fēlicitēr	fortunately

Some third-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs (e.g., **ingēns**, **ingentis**), and some have irregularly formed adverbs. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON IRREGULAR ADVERBS:

Adjective	Irregular Adverb	
omnis, omne	omnīnō	entirely, at all
facilis, facile	facile	easily, readily
difficilis, difficile	difficulter	with difficulty

☛ DRILL 56–57, PAGE 249, MAY NOW BE DONE.

5. For adjectives with three or two endings in the nominative singular, drop the **-is** from the feminine singular nominative. For adjectives with one ending in the nominative singular, drop the **-is** from the genitive singular.

§58. Ablative of Separation

When a noun in the ablative case expresses the idea that someone is *apart from* someone or something, it is called an **Ablative of Separation**.⁶ The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, and **dē** are sometimes used, but an Ablative of Separation more often occurs with no preposition. It is usually translated “from _____.” For example:

Vir magnus populum *periculō* liberābit. (*liberō* [1-tr.] free)
 The great man the people (d.o.) *from danger* will free.
 The great man will free the people *from danger*.
Bona est nostra vīta; nam *cūrīs* carēmus. (*careō*, *carēre*, *caruī*, *caritūrus* be without)
 Good is our life; for (*from*) *cares* we are without.
 Our life is good; for we are without *cares*.
***Odiō* libera semper erat.**
From hatred free always she was.
 She was always free *from hatred*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**periculō**, **cūrīs**, **odiō**) is **Ablative of Separation**.

§59. Ablative of Cause

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* expresses the *cause* or *reason* for a quality or verbal action, it is called an **Ablative of Cause**. For example:

Incolae *īrā* atque *odiō* bellum gerēbant.
 The inhabitants *because of (from) anger and hatred* war (d.o.) were waging.
 The inhabitants were waging war *because of anger and hatred*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**īrā**, **odiō**) is **Ablative of Cause**.

OBSERVATION

The use of the ablative case to express cause indicates that cause is understood as the *source* of a particular event or as something *from which* an event arises. Thus, an Ablative of Cause reflects the basic *separative* function of the ablative case. Other expressions of reason or cause that may be equivalent to the Ablative of Cause include: **propter** + accusative, **per** + accusative, and **ē/ex** or **dē** + ablative.

6. For separation as the original function of the ablative case see §1.

§60. Ablative of Place From Which

When a noun in the ablative case is used to express *motion from a place*, it is called an **Ablative of Place From Which**. The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, or **dē** are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns **domus** and **rūs***. For example:

Ab Italiā vēla dedimus.	<i>Away from Italy</i> we set sail. We set sail (<i>away</i>) from Italy.
Agēbāmur ex patriā.	We were being driven <i>out</i> from the country.
Rōmā discēdam.	From Rome I shall depart. I shall depart <i>from</i> Rome.

The syntax of each italicized word (**Italiā**, **patriā**, **Rōmā**) is **Ablative of Place From Which**. The Ablative of Place From Which is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation.

§61. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case

Ablative of Place Where

When a noun in the ablative case expresses the idea of *location*, it is called an **Ablative of Place Where**.⁷ The preposition **in** (less frequently certain other prepositions such as **sub** or **prō**) is regularly used.⁸ For example:

In oppidō erant multī nautae.	<i>In the town</i> there were many sailors.
--------------------------------------	---

The syntax of the italicized word (**oppidō**) is **Ablative of Place Where**.

Locative Case

At an early stage in its development, Latin had a separate case for nouns to express location. This case was called the **Locative Case** and had endings that sometimes resembled genitive endings and sometimes resembled ablative endings. Most nouns lost their locative forms early, and location came to be expressed by the ablative case. However, *the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns **domus** and **rūs** retained their locative case forms*. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING COMMON LOCATIVE FORMS:

<i>Noun</i>	<i>Locative</i>	<i>Translation</i>
domus, domī f.	domī	at home
rūs, rūris n.	rūrī	in the countryside
Rōma, Rōmae f.	Rōmae	in/at Rome
Athēnae, Athēnārum f. pl.	Athēnīs	in/at Athens
Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.	Carthāginī or Carthāgine	in/at Carthage

7. For location as a function of the ablative case see §1.

8. With certain words in certain authors the preposition is omitted, and certain common phrases may also appear without the preposition. For example: **terrā marīque** (on land and on sea).

OBSERVATIONS

1. For nouns that have surviving locative forms, the Ablative of Place Where with the preposition **in** is not regularly used.
2. For first- and second-declension nouns:
 - a. The locative singular ending is identical with the genitive singular ending.
 - b. The locative plural ending is identical with the ablative plural ending.

For third-declension nouns, no consistent rule applies. The locative singular ending may be either **-ī** or **-e** or both.

§62. Accusative of Place To Which

When a noun in the accusative case is used to express *motion toward a place*, it is called an **Accusative of Place To Which**. The prepositions **ad** and **in** (less frequently certain other prepositions such as **sub**) are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns **domus** and **rūs***. For example:

Fēmina ad prōvinciam mittitur.

The woman *to the province* is being sent.

The woman is being sent *to the province*.

Rōmānī Athēnās vēnērunt.

The Romans *to Athens* came.

The Romans came *to Athens*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**prōvinciam**, **Athēnās**) is **Accusative of Place To Which**.

Summary of Place Expressions			
	→ “to” a place	x “in” a place	← “from” a place
Most Nouns and Pronouns	ad/in/sub + Accusative of Place To Which	in/sub + Ablative of Place Where	ē, ex/ā, ab + Ablative of Place From Which
Names of Cities, Towns, Small Islands, domus , and rūs	<i>NO PREPOSITION</i> Accusative of Place To Which Rōmam Athēnās Carthāginem domum rūs	<i>LOCATIVE</i> Rōmae Athēnīs Carthāgine/Carthāginī domī rūrī	<i>NO PREPOSITION</i> Ablative of Place From Which Rōmā Athēnīs Carthāgine domō rūre

☛ DRILL 58–62, PAGE 253, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A character expresses his opinion about the gods' attitude toward human action.

ōdērunt dī hominēs iniūrōs. (NAEVIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 37)

iniūrus, -a, -um lawless, unjust

2. The opinion of a character in a comic play

edepol proinde ut diū vīvitur, bene vīvitur. (PLAUTUS, *TRINUMMUS* 65)

edepol (interj.) by Pollux

proinde (adv.) according, in the same way

diū (adv.) for a long time

3. At the outset of his epic poem, the poet recalls what he saw in a dream.

vīsus Homērus adesse poēta . . . (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* I.3)

Homērus, Homērī *m.* Homer

adsum (**ad-** + **sum**), **adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus** be present

4. A fragment from the epic poetry of Ennius

fortibus est fortūna virīs data. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* VII.19)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance

5. Cicero asks rhetorically how one ought to respond to divine portents.

. . . vōx ipsa deōrum immortalium nōn mentīs omnium permovēbit?

(CICERO, *DE HARUSPICUM RESPŌNSIS* 62)

vōx, vōcis *f.* voice

immortālis, immortalē immortal

permovēō (**per-** + **movēō**) thoroughly move, thoroughly stir

6. As part of his defense of a man charged with murder, Cicero reminds the jurors of the atmosphere in a politically disturbed city.

silent lēgēs inter arma . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ MILŌNE* 11)

sileō, silēre, siluī, — be silent

lēx, lēgis *f.* law

7. The orator quotes a common saying.

iūcundī āctī labōrēs. (CICERO, *DE FĪNIBUS* II.105)

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor

8. The province of Gaul does not recognize Antony as consul. Therefore, Antony is not consul.

omnēs enim in cōnsulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse prōvinciae.

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* IV 9)

cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* consul

9. An example of the brevity and wit of Cicero's epistolary style

Cipius ōlim: "nōn omnibus dormiō." sīc ego nōn omnibus, mī Galle, serviō.

(CICERO, *AD FAMILIARES* VII.24.1)

Cipius, Cipī *m.* Cipius

ōlim (adv.) once

dormiō, dormīre, dormiū/dormivī, dormitum sleep, be asleep

Gallus, Gallī *m.* Gallus

serviō, servīre, serviū/servivī, servitum be a slave (+ dat.)

10. The biographer Nepos explains why Hannibal was made a king.

ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sīc Carthāgine quotannīs annuī binī rēgēs creābantur.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VITA HANNIBALIS* 7)

cōsul, cōsulis *m.* consul

quotannīs (adv.) yearly, every year

annuus, -a, -um yearly; appointed for one year

binī, binae, bina two each, two at a time

creō (1-tr.) create

Some Roman proverbs

11. *contrā fēlicem vix deus vīrēs habet.* (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* C36)

contrā (prep. + acc.) against

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

12. *damnātī lingua vōcem habet, vim nōn habet.* (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* D2)

damnō (1-tr.) condemn

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue

vōx, vōcis *f.* voice

13. *extrēma semper dē ante factīs indicant.* (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* E17)

extrēmus, -a, -um last, final

ante (adv.) before, previously

indicō (1-tr.) reveal, inform, indicate

14. *invidiam ferre aut fortis aut fēlix potest.* (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* I36)

15. *nihil agere semper infēlicī est optimum.* (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* N43)

optimus, -a, -um best

16. *patiēns et fortis sē ipsum fēlicem facit.* (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* P15)

patiēns, patientis enduring, patient

17. The poet reflects on the lives of farmers.

. . . redit agricolīs labor āctus in orbem,
atque in sē sua per vestīgia volvitur annus. (VERGIL, *GEORGICS* II.401–2)

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle
vestīgium, vestīgīi *n.* trace; footstep, track
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus *active and passive,* turn, roll
annus, annī *m.* year

18. The poet introduces the city that would become Rome’s archenemy.

urbs antiq̄ua fuit (Tyrii tenuēre colōnī)
Carthāgō . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.12–13)

antiq̄uus, -a, -um old, ancient
Tyrius, -a, -um Tyrian, Phoenician
colōnus, colōnī *m.* farmer; settler

19. Finally in sight of Italy, Anchises addresses the gods.

“dī maris et terrae tempestātumque potentēs,
ferte viam ventō facilem et spīrāte secundī.”
crēbrēscunt optātae aurae . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* III.528–30)

tempestās, tempestātis <i>f.</i> storm	secundus, -a, -um favorable
potēns, potentis powerful, having power over (+ gen.)	crēbrēscō, crēbrēscere, —, — increase, grow strong
ventus, ventī <i>m.</i> wind	aura, aurae <i>f.</i> breeze
spīrō (1-tr.) breathe, blow	

20. The poet describes a violent encounter on the battlefield.

Catillus Iollān

ingentemque animīs, ingentem corpore et armīs
dēicit Herminium . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* XI.640–42)

Catillus, Catillī *m.* Catillus (an Italian warrior)
Iollās, Iollae *m.* Iollas (a Trojan); **Iollān** = *acc. sing.*
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus throw down, cast down
Herminius, Herminiū *m.* Herminius (a Trojan)

21. Turnus responds bravely to Aeneas’s taunts.

. . . nōn mē tua fervida terrent
dicta, ferōx: dī mē terrent et Iuppiter hostis. (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.894–95)

fervidus, -a, -um seething; furious
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten
ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; defiant
Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter

22. In the context of a country festival and sacrifice, the poet addresses his patron, Messala.

*hūc ades aspīrāque mihi, dum carmine nostrō
redditur agricolīs grātia caelitibus.*

rūra canō rūrisque deōs. . . . (TIBULLUS, *ELEGIAE* II.1.35–37)

hūc (adv.) (to) here, hither

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present;

ades = *sing. imper. act.*

aspīrō (1-intr.) breathe upon; be favorable (+ dat.)

dum (conj.) while, as long as

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus give back, return

grātia, grātia *f.* favor; thanks

caeles, caelitis heavenly, celestial

23. The poet identifies one difficulty in trying to write poetry correctly.

in vitium dūcit culpae fuga sī caret arte. (HORACE, *ARS POETICA* 31)

vitium, vitii *n.* vice, fault

culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault

fuga, fugae *f.* flight; avoidance

ars, artis, -ium *f.* art, skill

24. The poet addresses this remark to his beloved, Cynthia.

omnia sī dederis ōscula, pauca dabis. (PROPERTIUS II.15.50)

ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss

25. Part of Hypermnestra's apostrophe to Io, another unjustly punished victim

per mare, per terrās cognātaque flūmina curris:

dat mare, dant amnēs, dat tibi terra viam. (OVID, *HERŌIDES* XIV.101–2)

cognātus, -a, -um related, kindred

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum run, rush

amnis, amnis, -ium *m.* stream, torrent

26. The poet expresses an emotional quandary.

sīc ego nec sine tē nec tēcum vīvere possum,

et videor vōtī nescius esse meī. (OVID, *AMŌRES* III.11.39–40)

vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow; desire

nescius, -a, -um not knowing; unaware (+ gen.)

27. Odysseus attacks Ajax, his rival for Achilles' arms.

fortis ubi est Aiāx? ubi sunt ingentia magnī

verba virī? . . . (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSES* XIII.340–41)

Aiāx, Aiācis *m.* Ajax (one of the Greek leaders at Troy)

28. The poet sends his new collection of poems off to Rome.

Parve—nec inuideō—sine mē, liber, ībis in urbem. (OVID, *TRISTIA* I.1.1)

inuideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous

29. In a letter to an enemy, the poet in exile explains why he is still a threat.

omnia, sī nescīs, Caesar mihi iūra reliquit,

et sōla est patriā poena carēre meā. (OVID, *TRISTIA*, IV.9.11–12)

nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescivī, nescītus not know

Caesar, Caesaris *m.* Caesar (Augustus)

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus leave (behind)

sōlus, -a, -um only

30. While despairing that he may have lost his ability to compose, the poet mentions an old source of inspiration.

dēnique nōn parvās animō dat glōria vīrēs,

et fēcunda facit pectora laudis amor. (OVID, *TRISTIA*, V.12.37–38)

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

fēcundus, -a, -um fertile, productive, fruitful

pectus, pectoris *n. sing. or pl.*, heart; soul, spirit

laus, laudis *f.* praise

31. The historian comments on Hannibal's taking of Saguntum.

captum oppidum est cum ingentī praedā. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXI.15.1)

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder

32. The historian makes a comparison between a Roman citizen and a citizen of Tarentum, a town in southern Italy.

nōn animō, nōn armīs, nōn arte bellī, nōn vigōre ac vīribus corporis pār Rōmānō

Tarentīnus erat . . . (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXVII.16.1)

ars, artis, -ium *f.* art, skill

vigor, vigoris *m.* liveliness, vigor

pār, paris equal

Tarentīnus, -a, -um of Tarentum, Tarentine

33. Seneca remarks on one of the consequences of wealth.

magna servitūs est magna fortūna. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* XI.6.5)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune

34. Part of the naturalist's description of a particular class of taloned birds

omnibus ālae grandēs, corpus exiguum; ambulant difficulter; . . .

(PLINY THE ELDER, *NATURAL HISTORY* X.42)

āla, ālae *f.* wing

grandis, grande great, large

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight

35. Having praised another writer for his ability to dash off a few verses, the poet makes a distinction.

facile est epigrammata bellē

scrībere, sed librum scrībere difficile est. (MARTIAL VII.85.4–5)

epigramma, epigrammatis *n.* epigram

bellē (adv.) beautifully, prettily

36. After a blistering description of Roman excess, the satirist summarizes his predicament.

difficile est saturam nōn scrībere. (JUVENAL, SATURAE I.30)

satura, saturae *f.* satire

37. The poet compares Cicero to Octavian, who took the title *pater patriae*.

sed Rōma parentem,

Rōma patrem patriae Cicerōnem lībera dīxit.† (JUVENAL, SATURAE VIII.244)

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* Cicero

† **dīcō, here, call**

Two gravestone inscriptions

38. Francus ego cīvis, Rōmānus mīles in armīs,

ēgregiā virtūte tuli bellō mea<m> dextera<m> semper. (CIL III.3576)

Francus, -a, -um Frankish, of or belonging to the Franks (a German tribe)

ēgregius, -a, -um excellent, distinguished

virtūs, virtūtis *f.* courage

dexter, dext(e)ra, dext(e)rum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

39. Nihil sumus et fuimus mortālēs. Respice, lēctor,

in nihil ab nihilō quam citō recidimus. (CIL VI.26003)

mortālis, mortāle mortal

respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectus look

(back); consider, be mindful

lēctor, lēctoris *m.* reader

nihilum, nihilī *n.* nothing

quam (adv.) how

citō (adv.) swiftly

recidō, recidere, recidī, — fall (back)

40. A gravestone inscription for a guard dog

Raedārum custōs numquam latrāvit ineptē:

nunc silet et cinerēs vindicat umbra suōs. (CIL IX.5785)

raeda, raedae *f.* wagon

custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guardian, sentry

latrō (1-intr.) bark

ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately

sileō, silēre, siluī, — be silent

cinis, cineris *m.* ash

vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to; protect, defend

umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade

Longer Readings

1. Ennius, *Annālēs* I.37–42

After the death of Aeneas, his daughter Ilia (later the mother of Romulus and Remus) relates to her sister a frightening dream.

vīrēs vītaque corpus meum nunc dēserit omne.
 nam mē vīsus homō pulcher per amoena salicta
 et rīpās raptāre locōsque novōs. ita sōla
 postillā, germāna soror, errāre vidēbar
 tardaue vestīgāre et quaerere tē neque posse
 corde capessere; sēmita nūlla pedem stabilībat.

40

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon,
 desert, forsake

amoenus, -a, -um pleasing, beautiful

salictum, salictī n. willow bed

rīpa, rīpae f. (river) bank

raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force

locus, locī m. place

novus, -a, -um new, strange

ita (adv.) thus, so

sōlus, -a, -um alone

postillā (adv.) afterward

germānus, -a, -um having the same father
 and mother; true, real

soror, sorōris f. sister

tardus, -a, -um slow

vestīgō (1-tr.) track down, try to find

quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesivī,

quaesītus search for, seek

cor, cordis n. heart; mind

capessō, capessere, capessiī/capessivī,

capessītus take hold of, grasp

sēmita, sēmitae f. path, track

nūllus, -a, -um no, not any

pēs, pedis m. foot

stabilō, stabilīre, stabilivī, stabilītus make steady,
 make sure; **stabilībat = stabiliebat**

Quintus Ennius (239–169 B.C.E.) is the most prominent writer of archaic Latin literature. He was born near Brundisium in southern Italy and was a native speaker of Oscan. He was called the man of three hearts because he spoke Oscan, Latin, and Greek. His epic poem *Annālēs* (*Annals*) is the first Latin epic poem written in dactylic hexameter, the meter of Greek epic. It related all of Roman history in eighteen books, and several hundred fragments of it have survived. In the *Annālēs*, Ennius attempted with considerable success to incorporate many elements of Greek literary style into his work, and his pioneering efforts influenced many later Latin poets, including Vergil.⁹

9. For these and all biographical and literary notes, the authors are indebted to G.B. Conte, *Latin Literature: A History* (Johns Hopkins, 1994).

2. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 4.30

Cicero addresses and attacks his enemy Clodius, who attempted to prevent Cicero's return from exile in 57 B.C.E.

an tū cīvem ab hoste nātūrā ac locō, nōn animō factisque distinguis? caedem in
forō fēcistī, armātīs latrōnibus templa tenuistī, prīvātōrum domōs, aedēs sacrās
incendistī. cūr hostis Spartacus sī tū cīvis?

an (conj.) *introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that . . .*

nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature

locus, locī *m.* place; position, rank

distinguō, distinguere, distīnxī, distīnctus mark out, distinguish

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

latrō, latrōnis *m.* hired soldier; criminal, thief

templum, templī *n.* temple

prīvātus, -a, -um private

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn

Spartacus, Spartacī *m.* Spartacus (Thracian gladiator who led a slave revolt [73–71 B.C.E.])

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.E.), lawyer, statesman, philosopher, and would-be poet, is central to any study of Latin prose style, and he is the single most influential Latin prose writer. His smooth and balanced style was studied by all, emulated by many, and steadfastly avoided by a strong-minded few. Cicero's many writings that have survived—including political and legal orations, philosophical works, and volumes of letters—paint the most detailed portrait that we have of a life in ancient Rome. His political career reached its height when as consul (in 63) he repressed an attempted revolt led by the prominent nobleman Catiline. Twenty years later he was killed at the order of Marc Antony, whose enmity he had incurred through a series of virulent public attacks.

The *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* (Paradoxes of the Stoics), written in 46 B.C.E., comprises explanations of six theories of the Stoic school of philosophy that appeal least to common sense.

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* IX.37–39

Caïcus summons the Trojans to action as the Rutulians attack.

“. . . ferte citi ferrum, date tēla, ascendite mūrōs;
hostis adest, heia!” ingentī clāmōre per omnīs
condunt sē Teucrī portās et moenia complent.

citus, -a, -um swift, quick

tēlum, **tēlī** *n.* spear; weapon

ascendō, **ascendere**, **ascendī**, **ascēnsus** climb,
scale

mūrus, **mūrī** *m.* walls

adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present,
be near

heia (interj.) ho! come on!

clāmōr, **clāmōris** *m.* shout

condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** hide

Teucrī, **Teucrōrum** *m. pl.* Teucrians, Trojans

porta, **portae** *f.* gate

compleō, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētus**
fill (completely)

Publius Vergilius Marō (70–19 B.C.E.) was born near Mantua in northern Italy. By the time of his death his reputation as the greatest Roman poet was already established. In Vergil the Latin poetry of the Golden Age reaches its height. Each of his three works, the *Eclogues*, the *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*, is the masterwork of its genre. Vergil’s poetry is indebted to both the Greek and Roman literary traditions, but although the poet drew freely on his predecessors—in particular, Homer, Hesiod, Theocritus, Ennius, Lucretius, and Catullus—Vergil produced a series of works that demonstrate the poet’s mastery of poetic technique and the depth of his insight into the whole Roman world. The study of Vergil became a staple of Roman education, and as a result his vocabulary, his syntax, and his command of the dactylic hexameter are echoed in all later Roman writers.

The *Aeneid*, Vergil’s most well-known work and the most famous work of Latin literature, is an epic poem written in dactylic hexameters and arranged in twelve books. It traces the travels and development of the Trojan hero Aeneas as he makes his way from his fallen homeland to Italy, where he is to found a new Troy in the form of Rome. Vergil may well have been encouraged by Maecenas and Augustus to write a Roman epic that could rival Homer’s *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. In this poem Vergil creates a new kind of Roman hero, whose greatest virtue, **pietās** (devotion to duty), is secured at a high price. In retelling the legendary foundation of Rome, Vergil appears to weave together both a positive and negative interpretation of the Roman empire and its virtues: while praising the greatness of Rome, the *Aeneid* also calls attention to the cost of that greatness.

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XI.141–43

After King Midas discovers that his golden touch is more of a curse than a blessing, he learns from an oracle how to rid himself of his power. The oracle sends him to a particular river and orders him to do the following.

“. . . subde caput corpusque simul, simul ēlue crīmen.”

rēx iussae succēdit aquae: vīs aurea tīnxit

flūmen et hūmānō dē corpore cessit in amnem; . . .

subdō (sub- + dō), **subdere**, **subdidī**, **subditus**

put under, place under

caput, **capitis** *n.* head

simul (adv.) at the same time

ēluō, **ēluere**, **ēluī**, **ēlūtus** wash out; remove

crīmen, **crīminis** *n.* charge, accusation; fault, defect

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) go under, enter (+ dat.)

aqua, **aquae** *f.* water

aureus, -a, -um golden

tingō, **tingere**, **tīnxī**, **tīnctus** dye, tinge

flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream

hūmānus, -a, -um human

amnis, **amnis**, -ium *m.* stream, torrent

Publius Ovidius Nasō (43 B.C.E. – 17 C.E.) was born at Sulmo, educated in Athens, and then moved to Rome. His talent was quickly noticed, and by the age of forty Ovid was Rome's leading poet. He is usually considered the last of the great poets of the Augustan age. For reasons that are still obscure he was banished to the Black Sea in 8 C.E., where he lived out his remaining years endeavoring to return to Rome. While in exile Ovid produced many elegiac poems pleading for his return, and it is from these that most of our biographical information about him derives. In all his works Ovid's erudition combines with his fantastic imagination to produce a poetic style that is varied, allusive, and often humorous and surprising. He employs a simplicity of syntax and word choice to produce a smoothness and immediate intelligibility that belie the complexity of his material.

The *Metamorphōsēs* is an epic poem in fifteen books and is considered Ovid's masterpiece. It weaves some 250 mythological stories into a single narrative from the beginning of time down to the deification of Julius Caesar.

5. Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 181–85

The chorus sings of the Fates.

dūrae peragunt pēnsa sorōrēs
 nec sua retrō fila revolvunt.
 at gēns hominum fertur rapidīs
 obvia fātīs incerta suī:
 Stygiās ultrō quaerimus undās.

peragō (per- + agō), **peragere**, **perēgī**, **perāctus**
 thoroughly do; accomplish, complete
pēnsum, **pēnsī** *n.* weight; wool (weighed out to
 be spun in a day); *pl.*, spinning
soror, **sorōris** *f.* sister
retrō (adv.) back, backward
filum, **fili** *n.* thread
revolvō, **revolvere**, **revolvī**, **revolūtus** (un)roll;
 go through (again)
at (conj.) but
gēns, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* nation; clan, family

rapidus, **-a**, **-um** consuming; rushing, rapid
obvius, **-a**, **-um** in the way, face to face; (so as)
 to meet (+ dat.)
incertus, **-a**, **-um** unsure, uncertain
Stygius, **-a**, **-um** of or belonging to the
 underworld river Styx; Stygian
ultrō (adv.) of one's own accord, spontaneously,
 voluntarily
quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesīi/quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**
 search for, seek
unda, **undae** *f.* wave, water

Lūcius Annaeus Seneca (4? B.C.E.–65 C.E.) was born in Cordoba in southern Spain and came to Rome when he was a young boy. He is called **Seneca the Younger** to distinguish him from his father, who was a writer of rhetorical exercises. Seneca the Younger's career as a teacher and politician saw many high and low points: he was banished on charges of adultery in 41, recalled through the influence of Claudius's wife Agrippina, and made praetor in 49. He became Nero's tutor at the same time. When Claudius was murdered and Nero became emperor, Seneca was one of his closest advisers. Eventually, however, he fell from grace and was forced to commit suicide in 65. Seneca's literary output was prodigious and includes philosophical treatises, satire, letters, speeches, geography, and, not least, tragedies.

In the *Herculēs Furēns*, based on a play by Euripides, the hero kills his wife and children while in the grip of a madness imposed on him by Juno. After he regains his sanity, Hercules considers killing himself as well, but he is kept from doing this and instead finds sanctuary with Theseus in Athens. The play abounds in the rhetorical excesses that mark all of Seneca's tragedies.

§63. Names in Latin II

Proper names in Latin may belong to the first, second, or third declension. Many of the names of Roman gods belong to the third declension. Here is a list of the names of the most prominent Roman gods and the names of the Greek gods with whom they are identified.

<i>Roman God</i>	<i>Greek Counterpart</i>
Iuppiter, Iovis <i>m.</i> Jupiter, king of the gods, god of sky, weather	Zeus
Iūnō, Iūnōnis <i>f.</i> Juno, goddess of women, marriage	Hera
Neptūnus, Neptūnī <i>m.</i> Neptune, god of the sea	Poseidon
Orcus, Orcī <i>m.</i> Orcus, god of the underworld	Pluto, Hades
Dīs, Dītis <i>m.</i> Dis (“Rich one”), god of the underworld	Pluto, Hades
Cerēs, Cereris <i>f.</i> Ceres, goddess of agriculture	Demeter
Vesta, Vestae <i>f.</i> Vesta, goddess of the hearth	Hestia
Venus, Veneris <i>f.</i> Venus, goddess of desire, passion	Aphrodite
Amor, Amōris <i>m.</i> Love, Amor, son of Venus, god of desire, passion	Eros
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis <i>m.</i> Cupid (another name for Amor)	Eros
Apollō, Apollinis <i>m.</i> Apollo, god of the arts (medicine, poetry, etc.)	Apollo
Diāna, Diānae <i>f.</i> Diana, goddess of virginity, hunting	Artemis
Minerva, Minervae <i>f.</i> Minerva, goddess of arts, sciences, wisdom	Athena
Mars, Martis <i>m.</i> Mars, god of war	Ares
Mercurius, Mercuriī <i>m.</i> Mercury, messenger god, conductor of souls	Hermes
Vulcānus, Vulcānī <i>m.</i> Vulcan, god of fire	Hephaestus
Bacchus, Bacchī <i>m.</i> Bacchus, god of wine	Dionysus
Liber, Liberī <i>m.</i> Liber (“Free one”) (another name for Bacchus)	Dionysus

The Roman poet Ennius composed two dactylic hexameter¹ lines that contain the names of the twelve principal Olympian gods:

Iūnō Vesta Minerva Cerēs Diāna Venus Mars

Mercurius Iovis Neptūnus Volcānus Apollō²

Although the Romans borrowed much from Greek literature and culture, many aspects of Roman religion, including most of the names of their gods, have native Italic origins. Many Italic deities lost their original significance through being identified with a particular god of the Greek pantheon. For example, although Mars became the name for the war god in classical Rome, the name originally belonged to an Italic god of agriculture.

The Romans also engaged in the practice of making men gods. In the historical period this began after the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 B.C.E.³ When a comet was seen in the sky in 43, it was declared to be **dīvus Iūlius** (“divine” or “deified Julius”). (LEARN THESE ADJECTIVES: **DĪVUS, -A, -UM** DEIFIED, DIVINE; **DĪVĪNUS, -A, -UM** BELONGING TO THE GODS, DIVINE.) Even the title **Augustus**, adopted by Octavian in 27 B.C.E.,

1. For this meter see §83.

2. The *-i-* of **Diāna** here scans *long*. **Iovis** is here nominative singular, and its last syllable here scans *short*. The spelling **Volcānus** is archaic.

3. According to legend Romulus was also deified.

reflects the unique relation of the Romans to things religious. Before Octavian took it as an honorific name, the adjective **augustus, -a, -um** (“venerable,” “revered”) had been applied only to religious objects, temples, and the like, but never to a person.

Below are listed names that belong to the third declension and additional names that belong to the first and second declensions. These names and the names above are used in the sentences throughout this book. When they appear in readings, they are not included in vocabulary lists. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR.

Historical Figures⁴

C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūlii Caesaris *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (Julius Caesar)

M. Porcius Catō, M. Porcii Catōnis *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato (Cato)

M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tullii Cicerōnis *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (Cicero)

Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal

Poets

P. Ovidius Nāsō, P. Ovidii Nāsōnis *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid)

Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertii *m.* Sextus Propertius (Propertius)

P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergilii Marōnis *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil)

Poets' Names for Their Beloveds⁵

Corinna, Corinnae *f.* Corinna

Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia

Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* Lesbia

4. The name **Caesar** may designate Julius Caesar, but it was also taken as a *cognōmen* by all the emperors until Hadrian in the second century c.e. There are two important Romans named **Marcus Porcius Cato**: Cato the Elder (**Catō Maior**) and Cato of Utica (**Catō Uticēnsis**). Cato the Elder, so called to distinguish him from the second Cato, was also known as Cato the Censor. He played a central role in the political and cultural life of the second century b.c.e. Cato of Utica, the Elder's great-grandson, fought on Pompey's side against Julius Caesar and committed suicide rather than accept Caesar's pardon. **Hannibal** was the leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war. He was Rome's fiercest opponent, invading Italy, winning many important battles, and nearly succeeding in subduing Rome.

5. **Lesbia**, **Cynthia**, and **Corinna** are the names assigned in their love poetry to their beloveds by the poets **Catullus**, **Propertius**, and **Ovid** respectively.

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary

- āra, ārae *f.* altar
- cōpia, cōpiae *f.* abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces
- fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance
- insidiae, insidiarum *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery
- nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature
- umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade
- ingenium, ingenii *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent
- templum, templi *n.* temple
- ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile, trick
- civitās, civitātis *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship
- frāter, frātris *m.* brother
- mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death
- pars, partis, -ium *f.* part
- soror, sorōris *f.* sister
- virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue
- vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word
- maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; *tr.*, await
- terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten
- cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupitus desire, long for, want
- fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee
- petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petitus ask (for), seek; attack
- trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down
- vincō, vincere, vicī, victus conquer, overcome; *intr.*, win
- auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove
- differō, differre, distulī, dilātus *intr.*, differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions
- acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh
- antiquus, -a, -um old, ancient
- cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ *dat.*)
- certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable
- incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable
- falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false
- novus, -a, -um new; strange
- vērus, -a, -um real, true
- mortālis, mortāle mortal
- immortalis, immortalē immortal
- ante (*adv.*) before, earlier, previously
(*prep.* + *acc.*) before; in front of
- aut (*conj.*) or
- aut . . . aut . . . either . . . or . . .
- etiam (*adv.*) also, even; still
- ita (*adv.*) so, thus, in this way, in such a way
- nē (*adv.*) not (§70)
- post (*adv.*) after(ward), later; behind
(*prep.* + *acc.*) after; behind
- solum (*adv.*) only
- nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . .
not only . . . but also . . .
- utinam (*particle*) introduces an Optative subjunctive (§70)
- vērō (*adv.*) certainly, indeed; but (in fact)
- vērum (*conj.*) but

Vocabulary Notes

- In the singular **cōpia**, **cōpiae** *f.* means “abundance” (of food, of material). In the plural it most often means “troops” or “forces” (an abundance of soldiers).
- **fortūna**, **fortūnae** *f.* indicates something that is opposed to reason or predictability. **fortūna** may be good or bad and is often personified as the divine agent Fortune.
- **insidiae**, **insidiarum** *f. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin, but it has singular meanings (ambush, plot, treachery).
- **nātūra**, **nātūrae** *f.* descends from the PIE root *genE (be born). **nātūra** is thus the power that determines the physical properties of plants, animals, humans—of the world. It may also refer to the essence, function, or fundamental quality of anything (the nature of the soul, of gods, of fear). Both **nātūra** and **ingenium** may refer to the “(innate) character” of a person, and they are sometimes used together. In philosophical contexts, **nātūra** (sometimes capitalized) means the order or guiding principle that governs the world.
- Like **nātūra**, **ingenium**, **ingeniī** *n.* also descends from the PIE root *genE (be born). **ingenium** thus refers to a quality that is inborn, and it is most commonly used of human beings. In some instances it refers to a person’s natural “temperament” or “disposition.” It is often used of literary or oratorical “ability” or “talent.”
- In contrast to **nātūra** or **ingenium**, **ars**, **artis**, **-ium** *f.* refers to a “skill” learned or acquired through practice. **ars** may be used of any “craft” or “trade,” including the crafts of artistic expression (music, poetry). It may also mean a specific body of knowledge (the art of divination, of philosophy). Sometimes **ars** is used of a particular “work of art.” **ars** may have a negative sense (artificiality, craftiness) and so may mean “guile” or “trick.” The term **bonae artēs** means “liberal studies” or “cultural pursuits,” those pursuits that are the mark of civilized society.
- **cīvitās**, **cīvitātis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the abstract noun suffix **-tās** to the stem of the noun **cīvis**. **cīvitās** may mean an organized community to which one belongs as a citizen (state, citizenry), or it may mean the rights one has as a citizen (citizenship).

Magnō in periculō cīvitās fuit.
Poētam cīvitāte dōnābimus.

The state was in great danger.
We shall reward the poet with citizenship.

- **pars**, **partis**, **-ium** *f.* refers to one of the portions into which a thing is divided. It may be repeated to indicate different groups or sections, and when it is the subject, **pars** may take a *plural* verb.

Caesar partem mīlitum in bellum dūxit, partem in prōvinciam mīsīt.
Caesar led part of the soldiers into war, he sent part into the province.
Pars hostium proelium optābant, pars timēbant.
Part of the enemies were desiring battle, part were fearing (it).

pars may also mean a “side,” “position,” or “opinion” held or taken. In both the singular and the plural, **pars** may refer to a political “faction” or to either “side” in a lawsuit or trial.

- **virtūs**, **virtūtis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the abstract noun suffix **-tūs** to the stem of the noun **vir**. Its specific sense is thus “manliness” or “courage,” but it also may refer more generally to any intellectual or moral “excellence” or “virtue.”
- **vōx**, **vōcis** *f.* may mean the “voice” of a human or of a musical instrument, or it may mean that which is produced by the human voice or instrument (word or sound). The singular may also be used to refer to an “utterance” or “speech.”
- **maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus** is regularly an intransitive verb meaning “remain” or “stay.” The fourth principal part, **mānsūrus** (about to remain), is a future active participle. With **in** + ablative **maneō** may mean “remain steady in” or “abide by” (the truth, a conviction, a pact). It is occasionally used transitively and means “await” or “wait for” someone or something. Compounds of **maneō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MANEŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Ubi incolae discessērunt, mānsimus.
Sulla semper in sententiā mānsīt.
Fāta et bonum virum manent.

When the inhabitants departed, we remained.
Sulla always remained (steady) in (his) opinion.
The fates await even the good man.

- Compounds of **terreō**, **terrēre**, **terruī**, **terrītus** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **TERREŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **cupiō, cupere, cupiī** or **cupivī, cupītus** may take an Object Infinitive, often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §108). **cupiō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **cupi-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**cupistī, cupistis**). While both **cupiō** and **optō** mean “desire,” **cupiō** expresses a natural or involuntary desire, while **optō** suggests a more deliberate choice.

Servī esse liberī cupiunt.
Servī gladiōs optant.

Slaves desire to be free. (natural desire)
The slaves desire swords. (deliberate desire)

- **fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus** is most often intransitive but is occasionally used transitively. The fourth principal part, **fugitūrus** (about to flee), is a future active participle. **fugiō** is often used of a person going into exile. Compounds of **fugiō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FUGIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petītus** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **peti-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**petistī, petistis**). When **petō** means “ask for” or “seek,” it takes a direct object of the thing asked for. The person from whom something is sought is expressed by **ā/ab** + ablative. When the verb means “attack,” it takes a direct object of the person or thing attacked. Compounds of **petō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PETŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Servus pecūniam ā dominō petit.
Servus gladiō dominum petit.

The slave asks for money from (his) master.
The slave attacks (his) master with a sword.

- **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **trāns-** (across) to **dō**; it exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third and fourth principal parts. **trādō** may mean “hand over” or “surrender.” It often means “hand down” in the sense of transmitting something to posterity or of relating a story. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **DŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **TRĀDŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **DŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **vincō, vincere, vicī, victus** has the intransitive meaning “win” in the sense of “prevail,” “be victorious.” Compounds of **vincō, vincere, vicī, victus** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **VINCŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus** is formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to **ferō**. In the first two principal parts the **-b-** of the prefix drops out, and the **a-** lengthens into the diphthong **au-**. When a vowel lengthens to compensate for the loss of another letter, this phonetic change is called **compensatory lengthening**. In the third principal part, a fuller form of the prefix, **abs-**, appears. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF **FERŌ** SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS **FERŌ**.
- **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus** is formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **ferō**. In the first two principal parts the final **-s-** of **dis-** assimilates to the **f-** of **ferō**. In the fourth principal part the **-s-** of the prefix drops out and the **-i-** is lengthened. **differō** is more often intransitive (differ, be different) than transitive, and it may appear with an Ablative of Respect. The person or group from whom one differs is usually expressed by a noun in the ablative case with the preposition **ā/ab**. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF **FERŌ** SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS **FERŌ**.

Ā frātre sententiā differt.

He differs from (his) brother in (respect to) (his) opinion.

- The adjective **cārus, -a, -um** is often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the person to whom someone or something is dear. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Incolae dīs cārī discēdunt.

The inhabitants dear to the gods are departing.

- **certus, -a, -um** may describe both things (plans, decisions) and people as “determined,” “certain,” or “fixed.” The adverb **certē**, in addition to affirming (surely, certainly), may also limit (certainly, at least).

Verba poētae intellegere certē potes.

You are certainly able to understand the words of the poet.

Ego certē prō patriā pugnābō.

I at least shall fight for the homeland.

- **novus, -a, -um** may be translated either “new” or “strange” and is used to describe people or things previously unseen or unknown. When a man from an unestablished family achieved a major political office for the first time, he was called a **homō novus** or **novus homō**, “new man.” The term often carried an implied insult.
- **mortālis, mortāle**, “mortal,” is derived from the noun **mors** by the addition of the suffix **-ālis, -āle** (of, belonging to, subject to) to the stem **mort-**. Any living being described as **mortālis** is subject to death. **mortālis** and the related adjective **immortālis, immortalē** (**in-** [not] + **mortālis**) are commonly used as substantives.
- **ante** may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (earlier, previously, before). As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (before) or a spatial one (before, in front of).

Verba poëtae ante nōn intellēxī.	I did not understand the words of the poet before (previously).
Ante bellum miserī erant incolae.	Before the war the inhabitants were miserable.
Nauta ante templum ambulābat.	The sailor was walking in front of the temple.

- **aut** is a coordinating conjunction and thus connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. **aut** joins a previous word, phrase, or clause with another equivalent one that is antithetical to it. **aut** is used to indicate mutually exclusive propositions.

Servus aut liber est incola.	The inhabitant is a slave or a free man.
-------------------------------------	--

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **aut** is often used to mark each element: e.g., **aut filium aut filiam**. It is convenient to translate the first **aut** by the English word “either”: “either the son or the daughter” (direct objects). When such a parallel series is longer than two (**aut nautam aut agricolam aut poëtam**), omit translating the first **aut** and say “or” for the others: “the sailor or the farmer or the poet” (direct objects).

- The adverb **etiam**, “also,” “even,” marks a fact or thought added to one already mentioned. The additional idea or thought is usually understood to be more important than the preceding one. When the thought is related to time, **etiam** means “still.” **etiam** is usually placed immediately before the word it emphasizes.

Discēdam. Nōn etiam timēbō.	I shall depart. I shall not also fear.
Etiam puerōs ex prōvinciā agēs?	Will you drive even the boys out from the province?
Quoniam superāvistī, virōs interficere etiam optās?	Because you have conquered, do you still desire to kill the men?

- The adverb **ita** may refer to what precedes or what follows. Like **sīc**, it may be used in comparisons to correlate with **ut** (as).

Nōn ita amō ut hominēs.	I do not love so as humans (do).
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

In answers, it is used for strong affirmation or negation.

Ita est.	It is so.
Nōn est ita.	It is not so.

- **nē** is a negating adverb (like **nōn**) used only in particular constructions with verbs in the subjunctive. It may be used to negate a Hortatory/Jussive or Optative subjunctive (§70).
- **post** may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (after[ward], later), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of “behind.” As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (after) or a spatial one (behind).
- **sōlum** is an irregular adverb meaning “only.” It is derived from the adjective **sōlus, -a, -um** (alone, only). **vērūm** is a conjunction derived from the adjective **vērū, -a, -um** and means “but.” **sōlum** and **vērūm** may be used separately, but they are often used in the construction **nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērūm etiam . . .** (not only . . . but also . . .).

Crassus inimicōs nōn sōlum pecūniā sed/vērūm etiam gladiō superāvit.
Crassus overcame (his) enemies not only by money but also by the sword.

- **utinam** is an introductory particle that may introduce an Optative subjunctive (§70). An **introductory particle** introduces a particular kind of clause or speech. **utinam** is not translated in this construction.

► **vērō** is an irregular adverb derived from the adjective **vērus**, -a, -um. Although it may mean “truly,” it is more often used in answers to express agreement (certainly, indeed) or with mild adversative force to join two sentences (but [in fact]) and add an additional corroborating thought. In this second usage, it is always postpositive.

Fuistī in oppidō?

Vērō.

Were you in the town?

Indeed (I was).

Bonus poēta erat Catullus, magnus vērō Vergilius.

Catullus was a good poet, but (in fact) Vergil (was a) great (one).

acerbus

āra

cārus

certus

maneō

mors

pars

petō

vērus

vincō

Derivatives

acerbic; acrid; acid

arid

charity; caress; cherish

certain; decree; secret

mansion; permanent; ménage

mortal; amortize

parcel; parse; part

petition; appetite; repeat

verity; verdict; very; verify

vanquish; convince, evict

Cognates

acme; acute; hammer

ash

Kamasutra

crime; critic; riddle

murder; ambrosia; manticore

pair; par; compare

archaeopteryx; symptom

warlock

wight; Ordovician

§64. Introduction to the Subjunctive

The subjunctive mood has been identified as the mood used to express a variety of nonfactual ideas (§5). It contrasts with the indicative, the mood used to represent something as factual. For example:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
We are beginning.	Let us begin. (exhortation)
I fell.	I might have fallen. (potentiality)
She will come.	If only she would come! (wish)

In Latin the verbs in the sentences on the right would all be in the subjunctive mood because the writer or speaker wishes to represent these actions as nonfactual.

While Latin has six tenses in the indicative mood, it has only four tenses in the subjunctive mood: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.¹ The tenses of the indicative always indicate specific times (present, past, future) and aspects (simple, progressive/repeated, completed) and always have the same translations that reflect those times and aspects in a concrete, factual way. The tenses of the subjunctive, however, may express a complex range of nonfactual ideas and therefore cannot be limited to one, always correct, translation. Sometimes a tense of the subjunctive indicates not a fixed point in time but rather a relation in time of one verb to another. Although there are many possible translations of the subjunctive, *each individual use* of this mood does have *its own translation formula that must be memorized*.

Each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood is formed in the same way for verbs of all conjugations. The four tenses of the subjunctive occur in both the active and the passive voices. Like the indicative, the subjunctive may be divided as follows:

<i>Present System</i> (tenses formed with the stem from the second principal part)
Present Active and Passive Subjunctive
Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive
<i>Perfect Active System</i> (tenses formed with the stem from the third principal part)
Perfect Active Subjunctive
Pluperfect Active Subjunctive
<i>Perfect Passive System</i> (tenses formed with the fourth principal part)
Perfect Passive Subjunctive
Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

1. There is neither a future nor a future perfect subjunctive.

§65. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the present active and passive subjunctive of *all* conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. *change the stem* by replacing the stem vowels with the following infixes:²

1st	2nd	3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
-ē-	-eā-	-ā-	-iā-	-iā-

3. add the active or passive personal endings directly to the changed present stem (use **-m/-r** for first person singular)

Thus the present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, **vocō**, **moveō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

	Active		Passive	
	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1st Conjugation				
Changed	1 vocem	vocēmus	vocer	vocēmur
Stem:	2 vocēs	vocētis	vocēris/vocēre	vocēminī
vocē-	3 vocet	vocent	vocētur	vocentur
2nd Conjugation				
Changed	1 moveam	moveāmus	movear	moveāmur
Stem:	2 moveās	moveātis	moveāris/moveāre	moveāminī
moveā-	3 moveat	moveant	moveātur	moveantur
3rd Conjugation				
Changed	1 regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
Stem:	2 regās	regātis	regāris/regāre	regāminī
regā-	3 regat	regant	regātur	regantur
3rd Conjugation				
<i>i-stem</i>				
Changed	1 capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
Stem:	2 capiās	capiātis	capiāris/capiāre	capiāminī
capiā-	3 capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
4th Conjugation				
Changed	1 audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
Stem:	2 audiās	audiātis	audiāris/audiāre	audiāminī
audiā-	3 audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

OBSERVATIONS

1. The personal endings added to the changed present stems are the same as those used in the indicative conjugations. No new endings must be learned. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.
2. No English translations can be given for subjunctive verb forms unless they appear in Latin sentences because different grammatical uses or structures require different translations. Context usually makes clear the correct English translation for each subjunctive verb.

2. The following sentence may serve as a useful mnemonic device for remembering these infixes:

Shē weārs ā giānt diāmond.

3. The first person singular present active and passive subjunctive of the third, third-i-stem, and fourth conjugations are identical with the first person singular future active and passive indicative. For example, **regam** (present subjunctive) = **regam** (I shall rule). Context usually makes clear which form is more appropriate.
4. The present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of the irregular third-conjugation verb **ferō** are regularly formed.

The present active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, and **eō** are irregular and must be memorized:³

<i>Singular</i>			
1	sim	possim	eam
2	sīs	possīs	eās
3	sit	possit	eat
<i>Plural</i>			
1	sīmus	possīmus	eāmus
2	sītis	possītis	eātis
3	sint	possint	eant

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of **sum** in the present active subjunctive is **sī-**. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule. The present active subjunctive of **possum** adds the prefix **pos-** to the present active subjunctive of **sum** (§10).
2. The stem of **eō** in the present active subjunctive is **eā-**. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

§66. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the imperfect active and passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the present active infinitive (*all* of the second principal part)
2. lengthen the final **-e** (**-e** → **-ē**)
3. add the active and passive personal endings directly to the second principal part with lengthened final **-ē** (use **-m/-r** for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, **regō** are:

Present Active Infinitive with lengthened final -e :	regerē-	Passive
	Active	<i>Singular</i>
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
1	regerem	regerer
2	regerēs	regerēris/regerēre
3	regeret	regerētur
	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1	regerēmus	regerēmur
2	regerētis	regerēminī
3	regerent	regerentur

3. **Sum** and **possum** have no passive. **Eō** has only impersonal passive forms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.
2. The imperfect active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, and **eō** are regularly formed. The imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of **ferō** are also regularly formed.

§67. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix **-eri-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the perfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: rēx-		Infix: -eri-	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
1	rēxerim	rēxerimus	
2	rēxeris	rēxeritis	
3	rēxerit	rēxerint	

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjugation of the perfect active subjunctive is identical with that of the future perfect active indicative except in the first person singular. For example, compare **rēxerō** (future perfect indicative) with **rēxerim** (perfect subjunctive).
2. The perfect active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, **eō**, and **ferō** are regularly formed.

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix **-issē-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: rēx-		Infix: -issē-	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
1	rēxissem	rēxissēmus	
2	rēxissēs	rēxissētis	
3	rēxisset	rēxissent	

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.
2. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, and **ferō** are regularly formed. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of **eō** is regularly formed from the stem **iv-**. However, the alternate stem **i-** contracts with the **i-** of the infix **-issē-**. Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of **eō** formed from this alternate stem is: **issem**, **issēs**, **isset**, **issēmus**, **issētis**, **issent**.
3. For all verbs with stems ending in **-i-** in the third principal part (e.g., **cupiō**, **petō**), the **-i-** regularly contracts with the **-i-** of the infix **-issē-** to produce **-ī-** (**-īssē-**) (e.g., **petissem**).

§68. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add *as a separate word* the present subjunctive of **sum**

Thus the perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1	rēctus, -a, -um sim	rēctī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	rēctus, -a, -um sīs	rēctī, -ae, -a sītis
3	rēctus, -a, -um sit	rēctī, -ae, -a sint

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated as a unit.
2. The perfect passive participle ends in **-us** (sing.) or **-ī** (pl.) if the subject is masculine, **-a** (sing.) or **-ae** (pl.) if the subject is feminine, **-um** (sing.) or **-a** (pl.) if the subject is neuter.
3. The perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of **ferō** is regularly formed.

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**

Thus the pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1	rēctus, -a, -um essem	rēctī, -ae, -a essēmus
2	rēctus, -a, -um essēs	rēctī, -ae, -a essētis
3	rēctus, -a, -um esset	rēctī, -ae, -a essent

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated as a unit.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle.
3. The pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of *ferō* is regularly formed.

§69. Synopsis V: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the subjunctive mood, the subjunctive immediately follows the indicative and precedes the infinitive. *No English translations are given for subjunctive forms.* Here is a model synopsis of *audiō* in the third person plural masculine:

Principal Parts: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus				
Person, Number, and Gender: 3rd pl. m.				
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	audiunt	they hear	audiuntur	they are (being) heard
Imperfect	audiēbant	they were hearing	audiēbantur	they were being heard
Future	audient	they will hear	audientur	they will be heard
Perfect	audivērunt/ audivēre	1. they heard 2. they have heard	audītī sunt	1. they were heard 2. they have been heard
Pluperfect	audiverant	they had heard	audītī erant	they had been heard
Future Perfect	audiverint	they will have heard	audītī erunt	they will have been heard
<i>Subjunctive</i>				
Present	audiant		audiantur	
Imperfect	audirent		audirentur	
Perfect	audiverint		audītī sint	
Pluperfect	audivissent		audītī essent	
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	audire	to hear	audīrī	to be heard
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	audī	hear	audire	be heard
Plural	audīte	hear (pl.)	audīminī	be heard (pl.)

☛ DRILL 64–69, PAGE 275, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§70. Three Independent Subjunctives

Although its name refers to its eventual appearance in many kinds of *dependent* or *subordinate* clauses (subjunctive < **sub-** + **iungō**, join under), in origin the subjunctive was a mood for verbs in *independent* or *main* clauses when certain basic nonfactual ideas were to be expressed. Later uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses developed from these basic independent uses, but the subjunctive never ceased being used as an independent mood as well.

Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive

A verb in the present subjunctive may express a strong suggestion or exhortation. The particle **nē** is used for negation. A subjunctive so used is called a **Hortatory** (when the verb is in the first person) or a **Jussive** (when the verb is in the second or third person) subjunctive.⁴ For example:

Rōmam eāmus.	<i>Let us go to Rome. (Hortatory)</i>
Nē ex urbe discēdat.	<i>Let him not depart from the city. (Jussive)</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The English word “let” is regularly used to translate the Hortatory/Jussive subjunctive.
2. The syntax of, for example, **discēdat** is **present subjunctive, Jussive**.⁵
3. In early and colloquial Latin the Jussive subjunctive in the second person was used as the equivalent of an *imperative* to express a positive command. In the classical period the Jussive as a positive command remains common in poetry. For example: **Abeās!** Go away!

Negative Commands

When preceded by **nē**, the second person singular or plural present or perfect subjunctive expresses a negative command. This is a particular use of the Jussive subjunctive.

Nē labōrēs, serve.	<i>Do not work, slave.</i>
Nē ab hostibus captī sītis.	<i>Do not (pl.) be captured by the enemies.</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. In classical Latin the perfect subjunctive is more common in prose and more emphatic than the present subjunctive in negative commands. In this use the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than completed aspect.
2. The syntax of, for example, **captī sītis** is **perfect subjunctive, Jussive in a negative command**.

4. Hortatory is derived from the Latin **hortor** (exhort) and Jussive from **iubeō** (order).

5. The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

Potential Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility in present or future time*. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility that existed in the past*. The adverb **nōn** is used for negation. A subjunctive so used is called a **Potential** subjunctive. For example:

Rōmae multa videās.	<i>You could see many things in Rome.</i> (Potential, pres./fut. time)
Id nōn fēcerim.	<i>I would not do this thing.</i> (Potential, pres./fut. time)
Domum venīrent.	<i>They might have come home.</i> (Potential, past time)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect subjunctive is rarely used in early Latin and becomes more common by the time of Cicero. In this use the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than completed aspect.
2. When the potential subjunctive appears in the second person singular, its subject is often an imaginary or general “you.”
3. The English words “might,” “could,” or “would” are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in present or future time.
4. The English phrases “might have,” “could have,” or “would have” are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in past time.
5. When the Potential subjunctive is negated, as in the second sentence, the possibility of the verbal action is *denied*. Only “would not/would not have” or “could not/could not have” should be used to translate the *negative* of Potential subjunctives.⁶
6. The syntax of, for example, **venīrent** is **imperfect subjunctive, Potential, past time**.

Optative Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive may express a *wish that can be fulfilled in the future*. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *wish that cannot be fulfilled in the present*, and a *pluperfect* subjunctive may express a *wish that could not be fulfilled in the past*. A subjunctive so used is called an **Optative** subjunctive. All Optative subjunctives express wishes felt or uttered by the writer or speaker. The particle **nē** is used for negation. The word **utinam** may be used to introduce an Optative subjunctive, but it is not required.⁷ For example:

[Utinam] militēs nostrī superent!	<i>If only our soldiers would conquer!</i> <i>May our soldiers conquer!</i> (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Rōmae vīverem!	<i>If only I were living in Rome!</i> (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
Nē id ēgisset!	<i>If only he had not done it!</i> (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

6. If the second sentence were translated “I might not do this thing,” the English still allows the possibility that the subject *might* do this thing.

7. *Ut* rather than *utinam* appears in early Latin and, rarely, in poetry.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present subjunctive in the first sentence implies that the wish *can come true* at some future time. By contrast, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives in the second and third sentences imply that these wishes *cannot/could not come true*.

2. Three English translation formulas distinguish among the three types of Optative subjunctives:

Present Subjunctive	“If only . . . would . . .” (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Imperfect Subjunctive	“If only . . . were . . .” (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
Pluperfect Subjunctive	“If only . . . had . . .” (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

A present wish capable of fulfillment may also be translated with the English word “may,” as in the translation of the first sentence.

3. The syntax of, for example, *viverem* is **imperfect subjunctive, Optative, present wish incapable of fulfillment**.

Summary of Independent Subjunctives			
Name	Tense of Subjunctive	Negation	English Translation
Hortatory (1st person)	Present	nē	“Let . . .”
Jussive (3rd person)	Present		“Let . . .”
(2nd person)	Present		as imperative
(2nd person negated = negative command)	Present or Perfect		“Do not . . .”
Potential		nōn	
Present or Future Time	Present or Perfect		“might,” ⁸ “could,” “would”
Past Time	Imperfect		“might have,” ⁸ “could have,” “would have”
Optative (<i>utinam</i> or —)		nē	
Future Capable of Fulfillment	Present		“If only . . . would . . .,” “May . . .”
Present Incapable of Fulfillment	Imperfect		“If only . . . were . . .”
Past Incapable of Fulfillment	Pluperfect		“If only . . . had . . .”

☛ DRILL 70, PAGE 281, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§71. Conditional Sentences II

Some conditional sentences (Simple, Future More Vivid, Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis) have verbs in the indicative mood (§49). Other conditional sentences have verbs in the subjunctive mood to reflect the *nonfactual* character of the ideas they express.

8. “Might” and “might have” can be used only when a potential subjunctive is not negated.

Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences

In a **Future Less Vivid** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present subjunctive*. The Future Less Vivid contrasts with the Future More Vivid in that it represents future events *less vividly* (i.e., less factually) by using verbs in the subjunctive rather than the indicative mood. For example:

Sī Catilīna capiātur, laetī sint multī cīvēs.

If Catiline *should be captured*, happy *would be* many citizens.

If Catiline *should be captured*, many citizens *would be* happy.

OBSERVATION

The English words “should” (in the protasis) and “would” (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences

Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis are *not* occurring or *did not* occur. Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences are of two types: present or past. In a **Present Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *imperfect subjunctive*. In a **Past Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both protasis and apodosis are in the *pluperfect subjunctive*. For example:

Sī ad bellum īrem, arma caperem.

If to war I *were going* (*but I am not*), arms (d.o.) I *would be taking up* (*but I am not*).

If I *were going* to war, I *would be taking up* arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the imperfect subjunctive report nonfactual or contrary-to-fact events that are not occurring in the present.
2. The English words “were” (in the protasis) and “would” (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Sī rēx interfectus esset, cīvēs timōre liberātī essent.

If the king *had been killed* (*but he was not*), the citizens from fear *would have been freed* (*but they were not*).

If the king *had been killed*, the citizens *would have been freed* from fear.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the pluperfect subjunctive report nonfactual or contrary-to-fact events that did not occur in the past.
2. The English words “had” (in the protasis) and “would have” (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Mixed Conditional Sentences

In addition to the types of conditional sentences described thus far, two mixed conditional sentences commonly occur, which combine protases and apodoses from

two conditional sentences. In a **Mixed Future** conditional sentence, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *present subjunctive*, and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *future indicative*. For example:

Sī servus miser capiātur, poenās dabit.

If the miserable slave *should be captured*, he *will pay* the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Mixed Future conditional sentence combines the protasis of a Future Less Vivid (present subjunctive) with the apodosis of a Future More Vivid (future indicative). The event of the protasis is represented less vividly (i.e., less factually) by the subjunctive. By contrast, the event of the apodosis is represented more vividly (i.e., more factually) by the indicative.
2. The English words “should” (in the protasis) and “will” (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Mixed Future conditional sentence.

In a **Mixed Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *pluperfect subjunctive* and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *imperfect subjunctive*. For example:

Sī ad insulam ivissēmus, liberī nunc timōre bellī essēmus.

If we *had gone* to the island, we *would now be* free from fear of war.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence combines the protasis of a Past Contrary-to-Fact (pluperfect subjunctive) with the apodosis of a Present Contrary-to-Fact (imperfect subjunctive). The verb of the protasis reports an event that did not occur in the past, and the verb of the apodosis reports an event that is not occurring in the present.
2. The English words “had” (in the protasis) and “would” (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences⁹

Name	Verbs in Latin	Verbs in English
Future Less Vivid	Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	“should” in Protasis, “would” in Apodosis
Present Contrary-to-Fact	Imperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	“were” in Protasis, “would” in Apodosis
Past Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	“had” in Protasis, “would have” in Apodosis
Mixed Future	Present Subjunctive in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	“should” in Protasis, “will” in Apodosis
Mixed Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in Protasis, Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis	“had” in Protasis, “would” in Apodosis

☛ DRILL 71, PAGE 289, MAY NOW BE DONE.

9. For other conditional sentence formulas see §49.

§72. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction

A noun in the dative case, usually not modified by an adjective, may express an idea of purpose or service. A **Dative of Purpose**¹⁰ usually joins with a Dative of Reference (§1) to form what is called the **double dative construction**. For example:

Tū mihi cūrae es.	You to me for the purpose of a concern are. You are for the purpose of a concern to me. You are a source of concern to me.
Filiō librum dōnō tulī.	For (my) son a book (d.o.) for the purpose of a gift I brought. I brought a book for the purpose of a gift for (my) son. I brought a book (to serve) as a gift for (my) son.

The syntax of **cūrae** and **dōnō** is **Dative of Purpose**. The syntax of **mihi** and **filiō** is **Dative of Reference**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Dative of Purpose may be translated “for the purpose of _____,” but may also be translated more loosely with phrases such as “a source of _____” or “(serve) as a _____.”
2. Although the Dative of Purpose frequently appears with a Dative of Reference in the double dative construction, it may also appear alone. For example:

Militēs ad Crassum auxiliō missī sunt.
Soldiers were sent to Crassus for the purpose of aid.

§73. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage

Sometimes a Dative of Reference clearly expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage the event of a sentence occurs. In such sentences a Dative of Reference may be called instead a **Dative of Advantage** or a **Dative of Disadvantage**. For example:

Poēta carmina puerīs puellisque canit.
The poet songs (d.o.) for (the advantage of) boys and girls is singing.
The poet is singing songs for boys and girls.

Moram nautae fēcistī.
A delay (d.o.) for (the disadvantage of) the sailor you made.
You made a delay for the sailor.

Servō poena magnō erat malō.
To (the disadvantage of) the slave punishment for the purpose of a great evil was.
Punishment was a source of great evil to the slave.

The syntax of **puerīs** and **puellīs** is **Dative of Advantage**. The syntax of **nautae** and **servō** is **Dative of Disadvantage**. All, however, may also be identified as Datives of Reference.

☛ DRILL 72–73, PAGE 295, MAY NOW BE DONE.

10. The Dative of Purpose is also known as the Predicate Dative.

Short Readings

1. A comic character makes an unveiled threat.

auferēre, nōn abībis, sī ego fustem sūmpserō. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUO* 358)

fustus, fustis, -ium *m.* club

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus take up, seize

2. Realizing that he has mistakenly believed slanderous things about his close friend, Mnesilochus despairs.

multa mala mī in pectore nunc ācria atque acerba ēveniunt. (PLAUTUS, *BACCHIDES* 628)

mī = mihi

pectus, pectoris *n.* chest; heart

ēveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, happen, turn out

3. The scoundrel Dordalus, fleeced and beaten, curses those who justly conned him.

dī deaeque et tē et geminum frātrem excrucient. (PLAUTUS, *PERSA* 831)

geminus, -a, -um twin

excruciō (1-tr.) torture, torment

4. A fragment from the *Annals* of Ennius

omnēs mortālēs sēsē laudārier optant. (ENNIUS, *SED. INC.* 560)

laudārier = laudārī

5. A proverb employing metonymy

sine Cerere et Liberō frīget Venus. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 732)

frīgeō, frīgēre, —, — be cold

6. Achilles has the last word in a fragment from a tragedy by the poet Accius (170–CA. 86 B.C.E.).

immō enim vērō corpus Priamō reddidī, Hectorem abstulī.

(ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 667)

immō . . . vērō no, on the contrary

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

Hector, Hectoris *m.* Hector (son of Priam)

7. Varro explains why agriculture has existed longer than cities.

. . . dīvīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāvit urbēs.

(VARRO, *RES RŪSTICAE* III.1)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

aedificō (1-tr.) build, construct

8. Two examples of epiphora or epistrophe, the repetition of the same word at the end of successive phrases

“Poenōs populus Rōmānus iūstitiā vīcit, armīs vīcit, liberālitāte vīcit.”

“C. Laelius homō novus erat, ingeniōsus erat, doctus erat, bonīs virīs et studiīs amīcus erat; ergō in civitāte prīmus erat.” (*RHETORICA AD HERENNIVM* IV.13.19)

Poenī, Poenōrum *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians,
(the) Carthaginians

iūstitia, iūstitiae *f.* justice, righteousness

liberālitās, liberālitātis *f.* kindness; generosity

C. Laelius, C. Laeliī *m.* C. Laelius (friend of
Scipio Africanus and consul, 190 B.C.E.)

ingeniōsus, -a, -um talented, gifted

doctus, -a, -um learned

ergō (*adv.*) therefore

prīmus, -a, -um first

9. While prosecuting Verres, Cicero accepts some limitations.

nē difficilia optēmus. (Cicero, *IN VERREM* II 4.15)

10. A fragment of Cicero’s poem about his consulship

cēdant arma togae, concēdat laurea laudī . . . (CICERO, *DE CONSULATŪ SUŌ* FRAG. 11)

toga, togae *f.* toga

concēdō (*con-* + *cēdō*) concede, grant; give place to, be second to

laurea, laurae *f.* laurel branch (as token of military victory); victory

laus, laudis *f.* praise

11. Cato recalls an exchange between M. Livius Salinator and Q. Fabius Maximus, his superior officer. (Salinator had previously lost the town of Tarentum to the Carthaginian general Hannibal.)

“meā operā, Q. Fabī, Tarentum recēpisti.”

“certē,” inquit, . . . “nam nisi tū amīssissēs, numquam recēpissēm.”

(CICERO, *DE SENECTŪTE* 11)

opera, operae *f.* effort, work

Q. Fabius, Q. Fabī *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus)
(hero of the second Punic war)

Tarentum, Tarentī *n.* Tarentum (town in
southern Italy)

recipiō (*re-* + *capiō*) take back; recapture

inquam (*defective verb*) say; **inquit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

amittō (*ā-* + *mittō*) send away; lose

12. Laelius, a character in a philosophical dialogue, makes the following remark while discussing the views of those who believe that souls perish along with bodies.

. . . ut nihil bonī est in morte, sic certē nihil malī . . . (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 14)

13. Having argued that the soul is mortal, the poet draws a conclusion.

nīl igitur mors est ad nōs neque pertinet hīlum,

quandoquidem nātūra animī mortālis habētur.

(LUCRETIUS, *DE RERUM NĀTURĀ* III.830–31)

igitur (*postpositive conj.*) therefore

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui, pertentus pertain

hīlum (*adv.*) at all

quandoquidem (*conj.*) since (indeed)

14. The first line of a poem of Catullus

Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus . . . (CATULLUS V.1)

Some Roman proverbs

15. Amēs parentem sī aequus est, sī aliter, ferās. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A8)

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent
aequus, -a, -um equitable, just
aliter (adv.) otherwise, in another way

16. Amīcī vitia, sī ferās, faciās tua. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A16)

vitium, vitī *n.* vice, fault

17. Mora omnis odiō est, sed facit sapientiam. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M3)

18. Virtūtis omnis impedīmentum est timor. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* V29)

impedīmentum, impedimentī *n.* hindrance, impediment

19. The historian describes the Roman troops after their attack on the town of Zama has been repelled.

. . . paucī integrī, magna pars volneribus cōfectī abeunt.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 60)

integer, integra, integrum whole; unscathed
volnus (= vulnus), volneris *n.* wound
cōficiō (con- + faciō) accomplish, complete; wear out, enfeeble

20. In a poetic competition between two shepherds, one of them, Damoetas, makes this boast.

mālō mē Galatēa petit, lascīva puella,

et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidērī. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* III.64–65)

mālum, māli *n.* apple
Galatēa, Galatēae *f.* Galatea
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
salix, salicis *f.* willow (tree)

21. Vergil and Gallus come to realize that there is no escape from unhappiness in love.

omnia vincit Amor: et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* X.69)

22. Apollo encourages Iulus, Aeneas's young son.

macte novā virtūte, puer, sīc itur ad astra. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IX.641)

macte (interj.) hurrah, bravo
astrum, astrī *n.* star

23. Jupiter informs the nymph Juturna that her brother, Turnus, is destined to die.

disce tuum, nē mē incūsēs, Iūturna, dolōrem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.146)

discō, discere, didicī, — learn

incūsō (1-tr.) (lay the) blame (on), reproach

Iūturna, Iūturnae *f.* Juturna

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

24. The poet compares the motives of good men to those of his addressee, Quinctius.

ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre:

tū nihil admittēs in tē formīdine poenae . . . (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.16.51–52)

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong

admittō (ad- + **mittō**) admit; become guilty of, commit

formīdō, formīdinis *f.* fear

25. The poet begins a poem with fear about a new rival for Cynthia's affection.

Praetor ab Illyricīs vēnit modo, Cynthia, terrīs,

maxima praeda tibi,† maxima cūra mihi. (PROPERTIUS II.16.1–2)

praetor, praetōris *m.* praetor (a judicial official both in and outside of Rome)

Illyricus, -a, -um Illyrian, of Illyria (an area east of the Adriatic sea and a Roman province)

modo (adv.) just now

maximus, -a, -um greatest, very great

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey

†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long*.

26. Dido addresses an absent Aeneas.

tū quoque cum ventīs utinam mūtābilis esses!

Et, nisi dūritiā robora vincis, eris. (OVID, *HERŌIDES* VII.51)

quoque (adv.) also

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

mūtābilis, mūtābile changeable

dūritia, dūritiae *f.* hardness; insensibility

robor, roboris *n.* oak; *pl.*, strength

27. The poet describes Io's reaction after she has been turned into a cow.

. . . territaque est formā, territa vōce suā. (OVID, *HERŌIDES* XIV.92)

forma, formae *f.* shape, form

28. Banished to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet pleads with Augustus to forgive him and consider his writings from exile.

atque utinam revocēs animum paulisper ab irā,

et vacuō iubeās hinc tibi pauca legī . . . (OVID, *TRISTIA* II.557–58)

revocō (re- + **vocō**) (1-tr.) summon back, recall

paulisper (adv.) for a short time

vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle, free from distractions

hinc (adv.) from this place

29. The historian describes fear moving through the city.

alternae vōcēs “ad arma” et “hostēs in urbe sunt” audiēbantur.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* III.15.6)

alternus, -a, -um alternating, in alternation

30. Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general and near conqueror of Rome, summarizes his relationship to the Romans.

ōdī odiōque sum Rōmānīs. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXXV.19.6)

31. In 183 B.C.E. Hannibal committed suicide with these words (according to the historian).

liberēmus diuturnā cūrā populū Rōmānum . . .

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXXIX.51.9)

diuturnus, -a, -um long-lasting, permanent, continual

32. A comment about the renowned orator Porcius Latro

memoria eī nātūrā quidem fēlix, plūrimū tamen arte adiūta.

(SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRŌVERSIAE PRAEF.* 17)

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory

plūrimū (adv.) very much

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus assist, support

33. In the context of enumerating certain predictable and visible temporal phenomena, such as the rotation of the seasons, the philosopher adds remarks on another sphere.

sunt et sub terrā minus nōta nōbīs iūra nātūrae, sed nōn minus certa.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *NĀTURĀLES QUAESTIŌNES* III.16.4)

minus (adv.) less

nōtus, -a, -um known

34. Quintilian lays down the first principle in education.

nōmina dēclīnāre et verba[†] in prīmīs puerī sciant . . .

(QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* I.4.22)

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name; noun

dēclīnō (1-tr.) decline; conjugate

[†]**verbum**, *here*, verb

in prīmīs especially, above all; first

sciō, scīre, scīī/scīvī, scītus know (how) (+ infin.)

35. The historian reports the mood of Roman soldiers unwilling to endure a long siege and impatient to attack Jerusalem.

. . . *poscēbantque perīcula, pars virtūte, multī ferōciā et cupidine praemiōrum.*

(TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* V.11)

poscō, poscere, poposcī, — demand

ferōcia, ferōciae f. fierceness, savagery

cupīdō, cupidinis f. desire

praemium, praemii n. reward, prize

36. The historian reports how the stalwart soldier Subrius Flavius, a participant in the failed conspiracy to assassinate Nero, addressed the man ordered to execute him.

. . . *admonitusque fortiter prōtendere cervīcem, “utinam,” ait,*

“tū tam fortiter feriās.” (TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* XV.67)

admoneō, admonēre, admonuī, admonitus advise, admonish

prōtendō, prōtendere, prōtendī, prōtentus/prōtēnsus stretch forth, extend

cervīx, cervīcis f. neck

aiō (defective verb) say; *ait* = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

tam (adv.) so, to such a degree

feriō, ferīre, —, — strike

37. The biographer reports Caesar’s response to a supernatural event that occurs when he and his troops are hesitating on the banks of the Rubicon.

“eātur,” inquit, “quō deōrum ostenta et inimicōrum inīquitās vocat.

iacta ālea est.” (SÜETONIUS, *VĪTA IŪLIĪ* 32)

inquam (defective verb) say; *inquit* = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

quō (adv.) to where

ostentum, ostentī n. wonder, prodigy

inīquitās, inīquitātis f. unfairness, injustice

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw, cast

ālea, āleae f. die

38. The historian reports what was written on a placard carried in front of a triumph of Julius Caesar. He tells us that these words indicated not what Caesar did but how quickly he did it.

VĒNĪ · VĪDĪ · VĪCĪ (SÜETONIUS, *VĪTA IŪLIĪ* 37)

39. The historian recounts Caligula’s expression of contempt for the fawning Roman public.

utinam populus Rōmānus ūnam cervīcem habēret. (SÜETONIUS, *VĪTA CALIGULAE* 30)

ūnus, -a, -um one

cervīx, cervīcis f. neck

40. The historian reports what the scholar M. Pomponius Porcellus said to Tiberius after the ill-spoken emperor had uttered a nonexistent word.

tū enim, Caesar, cīvītātem dare potes hominibus, verbō nōn potes.

(SÜETONIUS, *DE GRAMMATICĪS ET RHĒTORIBUS* 22)

Longer Readings

1. Propertius I.8A.5–12

The poet tries to discourage his beloved from departing with another man.

tūne audire potes vēsānī murmura pontī
 fortis, et in dūrā nāve iacēre potes?
 tū pedibus tenerīs positās[†] fulcīre pruīnās,
 tū potes īnsolitās, Cynthia, ferre nivēs?
 ō utinam hībernae duplicentur tempora brūmae
 et sit iners tardīs nāvita Vergiliīs,
 nec tibi Tyrrhēnā solvātur fūnis harēnā,
 nēve inimīca meās ēlevelt aura precēs!

vēsānus, -a, -um insane, frenzied
murmur, murmuris *n.* murmur; rumbling
pontus, pontī *m.* sea
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie; rest
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
tener, tenera, tenerum slender, delicate, tender
[†]**positus, -a, -um, here, layered**
fulciō, fulcīre, fulsī, fultus prop up, support;
 tread upon
pruīna, pruīnae *f.* frost
īnsolitus, -a, -um unaccustomed
nix, nivis, -ium *f. sing. or pl.,* snow
hībernus, -a, -um of or belonging to winter
duplicō (1-tr.) double
tempus, temporis *n.* time

brūma, brūmae *f.* winter solstice; time
 (of winter)
iners, inertis sluggish, slow
tardus, -a, -um late
nāvita = nauta
Vergiliae, Vergiliārum *f. pl.* the Vergiliae,
 the Pleiades (a constellation that appears
 in the winter sky)
Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um Tuscan, Etruscan
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen, free
fūnis, fūnis, -ium *m.* (mooring) rope
harēna, harēnae *f.* sand; shore
nēve = nē + -ve (enclitic conj.) or
ēlevō (1-tr.) lift up; weaken
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
precēs, precum *f. pl.* prayers

Sextus Propertius (49?–16? B.C.E.) was born in Umbria of equestrian rank and moved to Rome to begin a legal career. Instead, in 28 he published the first of four books of poems written in elegiac couplets, the chosen meter for love poetry in the Augustan period (§83). In the first book Propertius, the poet-lover, introduces his beloved Cynthia, and many of the poems concern his stormy relationship with her. Shortly after his first book's publication Propertius came under the patronage of Maecenas. Propertius's poetry abounds in mythological references and ostentatious displays of obscure learning. His poems are marked by a studied unpredictability in syntax, imagery, and logical movement. Such poetry—erudite, personal, short, and dense with meaning—was meant to supplant the more sedate and grandiose epic.

2. Ovid, *Fasti* V.583–88

The poet ponders the Parthian victory over the Romans.

addiderant animōs Crassōrum fūnera gentī,
 cum† periit mīles signaque duxque simul.
 signa, decus bellī, Parthus Rōmāna tenēbat,
 Rōmānaeque aquilae signifer hostis erat.
 isque pudor mānsisset adhūc nisi fortibus armīs
 Caesaris Ausoniae prōtegerentur opēs.

addō (ad- + dō) add

Crassī, Crassōrum *m. pl.* (the) Crassi
 (father and son who fell in battle against
 the Parthians)

fūnus, fūneris *n.* death

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation; family

†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when

pereō, perīre, perīi, peritūrus be destroyed;
 perish, die

signum, signī *n.* standard

dux, ducis *m.* leader

simul (adv.) at the same time

decus, decoris *n.* ornament; glory, honor

Parthus, Parthī *m.* (the) Parthian

aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle (symbol of a legion)

signifer, signiferī *m.* standard bearer

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame; disgrace

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still

Ausonius, -a, -um Ausonian; Italian, Roman

prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus protect

ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort; *pl.*,
 power, resources

Unique in the Latin literature that survives, the *Fasti* (Festival Days) was intended to be a calendar of the Roman year with a book for each month, but it remained unfinished at the time of Ovid's exile in 8 c.e. Written in elegiac couplets, the *Fasti* provides much information on Roman holidays and religious practices and also contains digressions on Roman myth and history.

3. Martial VIII.73.5–8

The poet addresses the elegiac love poets.

Cynthia tē vātem fēcit, lascīve Propertī;
 ingenium Gallī pulchra Lycōris erat;
 fāma est argūtī Nemesis formōsa Tibullī;
 Lesbia dictāvit, docte Catulle, tibi . . .

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m. or f.* prophet; bard, poet

lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from
 restraint

Gallus, Gallī *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus (elegiac
 poet [69?–26 B.C.E.])

Lycōris, Lycōridis *f.* Lycoris (Gallus's poetic name
 for his beloved)

argūtus, -a, -um clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful

Nemesis, Nemeseōs *f.* Nemesis (goddess of
 retribution; Tibullus's poetic name for his
 beloved)

formōsus, -a, -um beautiful, shapely

Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus (elegiac poet
 [55?–19? B.C.E.])

dictō (1-tr.) say repeatedly; compose, dictate

doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite

Marcus Valerius Martiālis (38?–104? c.e.) was born in Spain and came in 64 to Rome, where he was befriended and aided by Seneca. His poetry reflects the poet's ambivalent attitude toward the city, which he disliked for its artificiality and conventionality, but upon which he and his poetry thrived. Martial's poems, written between 80 and 102, are collected and published in twelve books as *Epigrammata* (Epigrams).

§74. Greetings and Interjections in Latin

Vocabulary

salūs, salūtis <i>f.</i> safety; health	valē/valēte greetings! farewell!
salūtem dicere (idiom) to say “greetings,” to say hello	ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!
salvē/salvēte hello! good day!	herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules!
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able; be well, fare well	mehercule/meherculēs (interj.) by Hercules!
	heu (interj.) alas! oh!

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings are not given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Although there are no living speakers of classical Latin, information about everyday speech and conversation in Latin may be partially recovered from the Latin literary texts that survive. Some of the best sources for colloquial or spoken Latin are the comedies of Plautus and Terence, the poems of Catullus, and the letters of Cicero. It is not surprising that colloquial Latin was distinguished by short sentences, colorful idioms and metaphors, oaths and interjections, obscenities, ellipses, and other features of a living, spoken language.

There are no exact Latin equivalents for the English words “hello” and “good-bye.” The Romans most often greeted and departed from one another by saying words that resembled singular and plural active imperatives.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	
salvē	salvēte	Hello! Good day!
valē	valēte	Greetings! Farewell!

OBSERVATIONS

1. While these words are imperative forms, only **valē/valēte** can be traced to a Latin verb with a full set of forms.
2. Both **salvē/salvēte** and **valē/valēte** may be said when one is departing, but **valē/valēte** is more common. **Salvē/salvēte** may be said to someone who sneezes. Both may be addressed to the dying and the dead.

Bone serve, salvē. (Plautus, <i>Bacchides</i> 775)	Good slave, greetings.
Valē, puella. (Catullus VIII.12)	Farewell, girl.
A. Bene valē. B. Et tū bene valē. (Plautus, <i>Poenulus</i> 1358)	A. Farewell. B. You, too, farewell.
Salvē multum, mī pater. (Plautus, <i>Menaechmī</i> 775)	Greetings, my father.
Valē atque salvē. (Plautus, <i>Captīvī</i> 744)	Farewell and good day.
A. Valēn? Valuistīn? ¹ B. Valeō, et valuī . . . (Plautus, <i>Trinummus</i> 50)	A. Are you well? Have you been well? B. Yes, I am well, and I have been well . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. The adverbs **bene** and **multum** may appear with **salvē/salvēte** and **valē/valēte** to strengthen the greeting or farewell. There is no English equivalent for these adverbs in such contexts.
2. The second person of **valeō**, in both the present and perfect tenses, may be used to inquire after a person's health. There is no Latin equivalent for the English "yes"; an affirmative answer is given by repeating the verb.

The salutation of a letter in Latin is actually a complete sentence. For example:

Cicerō Atticō salūtem dicit.	Cicero to Atticus "health" (d.o.) says. Cicero says "greetings" to Atticus Cicero says hello to Atticus.
-------------------------------------	--

OBSERVATIONS

1. The person writing the letter is in the nominative case and is the subject of **dicit**. The person to whom the letter is being written is in the dative case and is the indirect object.
2. This common salutation is often abbreviated. For example:

Cicerō Atticō s.d.
Cicerō Atticō sal.

The first sentence after a salutation often takes a standard form:

Sī valēs, bene est. (often abbreviated **s.v.b.e.**)
If you are strong, it is well.

In this sentence the adverb **bene** modifies the third person singular of **sum** used impersonally: that is, **est** has no personal subject. This expression is an idiomatic way of reporting how a person is or how a situation is for the speaker. For example:

1. **Valēn** is a contraction of **valēsne**, and **valuistīn** is a contraction of **valuistīne**. Uncontracted forms do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.

Male est mihi.	It is badly for me. I am feeling bad.
Bene est mihi.	It is well for me. I am fine.
Nōn est mihi male.	It is not badly for me. It doesn't bother me. I'm not bad.

OBSERVATIONS

1. These expressions and other analogous ones occur in conversations in the comedies of Plautus and Terence and in some poems of Catullus.
2. The less literal English translations given above are meant to approximate the meanings of the Latin sentences.

In origin a demonstrative adverb, the interjection **ecce** (lo! behold! look!) is usually used to call attention to something that is visible or present. The interjection **heu** (alas! oh!) is regularly used as an expression of pain or grief. **Hercule** or **hercule** (by Hercules!) is an oath used by men as an expression of strong feeling. In origin this interjection was an address to the deified Hercules, but its identification with the god weakened through common use.² **Mehercule** or **meherculēs** are extended forms of **hercule**.

A. Ubi tū es? B. Ecce mē! (Plautus, <i>Cistellāria</i> 283)	A. Where are you? B. Behold me! (Here I am!)
Tibi lilia ecce ferunt nymphae. (Vergil, <i>Eclogues</i> II.46) līlium, liliū <i>n.</i> lily nympha, nymphae <i>f.</i> nymph	For you the nymphs are bringing—behold!—lilies.
Heu, cor meum finditur! (Plautus, <i>Bacchides</i> 251) cor, cordis <i>n.</i> heart findō, findere, fidī, fissus split apart	Alas, my heart is being split apart!
Fēlix, heu nimium fēlix . . . (Vergil, <i>Aeneid</i> IV.657) nimium (<i>adv.</i>) excessively, too	Fortunate, alas too fortunate . . .
Pulchrē mehercule dictum et sapienter. (Terence, <i>Eunuchus</i> 416) sapienter (<i>adv.</i>) wisely	Beautifully, by Hercules, said—and wisely.

2. The interjections **ēcastor** and **edepol**, which appear in Plautus and Terence, were originally addresses to the gods Castor and Pollux respectively.

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary

- **fuga, fugae** *f.* flight
- **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū** *n.* exile
- **gaudium, gaudiū** *n.* joy
- **locus, locī** *m.* place
 - **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places
- **modus, modī** *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way
- **oculus, oculī** *m.* eye
- **cōnsul, cōnsulis** *m.* consul
- **lēx, lēgis** *f.* law
 - **lēgem ferre** (idiom) to pass a law
- **libertās, libertātis** *f.* freedom
- **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* service, duty; gift
- **pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor

- quī, quae, quod** (rel. pron.) who, which, that (§78)
- quis, quid** (interrog. pron.) who, what (§80)
- **cōnor** (1-tr.) try, attempt (§75)
- **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** dare (§76)
- **fateor, fatērī, fassus sum** confess, admit (§75)
- **pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (§82)
- **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (§82)
- **moriōr, morī, mortuus sum** die (§75)
- **relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus** leave (behind); abandon
- **patior, patī, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; allow (§75)
- **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** follow (§75)
- **experior, experīrī, expertus sum** test; try; experience (§75)
- **inquam** (defective verb) say
- **hic, haec, hoc** (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (§77)
- **ille, illa, illud** (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (§77)
- **iste, ista, istud** (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (§77)
- **quī, quae, quod** (interrog. adj.) what . . . , which . . . (§81)
- **caecus, -a, -um** blind; hidden, secret, dark
- **audāx, audācis** daring, bold; reckless
- **gravis, grave** heavy; important, serious; severe
- **levis, leve** light; trivial; fickle
- **īdem, eadem, idem** same
- **audacter/audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly
- **quemadmodum** (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how
- **quō modō** (interrog. adv.) in what way, how
- **quoque** (adv.) also
- **saepe** (adv.) often
- **tandem** (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands*, pray, I ask you, then

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **fuga, fugae** *f.* is often found with a Subjective Genitive (§35). It may refer to an act of fleeing or the rapidity with which someone or something moves. It may also be used of “banishment” or “exile.”
- ▶ **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū** *n.* may refer to the act of banishment or the place to which one is exiled. The *s* placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an *s*.
- ▶ **locus, locī** *m.* may mean a physical “place”; a “position,” “rank,” or “post” in society; or “room” or “opportunity” to engage in an activity. In classical Latin, the plural of **locus** is most often declined as if it were a neuter noun, and therefore the entry **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* is given. The masculine plural form is also used, particularly when the noun means “passages” in a written work or “topics” or “subjects.” Both Vergil and Sallust, however, use the masculine plural with the more general meaning of physical “places.” The ablative singular or plural of **locus** is often used as an Ablative of Place Where with no preposition (**multis locis**, “in many places”).
- ▶ **modus, modī** *m.* means “measure” in the sense of a quantity (of land, of grain). From this basic notion of quantity or amount arise several extended meanings, including “limit” (an amount that should not be exceeded) and more abstractly “moderation” or “restraint.” In musical and poetic contexts, **modus** may mean “rhythm,” “meter,” or even the “tone” of a voice or a song. Another common meaning is “mode,” “way,” or “manner.”

Modum agrī filiīs dedit.

He gave a measure of land (field) to his sons.

Modum irae pōnet?

Will he place a limit to (his) anger?

Id eō modō fēcī.

I did it in this way.

The prepositional phrases **in . . . modum** and **ad . . . modum** (in the manner, according to the manner) frequently occur with a genitive or with an adjective modifying **modum**.

Rēgis in/ad modum dixit.

She spoke *in/according to the manner* of a king.

In/Ad hunc modum dixit.

She spoke *in/according to this manner*.

- ▶ **cōnsul, cōnsulis** *m.* is the title given to the highest political magistrate in Rome at the time of the Republic. According to tradition, the Roman Republic was founded after the expulsion of the Etruscan king Tarquinius Superbus (ca. 509 B.C.E.). Two consuls, elected annually, were the political leaders of the senate and the commanding generals whenever occasion required. Even during the imperial period—when the emperor held the highest power in Rome—there continued to be consuls, although their role in running the government and the military was greatly decreased. One referred to a given year by the names of the two consuls of that year.
- ▶ **lēx, lēgis** *f.* means a particular law proposed (bill) or passed (statute). It may be used of a “regulation” laid down by a variety of authorities. It may also mean “law” as the collective legal authority of a state. **lēx** appears in the idiom **lēgem ferre**, “to pass a law.”
- ▶ **libertās, libertātis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tās** to the stem of the adjective **liber**.
- ▶ **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* is the word for any sort of “service,” “duty,” or “function” (of war, of women, of eyes). In either the singular or the plural **mūnus** may refer particularly to “duties” or “services” for the dead. A second important meaning, an extension of the idea of service, is “gift.”
- ▶ **pāx, pācis** *f.* initially meant a “pact” or “agreement,” usually to avert or end hostilities. It then came to mean more broadly the opposite of **bellum**. It may also have the specialized meaning of “blessing” or “favor” granted by one or more of the gods.
- ▶ **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum** is a transitive deponent verb. It often takes an Object Infinitive and is sometimes used absolutely (make an effort).

Hostem vincere cōnāmur.

We are trying to conquer the enemy.

Quamquam cōnāmur, hostis vincit.

Although we are trying, the enemy is conquering.

- **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** is a transitive semideponent verb. Like **cōnor** it may take an Object Infinitive or be used absolutely (be bold).
- **pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus** is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). The fourth principal part, **pāritūrus** (about to obey), is a future active participle.
- **placeō, placēre, placui, placitum** is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). **placeō** may be used impersonally to mean “seem good.” In public contexts it may mean “be resolved” (by the senate, etc.). When **placeō** is used impersonally, it often has a Subject Infinitive (§28).

Mihi placet rūs ire.

To go to the country is pleasing to me.

It is pleasing to me to go to the country.

Placuit populō bellum gerere.

It seemed good to the people to wage war.

- **morior, morī, mortuus sum** is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **morior** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MORIOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- The basic meaning of **patior, patī, passus sum** is “experience” a process or an action. It thus may mean “suffer” or “undergo” when the process or action is a difficult one. By extension **patior** may mean “allow” a person or thing (accusative) to perform an action (Object Infinitive).

Multa mala passus sum.

I have experienced (suffered) many bad things.

Pompeium Rōmam redire patiar.

I shall permit Pompey to return to Rome.

- The compounds of **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **SEQUOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **inquam**, “say,” is a defective verb with a few common indicative forms in the present and future active. In classical Latin **inquam** occurs rarely in other tenses of the indicative or subjunctive. It does not have an infinitive. SIX FORMS ONLY MUST BE MEMORIZED:

	Present Active Indicative	Future Active Indicative
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
1	inquam	
2	inquis	inquiēs
3	inquit	inquiet
	<i>Plural</i>	
3	inquiunt	

inquam is often used with a direct quotation. It is regularly placed after the first word or words of a sentence, often in order to emphasize the word(s) that precede(s) it.

“Vērum,” inquit, “ex mē audiēs.”

“The truth (a true thing),” he says, “you will hear from me.”

- **caecus, -a, -um** may have either an active sense—“blind” (i.e., not *seeing*)—or a passive one—“hidden,” “secret,” “dark” (i.e., not *being seen*). Many adjectives in Latin convey a variety of meanings based on an active and a passive idea in their root meaning.
- **audāx, audācis** is a third-declension adjective with one form in the nominative singular. The second part of the entry is the genitive singular, from which the stem **audāc-** is taken. **audāx** may mean “bold” in a good sense (daring, confident) or in a bad sense (reckless, rash). It may be applied to both people and things (plans, deeds).
- The adjective **īdem, eadem, idem** is formed by the addition of the suffix **-dem** to the demonstrative adjective **is, ea, id**. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem/eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem	īsdem/eīsdem

The declension of **īdem**, **eadem**, **idem** follows the declension of **is**, **ea**, **id** with certain variations:

1. The masculine singular nominative **īdem** is formed by the addition of **-dem** to **is**. When the **-s-** is dropped, the **i-** is lengthened because of compensatory lengthening.
2. In the neuter singular nominative and accusative, the final **-d** of **id** is dropped before the ending **-dem**.
3. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final **-m** changes to an **-n-** before **-dem**.
4. In the masculine plural nominative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural dative and ablative, disyllabic forms of **is**, **ea**, **id**, **īi**, and **īis** usually exhibit contraction of the two i's (**īdem**, **īsdem**). The uncontracted forms **īidem** and **īisdem** occasionally occur.

“(The) same as” in Latin is usually expressed by a form of **īdem** followed by a relative clause (§78), sometimes with the ellipsis of the verb in the relative clause because it can be supplied from the main verb.

Sociī dicunt idem quod ego dicēbam.

The allies are saying the same thing that I was saying.

Semper eadem sentiō quae tū (sentīs).

I always feels the same things that (as) you (feel).

- The irregular adverb **audacter** is more common than the regularly formed **audāciter**.
- The **quem** of the adverb **quemadmodum** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—“(according) to which manner,” “as,”—or, less commonly, an interrogative adjective—“how.” As a relative adverb, **quemadmodum** introduces a comparative clause, and a corresponding adverb (**sic**, **ita**) often appears in the main clause. **quemadmodum** may be written as three separate words (**quem ad modum**).

Sic tē amant filiī quemadmodum tū patrem mātremque.

So (your) sons love you as you (love) (your) father and mother.

- The **quō** in the phrase **quō modō** is an interrogative adjective (§81). **quō modō**, “in what manner,” “how,” is in origin an Ablative of Manner. **quō modō** may be written as one word (**quōmodō**).
- The adverb **quoque** is usually placed directly after the word that it qualifies.

Mihi quoque dōnum dedit.

To me also he gave a gift.

- **tandem** is an adverb that has a temporal meaning (finally, at last). With imperatives and questions it often expresses impatience or indignation (pray, I ask you, then).

Ad urbem tandem accessimus.

Finally we approached the city.

Cūr tandem hoc fēcisti?

Why, pray, did you do this thing?

	Derivatives
modus	mode; modern ; modify ; mold ; mood
mūnus	remunerate; municipal
oculus	monocle ; eyelet
patior	passion ; passive ; patient ; compassion
quī/quis	quibble ; quiddity ; quip
sequor	sequence ; segue ; sect ; suitor ; persecute

	Cognates
	mete; medical ; meditate
	common ; immune
	optic ; autopsy ; ophthalmologist
	fiend
	who; what; how; when ; whither ; where
	espy ; specimen ; spectacle ; skeptic ; episcopal ;
	telescope

§75. Deponent Verbs

Certain Latin verbs are called **deponent** verbs because they appear to have “put aside” or “put down” (**dē-** + **pōnō**) their active forms.¹ These verbs may belong to any of the four conjugations, but all deponent verbs *have passive forms only and active meanings only*.² Deponent verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. Each has only *three* principal parts. For example:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	try, attempt	(1st conjugation) ³
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum	confess, admit	(2nd conjugation)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow	(3rd conjugation)
morior, morī, mortuus sum	die	(3rd conjugation i-stem)
experior, experīrī, expertus sum	experience	(4th conjugation)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each principal part of these verbs is in form the *passive equivalent* of each of the first three principal parts of a nondeponent verb. The first principal part is the first person singular present indicative *passive*; the second principal part is the present *passive* infinitive; and the third principal part is the first person singular (masc.) perfect *passive* indicative. Deponent verbs *lack active forms*.
2. Just as for nondeponent verbs, the ending of the second principal part of every deponent verb (the present passive infinitive) indicates the conjugation to which each belongs: **-ārī** = first conjugation, **-ērī** = second conjugation, **-ī** = third conjugation, and **-īrī** = fourth conjugation. Third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs form their present passive infinitives by dropping **-ere** from the present active infinitives and adding **-ī** (§31).
3. The third principal part of a deponent verb provides the perfect passive participle, which has an active meaning. For example: **cōnātus, -a, -um**, “having tried”; **secūtus, -a, -um**, “having followed.”

The conjugations of deponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation (including various regular changes in the present stem) that apply to nondeponent verbs. Thus there are *no new forms* to be learned for deponent verbs. The present stem for first-, second-, and fourth-conjugation deponent verbs may be found by dropping **-rī** from the second principal part. For the third conjugation, it is necessary to imagine a present *active* infinitive (e.g., **sequere*, **morere*) from which the present stem may be found by dropping **-re** (e.g., **seque-**, **more-**). All deponent verbs form the *imperfect subjunctive* by adding regular passive endings to an imaginary present active infinitive with a lengthened final **-e**:

1. Deponent verbs and their forms are actually derived from a third voice (in addition to active and passive) called the **middle** voice. PIE had only an active and a middle voice and no passive voice. Subjects of verbs in both the active and the middle performed the action of the verb, and verbs in both the active and the middle could take direct objects. When the passive voice developed, many of its forms were derived from the middle voice. The only remnant of the middle voice in Latin is the existence of deponent verbs, verbs with passive forms but active meanings.

2. For the only exceptions to this rule see §95.

3. Deponent verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**. Deponent verbs whose second and third principal parts end in **-ārī, -ātus sum** are identified in vocabulary lists by either the notation (1-tr.) for transitive verbs or (1-intr.) for intransitive verbs. No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL THREE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Present Passive Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Stem</i>	<i>Imaginary Present Active Infinitive with Lengthened Final -e</i>
cōnārī	cōnā-	cōnārē-
fatērī	fatē-	fatērē-
sequī	seque-	sequerē-
morī	more-	morerē-
experīrī	experī-	experīrē-

In order to generate a synopsis of a deponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter all deponent verb forms on the *passive* side. Remember that the English *meanings* are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of **morior** in the third person plural masculine:

Principal Parts: morior, morī, mortuus sum				
Person, Number, and Gender: 3rd pl. m.				
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present			moriuntur	they die
Imperfect			moriēbantur	they were dying
Future			morientur	they will die
Perfect			mortuī sunt	1. they died 2. they have died
Pluperfect			mortuī erant	they had died
Future Perfect			mortuī erunt	they will have died
<i>Subjunctive</i>				
Present			morianur	
Imperfect			morerentur	
Perfect			mortuī sint	
Pluperfect			mortuī essent	
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present			morī	to die
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular			morere	die
Plural			moriminī	die (pl.)

§76. Semideponent Verbs

A few verbs in Latin are *deponent in the perfect system only* and therefore are called **semideponent** verbs. These verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. For example:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two principal parts of semideponent verbs are active in form and meaning and are similar to the first two principal parts of nondeponent verbs. The entire present system, made with the stem from the second principal part, has *active forms* and *active meanings*.⁴
2. As is true for deponent verbs, the third principal part of semideponent verbs is *passive in form* (first person singular [masc.] perfect indicative passive) but *active in meaning*. **Ausus sum**, for example, means “I (m.) dared,” “I (m.) have dared.”

To conjugate semideponent verbs in the present system, follow all the rules of formation that apply to regular, nondeponent verbs. In order to generate a synopsis of a semideponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter present system forms on the active side and perfect system forms on the passive side. Remember that the English meanings of *all* forms are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of **audeō** in the third person singular feminine:

Principal Parts: audeō, audēre, ausus sum				
Person, Number, and Gender: 3rd sing. f.				
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	audet	she dares		
Imperfect	audēbat	she used to dare		
Future	audēbit	she will dare		
Perfect			ausa est	1. she dared 2. she has dared
Pluperfect			ausa erat	she had dared
Future Perfect			ausa erit	she will have dared
<i>Subjunctive</i>				
Present	audeat			
Imperfect	audēret			
Perfect			ausa sit	
Pluperfect			ausa esset	
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	audēre	to dare		
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	audē	dare		
Plural	audēte	dare (pl.)		

☛ DRILL 75–76, PAGE 315, MAY NOW BE DONE.

4. Although passive forms could be made for the present system of semideponent verbs, these forms do not appear in the Latin that survives.

§77. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: *hic*, *iste*, and *ille*

In addition to **is**, **ea**, **id**, Latin has three other demonstrative adjectives that regularly precede the nouns they modify and serve to point out those nouns. The specific sphere of reference for each Latin demonstrative adjective is identified with one of the three persons.

1st person	hic, haec, hoc	“this”/ “these” (near <i>me</i> , the speaker)
2nd person	iste, ista, istud	“that”/ “those” (of <i>yours</i> ; which <i>you</i> know well)
3rd person	ille, illa, illud	“that”/ “those” (near <i>him, her, them</i>)

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF EACH DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. Demonstrative adjectives do not have vocative forms.
2. The **-i-** of **huius** in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English **y**. Thus **hu-ius** (*hu-yus*) is disyllabic. The **-ui-** of **huic** in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English **wi**. Thus **huic** (*hwik*) is monosyllabic.
3. The letter **c** that appears at the end of many of the forms of **hic**, **haec**, **hoc** is called a **deictic** (< Greek *deiknūmi*, point out) or **demonstrative suffix**. The hard sound of this suffix strengthens the demonstrative force of the adjective.⁵
4. When forms of **hic**, **haec**, **hoc** appear in the singular, the English translation “this” is used. Plural forms are translated “these.”

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of **iste**, **ista**, **istud** is almost identical with that of **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative forms end in **-ud** (§46). This neuter ending, though less common than **-um**, is not unique to this word.
2. The dative singular ending **-ī** is identical with the dative singular ending of the third declension.
5. The full suffix form is **-ce**, which appears in the emphatic forms **huiusce** and **hīsce**.

3. Many endings of *iste*, *ista*, *istud* are familiar from first-second-declension adjectives. All the endings of the plural forms are identical with the plural endings of first-second-declension adjectives.
4. When forms of *iste*, *ista*, *istud* appear in the singular, the English translation “that (of yours)” is used. Plural forms are translated “those (of yours).”

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of *ille*, *illa*, *illud* is identical with that of *iste*, *ista*, *istud*. Thus all the observations made for the forms of *iste* apply to *ille* as well.
2. When forms of *ille*, *illa*, *illud* appear in the singular, the English translation “that” is used. Plural forms are translated “those.”

When *hic*, *iste*, and *ille* are used as adjectives, they most often precede and always agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they modify. For example:

hanc fēminam	this woman (d.o.) (fem. sing. acc.)
istī amīcō	to/for that friend (of yours) (masc. sing. dat.)
illōrum oppidōrum	of those towns (neut. pl. gen.)

When the demonstrative adjectives stand alone as substantives, they are referred to as **demonstrative pronouns**. Demonstrative pronouns are translated with the addition of the English words “man,” “woman,” “thing” (sing.) or “men,” “women,” “things” (pl.), depending on the gender and number of the pronoun. For example:

hae	these women (subj.)
istōs	those men (of yours) (d.o.)
illud	that thing (subj. or d.o.)

Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

Hic, most frequently in the neuter forms, may point to either what has preceded or what is to follow. For example:

Haec dē amīcitiā dixit.	<i>These things</i> (i.e., <i>the preceding things</i>) about friendship he said.
	He said <i>these (preceding) things</i> about friendship.
Hoc petō: Esne miser?	<i>This thing</i> (i.e., <i>the following thing</i>) I am asking: Are you miserable?
	I am asking <i>this (following) thing</i> : Are you miserable?

Ille, most frequently in the neuter forms, also may point to either what has preceded or what is to follow.

Ille may also be used to point to what is famous or notorious. When **ille** has this meaning, it is often placed *after* the noun it modifies. For example:

Crassus *ille* multam pecūniam habēbat.

That famous/notorious Crassus used to have much money.

When **hic** and **ille** are used together to refer to two elements previously mentioned, they often mean “the latter” (**hic**) and “the former” (**ille**). For example:

Sunt in oppidō cīvēs et piī et impiī. Hōs ōdimus, illōs amāmus.

There are in the town both loyal and disloyal citizens. *The latter (citizens) (d.o.) we hate, the former (citizens) (d.o.) we love.*

Iste may, but does not always, express contempt. This meaning arose from its use in addressing opponents in legal or political contexts.

Ista verba dē patriā audīvī, falsa et impia.

I heard *those (contemptible)* words about the country, false and disloyal.

☛ DRILL 77, PAGE 323, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§78. The Relative Pronoun *quī, quae, quod* and the Relative Clause

A **relative pronoun** introduces a subordinate clause that qualifies an **antecedent**, a word that “goes before” (< **antecēdō**, go before) the relative pronoun. For example:

People **who** *live in glass houses* shouldn’t throw stones.

The evil **that** *men do* lives after them.

In these English sentences “who” and “that” are examples of relative pronouns. Each *refers to* the word that goes before it.⁶ “People” is the antecedent of “who,” and “evil” is the antecedent of “that.” The italicized portion of each sentence (including the relative pronoun) is called a **relative clause**. Each relative clause has a verb of its own (in addition to the verb in the main clause). A relative clause is an **adjectival clause**.

The relative pronoun in Latin has singular and plural forms in all three genders.

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.

6. The word “relative” is derived from the fourth principal part of the verb *referō, referre, rettulī, relātus* “bring back, refer”: a relative pronoun “refers” to its antecedent.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun does not have vocative forms.
2. The **-i-** of **cuius** in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English *y*. Thus **cu-ius** (*cu-yus*) is disyllabic. The **-ui** of **cui** in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English **wi**. Thus **cui** (*kwi*) is monosyllabic.
3. When a form of the relative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** may be attached directly to the pronoun. Thus **quōcum** (with whom) and **quibuscum** (with whom). The neuter forms are rarely used as Ablatives of Accompaniment.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING RULE: THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AGREES WITH ITS ANTECEDENT IN GENDER AND NUMBER. ITS CASE, HOWEVER, IS DETERMINED BY ITS SYNTAX WITHIN THE RELATIVE CLAUSE. For example:

Carmina quae nunc legō ā Catullō scrīpta sunt.

The poems *that (d.o.) now I am reading* by Catullus were written.

The poems *that I am now reading* were written by Catullus.

Librum quī est in manibus tuīs legere optō.

The book (d.o.) *that is in your hands* to read I desire.

I desire to read the book *that is in your hands*.

Ager in quō meus frāter labōrābat ab hostibus captus est.

The field *in which my brother was working* by the enemies was captured.

The field *in which my brother was working* was captured by the enemies.

In the first sentence, the relative pronoun (**quae**) introduces a relative clause (**quae nunc legō**) that describes its antecedent (**carmina**). **Quae** is *neuter* and *plural* in order to agree with **carmina**, its antecedent. It is *accusative*, however, because it is the direct object of **legō**, the verb in the relative clause. In the second sentence, **quī** is *masculine* and *singular* to agree with **librum**, its antecedent. It is *nominative*, however, because it is the subject of **est**, the verb in the relative clause. In the third sentence, **quō** is *masculine* and *singular* to agree with **ager**, its antecedent. It is *ablative*, however, because its syntax in the relative clause is Ablative of Place Where.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun usually comes first in its clause unless it is the object of a preposition.
2. The relative pronoun is often placed immediately after its antecedent.
3. The verb of the relative clause is often placed at the end of the relative clause (e.g., **quae . . . legō, in quō . . . labōrābat**).

4. Translations of relative pronoun forms in Latin require mastery of the uses of the relative pronoun in English:

	<i>Beings (sing. or pl.)</i>	<i>Things (sing. or pl.)</i>
Subject	who	that/which
Possessive	whose	whose
Objects of verbs and prepositions	whom	that/which

A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses

In both Latin and English there are two different kinds of relative clauses. A **restrictive** relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause *is not set off in commas*, and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun “that.” A **nonrestrictive** relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *not essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause *is always set off in commas*, and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun “which.” For example:

Restrictive Relative Clauses

Men *who are without weapons* will not fight.

I lost the book *that you lent me*.

In each of these sentences the relative clause *restricts* the meaning of the antecedent in a way that is essential for the sense of the sentence. The men who “will not fight” are not men in general, but “men who are without weapons.” The book that “I lost” is not any book, but “the book that you lent me.” Such restrictive relative clauses are *not set off in commas*. “That” is used when the antecedent is not a person.

Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses

Horace, *who was born in Apulia*, lived in the country.

You would enjoy this book, *which was written by my sister*.

In each of these sentences the relative clause contains additional but *nonessential* information about the antecedent. Such *nonrestrictive* clauses are *always set off in commas*. “Which” is used when the antecedent is not a person.

In Latin there are *no different pronouns* used to distinguish restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses. The two types may be distinguished *by punctuation only*.⁷

☛ DRILL 78, PAGE 329, MAY NOW BE DONE.

7. In modern Latin texts different conventions in punctuation make even punctuation an unreliable method of distinguishing between restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses.

§79. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun

The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent

Often a relative pronoun in Latin lacks an expressed antecedent, but an **indefinite** or **generic** one should be supplied in an English translation. The gender and number of the relative pronoun indicate what word(s) should be supplied: “he,” “she,” “it,” “a/the thing,” “they,” “those,” “a/the man,” “people.” For example:

Quī nihil timent bellum gerent. (relative pron. = masc. pl.)
 (They/Those/Men who nothing (d.o.) fear war (d.o.) will wage.
 Those who fear nothing will wage war.
Catīlīna, quod semper dīxī, mē interficere cupit.
 Catiline, (a thing) that I have always said, me (d.o.) to kill desires.
 Catiline, a thing that I have always said, desires to kill me.

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the antecedent for **quod** is *either* the entire main clause (Catiline desires to kill me) *or* an ellipsed neuter pronoun such as **id**, which itself is in apposition to the main clause.

While certain kinds of antecedents may be omitted in Latin, the relative pronoun itself can *never* be omitted, although it is often omitted in English. For example:

English: I have the book you were desiring. (relative pronoun omitted)
 Latin: **Librum quem optābās habeō.** (relative pronoun introduces relative clause)
 I have the book *that* you were desiring.

The Connective Relative

When a relative pronoun begins a sentence in Latin, its antecedent may be generic and implied, but it may also be *a specific word or an entire idea expressed in the preceding sentence*. A relative pronoun whose antecedent is to be found in a preceding sentence is called a **connective** relative pronoun.

The connective relative pronoun gives greater cohesion to the ideas being presented and makes the closest possible connection between sentences. Since standard English usage does not allow a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence, a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used in translation. For example:

Crassus Rōmam vēnit. Quem quoniam timeō, ex urbe discēdam.
 Crassus to Rome has come. *Whom* since I fear, from the city I shall depart.
 Crassus has come to Rome. [*And*] since I fear *this man*, I shall depart from the city.
Hostēs accēdebant cīvēsque arma capiēbant. Quae mē terruērunt.
 The enemies were approaching, and the citizens arms (d.o.) were taking up. *Which things* me (d.o.) terrified.
 The enemies were approaching, and the citizens were taking up arms. [*And*] *these things* terrified me.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because a connective relative joins two sentences, the conjunction “and” may be added to the English translation, and a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used to translate the relative pronoun. In the first sentence **quem** is the equivalent of **et hunc**. In the second sentence **quae** is the equivalent of **et haec**.
2. The antecedent of **quem** in the second sentence of the first example is **Crassus**, with which it agrees in gender and number (masculine and singular). The antecedent of **quae** in the second sentence of the second example is not a specific word, but is the actions in the first sentence, with which it agrees in gender and number (neuter and plural).
3. **Quem** is Accusative, Direct Object of **timeō**, the verb in the causal clause introduced by **quoniam**. A connective relative usually appears first in its clause even if, as here, the clause has an introductory conjunction.

Placement of the Antecedent in and after the Relative Clause

Although a relative clause usually follows its antecedent, sometimes a relative clause *precedes* its antecedent. When this occurs, the antecedent is often simply a demonstrative pronoun that appears immediately after the relative clause. The antecedent also may be *drawn inside* the relative clause and then *restated* in the main clause as a pronoun. For example:

Quōs multum laudābās, eōs in bellum mīsi.

Whom (pl.) you were praising a lot, them (those men) (d.o.) into war I sent.

I sent into war those men whom you were praising a lot.

Quam urbem hostēs cēpērunt, hanc liberāre dēbētis.

Which city (d.o.) the enemies have captured, this (one) (d.o.) to free you (pl.) ought.

You (pl.) ought to free this city that the enemies have captured.

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the antecedent **urbem** has been drawn inside the relative clause, and the relative word **quam** is virtually an *adjective* modifying **urbem**. It may be called a **relative adjective**. The second translation, in which **urbem** has been placed in the main clause, is to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 79, PAGE 337, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§80. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid*

A pronoun used to ask a question is called an **interrogative pronoun**. In the questions “Who are you?” and “What are you doing?” the words “who” and “what” are examples of interrogative pronouns in English. Most of the forms of the interrogative pronoun in Latin are identical with the forms of the relative pronoun.

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.

	Singular				Plural		
	M./F.		N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	who?	quid	what?	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	whose? of whom?	cuius	of what?	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	to/for whom?	cui	to/for what?	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	whom?	quid	what (d.o.)?	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	from whom? (etc.)	quō	from what? (etc.)	quibus	quibus	quibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the singular there is one set of forms for both masculine and feminine. All forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun except the masculine/feminine nominative form (**quis**) and the neuter nominative and accusative form (**quid**).

2. In the plural there are different forms for all three genders, and all the forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun. The English translations of the plural forms are identical with those of the singular except for the addition of notes about number and gender. For example:

quis	who?	quī	who (masc. pl.)?
quid	what? (or what thing?)	quae	what (pl.)? (or what things?)

3. When a form of the interrogative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is occasionally attached directly to the pronoun. Thus **quōcum** (with whom?) and **quibuscum** (with whom [pl.]?).

4. In Latin, as in English, an interrogative pronoun is placed first in a question, unless it is the object of a preposition. For example:

Quis illud dixit?	<i>Who</i> said that thing?
Ā quō amāris?	<i>By whom</i> are you loved?
Quid tē terret?	<i>What</i> is frightening you?
Quae dixit rēx?	<i>What things</i> did the king say?

5. The interrogative enclitic **-ne** is not added to an interrogative pronoun since the pronoun itself indicates a question.

§81. The Interrogative Adjective *quī, quae, quod*

In the questions “What book are you reading?” and “Which poems were written by Horace?” the words “what” and “which” are examples of interrogative adjectives in English because each modifies an expressed noun that directly follows. An interrogative pronoun, by contrast, stands alone. For example:

<i>What man</i> was chosen consul? (“what” modifies “man” and is an interrogative <i>adjective</i>)
<i>What</i> are you doing? (“what” stands alone and is an interrogative <i>pronoun</i>)

In Latin, the interrogative adjective *is identical in all its forms, singular and plural, with the relative pronoun*. For example:

Quem virum amās?	<i>Which man</i> do you love?
In quibus oppidīs vixistī?	<i>In which towns</i> have you lived?
Quod animal in agrō erat?	<i>What animal</i> was in the field?
Cum quā fēminā ambulābat?	<i>With what woman</i> was he walking?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The interrogative adjective may be translated either “what” or “which.”
2. The interrogative enclitic **-ne** is not added to an interrogative adjective since the adjective itself indicates a question.

☛ DRILL 80–81, PAGE 339, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§82. Dative with an Intransitive Verb

Certain intransitive verbs regularly appear with a Dative of Reference indicating the person or thing affected by the action of the verb. Such a dative is called a **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**. For example:

Mea sententia *Antōniō* placet. (*placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum* be pleasing, please)

My opinion is pleasing to *Antony*.

My opinion pleases *Antony*.

***Rēgī* nostrō *pāreātur*.** (*pāreō, pāreere, pāruī, pāritūrus* be obedient, obey)

Let there be an obeying to our *king*.

Let our *king* be obeyed.

The syntax of each italicized word (*Antōniō, rēgī*) is **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb are so indicated in the vocabulary list by the addition of “(+ dat.)” at the end of their entries. Although these verbs are usually intransitive in Latin, they may often be translated less literally by transitive English verbs. For example, in the second translation of the first sentence, “Antony” is the direct object of the English verb “pleases.”
2. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb may occur in the passive voice *in an impersonal use only*. In such a construction, it is often convenient to translate the Dative with an Intransitive Verb as the personal subject of an English verb in the passive voice. For example, in the second translation of the second sentence, “king” is the subject of the passive voice English verb “let . . . be obeyed.”

Short Readings

1. While speaking to his housekeeper, a rich old man is less than truthful.

pauper sum; fateor, patior; quod dī dant ferō. (PLAUTUS, *AULULARIA* 88)

pauper, pauperis poor

2. Eunomia asks her brother a pressing question.

dīc mihi, quaesō, quis ea est quam vīs† dūcere† uxōrem? (PLAUTUS, *AULULARIA* 170)

quaesō = 1st sing. pres. act. indic., I ask you, please

†**volō, velle, voluī**, — be willing, want, wish; **vīs** = 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.

†**dūcō, here**, bring home

uxor, uxōris f. wife

3. A slave's response after he has been ordered to hard labor

vīs haec quidem hercle est, et trahī et trūdī simul. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVI* 750)

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; pull

trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsus shove, push

simul (adv.) at the same time

4. The first line of Ennius's epic poem

Mūsae, quae pedibus magnum pulsātis Olympum . . . (ENNIUS, *ANNALĒS* I.1)

Mūsa, Mūsae f. Muse

pēs, pedis m. foot

pulsō (1-tr.) strike, beat

Olympus, Olympī m. (Mount) Olympus

5. A fragment from an unknown work of Ennius

ōrātor audāx esse dēbet. (ENNIUS, *SED. INC. FRAG.* 21)

ōrātor, ōrātōris m. speaker

6. A fragment of the poetry of Ennius

quī vincit nōn est victor nisi victus fatētur. (ENNIUS, *SED. INC. FRAG.* 513)

victor, victōris m. conqueror, victor

7. A woman's fate is reported with heavy irony.

placēre occēpit graviter postquam ēmortuast. (CAECILIUS STATIUS, *PALLIATAE FRAG.* 163)

occipiō (ob- + capiō) take up, begin

ēmior (ē- + morior) die; **ēmortuast** = **ēmortua est**

8. A fragment from the tragic poet Accius

sapimus animō, fruimur animā; sine animō anima est dēbilis.

(ACCIIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 296)

sapiō, sapere, sapiī/sapīvī, — be intelligent, show good sense

fruor, fruī, fructus sum enjoy, take delight

dēbilis, dēbile weak, feeble

9. A fragment on mortality attributed to Varro

Dīi essēmus nī morerēmur. (PSEUDO-VARRO, *SENTENTIAE* 1)

dīi = deī

nī = nisi

10. In defending his client accused of attempted murder, Cicero asks a series of rhetorical questions intended to expose the preposterous charge.

ipsīus autem venēnī quae ratiō fingitur? ubi quaesītum est, quem ad modum parātum, quō pactō, cui, quō in locō trādītum? (CICERO, *PRŌ CAELIŌ* 58)

venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* manner, way

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus fashion, contrive;
imagine

quaerō, quaerere, quaesī/quaesīvī,
quaesītus seek

parō (1-tr.) get, obtain

pactum, pactī *n.* manner, way; means

11. Cicero quotes Ennius's epitaph, which may have been written by the poet himself. It was placed beneath a statue of the poet at the tomb of the Scipios.

Aspicite, ō cīvēs, senis Enni imāgini' formam.

hic vestrum† pānxit maxima facta patrum.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.34)

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look
toward, look at; behold

senex, senis old

Ennius, Ennī *m.* Ennius; the final -i of Ennī
here scans *short*.

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness;
imāgini' = imāginis

forma, formae *f.* shape, form; appearance

†vestrum = vestrōrum

pangō, pangere, pānxī/pepigī, pāctus fix,
fasten; compose, record

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

12. Laelius makes this observation about Fortune.

nōn enim solum ipsa Fortūna caeca est, sed eōs etiam plērumque efficit caecōs

quōs complexa est. (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 54)

plērumque (adv.) on most occasions; to a great extent

efficiō (ex- + faciō) make; render

conplector (= complector), conplectī, complexus sum embrace

13. Near the end of the dialogue, Laelius recalls his recently deceased friend, Scipio Aemilianus.

mihi quidem Scīpiō, quamquam est subitō ēreptus, vīvit tamen semperque vīvet;
virtūtem enim amāvī illīus virī. (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 102)

Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis *m.* (P.) Scipio (Africanus Aemilianus) (consul 147, 134 B.C.E.)

subitō (adv.) suddenly

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

14. The poet and his beloved Lesbia have something in common.

Lesbia mī dīcit semper male nec tacet umquam

dē mē; Lesbia mē dispeream nisi amat.

quō signō? quia sunt totidem mea; dēprecor illam

assiduē, vērūm dispeream nisi amō. (CATULLUS XCII)

mī = mihi

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent,
keep silent

dispereō (dis- + per- + eō), disperire,

disperī, — perish

signum, signī *n.* sign; indication

quia (conj.) because

totidem (indeclinable numerical adj.) just
as many; just the same

dēprecor (1-tr.) deprecate, abuse

assiduē (adv.) constantly

15. Caesar describes the position of the common people in Gaul.

nōbilibus in† hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in* servōs.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ*, VI.13)

nōbilis, nōbile noble

†**in**, *here*, toward

Some Roman proverbs

16. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B21)

bis (adv.) twice

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

17. Etiam quī faciunt odērunt iniūriam. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* E10)

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injustice

18. Hominem experīri multa paupertās iubet. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* H8)

paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty

19. Levis est Fortūna: citō reposcit quod dedit. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* L4)

citō (adv.) swiftly

repscō, reposcere, —, — demand back

20. A shepherd laments his inability to make money from selling his animals.

nōn umquam gravis aere domum mihi dextra redībat. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* I.35)

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze; money

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

21. Having detected a storm on the sea's surface, Neptune emerges and scolds the winds.

iam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine, ventī,

miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs? (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.133–34)

iam (adv.) now

nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up

tantus, -a, -um so much, so great

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise up

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, pile

22. Aeneas speaks to Dido and concludes the defense of his departure from Carthage.

dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlis;

Ītaliā nōn sponte sequor. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.360–61)

dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsī/dēsīvī, dēsītum stop, cease (+ infin.)

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn; inflame, provoke

querēla, querēlae *f.* lament, complaint

*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

23. Dido speaks before committing suicide.

. . . moriēmur inultae,

sed moriāmur. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.659–60)

inultus, -a, -um unavenged

24. Mezentius gloats as he kills an opponent.

nunc morere. ast dē mē dīvum† pater atque hominum rēx

vīderit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.743–44)

ast (conj.) but

†dīvum = dīvōrum

25. After rejecting a well-dressed, mean-spirited friend, the poet speaks approvingly of a man whose appearance might seem more provincial and laughable.

. . . at ingenium ingēns

incultō latet hōc sub corpore. . . . (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* I.3.33–34)

at (conj.) but

incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated

lateō, latēre, latuī, — hide, lie hidden, be concealed

26. Which is better, city or country?

Rōmae rūs optās; absentem rūsticus urbem

tollis ad astra levis . . . (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* II.7.28–29)

absēns, absentis not present, absent

rūsticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the country or a farm, rustic

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise

astrum, astrī *n.* star; *pl.*, (the) heavens, sky

27. The poet describes how he won Cynthia.

hanc ego nōn aurō, nōn Indīs flectere conchīs,
sed potuī blandī carminis obsequiō. (PROPERTIUS I.8B.39–40)

Indus, -a, -um of or belonging to India, Indian
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence
concha, conchae *f.* sea-shell, conch; pearl
blandus, -a, -um charming, ingratiating, seductive
obsequium, obsequiī *n.* assiduous attention

28. The poet explains the source of inspiration for his poems.

nōn haec Calliopē, nōn haec mihi cantat Apollō.
ingenium nōbīs ipsa puella facit. (PROPERTIUS II.1.3–4)

Calliopē, Calliopēs *f.* Calliope (Muse of epic poetry)
cantō (1-tr.) sing; compose

29. One advantage of being in love

omne in amōre malum, sī patiāre, leve est. (PROPERTIUS II.5.16)

30. The poet assumes the role of betrayed lover and imagines another, luckier man.

fēlix quī quod amat dēfendere fortiter audet,
cui sua “nōn fēcī” dīcere amīca[†] potest. (OVID, AMŌRES II.5.9–10)

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus defend
[†]**amīca, amīcae** *f.* girlfriend; mistress

31. An observation on protesting too much

quī nimium multīs “nōn amo”[†] dīcit amat. (OVID, REMEDIA AMŌRIS 648)

nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
[†]The -ō of **amō** here scans *short*.

32. Coriolanus’s mother, Veturia, reviles her son, an exiled Roman general about to attack Rome.

ergō ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi filium habērem, libera in
liberā patriā mortua essem. (LIVY, AB URBE CONDITĀ II.40.8)

ergō (adv.) therefore
pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth (to), bear (of a mother)
oppugnō (1-tr.) attack

33. The commander of Roman troops in Sicily advises his men before a battle with the Carthaginians.

quī prior strīnkerit ferrum, eius victōria erit. (LIVY, AB URBE CONDITĀ XXIV.38.5)

prior = *masc. sing. nom. of comparative adj.*, earlier, sooner
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus draw
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

34. A faithful old dog responds to his master after he is scolded for losing his prey.
quod fuimus laudā si iam damnās quod sumus.

(PHAEDRUS, *FĀBULAE AESŌPIAE* V.10.9)

iam (adv.) now

damnō (1-tr.) condemn

35. The philosopher gives a definition.

philosophia studium virtūtis est, sed per ipsam virtūtem: nec virtūs autem esse sine studiō suī potest nec virtūtis studium sine ipsā. nōn enim quemadmodum in iīs quī aliquid ex distantī locō ferīre cōnantur, alibi est quī petit, alibi quod petitur, nec quemadmodum itinera quae ad urbēs perdūcunt, sīc viae ad virtūtem sunt extrā ipsam: ad virtūtem venītur per ipsam, cōhaerent inter sē philosophia

virtūsque. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* LXXXIX.8)

philosophia, philosophiae *f.* philosophy

aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indefinite pron., something*

distāns, distantis (being) distant

feriō, ferīre, —, — strike, hit

alibi (adv.) elsewhere; **alibi . . . alibi . . .**, in one place . . . , in another place . . .

iter, itineris *n.* journey; route

perdūcō (**per-** + **dūcō**) lead, bring

extrā (prep. + acc.) outside of

cōhaereō, cōhaerēre, cōhaesī, cōhaesūrus

cling together, belong together, be united

36. Having acknowledged that the world is ruled by the laws of fortune, the philosopher offers advice.

in eum intrāvimus mundum in quō hīs lēgibus vīvitur. placet; pārē. nōn placet; quācumque vīs,† exī. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* XCI.15)

intrō (1-intr.) enter

mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world

quācumque (adv.) by whatever way

†**volō, velle, voluī**, — be willing, want, wish; **vīs** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*

exeō (**ex-** + **eō**) go out

37. The philosopher argues about the rationality of the fear of death.

quemadmodum fāmam extimuiſtī sine causā, sīc et illa,† quae numquam timērēs nisi fāma iussisset. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* XCI.20)

extimēscō, extimēscere, extimui, — be thoroughly afraid of, dread

†**illa** = things said about death and the afterlife

38. The philosopher makes a claim for the power of confidence.

nōn quia difficilia sunt nōn audēmus, sed quia nōn audēmus difficilia sunt.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* CIV.26)

quia (conj.) because

39. Arguing with her slave, Clytaemnestra explains her own cure for anger.

et ferrum et ignis saepe medicīnae locō est. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 152)

ignis, ignis, -ium *f.* fire

medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine; treatment, cure

40. Eurybates reports the shouts of the Greeks as a storm overwhelms their ships during the homeward voyage from Troy.

nīl nōbile ausōs pontus atque undae ferent?†

ignāva fortēs fāta cōnsūment virōs? (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 517–18)

nōbilis, nōbile noble

pontus, pontī *m.* sea

unda, undae *f.* wave, water

†**ferō**, *here*, carry away, carry off

ignāvus, -a, -um lazy, sluggish; cowardly; ignoble

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus

destroy, consume

41. An opinion uttered by the Chorus

numquam est ille miser cui facile est morī.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *HERCULES OETAeus* 111)

42. A woman responds to a man who has just offered her his beloved brother.

“Quid? Tū,” inquit illa, “dōnās mihi eum sine quō nōn potes vīvere, ex cuius
ōsculō pendēs, quem sīc tū amās quemadmodum ego tē volō?”

(PETRONIUS, *SATYRICON* 127)

ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* (little) mouth

pendeō, pendēre, pependī, — hang

volō, velle, voluī, — love, like, be fond of

43. After the death of Pompey, one of his soldiers argues for accepting Caesar’s victory.

. . . nōn barbara victōs

rēgna manent, nōn Armenium mihi saeva minātur

aut Scythicum fortūna iugum; sub iūra togātī

cīvis eō . . . (LUCAN, *BELLUM CĪVĪLE* IX.236–39)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

Armenius, -a, -um Armenian

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

minor (1-intr.) threaten (someone, dat.)

with (something, acc.)

Scythicus, -a, -um Scythian

iugum, iugī *n.* yoke (of slavery)

togātus, -a, -um wearing a toga

44. Having finished a book of poems, the poet instructs his slave.

ī, puer, et cārō perfer leve mūnus amīcō

quī meruit nūgās prīmus habēre meās. (MARTIAL IV.10.3–4)

perferō (**per-** + **ferō**) carry through, bring
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus earn; deserve
nūgae, nūgārum *f. pl.* trifles, nuggets; nonsense
prīmus, -a, -um first

45. An ominous observation

Mūnera quī tibi dat locuplētī, Gaure, senīque,

sī sapīs et sentīs, hoc tibi ait: “Mōtere.” (MARTIAL VIII.27)

locuples, locuplētis wealthy, rich
Gaurus, Gaurī *m.* Gaurus
senex, senis old
sapiō, sapere, sapiī/sapīvī, — be intelligent
aiō (defective verb) sat; **ait** = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

46. The poet addresses a friend or lover.

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es īdem:

nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē. (MARTIAL XII.46)

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

47. A rhetorical question uttered by a mournful mother who is no longer able to see the ghost of her son

ubi sunt quī acerbās mortium necessitātēs et ferrea iūra fātōrum et invictās nec
 ūllō maerōre mūtābilēs inānium lēgēs querēbantur umbrārum?

([QUINTILIAN], *DECLAMATIONES MAIORES* 10.8)

necessitās, necessitātis *f.* necessity, force
ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; rigid, unyielding
invictus, -a, -um unconquerable
ūllus, -a, -um any
maeror, maerōris *m.* lamentation

mūtābilis, mūtābile mutable, changeable
inānis, ināne empty; hollow; illusory
queror, querī, questus sum complain (of),
 protest; lament

48. An example of Cato the Elder’s rhetoric when he expresses indignation at the beating of Roman citizens

quis hanc contumēliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?

(AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* X.3.17)

contumēlia, contumēliae *f.* abuse

Longer Readings

1. Varro, *Rēs Rūsticāe* I.1.4–5

Varro's version of a poetic invocation

. . . invocābō eōs, nec, ut Homērus et Ennius, Mūsās, sed duodecim deōs
Cōnsentīs; neque tamen eōs urbānōs, quōrum imāginēs ad[†] forum aurātae stant,
sex marēs et fēminae totidem, sed illōs XII deōs, quī maximē agricolārum ducēs
sunt. primum, quī omnīs frūctōs agrī cultūrae caelō et terrā continent, Iovem et
Tellūrem; itaque, quod[†] iī parentēs magnī dīcuntur, Iuppiter pater appellātur,
Tellūs terra māter.

invocō (**in-** + **vocō**) call upon, invoke

Homērus, Homērī *m.* Homer

Ennius, Ennī *m.* Ennius

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

duodecim (indeclinable numerical adj.) twelve

dei Cōnsentēs, deōrum Cōnsentium *m. pl.*

(the) *dei Consentēs* (the twelve major
deities that oversee Rome)

urbānus, -a, -um of or belonging to the city

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image

[†]**ad, here, at, near**

aurātus, -a, -um gilded with gold, golden

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus stand

sex (indeclinable numerical adj.) six

mās, maris, -ium *m.* male

totidem (indeclinable numerical adj.) just
as many

XII, 12

maximē (adv.) especially

dux, ducis *m.* leader; guide

primum (adv.) first

frūctus, frūctī *m.* fruit; return, reward

cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation; **agrī cultūra,**
agriculture

contineō (**con-** + **teneō**), **continēre, continuī,**
contentus contain, enclose, encompass

Tellūs, Tellūris *f.* Tellus (the goddess Earth)

itaque (adv.) and thus, and therefore

[†]**quod, here** (conj.) because

parēs, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

Marcus Terentius Varro (116–27 B.C.E.) was a follower of Pompey during the civil war between Pompey and Caesar, but he was forgiven by Caesar and avoided being killed in the same year as Cicero. Varro may have been the most prolific writer in ancient Rome. Only a few works have survived and those only in partial form.

The *Rēs Rūsticāe* (Agricultural Matters) was written when Varro was in his eighties, perhaps with the aim of reviving interest in country life. The work, only a small part of which survives, treats in a practical way various topics concerning agriculture and animal husbandry.

2. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.290–94

As the Greeks overrun Troy, the ghost of Hector warns Aeneas.

hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troia.

290

sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā

dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.

sacra suōsque tibi† commendat Troia Penātīs;

hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere . . .

mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall

ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush; fall (with violence)

culmen, culminis *n.* summit, peak

sat (indeclinable subst.) enough

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel of Troy)

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend; **dēfēnsa fuissent = dēfēnsa essent**

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long*.

commendō (1-tr.) entrust (for preservation), give in trust

Penātēs, Penātium *m. pl.* Penates (guardian deities of a household or country)

comes, comitis *m. or f.* companion, comrade

quaerō, quaerere, quaesī/quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.376–81

An enraged and sarcastic Dido addresses Aeneas after she hears him claim that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

(heu furiis incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,

nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Iove missus ab ipsō

interpres dīvum† fert horrida iussa† per aurās.

scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs

sollicitat. neque tē teneō neque dicta refellō:

380

ī, sequere Ītaliā ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.

furiae, furiarum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy; (the) furies

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn; inflame, provoke

augur, auguris *m.* prophet, augur

Lycius, -a, -um Lycian, of Lycia

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; oracle

interpres, interpretis *m. or f.* go-between, agent; interpreter

†**dīvum = dīvorum**

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible, dreadful

†**iussum, iussī** *n.* order, command

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

scīlicet (*adv.*) *often used ironically*, of course, no doubt, obviously

superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor

quiētus, -a, -um calm, serene

sollicitō (1-tr.) disturb, trouble, agitate

refellō, refellere, refelli, — contradict, refute

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

unda, undae *f.* wave, water

4. Vergil, *Aeneid* VIII.51–57

Part of the advice given in a dream by the river god Tiberinus to a sleeping Aeneas

Arcades hīs ōrīs, genus ā Pallante profectum,
 quī rēgem Ēvandrum comitēs, quī signa secūtī,
 dēlēgēre locum et posuēre in montibus urbem
 Pallantis proavī dē nōmine Pallantēum.
 hī bellum adsiduē dūcunt† cum gente Latīnā;
 hōs castrīs adhibē sociōs et foedera iunge.
 ipse ego tē rīpīs et rēctō flūmine dūcam . . .

55

Arcades, Arcadum *m. pl.* Arcadians

ōra, ōrae *f.* shore

genus, generis *n.* race, stock

Pallās, Pallantis *m.* Pallas (a legendary Arcadian king)

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum set forth; come forth, arise

Ēvander, Ēvandri *m.* Evander (king of the Arcadians)

comes, comitis *m.* companion

signum, signī *n.* (military) standard

dēligō (dē- + legō), dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus choose, select

mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain

proavus, proavī *m.* great-grandfather

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

Pallantēum, Pallantēi *n.* Pallanteum (city founded by Evander on the future site of Rome)

adsiduē (*adv.*) continuously, incessantly
 †**dūcō, here, conduct**

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp

adhibeō (ad- + habeō), adhibēre, adhibuī, adhibitus bring; summon

foedus, foederis *n.* pact, agreement

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus join; enter into

rīpa, rīpae *f.* bank

rēctus, -a, -um straight

flūmen, flūminis *n.* stream

5. Horace, *Sermōnēs* I.9.57–60

A pestering man from whom the poet cannot escape says that he intends to pursue a friendship with the poet's patron, the wealthy Maecenas.

mūneribus servōs corrumpam; nōn, hodiē sī
exclūsus fuerō, dēsistam; tempora quaeram,
occurram in triviīs, dēdūcam. nīl sine magnō
vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.

corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus
corrupt, bribe

hodiē (adv.) today

exclūdō, exclūdere, exclūsī, exclūsus deny
entry, bar, exclude; **exclūsus fuerō** =
exclūsus erō

dēsistō, dēsistere, destitī, — cease, leave off

tempus, temporis *n.* time; opportunity

quaerō, quaerere, quaesī/quaesīvī,
quaesītus search for, seek

occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum run to
meet

trivium, triviū *n.* crossroads

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; escort,
accompany

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor; effort

Quintus Horātius Flaccus (65–8 B.C.E.) was born in Venusia in southern Italy, the son of a freedman. He was educated in Rome and in Athens. In Athens he joined with Brutus, Julius Caesar's assassin, and followed him in 42 to the battle of Philippi, where Brutus was killed. Horace returned to Rome, became acquainted with Vergil (who was to become his closest friend), and eventually came under the patronage of Maecenas. Horace wrote poetry in a dazzling variety of meters and tones. His works include satires, odes, and poetic epistles, in each of which Horace outdoes even Catullus in combining simplicity and sophistication. His mastery of Latin poetry written in Greek meter was never equaled (or even attempted) by another Roman writer. While his poems never attain the length of Vergilian epic, they cover an even wider variety of themes in addressing all aspects of public and private life. Like Vergil, whom Horace calls "half of my soul" (*animae dimidium meae*), Horace achieved legendary status within his own lifetime.

The *Sermōnēs* (Conversations, but usually referred to as *Satires*) are Horace's first published work. Two separate books were published, the first in 35 and the second five years later. Written in dactylic hexameters, they are satiric sketches of a variety of human weaknesses. As the title *Sermōnēs* implies, the poems are conversational in tone and are marked by brevity, ellipsis, and brutal but clever frankness.

6. Horace, *Epistulae* I.11.25–30

The poet reflects on the restless discontent of men.

. . . nam sī ratiō et prūdentia cūrās, 25
 nōn locus effūsī lātē maris arbiter aufert,
 caelum nōn animum mūtant quī trāns mare currunt.
 strēnuā nōs exercet inertia: nāvibus atque
 quadrīgīs petimus bene vīvere. quod petis hīc est,
 est Ulubrīs, animus sī tē nōn dēficit aequus. 30

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning
prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out; spread out
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
arbiter, arbitri *m.* spectator, onlooker; *here,* as *adj.*, commanding a view (of)
mūtō (1-tr.) change
trāns (prep. + acc.) across
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum run, rush

strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise
inertia, inertiae *f.* inactivity, laziness
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
quadrīga, quadrīgae *f.* (four-horse) chariot
hīc (adv.) here
Ulubrae, Ulubrārum *f. pl.* Ulubrae (a small town in Latium)
dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail
aequus, -a, -um level, even; calm, tranquil

Written some time after 20 B.C.E., the *Epistulae* (*Letters*) are poems in dactylic hexameter in a conversational style. Much of our information about Horace's own life is derived from these *Epistulae*.

7. Ovid, *Amōrēs* 1.9.1–8

The poet expands on a common motif.

Mīlitat omnis amāns, et habet sua castra Cupīdō;
 Attice, crēde mihī,† mīlitat omnis amāns.
 quae bellō est habilis Venerī quoque convenit aetās.
 turpe senex mīles, turpe senīlis amor.
 quōs petiēre ducēs animōs in mīlite fortī,
 hōs petit in sociō bella† puella virō.
 pervigilant ambō; terrā requiēscit uterque—
 ille forēs dominae servat, at ille ducis.

5

mīlitō (1-intr.) be a soldier

amāns, amantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* lover

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp

Atticus, Atticī *m.* Atticus

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus believe, trust
 (+ dat.)

†The final **-i** of **mihī** here scans *long*.

habilis, habile suitable, fit

conveniō (con- + veniō) fit (with), be suited (to)

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

senex, senis old

senīlis, senīle aged

dux, ducis *m.* leader

†**bellus, -a, -um** beautiful, pretty

pervigilō (1-intr.) remain awake all night,
 stand watch all night

ambō, ambae, ambō both; **ambō** = *masc.*
pl. nom.

requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, — rest

uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two)

forēs, forum *f. pl.* door(s)

domina, dominae *f.* mistress

servō (1-tr.) preserve, save; guard

at (*adv.*) but; on the other hand

The *Amōrēs* (Loves or Love Affairs) is a collection of forty-nine poems written in elegiac couplets, the meter established for Latin love poetry. The *Amōrēs*, one of Ovid's first published works, describes in frankly erotic, playful, and irreverent vignettes his love relations with a woman he names Corinna, but he also treats a wide variety of other subjects.

8. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.1–6

The poet reports on the death of a poet.

Memnona sī māter, māter plōrāvit Achillem,
 et tangunt magnās trīstia fāta deās,
 flēbilis indignōs, Elegeiia, solve capillōs!
 ā! nimis ex vērō nunc tibi nōmen erit:
 ille tuī vātēs operis, tua fāma, Tibullus
 ardet in exstructō, corpus ināne, rogō.

5

Memnōn, Memnonis *m.* Memnon (king of the Ethiopians, ally of the Trojans, killed at Troy by Achilles); **Memnona** = *acc. sing.*

plōrō (1-tr.) weep for

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch, move, affect

trīstis, trīste sad, mournful, bitter

flēbilis, flēbile weeping, tearful

indignus, -a, -um unworthy; unbecoming

Elegīa, Elegīae *f.* Elegy (goddess of elegiac poetry); **Elegeiia** = **Elegīa**

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen

capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.,* hair

ā (interj.) alas! ah!

nimis (adv.) too, excessively

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* prophet; bard, poet

opus, operis *n.* work

Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus (an elegiac poet)

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn

ex(s)truō, ex(s)truere, ex(s)trūxī, ex(s)tructus
 heap up, raise, construct

inānis, ināne lifeless

rogus, rogī *m.* funeral pyre

§83. About Meter I

Introduction to Quantitative Meter

The different meters of classical Latin poetry are all **quantitative**; that is, they are based on the alternation of long and short syllables according to particular patterns. The quantity of each syllable in a word is either **long** (–) or **short** (˘), terms (and marks) that indicate the *quantity* of time for which that syllable is to be held when the line is recited. As with whole and half notes in music, one long syllable is equivalent to two short syllables. When one marks the long and short syllables in lines of poetry, one is said to **scan** those lines, and both the process and product of scanning are called **scansion**.

Each vowel or diphthong represents a new syllable. The **quantity** (long or short) of the vowel or diphthong determines the length of the syllable. A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed by two or more consonants not necessarily in the same word* (**long by position**)¹

If a syllable is **not** long, it is short.

OBSERVATIONS

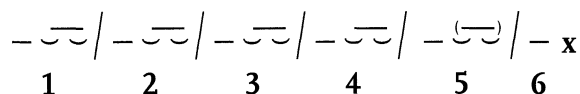
1. The letter **x** counts as a double consonant.
2. Short vowels before consonantal **-i-** count long.²
3. The consonant groups **qu**, **gu**, and **su** count as *single* consonants.³
4. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, a **mute** (**p, ph, b, t, th, d, c, g**) followed by a **liquid** (**l, r**), can be *either long or short*.⁴ (This is sometimes called the **mute/liquid rule**.) For example, the first syllable of **patria** may be *long* or *short*.
5. When the consonant **f** is followed by a liquid, a preceding syllable containing a short vowel is almost always short but *may* be long.
6. The consonant **h** does *not* count toward making a syllable long by position. For example, in the phrase **hostis habet** the second syllable of **hostis** (**-tis**) is *short*.

Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet

Many lines of Latin poetry are regularly divided into units called **feet**. Certain metrical systems employ the **dactyl** (< Greek *dactylos*, finger), a foot composed of one long syllable followed by two short syllables: – ˘ ˘. The dactyl can be replaced by a **spondee**, a foot composed of two long syllables: – –. The meter of epic poetry (Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, Lucretius's *Dē Rērum Nātūrā*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, etc.) is called **dactylic**

1. See Introduction, p. 8.
2. When a single consonantal **i** is written after another vowel, it in fact represents two **i**'s. For example, **Troia** = **Troiaa**. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create the diphthong **-oi** (pronounced as **-oe**), while the second is pronounced consonantly.
3. **g** and **s**, however, may also be followed by a vocalic **u**. For example: **arguit, suōs**.
4. When a mute is followed by a **nasal** (**m, n**), a preceding syllable containing a short vowel is almost always long but *may* be short.

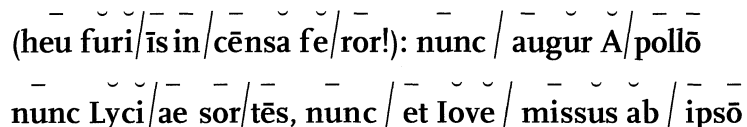
hexameter (< Greek *hexametron*, composed of six measures) because each line contains six dactylic feet, with substitutions of spondees for dactyls permitted. The following scheme represents the dactylic hexameter line:



OBSERVATIONS

1. The sixth (last) foot always consists of *two* syllables. The **x** marking the final syllable of the line is the symbol used for a syllable that may be *either* long or short. Such a syllable is called **anceps** (two-headed, two-fold; doubtful).
2. In the first four feet of a dactylic hexameter line, a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee. In the metrical scheme above, this substitution is indicated by the long mark above the two short marks. The dactyl in the fifth foot is rarely replaced by a spondee. When a dactylic hexameter line contains a spondee in the fifth foot, the line is called a **spondaic line**.

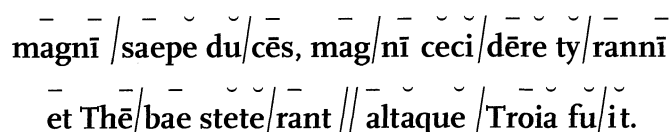
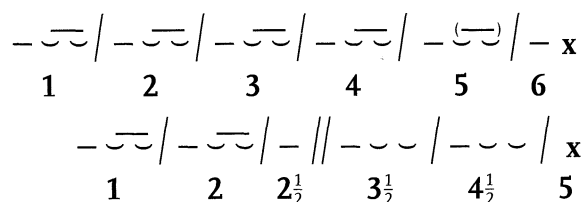
In scanning a line of poetry, a slash (/) is used to mark the divisions between the individual feet. For example:



OBSERVATION

In order to scan any line of Latin poetry, it is necessary to treat the line as one long word of many syllables. For example, in the first line, the final syllable of **feror** is long by position because the **-o-** is followed by **-r** and **n-**. Compare the length of **et** in the second line.

The meter of Roman elegiac poetry is called the **elegiac couplet**. It is composed of one line of dactylic hexameter in alternation with one line called **dactylic pentameter** (five feet), one foot of which is split into two halves. Catullus, Propertius, Ovid, and Martial all wrote poetry in this meter. The following scheme represents the elegiac couplet:



OBSERVATIONS

1. The dactylic pentameter line is in fact made up of two segments of two and a half feet each. Each half of the line is also called a **hemiepes** (—⏏—⏏—). The double line in the middle of the pentameter line marks what is called a **caesura** (see below).
2. In the second half of the dactylic pentameter line no substitution of spondees for dactyls is regularly allowed.
3. In the elegiac couplet the pentameter line is always indented under the hexameter line.

Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus

Elision (< *ēlīdō*, eliminate, omit) is the full or partial suppression of a final syllable of a word. It occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry under the following circumstances:

1. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong:

(hae tibi e/runt ar/tēs), pā/cīque im/pōnere / mōrem

2. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with **h-**:

nunc more/re, ast dē/mē dī/vum pater / atque homi/num rēx

3. when a word ending in a vowel followed by **-m** is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, a diphthong, or **h-**:

Dardani/ae, fui/mus Trō/es, fuit / Īlium et / ingēns.

dēfen/dī pos/sent, et/iam hāc dē/fēnsa fu/issent.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The symbol $_$ is used in scansion to mark the elision of a syllable.
2. When elision occurs, the elided syllable either is not pronounced or is pronounced slightly and quickly so that the *quality* is heard but the *quantity* is lost. The elided syllable is *not* scanned.

When **es** or **est** follows a word ending in a vowel or a word ending in a vowel followed by **-m**, the initial **e-** is dropped, and the rest of the word is joined to the preceding word. This is called **inverse elision** or **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphairesis*, taking away). For example, **mea est** may be pronounced and written **meast**; **relictum est** may be pronounced and written **relictumst**. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE INVERSE ELISION OR APHAERESIS WHEN IT APPEARS IN READINGS.

A **caesura** (< *caesūra*, cutting) is an internal pause in a line of poetry that occurs whenever *a word ends within a foot*. A double slash (//) is used to mark a caesura. For example:

magnī / saepe // du/cēs, // mag/nī // ceci/dēre // ty/rannī

When a word ends with a *long* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **strong** (e.g., after **ducēs** and the second **magnī**). When a word ends with a *short* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **weak** (e.g., after **saepe** and **cecidēre**). There can be no caesura between two words that are elided.

A **principal caesura** falls at a natural pause in the line (often indicated by punctuation). In many dactylic hexameter lines it occurs in the *third* foot and is *strong*. Also common is a principal caesura in the *second* or *fourth* foot, and frequently both

second and fourth foot caesurae appear. When scanning a line, one usually marks only the principal caesura(e). For example:

magnī / saepe du / cēs, // mag / nī cecī / dēre ty / rannī
 Dardani / ae, // fui / mus Trō / es, // fuit / Īlium et / ingēns.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The principal caesura in the first line occurs in the third foot and is strong. It corresponds to a sense pause as well. The second line has two caesurae, both strong, in the second and fourth feet, and these pauses also reinforce sense.
2. The caesura in the pentameter line of an elegiac couplet regularly falls after two and a half feet.
3. In choosing a principal caesura (or principal caesurae) for a given line, one should favor a caesura that reinforces the sense or grammatical structure of the line.

A **diaeresis** (< Greek *diairesis*, division) is also a pause within a line, but it occurs *at the end of* and not within a metrical foot. When the *end of a word and the end of a foot coincide*, the resulting pause is called a diaeresis. A diaeresis is marked by a triple slash (///). For example:

quid struit? /// aut quā /// spē ini / mīcā in /// gente mo / rātur

When scanning a line, one usually marks a diaeresis *only* if it is a true sense pause. In the line just scanned, only the diaeresis after **struit** would ordinarily be marked.

A **hiatus** (< *hiātus*, gaping) occurs *when conditions for elision exist but elision does not occur*. For example:

quid struit? /// aut quā / spē ξ ini / mīcā in / gente mo / rātur

A hiatus is marked by a wavy line (ξ).

OBSERVATIONS

1. Hiatus occurs between **spē** and **inimicā**.
2. Hiatus is rare in classical Latin poetry, but it most often occurs when the syllable not elided is an interjection (**heu**, **ō**, etc.) or is at the principal caesura (as in the line above).

Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry

Romans did not read silently to themselves under any circumstances. All Latin poetry—indeed, all Latin literature—was written to be read out loud. Learning to read Latin poetry aloud with comparative ease not only enhances the aesthetic appreciation of that poetry but also aids comprehension.

1. READ ALL PASSAGES OF POETRY ALOUD, SLOWLY AT FIRST, PAYING ATTENTION TO LONG AND SHORT SYLLABLES.
2. FOCUS ON MAKING ELISIONS AND WORD ACCENT. Allow the meter to assert itself.
3. PAUSE SLIGHTLY AT THE PRINCIPAL CAESURA (OR CAESURAE). The caesural breaks help reinforce the meter and often also clarify ambiguities of meaning.

While the word order in poetry is sometimes similar to that of prose, more often the demands of meter, the importance of line composition, and the extreme economy of poetic expression result in word orders that are different from those seen in prose. Certain observations about word order in dactylic hexameter and dactylic pentameter lines may be made:

1. INDIVIDUAL WORDS ARE PLACED FOR MAXIMUM EFFECT AND EMPHASIS EVEN IF THEY STAND FAR APART FROM MODIFIERS.
2. WORDS THAT ARE CLOSELY RELATED (SUBJECT AND VERB, NOUN AND ADJECTIVE, ETC.) ARE OFTEN PLACED AT EITHER END OF THE HEXAMETER LINE.
3. A CAESURAL PAUSE OFTEN SIGNALS THE END OF A PHRASE OR WORD GROUP.
4. IN BOTH HEXAMETER AND PENTAMETER LINES, A WORD ENDING AT THE CAESURA OFTEN GOES WITH A WORD AT THE END OF THE LINE.

● DRILL 83, PAGE 359, MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary

- annus, annī** *m.* year
➤ **iussum, iussī** *n.* order, command
- **nēmō, nēminis** *m. or f.* no one
nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night
tempus, temporis *n.* time
- **cōsulātus, cōsulātūs** *m.* consulship
➤ **domus, domūs** *f.* house, home
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army
➤ **manus, manūs** *f.* hand; band, troop
➤ **mōtus, mōtūs** *m.* motion, movement; disturbance
➤ **senātus, senātūs** *m.* senate
- **aciēs, aciēī** *f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line
➤ **diēs, diēī** *m. or f.* day
➤ **fidēs, fidēī** *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; loyalty
➤ **rēs, reī** *f.* thing; property; matter, affair; situation
➤ **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum** *f. pl.* accomplishments; history
➤ **rēs novae, rērum novārum** *f. pl.* revolution
➤ **rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae** *f.* republic
speciēs, *speciēī¹ *f.* appearance, aspect
- **hortor** (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort
➤ **imperō** (1-intr.) give an order (to); order, command (+ dat.)
➤ **parō** (1-tr.) prepare (for); get, obtain
- **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** warn; remind; advise
- **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** push, drive (off)
➤ **quaerō, quaerere, quaesī/quaesivī, quaesītus** search for, seek, ask (for)
- pūblicus, -a, -um** public
- alius, alia, aliud** other, another (§86)
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (§86)
➤ **neuter, neutra, neutrum** neither (of two) (§86)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (§86)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (§86)
tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all (§86)
ūllus, -a, -um any (§86)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (§86)
➤ **uter, utra, utrum** (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (§86)
- **aliter** (adv.) otherwise, in another way
➤ **iam** (adv.) (by) now; (by) then, already; presently
nē (conj.) introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not (§87); introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not (§88)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
➤ **quam ob rem** (rel. or interrog. adv.) on account of which thing; therefore; why
➤ **quārē** (rel. or interrog. adv.) because of which thing; therefore; why
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither
ubi (rel. adv.) where
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence
ut (conj.) introduces Purpose clause, in order that (§87); introduces Indirect Command, that (§88)

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular of **speciēs** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

- The ablative singular of **iussum**, **iussī** *n.* is **iussū**, as if it were formed from a fourth-declension noun ***iussus**, ***iussūs** *m.* The ablative appears most frequently with a possessive adjective or a Subjective Genitive. Although **iussū** is an Ablative of Cause, it is usually translated with the English words “at” or “by.”

Militēs meō iussū ad prōvinciam ivērunt.
Iussū Caesaris incolae liberābuntur.

The soldiers went to the province at my command.
By the order of Caesar the inhabitants will be freed.

- **nēmō**, **nēminis** *m. or f.* occurs in the singular only. Although the genitive and ablative occasionally appear, usually forms of **nūllus** (**nūllius**, **nūllō**, or **nūllā**) replace the forms of **nēmō**. **nēmō** is formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to the noun **homō**.
- **cōnsulātus**, **cōnsulātūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ātus** to the stem of the noun **cōnsul**. It means the “office of consul” or the “consulship.”
- The noun **domus** appears here as a fourth-declension noun (**domus**, **domūs** *f.*), while it appeared in Chapter VI as a second-declension noun (**domus**, **domī** *f.*). It is declined in *both* declensions. However, some forms are more common than others. The declension of **domus** that follows lists the less common forms in parentheses.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
Nom./Voc.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs (domī)	domōrum/domuūm
Dat.	domuī (domō)	domibus
Acc.	domum	domūs/domōs
Abl.	domō (domū)	domibus

There are only fourth-declension forms of the nominative, dative, and ablative plural. Second- and fourth-declension genitive and accusative plural forms are equally common. The locative is always **domī**.

- **manus**, **manūs** *f.* has two distinct meanings: “hand” (of a human) or an “armed force” of any size (band, troop).
- **mōtus**, **mōtūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **moveō**. It means “motion” or “movement,” or, more concretely, the result of motion or movement, “disturbance.”
- **senātus**, **senātūs** *m.*, “senate,” is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ātus** to the stem of the substantive **senex** (old man). The **senātus** was the highest deliberating body in Rome. One became a senator by winning election to one of the higher political offices (quaestorship, praetorship, consulship). All senators were members of the senate for life unless formally removed. Sometimes the genitive singular form **senātī** appears, as if **senātus** were a second-declension noun.
- **aciēs**, **aciēi** *f.* means the “sharp edge” of a weapon and, by extension, the sharp edge or “keenness” of one’s eyes or “acuity” of one’s mind. It is also used of a “battle line” or “battle formation” of troops.
- **diēs**, **diēi** is regularly masculine, but when **diēs** refers to a festival day, a day appointed for a business transaction, or the date of a letter, it is usually feminine.
- **fidēs**, **fidēi** *f.* can be felt toward others or recognized by others in oneself. One has “trust” or “faith” in a person or a thing expressed by a Dative of Reference, less often an Objective Genitive. One’s “trustworthiness” inspires “confidence” in others, and one’s “loyalty” is a sense of duty toward other persons or things.

Semper virō bonō fidem habēmus.

We always have trust for (in) a good man.

Socii fidem Rōmānam atque arma laudābant.

The allies were praising Roman trustworthiness and weapons.

Superātī in fidē maneant.

Let the conquered men remain in loyalty.

- Like its most common English translation, “thing,” **rēs**, **rei** *f.* is a noun that may convey a wide range of abstract and concrete ideas. The vocabulary entry for this word offers five common meanings: 1. “thing,” something that exists or occurs; 2. “property” or “wealth,” something that belongs to a person or family; 3. “matter” or “affair,” something that occupies one’s attention; 4. “activity” or “practice” in a particular field; and 5. “situation,” the state of affairs at a particular moment. **rēs** appears in several Latin idioms, including: **rēs gestae** (things having been accomplished), “accomplishments,” “history”; **rēs novae** (new things), “revolution”; and **rēs pūblica**, “republic” (cf. English commonwealth).

- **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum** is a transitive verb that may introduce an Indirect Command (§88).

Caesar suōs hortātus est nē timērent.

Caesar urged his own men that they not fear.

- **imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum** is an intransitive verb that may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). It may also introduce an Indirect Command (§88).

Caesar suīs imperāvīt nē fugerent.

Caesar commanded his own men that they not flee.

- **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus** means “prepare (for);” “get,” “obtain.” In addition to a wide variety of direct objects, **parō** may appear with an Object Infinitive.

Catīlina Cicerōnī insidiās parābat.

Catiline was preparing treachery for Cicero.

Caesar bellum parat.

Caesar prepares for war.

Amīcōs facile parābit.

She will easily get friends.

Quis pācem parāre nōn optet?

Who would not desire to obtain peace?

- **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** may introduce an Indirect Command (§88). Compounds of **moneō** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MONEŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** has a reduplicated third principal part (cf. **dō**).

- **quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesivī, quaesītus** may introduce an Indirect Command (§88). **quaerō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **quaesi-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**quaesistī, quaesistis**). The person from whom something is sought is expressed by **ā/ab** + ablative (cf. **petō**).

Marcus ā mē quaesivīt nē frātre[m] ad bellum mitterem.

Marcus asked from me that I not send (his) brother to war.

Marcus asked me not to send (his) brother to war.

- **neuter, neutra, neutrum** is an adjective formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to **uter**. It thus means “neither (of two).” A noun that is neuter is *neither* masculine *nor* feminine.

- **uter, utra, utrum** is an interrogative adjective that means “which (of two)?” It assumes that there are only two possible answers to the question it poses. **uter** is often used substantively.

In utrō oppidō vivīs?

In which town (of two [towns]) do you live?

Utrum vidēre optās?

Which (man or thing) (of two) do you desire to see?

- **aliter** is an irregular adverb formed from the adjective **alius, alia, aliud**.

- **iam** is an adverb that may indicate a variety of moments in time depending on the tense of the verb and the context in which it appears. It may mean “now” as opposed to any other moment in time. It may mark the completion of an action before the time indicated by the verb: “(by) now” with a present time verb, “(by) then” or “already” with a past time verb. When **iam** appears with a future tense, it often emphasizes the time immediately approaching and may be translated “presently.”

Accipe iam haec dōna.

Receive now these gifts.

Hic iam mihi hostis est.

This man is (by) now an enemy to me.

Carmen iam perfēcerat.

By then (already) he had completed (his) poem.

Iam veniet meus amīcus.

My friend will come presently.

When **iam** follows any negation, translations such as “no longer,” “not any longer” may be used.

Nōn iam illī pācem cupiunt.

No longer (Not any longer) do those men desire peace.

- The **quam** of the adverb **quam ob rem** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—“on account of which thing,” “therefore”—or an interrogative adjective (§81), “on account of which thing,” “why.” **quam ob rem** may be written as a single word (**quamobrem**).

- The **quā** of the adverb **quārē** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—“because of which thing,” “therefore,”—or an interrogative adjective (§81), “because of which thing,” “why.” **quārē** was originally an Ablative of Cause. **quārē** may be written as two words (**quā rē**).

	Derivatives	Cognates
alius	alias; alien; hidalgo	alarm; alligator; else; allegory
alter	alter; alternate; subaltern	parallax
diēs	diurnal; journal	Jupiter; Zeus
fidēs	fealty; faith; infidel	confide; defy; abide
manus	manacle; manage; manuscript; maintain; maneuver	emancipate; mandate; command
parō	prepare; parade; apparatus	parent
pellō	pulse; push; repel; compel	polish; anvil; felt
rēs	republic; reify; re; real	
speciēs	species; especial	espy; specimen; spectacle; skeptic; episcopal; telescope
tempus	temporary; tempest	

§84. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FOURTH DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-ūs**.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fourth declension are masculine, some are feminine, and a very few are neuter.

Case Endings of the Fourth Declension: Masculine/Feminine		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nominative/Vocative	-us	-ūs
Genitive	-ūs	-uum
Dative	-uī/-ū	-ibus
Accusative	-um	-ūs
Ablative	-ū	-ibus

ALL MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a masculine/feminine noun of the fourth declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

mōtus, mōtūs <i>m.</i> motion, movement; disturbance stem = mōt-		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	mōtus	mōtūs
Gen.	mōtūs	mōtuum
Dat.	mōtuī/mōtū	mōtibus
Acc.	mōtum	mōtūs
Abl.	mōtū	mōtibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the fourth declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ūs** = genitive singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural; **-ibus** = dative plural and ablative plural.
2. The dative singular ending is regularly **-uī**, but the archaic form **-ū** is often found.²
3. There are only three neuter nouns of the fourth declension in common use: **cornū** (horn), **genū** (knee), and **verū** ([broiling] spit). The endings for these neuter nouns differ slightly from the endings of the masculine/feminine fourth-declension nouns:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	-ū	-ua
Gen.	-ūs	-uum
Dat.	-ū	-ibus
Acc.	-ū	-ua
Abl.	-ū	-ibus

Because there are only three nouns in regular use, the neuter endings of the fourth declension need not be memorized immediately.

2. The archaic dative and ablative plural ending **-ubus** also occurs occasionally.

§85. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FIFTH DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-ĒĪ** OR **-ĒĪ**.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, one is sometimes masculine. There are no neuter fifth-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the Fifth Declension		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nominative/Vocative	-ēs	-ēs
Genitive	-ēĪ/-ĒĪ	-ērum
Dative	-ēĪ/-ĒĪ	-ēbus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-ē	-ēbus

ALL NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the fifth declension, add these endings to the stem. When the stem ends in a vowel, use the ending **-ĒĪ** in the genitive and dative singular. For example:

	rēs, reĪ <i>f.</i> thing	diēs, diēĪ <i>m. or f.</i> day
	stem = r-	stem = di-
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
Nom./Voc.	rēs	diēs
Gen.	reĪ	diēĪ
Dat.	reĪ	diēĪ
Acc.	rem	diem
Abl.	rē	diē
	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	rēs	diēs
Gen.	rērum	diērum
Dat.	rēbus	diēbus
Acc.	rēs	diēs
Abl.	rēbus	diēbus

OBSERVATION

Certain endings for nouns of the fifth declension are used to mark more than one case:
-ēs = nominative/vocative singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural;
-ēĪ or **-ĒĪ** = genitive singular and dative singular; **-ēbus** = dative plural and ablative plural.

☛ DRILL 84–85, PAGE 363, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§86. Nine Irregular Adjectives

There are nine first-second-declension adjectives that have slight irregularities. These adjectives are:

alius, alia, aliud other, another	tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two)	ūllus, -a, -um any
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two)	ūnus, -a, -um one; only
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no	uter, utra, utrum which (of two)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only	

The declension of these adjectives differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the *genitive and dative singular only*. For example:

Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	tōtūs	tōtūs	tōtūs
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular endings used for these adjectives are identical with those used for the intensive adjective **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** and the demonstrative pronouns/adjectives **iste, ista, istud** and **ille, illa, illud**.
2. **Alius, alia, aliud** also differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in its neuter singular nominative and accusative form (**aliud**). (Cf. **istud, illud**.)
3. The genitive singular form **alterūs** is regularly used for both **alius** and **alter**.

alius, alia, aliud and **alter, altera, alterum** are often used in parallel constructions with two forms of these words in the same case. Special translations are required. For example:

Aliam pecūniā, aliam cīvitāte dōnāvimus.

We rewarded *one woman* with money, *another woman* with citizenship.

Aliī cīvēs bellum gerēbant, alīī timōre fugiēbant.

Some citizens were waging war, *others* were fleeing because of fear.

Alter in agrō labōrat, alter in urbe.

(*The*) *one man (of two)* works in the field, *the other* (works) in the city.

Alterī rūs fugiunt, alterī Rōmae manent.

(*The*) *one group (of two)* is fleeing to the countryside, *the other group* remains in the city.

OBSERVATION

Singular forms of **alius** arranged in parallel constructions should be translated “one . . . another . . .” Plural forms so arranged should be translated “some . . . other(s) . . .” Singular forms of **alter** should be translated “(the) one . . . the other . . .” Plural forms should be translated “(the) one group . . . the other group . . .”

When two forms of **alius** or **alter** in *different* cases are used in the same sentence, a comparison is implied, and the first part of the comparison must be supplied in an English translation.

Alius aliud dīxit.

One man said one thing, another man said another thing.

Aliōs servōs aliō in agrō vidērunt.

They saw some slaves in one field, they saw other slaves in another field.

Alter alterum vincere cōnātur.

(The) one man tries to conquer the one man, the other the other.

☛ DRILL 86, PAGE 373, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§87. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses

Sometimes the precise relation between the meanings of two sentences is implied but not expressed. For example:

I like him. He's nice.

Although it is likely that the second sentence (He's nice) is stating the reason or cause for the first sentence (I like him), this causal relation *is not expressed*. When independent clauses or sentences are *placed next to each other*, with neither being subordinated to the other, such an arrangement is called **parataxis** (< Greek *parataxis*, placing beside) or **coordination**. The principal feature of **paratactic** writing is the *absence of subordination*.

When the precise relation between the meanings of two independent sentences *is expressed*, a complex sentence is created with a main clause and a subordinate clause. For example:

I like him *because he is nice*.

Such complex sentences are said to exhibit **hypotaxis** (< Greek *hypotaxis*, placing under) or **subordination**. Many types of subordinate clauses in Latin began as independent sentences in paratactic arrangement with other sentences. When one idea was subordinated to another, subordinating conjunctions were added, and two simple sentences arranged paratactically were joined to make one complex **hypotactic** sentence. For example:

Hunc eī librum dōnō. Rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.

I am giving him this book. Let him understand the history of the Romans.

The second of these two sentences, containing a Jussive subjunctive, appears to express the aim, intention, or *purpose* for the action of the first sentence. This relation was eventually expressed in a particular kind of subordinate clause called a **Purpose clause**.

Main Clause

Purpose Clause

Hunc eī librum dōnō ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.

I am giving him this book *in order that he may understand the history of the Romans*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clause italicized in the Latin sentence above is a Purpose clause.
2. Purpose clauses in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (in order that) or **nē** (in order that . . . not).
3. The subjunctive verb in a Purpose clause was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in a Purpose clause is only aimed at or intended. As always, nonfactual ideas are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.
4. A Purpose clause is an **adverbial clause** because the clause *modifies the action of the main verb as a whole*: it indicates the purpose for which the subject performs the action of the main clause.

The verb in the main clause in the sentence above—**dōnō**, the **main verb**—is in the present tense, but sentences containing Purpose clauses may have main verbs in any tense. For example:

Hunc eī librum dōnāveram ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegeret.

I had given him this book *in order that he might understand the history of the Romans.*

The particular tense of the subjunctive verb in any Purpose clause—and in most other subordinate clauses in Latin that require verbs in the subjunctive mood—is determined by fixed rules called the **sequence of tenses**. These rules are represented by the following chart:

	<i>Verb in Main Clause</i>	<i>Verb in Subordinate Clause</i>
PRIMARY (present or future time)	Indicative Present Future Perfect (present completed) Future Perfect	Subjunctive Present Perfect
SECONDARY (past time)	Imperfect Perfect (past simple) Pluperfect	Imperfect Pluperfect

MEMORIZE THIS CHART.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the upper left all refer to present or future time and are called **primary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the present or the perfect subjunctive*, as is represented by the box at the upper right. These tenses of the subjunctive have no absolute time value of their own: they have only **relative time**.

The *present* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb.

The *perfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a primary tense and a subordinate verb in either the present or perfect subjunctive, the subordinate verb is said to be following **primary sequence**.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the lower left all refer to past time and are called **secondary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive*, as is represented by the box at the lower right. These tenses of the subjunctive have no absolute time value of their own: they have only **relative time**.

The *imperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb.

The *pluperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a secondary tense and a subordinate verb in either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, the subordinate verb is said to be following **secondary sequence**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative may be a primary tense or a secondary tense, depending on whether it expresses present time (with completed aspect) or past time (with simple aspect).
2. Almost all subordinate clauses that require subjunctive verbs follow the sequence of tenses.³

Since the verb in every Purpose clause represents an action that may occur at a time subsequent to (after) the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used for Purpose clauses are the present subjunctive in primary sequence and the imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence.⁴

When a Purpose clause occurs in primary sequence and its verb is therefore in the present subjunctive, it is translated: “in order that . . . *may*.” When a Purpose clause occurs in secondary sequence and its verb is in the imperfect subjunctive, it is translated: “in order that . . . *might*.” For example:

Gladium capiō ut pugnem. (primary sequence)

I am taking up a sword *in order that I may fight*.

Gladium capiēbam ut pugnārem. (secondary sequence)

I was taking up a sword *in order that I might fight*.

OBSERVATION

The syntax of the verb **pugnem** is **present subjunctive, Purpose clause, primary sequence**. The syntax of the verb **pugnārem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Purpose clause, secondary sequence**.

Since the perfect indicative may be a primary tense or a secondary tense, the tense of the subjunctive verb in the Purpose clause indicates whether a main verb in the perfect tense is present time (with completed aspect) or past time (with simple aspect). For example:

3. Although conditional sentences are complex sentences containing main clauses (apodoses) and subordinate clauses (protases), the protases *do not follow* the rules of sequence of tenses.

4. The remaining subjunctive tenses that appear on the sequence of tenses chart (perfect and pluperfect) are used in many other subordinate clauses to represent actions that occurred prior to the main verb, but they are not used in Purpose clauses.

Gladium cēpī ut pugnem. (primary sequence: perfect must be present completed)

I have taken up a sword in order that I may fight.

Gladium cēpī ut pugnārem. (secondary sequence: perfect must be past simple)

I took up a sword in order that I might fight.

Sometimes a verb in the subjunctive introduces a purpose clause (or other subordinate clause with a verb in the subjunctive). When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in present or future time, it introduces primary sequence. When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in past time, it introduces secondary sequence. For example:

Pres.	Primary
Subjunc.	Sequence

Sī hostis accēdat, arma capiāmus ut pugnēmus.

If an enemy should approach, *we would take up arms in order that we may fight.*

Pluperf.	Secondary
Subjunc.	Sequence

Sī hostis accessisset ut pugnāret, arma cēpissēmus.

If an enemy *had approached* in order that *he might fight*, we would have taken up arms.

Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses

1. If the verb in the main clause is primary, the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause must be primary. The subjunctive verb has only relative time.
A present subjunctive represents an action that is simultaneous with or subsequent to the main verb.
A perfect subjunctive represents an action that is prior to the main verb.
2. If the verb in the main clause is secondary, the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause must be secondary. The subjunctive verb has only relative time.
An imperfect subjunctive represents an action that is simultaneous with or subsequent to the main verb.
A pluperfect subjunctive represents an action that is prior to the main verb.

☛ DRILL 87, PAGE 377, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§88. Indirect Commands

A direct command may be expressed in Latin by the imperative mood or a Jussive subjunctive. For example:

Audīte dicta rēgis! (Imperative)

Listen to (pl.) the words of the king!

Nē audiātis dicta illius rēgis malī! (Jussive)

Do not (pl.) listen to the words of that evil king!

In each of these sentences the command is expressed directly to a group in the second person plural.

When a command is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the command is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Command**. The verb of an Indirect Command is in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Petō ut dicta rēgis audiātis.

I ask *that you (pl.) listen to the words of the king.*

I ask *you (pl.) to listen to the words of the king.*

Petimus nē dicta illius rēgis malī audiātis.

We ask *that you (pl.) not listen to the words of that evil king.*

We ask *you (pl.) not to listen to the words of that evil king.*

Ā dīs petīvī nē meus filius interficeretur.

I asked from the gods *that my son not be killed.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clauses italicized in the sentences above are all Indirect Commands. Indirect Commands in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (that) or **nē** (that . . . not).
2. The subjunctive verb in an Indirect Command was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in an Indirect Command is only ordered. As always, nonfactual ideas are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.
3. Indirect Commands may be distinguished from Purpose clauses by the verbs that introduce them. Verbs that mean “beg,” “ask,” “advise,” “urge,” “command,” “order,” etc. regularly introduce Indirect Commands. Verbs in Chapters I–IX that introduce Indirect Commands are **hortor**, **imperō**, **moneō**, **petō**, and **quaerō**. **Iubeō**, which regularly takes an Object Infinitive (with a subject in the accusative), less frequently introduces Indirect Command. Other verbs that introduce Indirect Commands are identified in the vocabulary notes.
4. Since the verb in every Indirect Command represents an action that may occur at a time subsequent to (after) the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used in Indirect Commands are the present subjunctive in primary sequence and the imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence.
5. An Indirect Command is regularly translated using the English present subjunctive.⁵ There is no difference between the translation of an Indirect Command in primary sequence and the translation of one in secondary sequence. An Indirect Command may also be translated using an English infinitive, as in the second translations for the first two sentences above.
6. An Indirect Command is a **noun clause** because the clause *functions as the direct object (less frequently the subject) of the main verb*: it indicates *what* is asked for, begged, advised, ordered, etc. Contrast Purpose clauses, which are *adverbial* clauses.

☛ DRILL 87–88, PAGE 383, MAY NOW BE DONE.

5. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word “to” omitted (e.g., “work,” “complete,” “do”). For example: “I advised the dog that he not *cross* the street when there was heavy traffic.”

§89. Relative Clauses of Purpose

Purpose clauses are regularly introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (in order that) or **nē** (in order that . . . not) (§87). When a Purpose clause is instead introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, it is called a **Relative Clause of Purpose**. For example:

Rēgīna mīlitēs in prōvinciam mittet quī incolās terreant.

The queen soldiers (d.o.) into the province will send *who the inhabitants (d.o.) may frighten*.

The queen will send soldiers into the province *who may frighten the inhabitants*.

The queen will send soldiers into the province *in order that they may frighten the inhabitants*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A relative pronoun regularly replaces **ut** in introducing a Purpose clause only when there is a clear antecedent in the main clause. The antecedent for **quī** in the sentence above is **mīlitēs**.
2. A Purpose clause introduced by **ut** (or **nē**) states the broad purpose for which someone performs the action of the main verb. By contrast, a Purpose clause introduced by a relative word states the specific use that is to be made of the antecedent.
3. When a main clause contains a verb that involves motion (**eō**, **mittō**, **veniō**, etc.), a Relative Clause of Purpose often follows.
4. In the sentence above the third English translation (in order that they may . . .) is to be preferred because it most clearly indicates the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.
5. In the sentence above the syntax of **terreant** is **present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, primary sequence**.

Certain idiomatic expressions include a Relative Clause of Purpose. For example:

Haec habuī quae dē amīcitiā dīcerem.

I had these things that about friendship I might say.

I had these things to say about friendship.

Nīl habeō quod agam.

I have nothing that I may do.

I have nothing to do.

OBSERVATION

In such expressions English translations with infinitives expressing purpose are to be preferred.

Certain relative adverbs (**ubi**, where; **unde**, whence, from where; **quō**, whither, to where) may also introduce Relative Clauses of Purpose. For example:

Rōmam vēneram ubi auxilium ab amīcīs peterem.

To Rome I had come *where* aid (d.o.) from friends *I might seek*.

I had come to Rome *where I might seek* aid from friends.

I had come to Rome *in order that there I might seek* aid from friends.

Eāmus quō laetī sīmus. Let us go *to where we may be* happy.

Let us go *(to a place) where we may be* happy.

Let us go *where we may be* happy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **Rōmam** is the antecedent for the relative adverb **ubi**. The third English translation (in order that there . . . might . . .) is to be preferred. The addition of the English adverb “there” preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative adverb in Latin achieves. The words “in order that . . . might” clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.
2. The syntax of **peterem** in the first sentence is **imperfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, secondary sequence**.
3. In the second sentence the antecedent for the relative adverb **quō** is implied (to a place) but is not expressed.

☛ DRILL 89, PAGE 389, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§90. Accusative of Duration of Time

When a noun in the accusative case *with no preposition* is used to express the *amount of time during which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called an **Accusative of Duration of Time**. It is translated “for _____.” For example:

In Italiā multōs annōs fuerant rēgēs. (annus, annī m. year)
In Italy *for many years* there had been kings.

The syntax of the italicized word (**annōs**) is **Accusative of Duration of Time**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Any word that expresses some idea of time, such as “day,” “night,” “hour,” may be used as an Accusative of Duration of Time.
2. Sometimes the preposition **per** is used to strengthen an Accusative of Duration of Time: **per multōs annōs**, “through many years.”
3. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of extent that limited the action of the verb. The Accusative of Duration of Time is developed from this original idea of the accusative.

When the Accusative of Duration of Time is used with a verb in the *present* tense, the present tense indicates an action that *has been going on for some time and is still going on*. When the Accusative of Duration of Time is used with a verb in the *imperfect* tense, the imperfect tense indicates an action that *had been going on for some time and was still going on*. These uses of the present and imperfect tenses require special English translations.

In agrīs multōs annōs labōrō.

In the fields *for many years I have been working [and am still working].*
I have been working in the fields *for many years*.

In agrīs multōs annōs labōrābam.

In the fields *for many years I had been working [and was still working].*
I had been working in the fields *for many years*.

§91. Ablative of Time When

When a noun in the ablative case *with no preposition* is used to express *the point in time when* the action of a verb occurs, it is called an **Ablative of Time When**. It is translated “at _____” or “on _____.” For example:

Eā nocte Pompeius oppidum cēpit. (nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night)
On that *night* Pompey took the town.

The syntax of the italicized word (*nocte*) is **Ablative of Time When**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time When expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative’s ability to express location.

§92. Ablative of Time Within Which

When a noun in the ablative case *with no preposition* is used to express the *period of time within which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called an **Ablative of Time Within Which**. It is translated “within _____” or “in _____.” For example:

Paucīs diēbus Vergilius magnum carmen perficiet. (diēs, diēi *m.* or *f.* day)
(*With*)in a few *days* Vergil will complete a great poem.

The syntax of the italicized word (*diēbus*) is **Ablative of Time Within Which**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time Within Which expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative’s ability to express location.

☛ DRILL 90–92, PAGE 391, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. Hegio is ordered by an ecstatic and near-mad Ergasilus to fetch a sacrificial animal.

Heg. Cūr? Erg. Ut sacrificēs.

H. Cui deōrum? E. Mī hercle, nam ego nunc tibi sum summus Iuppiter,

īdem ego sum Salūs, Fortūna, Lūx, Laetitia, Gaudium. (PLAUTUS, CAPTIVI 862–64)

sacrificō (= **sacrificō**) (1-intr.) perform a sacrifice

mī = **mihi**

summus, -a, -um highest

lūx, **lūcis** *f.* light

laetitia, **laetitia** *f.* happiness

Two fragments from Ennius cited as examples of his experimentation with alliteration.

2. *Āfrica terribilī tremīt horrida terra tumultū. (ENNIUS, ANNĀLES IX.309)*

Āfricanus, -a, -um African

terribilis, **terribile** terrifying, frightening, terrible

tremō, **tremere**, **tremuī**, — tremble, quake

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible

tumultus, **tumultūs** *m.* uproar, tumult

3. *at tuba terribilī sonitū “taratantara” dīxit. (ENNIUS, SĒD. INC. FRAG. 459)*

at (conj.) but

tuba, **tubae** *f.* horn, trumpet

terribilis, **terribile** terrifying, frightening, terrible

sonitus, **sonitūs** *m.* sound, noise

4. A fragment from the poet Ennius

amicus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (ENNIUS, TRAGOEDIAE FRAG. 351)

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** distinguish, determine, perceive

5. Cato summarizes the essence of farming.

rēs rūstica sic est: sī ūnam rem sērō fēceris, omnia opera sērō faciēs.

(CATO, *DE AGRĪ CULTŪRĀ* 5)

rūsticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the country or a farm, rustic; **rēs rūstica**, agriculture

sērō (adv.) late, tardily; too late

opus, **operis** *n.* work, task

6. Cato’s famous advice about oratory

rem† tenē, verba sequentur. (CATO, DE RHĒTORICĀ FRAG. 15)

†**rēs**, *here*, subject matter, topic

7. Cato's view of love

aliud est, Philippe, amor, longē aliud est cupidō. accessit ilicō alter ubi alter recessit. alter bonus, alter malus. (CATO, *ORATIONES FRAG.* 71)

Philippus, Philippī *m.* Philip

longē (adv.) far

cupidō, cupidinis *m. or f.* desire

ilicō (adv.) at once; at that moment

recedō (**re-** + **cēdō**) withdraw, recede

8. Two lines in which Wisdom gives her genealogy.

ūsus mē genuit, māter peperit memoria.

“Sophiam” vocant mē Grāī, vōs “Sapientiam.” (L. AFRANIUS, *TOGATAE FRAG.* 298–99)

ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus beget (of a father)

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear
(of a mother)

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory

Sophia, Sophiae *f.* Sophia (“wisdom” in Greek)

Grāī, Grāiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Greeks

9. After reproaching Catiline for his treacherous activities, the *patria* proposes a solution.

quam ob rem discēde atque hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērūs, nē opprimar;
sīn falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsīnam. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM I* 18)

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus snatch away,
take away

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus
overwhelm, oppress

sīn (conj.) but if

falsus, -a, -um false

aliquandō (adv.) at (long) last

dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīi/dēsīvī, dēsītum stop,
cease (+ infin.)

10. Cicero notes the relation between the value of things and the degree to which they are desired.

etenim quī modus est in hīs rēbus cupiditātis, idem est aestimātiōnis; difficile est
fīnem facere pretiō nisi libīdinī fēcēris. (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 4.14)

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value

fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* end, limit

pretium, pretiī *n.* price, value

libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire

11. Cicero compares wisdom to an artist.

ut Phīdiās potest ā prīmō instituere signum idque perficere, potest ab aliō inchoātum accipere et absolvere, huic est sapientia similis; nōn enim ipsa genuit hominem, sed accēpit ā nātūrā inchoātum. (CICERO, *DE FĪNIBUS* IV.34)

Phīdiās, Phīdiae <i>m.</i> Phidias (fifth-century B.C.E. Athenian sculptor, designer of the Parthenon sculpture)	signum, signī <i>n.</i> sign; statue, figure
prīmum, prīmī <i>n.</i> first part, beginning	inchoō (1-tr.) start, begin
īnstituō, instituere, instituī, institūtus set up; set to work (on), start (on)	absolvō, absolvere, absolvi, absolūtus finish, complete
	similis, simile similar (+ dat.)
	gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus create; beget

12. Laelius considers the plight of the tyrant who, though wealthy, loves no one and is loved by no one.

Haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta nīmīrum, in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās, nūlla stabilis benivolentiae potest esse fidūcia, omnia semper suspecta atque sollicita, nūllus locus amīcitiae. (CICERO, *DE AMĪCITIĀ* 52–53)

tyrannus, tyrannī <i>m.</i> monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant	benivolentia, benivolentiae <i>f.</i> goodwill, friendliness
nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, presumably	fidūcia, fidūciae <i>f.</i> confidence, trust, reliance
cāritās, cāritātis <i>f.</i> affection	suspectus, -a, -um viewed with suspicion, suspect
stabilis, stabile (standing) firm, constant	sollicitus, -a, -um disturbed, troubled

13. Part of Cicero's reflections on men's generosity

sunt autem multī et quidem cupidī splendōris et glōriae quī ēripiunt aliīs quod aliīs largiantur . . . (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I.43)

splendor, splendōris <i>m.</i> brilliance; honor
ēripiō, ēriperē, ēripiū, ēreptus snatch away, take away
largior, largiri, largitus sum give bountifully, bestow

14. Cicero speaks about areas of excellence.

itaque sē aliī ad philosophiam, aliī ad iūs cīvile, aliī ad ēloquentiam applicant, ipsarumque virtūtum in aliā alius māvult excellere. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I.115–16)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly	mālō, mälle, māluī, — prefer; māvult = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.
philosophia, philosophiae <i>f.</i> philosophy	excellō, excellere, —, — be superior, be conspicuous, excel
cīvīlis, cīvīle of or connected with citizens, civil	
ēloquentia, ēloquentiae <i>f.</i> eloquence; rhetoric	
applicō (1-tr.) apply	

15. Cicero contrasts Rome with other societies.

aliae nātiōnēs servitūtem patī possunt, populī Rōmānī est propria libertās. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* VI 7)

nātiō, nātiōnis <i>f.</i> nation
proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

16. Cicero describes to the senate the fearful state of affairs in Rome after Julius Caesar's assassination.

armōrum officinās in urbe vidētis; militēs cum gladiīs sequuntur cōsulem;
praesidiō sunt speciē cōsulī, rē et vērītate nōbīs; . . . (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS VII* 4)

officina, officinae *f.* workshop

praesidium, praesidiū *n.* guard, garrison

vērītās, vērītātis *f.* truth

17. In January 49 B.C.E. Cicero replies to his friend Atticus's attempt to encourage him about Pompey's state of readiness for war with Julius Caesar.

erat enim ars difficilis rēctē rem pūblicam regere. sed iam iamque† omnia
sciēmus et scribēmus ad tē statim. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM VII.25.1*)

rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly

†**iam iamque**, any time now

sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus know

statim (adv.) immediately

18. Caesar describes what the Romans did after the Germans' formation repelled their assault.

reperitī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilirent et scūta manibus
revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ I.52*)

reperiō, reperire, reperī, repertus find,
discover

complūrēs, complūr(i)a several, very many

phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx (a close
formation of troops)

īnsiliō, īnsilire, īnsilūī, — jump (on), leap (on)

scūtum, scūtī *n.* shield

revellō, revellere, revellī, revulsus tear,
tear away

dēsuper (adv.) from above

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound; inflict wounds

19. The poet summarizes his doctrine of the eternal regeneration of atoms.

sīc aliđ† ex aliō numquam dēsistet orīrī

vītaque mancipiō nūllī datur, omnibus ūsū. (LUCRETIUS, *DE RERUM NATŪRĀ III.970–71*)

†**alid** = aliud

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, — cease

orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise

mancipium, mancipiū *n.* ownership

ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use; enjoyment

20. The historian begins a comparison between those who make history and those who write it.

pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 3)

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate

21. The historian describes the ultimate decree of the senate.

ea potestās per senātum mōre Rōmānō magistrātuī maxuma permittitur:
exercitum parāre, bellum gerere, coērcēre omnibus modīs sociōs atque cīvīs,
domī militiaeque imperium atque iūdicium summum habēre; aliter sine populi
iussū nūllius eārum rērum cōnsulī iūs est. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 29)

potestās, potestātis *f.* power

mōs, mōris *m.* custom

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* (public) official,
magistrate

maxumus, -a, -um greatest

permittō (per- + mittō) entrust, grant

coērcēō, coērcēre, coērcuī, coērcitus restrain,
control

militia, militiae *f.* military service; **militiae** =
loc. sing.

iūdicium, iūdicī *n.* judgment

summus, -a, -um highest; final

22. The historian characterizes young Julius Caesar.

. . . sibi magnum imperium, exercitum, bellum novum exoptābat ubi virtūs
ēnitēscere posset. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 54)

exoptō (ex- + optō) (1-tr.) desire greatly, long for

ēnitēscō, ēnitēscere, ēnituī, — shine forth, become bright

23. The Trojan Panthus speaks to Aeneas as Troy falls.

vēnit summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus
Dardaniae. fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium et ingēns
glōria Teucrōrum; ferus omnia Iuppiter Argōs
trānstulit; . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.324–27)

summus, -a, -um highest; final, last

inēluctābilis, inēluctābile that cannot be
fought, inescapable

Dardania, Dardaniae *f.* Dardania (city in the
Troad, used poetically for Troy)

Trōes, Trōum *m. pl.* Trojans

Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* Teucrians
(descendants of Teucer), Trojans

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce; cruel
Argī, Argōrum *m. pl.* Argos (Greek city, home
of Agamemnon)

**trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī,
trānslātus** carry across, transfer

24. Aeneas speaks to his comrades.

ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.354)

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

25. At the end of a satire in which the poet's slave Davus has been attacking his master with words and finally with a stone, Davus ends his attack.

aut insānit homō aut versūs facit. (HORACE, *SERMONES* II.7.117)

insāniō, insānire, insāniī/insānivī, insānītus be mad, be crazy

versus, versūs *m.* verse (of poetry)

26. The poet concludes a poem with an address to his beloved Cynthia.

tū mihi sōla domus, tū, Cynthia, sōla parentēs,
omnia tū nostrae tempora laetitiae.
seu trīstis veniam seu laetus amīcīs,
quicquid erō, dīcam “Cynthia causa fuit.” (PROPERTIUS I.11.23–26)

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness

seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu . . .**, whether . . . or (if) . . .

trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

quicquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*, whatever

27. Part of the poet’s description of the creation of animals out of soil, rock, and water after the great flood

. . . et eōdem in corpore saepe
altera pars vīvit, rudis est pars altera tellūs. (OVID, METAMORPHŌSES I.428–29)

rudis, rude unformed, rough, raw

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

28. The poet describes how Orestes and his close friend Phoeceus responded to the threat of death.

nec tamen hunc sua[†] mors, nec mors sua[†] terruit illum:
alter ob alterius[†] fūnera maestus erat. (OVID, TRISTIA IV.4B.21–22)

[†]**sua** refers to **hunc**, his own.

[†]**sua** refers to **illum**, his own.

[†]The **-ī-** of **alterius** here scans *short*.

fūnus, fūneris *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral; death

maestus, -a, -um sad, gloomy, melancholy

29. A couplet about the human condition

tendimus hūc omnēs, mētā properāmus ad ūnam,
omnia sub lēgēs Mors vocat ātra suās. (EPICĒDĪON DRŪSĪ 359–60)

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus stretch out, extend; proceed

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

mēta, mētae *f.* goalpost; end, limit

properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

30. Juno explains her departure from the sky.
 Soror Tonantis (hoc enim solum mihi
 nomen relictumst) semper alienum Iovem
 ac templa summī vidua dēseruī aetheris

locumque caelō pulsa paelicibus dedī. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *HERCULES FURENS* 1–4)

Tonāns, Tonantis <i>m.</i> (the) Thunderer (god of thunder)	dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon, desert
nōmen, nōminis <i>n.</i> name	aethēr, aetheris <i>m.</i> aether, ether (the upper region of the sky); heaven
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another	paelex, paelicis <i>f.</i> concubine, mistress
summus, -a, -um highest; top (of)	
viduus, -a, -um deprived, bereft, deserted	

31. The chorus puzzles over why the gods do not seem concerned with human justice.

rēs hūmānās ordine nūllō
 Fortūna regit sparsitque manū

mūnera caecā . . . (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *PHAEDRA* 978–80)

hūmānus, -a, -um human
ordō, ordinis <i>m.</i> order
spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter, distribute

32. The philosopher cites a remark of Aristotle about the poetic mind.

nūllum magnum ingenium sine mixtūrā dēmentiae fuit.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* IX.17.10)

mixtūra, mixturae <i>f.</i> mixture; admixture
dēmentia, dēmentiae <i>f.</i> madness, insanity

33. The historian describes King Agis, who led a revolt against Alexander's Macedonians.

inter omnēs tamen Lacedaemoniōs rēx ēminēbat, nōn armōrum modo et corporis
 speciē, sed etiam magnitūdine animī, quō ūnō vincī nōn potuit.

(CURTIUS RUFUS, *HISTORIAE ALEXANDRI MAGNI* VI.1.3)

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um Lacedaemonian, Spartan
ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī, — stand out, be outstanding
modo (adv.) only
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis <i>f.</i> (great) size

34. Quintilian cites an example of a rhetorical figure employing reversal.

nōn ut edam vīvō, sed ut vīvam edō. (QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIŌ ORATORIA* IX.3.85)

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conj. verb) eat; **edam** = 1st sing. pres. act. subjunc.

35. Pliny recalls part of what all the senators said when they were giving thanks to Trajan in the senate.

super haec precāti sumus ut sīc tē amārent dī quemadmodum tū nōs.

(PLINY THE YOUNGER, *PANEGYRICUS* 74)

super (prep. + acc.) in addition to

precor (1-tr.) pray, beg

36. The poet suggests an example of madness.

Hostem cum† fugeret, sē Fannius ipse perēmit.

hic, rogo, nōn furor est: nē moriāre morī? (MARTIAL II.80)

†**cum**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) when

Fannius, **Fanniī** *m.* Fannius

perimō, **perimere**, **perēmī**, **perēemptus** destroy

rogō (1-tr.) ask; the final **-ō** of **rogō** here scans *short*.

furor, **furōris** *m.* madness

37. The poet explains something to an acquaintance named Pontilianus.

cūr nōn mitto† meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?

nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs. (MARTIAL VII.3)

†The **-ō** of **mittō** here scans *short*.

Pontiliānus, **Pontiliānī** *m.* Pontilianus

libellus, **libellī** *m.* (little) book

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō Quīnctiō* 98

Part of Cicero's address to the judge, in which he summarizes his client's desperate situation . . . ab ipsō† repudiātus, ab amīcīs eius nōn sublevātus, ab omnī magistrātū agitātus atque perterritus, quem praeter tē appellet habet nēminem; tibi sē, tibi suās omnēs opēs fortūnāsque commendat, tibi committit exīstimātiōnem ac spem reliquae vītae;

†ipsō refers to Sextus Naevius.

repudiō (1-tr.) reject, refuse

sublevō (1-tr.) support, assist

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* magistrate

agitō (1-tr.) disturb, vex, trouble

perterreō (**per-** + **terreō**) (thoroughly) terrify

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except

appellō (1-tr.) call; apply to, entreat

ops, opis *f.* power, ability; *pl.*, resources, wealth

commendō (1-tr.) commend, entrust

committō (**con-** + **mittō**) entrust, commit

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis *f.* reputation, good name

spēs, speī *f.* hope

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

In the *Prō Quīnctiō* (81 B.C.E.), perhaps the oldest surviving speech of Cicero, the orator defends Publius Quinctius against charges by his dead brother's business partner, Sextus Naevius, through which Naevius sought to have Quinctius's property seized and forfeited.

2. Cicero, *Dīvinātiō in Caeciliū* 19

Cicero attacks Verres, who had been proconsul in Sicily.

Sicilia tōta sī ūnā vōce loquerētur, hoc dīceret: “Quod aurī, quod argentī, quod ornāmentōrum in meīs urbibus, sēdibus, dēlūbrīs fuit, quod in ūnā quāque† rē beneficiō senātūs populīque Rōmānī iūris habuī, id mihi tū, C. Verrēs, ēripuistī atque abstulistī . . .”

Sicilia, Siciliae *f.* Sicily

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak

argentum, argentī *n.* silver

ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embellishment

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode

dēlūbrum, dēlūbrī *n.* temple, shrine

†quāque = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each

beneficiū, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

C. Verrēs, C. Verris *m.* C. Verres (proconsul of Sicily, prosecuted by Cicero in 70 B.C.E.)

ēripīō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

The *Dīvinātiō in Caeciliū* was delivered in 70 B.C.E. A **dīvinātiō** was a legal inquiry held to determine who should conduct the prosecution of a case. Cicero successfully argued that he—and not Q. Caecilius, a corrupt alternative—should try the case against C. Verres, a Roman nobleman charged with severe misgovernment of the province of Sicily. The case pitted Cicero against the leading lawyer of the day, Hortensius, and Cicero's victory established him as the foremost orator in Rome. Verres was forced into exile.

3. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* II.75–79

The poet describes the never-ending life and change of the physical world.

. . . sic rērum summa novātur
semper, et inter sē mortālēs mūtua vīvunt.
augēscunt aliae gentēs, aliae minuuntur,
inque brevī spatiō mūtantur saecla animantum
et quasi cursōrēs vītāi[†] lampada trādunt.

summa, summae *f.* sum, whole, total, totality
novō (1-tr.) make new, renew
mūtua (adv.) through successive changes, recip-
rocally, with mutual interaction
augēscō, augēscere, auxī, — increase, grow
gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus make smaller,
reduce, diminish
brevis, breve short, brief

spatium, spatiī *n.* course, lap; space, interval
mūtō (1-tr.) change
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
animāns, animantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living
creature; **animantum = animantium**
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
cursor, cursōris *m.* runner
[†]**vītāi = vītāe**
lampas, lampadis *f.* torch; **lampada** = *acc. sing.*

Virtually nothing is known about the life of **Titus Lucretius Cārus** (98?–55? B.C.E.), but his didactic epic poem *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* (*Concerning the Nature of Things*) is one of the masterpieces of Latin literature. Lucretius explains the Greek philosopher Epicurus's atomic theory of the universe in order to dispel the fear of death and so to free mankind from religion and superstition. His style owes much to his predecessor Ennius and is thus more archaic than that of his contemporary Catullus. Lucretius's command of meter and poetic diction exerted considerable influence on Vergil's poetic development, and several lines of Lucretius's poem appear in slightly altered form in Vergil's works.

4. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisus separate, divide

trēs, tria (numerical adj.) three; **trēs** = *fem. pl. acc.*

incolō, incolere, incoluī, — inhabit

Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae

Aquitānī, Aquitānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani

tertius, -a, -um third

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

Celtae, Celtārum *m. pl.* (the) Celts

Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī *n.* custom, institution

Gaius Iūlius Caesar (100–44 B.C.E.) was born at Rome and began his political career in the 60s. After entering into an alliance with the two most powerful people in Rome—the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus and the general Pompey—Caesar became consul for the first time in 59. After his consulship Caesar was chosen to govern the province Gaul (modern France and northern Italy). At the time Rome controlled only the southernmost portion of Gaul. Over the next several years Caesar conquered the remainder of it. Caesar then sought to return to Rome as consul in 49, but Pompey, his supporters, and others at Rome—fearing Caesar’s increasing power—blocked his candidacy. As a result, Caesar invaded Italy and set off the civil war that lasted until 45 in various parts of the Roman Empire. On 15 March 44, after it had become clear that he had decided not to resign his dictatorship (a legal, temporary office in Rome), Caesar was assassinated.

The *Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō* (Commentaries About the Gallic War) were probably written during the campaigns in Gaul. They provide both an account of those campaigns and a description of the customs of the peoples Caesar encountered in Gaul and Britain. Written in seven books, the *Commentāriī* are a third-person account in a plain, lucid, and orderly style with a notable absence of florid rhetoric. When Quintilian surveys the orators of the late Republic, he rates Caesar second only to Cicero himself. Both Cicero and Quintilian praise Caesar’s purity of vocabulary and clarity of thought as a speaker—qualities also apparent in his writings.

5. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 20

At a secret meeting Catiline begins an address to his fellow conspirators.

Nī virtūs fidēsque vostra spectāta mihi† foret, nēquīquam opportūna rēs cecidisset; spēs magna, dominātiō in manibus frūstrā fuissent, neque ego per ignāviam aut vāna ingenia incerta prō certīs captārem.

nī = nisi

vostra = vestra

spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe; examine, prove;

spectāta . . . foret = spectāta . . . esset

†**mihi, here, Dative of Agent, by me**

nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

opportūnus, -a, -um favorable, advantageous

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus fall; occur

spēs, speī *f.* hope

dominātiō, dōminātiōnis *f.* absolute rule, dominion

frūstrā (adv.) in vain

ignāvia, ignāviae *f.* idleness; cowardice

vānus, -a, -um empty; unreliable; useless

captō (1-tr.) try to capture, seek after

Gaius Sallustius Crispus (86–35 B.C.E.) became prominent in Roman politics as a young man but was forced out of political life because of accusations of provincial misgovernment and extortion. But Sallust is far better known as a historian. He wrote short monographs rather than long historical works, and his style is marked by a studied response to the flowing style of Cicero and by much imitation of the earlier Cato. His compressed, rapid, and antithetical style became a model for later historians, particularly Tacitus.

The *Bellum Catilinae* is a monograph on the conspiracy led by Catiline in 63 B.C.E., the year of Cicero’s consulship.

6. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.200–203

After the Trojan fleet has endured a storm at sea, Aeneas addresses the dispirited survivors.

vōs et Scyllaeam rabiem penitusque sonantis
 accestis† scopulōs, vōs et Cyclōpia saxa
 expertī: revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
 mittite;† forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit.

Scyllaeus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the
 monster Scylla; Scyllaeian

rabiēs, *rabiēi *f.* ferocity, savageness

penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply

sonāns, sonantis resounding

†**accestis** = **accessistis**

scopulus, scopulī *m.* (projecting) rock, crag

Cyclōpius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the Cyclopes

saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone

revocō (**re-** + **vocō**) (1-tr.) summon back; recall;
 renew

maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim

†**mittō, here**, set aside, dismiss

forsan (adv.) perhaps

ōlim (adv.) at some time

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help; delight, be pleasing

7. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.26–34

Aeneas describes how the Trojans venture out of their city when they believe that the Greeks have departed.

ergō omnis longō solvit sē Teucra lūctū;
 panduntur portae, iuvat ire et Dōrica castra
 dēsertōsque vidēre locōs lītusque relictum:
 hīc Dolopum manus, hīc saevus tendēbat Achillēs;
 classibus hīc locus, hīc aciē certāre solēbant.
 pars stupet innuptae dōnum exitiāle Minervae
 et mōlem mīrantur equī; p̄rimusque Thymoetēs
 dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,
 sīve dolō seu iam Troiae sīc fāta ferēbant.

30

ergō (adv.) therefore

longus, -a, -um long; long-standing

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free, release

Teucra, Teucrae *f.* Teucra (land of the Teucra), Troy

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

pandō, pandere, —, pānsus/passus spread out, open

porta, portae *f.* gate

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help; delight, be pleasing

Dōricus, -a, -um Doric, Greek

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon, desert

lītus, lītōris *n.* shore, beach

hīc (adv.) here

Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes (a Greek people from Thessaly)

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus

stretch out, extend; pitch one's tents, encamp

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles

classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet; *pl.*, ships

certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed

stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, — be stunned (at), be speechless (at)

innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden

exitiālis, exitiāle fatal, deadly

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass; bulk

mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at

equus, equī *m.* horse

p̄rimus, -a, -um first

Thymoetēs, *Thymoetis *m.* Thymoetes (son of Laomedon, brother of Priam)

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

locō (1-tr.) place

sīve/seu (conj.) or if; **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu) . . .**, whether . . . or if . . .

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning

8. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.65–74

Aeneas begins his account of the deception of Sinon, whose false tale ensures that the Trojan horse is brought into the city.

accipe nunc Danaum īnsidiās et crīmine ab ūnō 65

disce omnīs.†

namque ut cōnspectū in mediō turbātus, inermis

cōnstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspexit,

“heu, quae nunc tellūs,” inquit, “quae mē aequora possunt

accipere? aut quid iam miserō mihi dēnique restat, 70

cui neque apud Danaōs usquam locus, et super ipsī

Dardanidae īnfēnsī poenās cum sanguine poscunt?”

quō gemitū conversī animī compressus et† omnis

impetus.

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks;

Danaum = *gen. pl.*

crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime

discō, discere, didicī, — learn

†A few lines of the *Aeneid* remained unfinished at the time of Vergil’s death.

cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* sight, view

medius, -a, -um middle (of)

turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion

inermis, inerme unarmed

cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstitī, cōnstātūrus stand still

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the region in which Troy was situated), Phrygian, Trojan

agmen, agminis *n.* (battle-)line; throng

circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexī,

circumspectus look around (at)

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

restō, restāre, restitī, — remain, be left

apud (prep. + acc.) at, near; among

usquam (adv.) anywhere

super (adv.) in addition

Dardanidēs, Dardanidae *m.* descendant of Dardanus (founder of Troy), Trojan

īnfēnsus, -a, -um hostile, threatening

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

poscō, poscere, poposcī, — demand

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus reverse; change; win over

comprimō, comprimere, compressī, compressus crush; subdue, suppress

†et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault; (violent) impulse

9. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.651–58

Before committing suicide, Dido mounts her funeral pyre and addresses relics of her love affair with Aeneas.

dulcēs exuviae, dum fāta deusque sinēbat,
accipite hanc animam mēque hīs exsolvite cūrīs.
vīxī et quem dederat cursum Fortūna perēgī,
et nunc magna meī sub terrās ībit imāgō.
urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī,
ulta virum poenās inimicō ā frātre recēpī,
fēlix, heu nimium fēlix, sī lītora tantum
numquam Dardaniae tetigissent nostra carīnae.

655

dulcis, dulce sweet	praeclārus, -a, -um very famous
exuviae, exuviārum <i>f. pl.</i> (stripped) armor; mementos	statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand, set up, establish
dum (conj.) while, as long as	ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum avenge
sinō, sinere, sīī/sīvī, situs allow, permit	recipiō (re- + capiō) take back, receive
exolvō, exolvere, exolvī, exsolūtus set free, release	nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
cursus, cursūs <i>m.</i> course	lītus, lītoris <i>n.</i> shore, beach
peragō (per- + agō), peragere, perēgī, perāctus thoroughly do; accomplish, complete	tantum (adv.) only
imāgō, imāginis <i>f.</i> image, likeness	Dardanius, -a, -um Dardanian, Trojan
	tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch; reach
	carīna, carīnae <i>f.</i> keel; ship

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.126–29

The Cumaean Sibyl, an Italian prophetess, responds to Aeneas's request for help in journeying to the underworld.

Trōs Anchīsiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō
(noctīs atque diēs patet ātrī iānuā Dītis):
sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,
hoc opus, hic labor est . . .

Trōs, Trōis <i>m.</i> Trojan (man)	revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recall; take back
Anchīsiadēs, Anchīsiadae <i>m.</i> son of Anchises; Anchīsiadē = <i>voc. sing.</i>	gradus, gradūs <i>m.</i> step, pace
dēscēnsus, dēscēnsūs <i>m.</i> descent	superus, -a, -um upper
Avernus, Avernī <i>m.</i> (lake) Avernus (entrance to the underworld)	ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus go out, escape
pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open	aura, aurae <i>f.</i> breeze
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark	opus, operis <i>n.</i> work, task
iānuā, iānuae <i>f.</i> door	labor, labōris <i>m.</i> work, labor

11. Propertius II.8.1–12; 17–20

The poet offers a friend a bleak reflection on his love affair.

Ēripitur nōbīs iam prīdem cāra puella:

et tū mē lacrimās fundere, amīce, vetās?

nūllae sunt inimīctiae nisi amōris acerbae:

ipsum mē iugulā, lēnior hostis erō.

possum ego in alterius[†] positam spectāre lacertō?

nec mea dīcētur,[†] quae modo dicta mea est?[‡]

omnia vertuntur: certē vertuntur amōrēs:

vinceris aut vincīs,[†] haec in amōre rota est.

magnī saepe ducēs, magnī cecidēre tyrannī,

et Thēbae steterant altaque Troia fuit.

mūnera quanta dedī vel quālia carmina fēcī!

illa tamen numquam ferrea dīxit “amō.”

sīc igitur primā moriēre aetāte, Propertī?

sed morere; interitū gaudeat illa tuō!

exagitet nostrōs Mānīs, sectētur et[†] umbrās,

īnsultetque rogīs, calcet et[†] ossa mea!

ēripīō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

prīdem (adv.) formerly, previously; **iam prīdem**, long since, for a long time now

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, shed

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid

iugulō (1-tr.) kill (by cutting the throat), slaughter

lēnior, lēnius (comparative adj.) weaker, gentler; **lēnior** = *masc. sing. nom.*

[†]The *-ī-* of **alterius** here scans *short*.

spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe

lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm

[†]**dīcō**, *here*, call

modo (adv.) just now

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn; change, reverse

[†]The second *-i-* of **vincis** here scans *long*.

rota, rotae *f.* wheel

dux, ducis *m.* leader

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; tyrant

Thēbae, Thēbārum *f. pl.* Thebes

stō, stāre, steti, stāturus stand; last

quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; what size **vel** (conj.) or

quālis, quāle what sort of, what kind of

ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted, unfeeling

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore

prīmus, -a, -um first; first (part of)

aetās, aetātis *f.* age; life

interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased

exagitō (1-tr.) arouse, disturb, torment

Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes (spirits of the dead); shade (spirit of a particular person)

sector (1-tr.) pursue, chase

[†]et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.

īnsultō (1-intr.) leap upon, dance upon (+ dat.)

rogus, rogī *m.* funeral pyre; *pl.*, ashes

calcō (1-tr.) trample upon, tread upon

os, ossis *n.* bone

12. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.1–9

The opening lines of Ovid's mythological epic

In nova fert animus† mūtātās dīcere† formās
 corpora; dī coeptīs (nam vōs mūtāstis et illa)
 adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundi
 ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen.
 ante mare et terrās et quod tegit omnia caelum
 ūnus erat tōtō nātūrae vultus in orbe,
 quem dīxēre† Chaos: rudis indīgestaque mōlēs
 nec quicquam nisi pondus iners congestaque eōdem†
 nōn bene iūctārum discordia sēmīna rērum.

5

†fert animus, (my) mind proposes
 mūtō (1-tr.) change; mūtāstis = mūtāvistis
 †dīcō, here, tell of
 forma, formae *f.* form
 coeptum, coeptī *n.* beginning
 adspīrō (1-intr.) breathe upon; favor (+ dat.)
 prīmus, -a, -um first
 orīgō, orīginis *f.* origin, birth
 mundus, mundi *m.* universe, world
 perpetuus, -a, -um continuous; everlasting
 dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; spin; compose
 tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
 vultus, vultūs *m.* expression; face
 orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

†dīcō, here, call
 Chaos, Chaī *n.* Chaos
 rudis, rude unformed, rough
 indīgestus, -a, -um disordered, confused
 mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, weight
 quicquam = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,
 anything
 pondus, ponderis *n.* weight
 iners, inertis inactive, inert
 congerō (con- + gerō) gather together, collect
 †eōdem, here (adv.) to the same place
 iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus join
 discors, discordis discordant
 sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed

13. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXII.39.11

The historian records a speech by Fabius Maximus, one of the heroes of the second Punic war, to Aemilius Paulus (consul 216 B.C.E.), who is about to set off to meet Hannibal on Roman soil. Fabius summarizes his view of the strategic situation. Aemilius later dies in combat near the Italian town of Cannae.

in Italiā bellum gerimus, in sēde ac solō nostrō; omnia circā plēna cīvium ac sociōrum sunt; armīs, virīs, equīs, commeātibus iuvant iuvābuntque,—id iam fidei documentum in adversīs rēbus nostrīs dedērunt. . . . Hannibal contrā in aliēnā, in hostilī est terrā inter omnia inimīca infestaque, procul ab domō, ab patriā; neque illi terrā neque marī est pāx; nūllae eum urbēs accipiunt, nūlla moenia; nihil usquam suī videt . . .

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home

solum, solī *n.* soil

circā (*adv.*) round about, on either side

plēnus, -a, -um full

equus, equī *m.* horse

commeātus, commeātūs *m.* transport, convoy;
pl., supplies, provisions

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist

documentum, documentī *n.* example; proof

adversus, -a, -um opposite; hostile, adverse

contrā (*adv.*) in opposition, in turn

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien,
strange

hostilis, hostile of or belonging to an enemy,
hostile

infestus, -a, -um hostile; dangerous

procul (*adv.*) at a distance, far

usquam (*adv.*) anywhere

Titus Livius (59 B.C.E. – 17? C.E.) was born in Patavium in northern Italy. Little is known of his life other than that he did not take part in politics but was on good terms with Augustus. He is said to have encouraged Claudius, who later became emperor, to write history.

Livy's work, *Ab Urbe Condita* (*From the Founding of the City*), a historical work written in 142 books, is one of the greatest of Roman literary achievements. Only one quarter of the work has survived, but the contents of almost all the lost books are known from summaries that date from the fourth century C.E. Livy traces Roman history from its mythical origins to his own day. Much of Livy's material, particularly in the early books, is based on traditional tales and legends whose historical accuracy cannot be established. Livy's narrative style is marked by dramatic and emotional coloring, part of his effort to illustrate and extol the Roman qualities of **virtūs**, **dignitās** (worthiness), and **pietās** (devotion to duty). Livy's mixed prose style shows the influence of both Cicero and Sallust as well as that of Vergil.

14. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 698–709

Cassandra, the daughter of Priam, explains to the chorus why she has nothing left to fear.

Fortūna vīrēs ipsa cōnsūmpsit suās.

quae patria restat, quis[†] pater, quae iam soror?

bibēre tumulī sanguinem atque ārae meum.[†]

700

quid illa fēlīx turba frāternī gregis?

exhausta nempe: rēgiā miserī senēs

vacuā relictī, totque per thalamōs vident

praeter Lacaenam cēterās viduās nurūs.

tot illa rēgum māter et regimen Phrygum,

705

fēcunda in[†] ignēs Hecuba fātōrum novās

experta lēgēs induit vultūs ferōs;

circā ruīnās rabida latrāvit suās,

Troiae superstes, Hectorī, Priamō, sibi.

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus
expend, use up

restō, restāre, restitī, — remain, be left

[†]**quis, here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally**

bibō, bibere, bibī, — drink

tumulus, tumulī m. burial mound, grave

sanguis, sanguinis m. blood

[†]**meum = meōrum**

turba, turbae f. crowd, throng

frāternus, -a, -um brotherly, fraternal

grex, gregis m. flock, herd

exhauriō, exhaurīre, exhausī, exhaustus drain dry

nempe (adv.) without doubt, to be sure

rēgia, rēgiae f. royal residence, palace

senex, senis old; *masc. subst.*, old man

vacuus, -a, -um empty

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

thalamus, thalamī m. inner room, wedding chamber

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except

Lacaena, Lacaenae f. Laconian woman; Helen

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), (the) other

viduus, -a, -um widowed

nurus, nurūs f. daughter-in-law

regimen, regiminis n. controller, manager

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan

fēcundus, -a, -um fertile, productive, fruitful

[†]**in, here, toward**

ignis, ignis, -ium m. fire

Hecuba, Hecubae f. Hecuba (wife of Priam)

induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on; assume, adopt

vultus, vultūs m. sing. or pl., expression; face

ferus, -a, -um wild; fierce

circā (prep. + acc.) around, near

ruīna, ruīnae f. downfall, ruin

rabidus, -a, -um raging, rabid, mad

latrō (1-intr.) bark, bay

superstes, superstitis surviving (+ dat.)

Hectōr, Hectoris m. Hector (son of Priam)

Priamus, Priamī m. Priam (king of Troy)

Based in part on Aeschylus's *Agamemnon*, Seneca's play of the same name tells the tale of Agamemnon's homecoming from Troy and his subsequent murder by his wife, Clytaemnestra, and his cousin, her lover, Aegisthus.

15. Tacitus, *Dē Vitā Agricolae* 1

The first sentence of Tacitus's first work, a monograph on the life of his father-in-law, Agricola

Clārōrum virōrum facta mōrēsque posterīs trādere, antīquitas ūsitātum, nē nostrīs quidem temporibus quamquam incūriōsa suōrum aetās omīsīt quotiēns magna aliqua ac nōbilis virtūs vīcit ac supergressa est vitium parvīs magnīsque cīvitatibus commūne, ignōrantiam rēctī et invidiam.

mōs, mōris *m.* custom; *pl.*, character
posterī, posterōrum *m. pl.* descendants; posterity
antīquitas (*adv.*) from of old; long ago
ūsitātus, -a, -um commonly practiced, customary
incūriōsus, -a, -um not interested (in), not concerned (with) (+ *gen.*)
aetās, aetātis *f.* age; era
omittō (ob- + mittō) pass over; fail, neglect

quotiēns (*rel. adv.*) as often as, whenever
aliqua = *fem. sing. nom. of indef. adj.*, some
nōbilis, nōbile noble; remarkable
supergridior, supergridī, supergressus sum
 pass beyond; exceed, surpass
vitium, vitīi *n.* vice, fault
commūnis, commūne common
ignōrantia, ignōrantiae *f.* ignorance
rēctus, -a, -um straight; right; *neut. subst.*, right

Cornēlius Tacitus (55–118 C.E.) was born in northern Italy during Nero's principate and had a successful public career under a succession of emperors. Tacitus is best known for his historical works, which include three short monographs and two longer works: the *Historiae* (*Histories*) and the *Annālēs* (*Annals*). In these last two works Tacitus's prose style reaches its most distinctive form. Tacitean point and antithesis owe much to the earlier historian Sallust, with whom Tacitus shares a penchant for archaisms, weighty abstract nouns, poetic language, and Greekisms. The intensity and compressed nature of Tacitus's style are unmatched in Latin literature.

The *Agricola* or *Dē Vitā Agricolae* (*About the Life of Agricola*), the historian's first work, is a short biography of the historian's father-in-law, Julius Agricola, who conquered and governed Britain during the principate of Domitian (81–96 C.E.). The work contains information about the geography and native population of Britain and recounts the activities of the province's governor. The son-in-law presents Agricola as an example of a virtuous man living and serving under a repressive tyrant. The mixed style of the *Agricola* shows the influences of Cicero, Sallust, and Livy.

16. Tacitus, *Annālēs* I.1

The historian summarizes concisely modes of Roman rule from the city's beginnings down to Augustus.

Urbem Rōmam ā p̄ncipiō rēgēs habuēre; libertātem et cōsulātum L. Brūtus īstituit. dictātūrae ad tempus† sūmēbantur; neque decemvirālis potestās ultrā biennium, neque tribūnōrum militum cōsulāre iūs diū valuit. nōn Cinnae, nōn Sullae longa dominātiō; et Pompeī Crassīque potentia citō in Caesarem, Lepidī atque Antōniī arma in Augustum cessēre, quī cūncta discordiīs cīvilibus fessa nōmine p̄ncipis sub imperium accēpit.

p̄ncipium, p̄ncipiū *n.* beginning

L. Brūtus, L. Brūtī *m.* L. (Junius) Brutus (legendary founder of the Roman republic)

īstituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitūtus set up, establish

dictātūra, dictātūrae *f.* dictatorship (an emergency office with unlimited powers)

†**ad tempus**, for the occasion, in emergencies
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up; assume

decemvirālis, decemvirāle pertaining to the *decemvirī* (a commission of ten magistrates)

potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power

ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond

biennium, bienniū *n.* biennium, two years

tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military commander

cōsulāre iūs, cōsulāris iūris *n.* consular right or power (sometimes granted to military tribunes)

diū (adv.) for a long time

Cinna, Cinnae *m.* (L. Cornelius) Cinna (Roman dictator 87–84 B.C.E., enemy of Sulla)

longus, -a, -um long

dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute rule, dominion

Crassus, Crassī *m.* Crassus (member of first triumvirate with Pompey and Caesar)

potentia, potentiae *f.* (illegitimate) power, influence

citō (adv.) quickly

Lepidus, Lepidī *m.* (M. Aemilius) Lepidus (member of second triumvirate with Antony and Octavian)

Augustus, Augustī *m.* Augustus

cūnctus, -a, -um all

discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, conflict

cīvilis, cīvile of or connected with citizens, civil

fessus, -a, -um weary, exhausted, worn out

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

p̄nceps, p̄ncipis first, chief; *subst.*, leading man, *princeps* (the name chosen by Augustus as his title)

The *Annālēs* appear to have comprised eighteen books, of which only eight survive completely and four others in part. Their subject is the history of Rome from the death of Augustus to the death of Nero (14–68 C.E.) The *Annālēs* is generally considered Tacitus's most mature work. The first six books in particular are marked by Tacitus's characteristic compression and his pronounced avoidance of Ciceronian balance. In these books the complexity of Tacitus's thought is expressed as economically as possible. The resulting narrative is vivid, surprising, and inimitable.

§93. Numbers in Latin

Cardinal numbers are adjectives that answer the question “how many?” They are the numbers used in counting. Most but not all cardinal numbers in Latin are indeclinable. **Ordinal numbers** are adjectives that answer the question “which one in a series?” All ordinal numbers in Latin are first-second-declension adjectives. Most ordinal numbers are derived from the corresponding cardinal numbers.

Arabic	Roman	Cardinal Number	Ordinal Number
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um one	prīmus, -a, -um first
2	II	duo, duae, duo two	secundus, -a, -um second
3	III	trēs, tria three	tertius, -a, -um third
4	IIII or IV	quattuor four	quartus, -a, -um fourth
5	V	quīnque five	quintus, -a, -um fifth
6	VI	sex six	sextus, -a, -um sixth
7	VII	septem seven	septimus, -a, -um seventh
8	VIII	octō eight	octāvus, -a, -um eighth
9	VIIII or IX	novem nine	nōnus, -a, -um ninth
10	X	decem ten	decimus, -a, -um tenth
11	XI	ūndecim eleven	ūndecimus, -a, -um eleventh
12	XII	duodecim twelve	duodecimus, -a, -um twelfth
13	XIII	tredecim thirteen	tertius decimus, -a, -um thirteenth
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordecim fourteen	quartus decimus, -a, -um fourteenth
15	XV	quīndecim fifteen	quintus decimus, -a, -um fifteenth
16	XVI	sēdecim sixteen	sextus decimus, -a, -um sixteenth
17	XVII	septendecim seventeen	septimus decimus, -a, -um seventeenth
18	XVIII	duodēvigintī eighteen	duodēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um eighteenth
19	XVIIII or XIX	ūndēvigintī nineteen	ūndēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um nineteenth
20	XX	vīgintī twenty	vīcēsīmus, -a, -um twentieth
21 ¹	XXI	vīgintī ūnus, -a, -um or ūnus et vīgintī twenty-one	vīcēsīmus prīmus, -a, -um or ūnus et vīcēsīmus, -a, -um twenty-first
22	XXII	vīgintī duo or duo et vīgintī twenty-two	vīcēsīmus, -a, -um alter, altera, alterum or alter, altera, alterum et vīcēsīmus, -a, -um twenty-second

1. In the numbers from 21 to 29, for example, the numbers up to 27 are made by *adding to twenty* the necessary numbers from 1 to 7. The numbers 28–29 are made by *subtracting from thirty* the numbers 2 and 1. Such a system is followed in every unit of ten numbers.

Arabic	Roman	Cardinal Number	Ordinal Number
23	XXIII	vīgintī trēs or trēs et vīgintī twenty-three	vīcesimus tertius, -a, -um or tertius et vīcēsimus, -a, -um twenty-third
28	XXVIII	duodētrīgintā twenty-eight	duodētrīcēsimus, -a, -um twenty-eighth
29	XXVIII or XXIX	ūndētrīgintā twenty-nine	ūndētrīcēsimus, -a, -um twenty-ninth
30	XXX	trīgintā thirty	trīcēsimus, -a, -um thirtieth
40	XXXX or XL	quadrāgintā forty	quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um fortieth
50	L	quīnquāgintā fifty	quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um fiftieth
60	LX	sexāgintā sixty	sexāgēsimus, -a, -um sixtieth
70	LXX	septuāgintā seventy	septuāgēsimus, -a, -um seventieth
80	LXXX	octōgintā eighty	octōgēsimus, -a, -um eightieth
90	LXXX or XC	nōnāgintā ninety	nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um ninetieth
100	C	centum hundred	centēsimus, -a, -um hundredth
200	CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus, -a, -um
300	CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus, -a, -um
400	CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus, -a, -um
500	D	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimus, -a, -um
600	DC	sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscentēsimus, -a, -um
700	DCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus, -a, -um
800	DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus, -a, -um
900	DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus, -a, -um
1000	M	mille; mīlia, mīlium	mīllēsimus, -a, -um

duo, duae, duo has an irregular declension. **trēs, tria** is declined regularly as a third-declension adjective (*plural forms only*). The stem is **tr-**.

	Plural				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.		M./F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	Nom.	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	Gen.	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	Dat.	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duo	duās	duo	Acc.	trēs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	Abl.	tribus	tribus

MEMORIZE THE CARDINAL NUMBERS 1 TO 10 (INCLUDING THE DECLENSIONS OF **DUO, DUAE, DUO** AND **TRĒS, TRIA**), 100, AND 1000. MEMORIZE THE ORDINAL NUMBERS THAT CORRESPOND TO 1 TO 10. REFER TO THIS SECTION WHENEVER CARDINAL OR ORDINAL NUMBERS APPEAR IN READINGS.

The cardinal numbers 200 to 900 are all declined (*plural forms only*) as first-second-declension adjectives. **mille** is indeclinable in the singular, but **mīlia, mīlium**

is declined regularly as a neuter plural substantive of a third-declension adjective. The stem is **mīl-**. The Romans frequently measured distance in “thousands of paces” or “miles.” For example:

mīle passuum	one thousand of paces, one mile (passus, passūs <i>m.</i> pace)
decem milia passuum	ten thousands of paces, ten miles

OBSERVATION

In the expressions above the syntax of **passuum** is Partitive Genitive.

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary

- ▶ **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* legate, envoy; lieutenant
- ▶ **nātus, nātī** *m.* son

- ▶ **dux, ducis** *m. or f.* leader
- ▶ **finis, finis, -ium** *m. or f.* end, limit, boundary; *pl.*, territory
- ▶ **genus, generis** *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort
- ▶ **labor, labōris** *m.* work, labor; effort, hardship
- ▶ **mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, practice; *pl.* (*sometimes*), character
- ▶ **opus, operis** *n.* work
 - ▶ **opus est** (idiom) there is need of (+ abl. or nom.)
- ▶ **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech
 - ▶ **ōrātiōnem habēre** (idiom) to make a speech
 - ▶ **ōrātor, ōrātōris** *m.* speaker, orator
- ▶ **pectus, pectoris** *n. sing. or pl.*, chest, breast; heart

- ▶ **cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence; chance, misfortune
- ▶ **metus, metūs** *m.* fear, dread

- ▶ **spes, speī** *f.* hope

- ▶ **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing
- ▶ **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (indef. adj.) (a) certain

- ▶ **oppugnō** (1-tr.) attack
- ▶ **servō** (1-tr.) save, preserve
- ▶ **stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus** stand; stand fast, endure

- ▶ **dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus** destroy

- ▶ **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus** fall; die
- ▶ **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** be born
- ▶ **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know
 - ▶ **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know
- ▶ **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum** set out, set forth
- ▶ **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** use; experience; enjoy (+ abl.)

- ▶ **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** suffer, endure; report
- ▶ **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** bring back; report

- ▶ **aequus, -a, -um** level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil
 - ▶ **inīquus, -a, -um** uneven; inequitable, unjust
- ▶ **honestus, -a, -um** honorable, respectable
- ▶ **medius, -a, -um** middle (of); *neut. subst.*, midst; the open
- ▶ **nōtus, -a, -um** known, well-known; familiar

- ▶ **apud** (prep. + acc.) at the house of, in the presence of, among
- ▶ **contrā** (adv.) on the contrary, in opposition; in turn (prep. + acc.) against, contrary to; facing

- ▶ **magnopere** (adv.) greatly
- ▶ **quīn** (conj.) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic, who/that . . . not (§94)*
- ▶ **satis/sat** (adv.) enough, sufficiently; (indeclinable neut. subst.) enough

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* may refer to a “legate” or “envoy” involved in matters of diplomacy. It may also be used to identify an assistant to an army commander or provincial governor (lieutenant, legate).
- ▶ **nātus, nātī** *m.* means “a male having been born” and is a substantive of the perfect passive participle of **nāscor**. Less common is the feminine substantive **nāta, nātae** *f.*, “daughter.”
- ▶ **dux, ducis** *m. or f.* may mean a “leader” in the sense of a “guide,” but it is commonly used for a political or military “leader.”
- ▶ The gender of **finis, finis, -ium** is regularly masculine, but in early Latin and in poetry the singular only is sometimes treated as feminine. In the plural, **finis** may refer to the “boundary” of a territory or country and, by extension, the “territory” that is enclosed by boundaries.
- ▶ **genus, generis** *n.* is derived from the PIE root ***genE-** (give birth, bear). **genus** may refer to an individual’s “origin” or “birth.” It may refer more broadly to a “race” or “class” of people or things that arise from a single origin (human race, race of the gods, Greek stock). When used of abstract things, it often means “sort” or “kind,” the abstract class to which someone or something belongs.
- ▶ **labor, labōris** *m.* means the abstract concept of “work” or “the act of working” (labor). **labor** may also mean the “effort” or “hardship” required to accomplish something.
- ▶ **mōs, mōris** *m.* means “custom,” an established practice as opposed to an enacted law. The plural **mōrēs** may mean “customs,” but it may also refer to the collective habits of an individual and thus may be translated “character.” The phrases **ex mōre** and **dē mōre** mean “according to custom.”
- ▶ **opus, operis** *n.* may mean something that needs to be done (work [to do]) or something that has been accomplished ([piece of] work, product, achievement). **opus** may convey the sense of how much is required to accomplish something (effort), and it is often used for the products of artistic endeavor (poetic work).

Hoc opus perficere nōn poterit.
Clāra sunt opera poētārum.

He will not be able to complete this work.
The works of the poets are famous.

- ▶ The idiom **opus est** most often takes an ablative to express the thing needed. This ablative is translated with the English preposition “of.” It is also common for a Dative of Reference to occur with this idiom.

Mihi opus est magnā diligentīā.

There is need to me of great diligence.
I need great diligence.

Less frequently, the thing needed is the Nominative, Subject, and **opus** functions as a Predicate Nominative. A Nominative, Subject occurs most often when the subject is a neuter pronoun.

Hoc mihi opus est.

This thing is a need to me.
There is need to me of this thing.
I need this thing.

- Rarely **opus est** takes a genitive of the thing needed.
- ▶ **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* may mean the abstract notion of “speaking,” the power of “speech,” or a particular “speech” or “oration.”
- ▶ **pectus, pectoris** *n.*, “chest,” “breast”; “heart,” often appears in the plural in poetry with the same meanings as the singular.
- ▶ **cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **cadō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **cās-** and was then lost. In addition to its basic meaning of “fall,” **cāsus** refers to the “occurrence” of an event, usually by chance (accident), which may be positive (fortune) or negative (misfortune).
- ▶ **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** is an *indefinite pronoun* formed by the addition of the suffix **-dam** to the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**. An *indefinite pronoun* is a pronoun that does not define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The declension of **quīdam** follows the declension of **quī**, **quae**, **quod** with certain variations:

1. The neuter singular nominative and accusative are formed by the addition of **-dam** to **quid**.
2. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final **-m** changes to an **-n-** before **-dam**.

- **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** is an *indefinite adjective* formed by the addition of the suffix **-dam** to the relative pronoun **quī**, **quae**, **quod**. An *indefinite adjective* is an adjective that does not define or specify the person or thing it modifies. The declension of **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** is identical with that of **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** except in the neuter singular nominative and accusative (cf. **quoddam** with **quiddam**).

Quīdam Rōmam vēnit.	A certain man came to Rome. (indefinite pronoun)
Poēta quīdam Rōmam vēnit.	A certain poet came to Rome. (indefinite adjective)

- **oppugnō**, **oppugnāre**, **oppugnāvī**, **oppugnātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **pugnō**. Unlike **pugnō**, **oppugnō** is a transitive verb.

Incolae oppidum oppugnant.	The inhabitants are attacking the town.
----------------------------	---

- **stō**, **stāre**, **stetī**, **stātūrus** is an irregular intransitive first-conjugation verb. The third principal part exhibits reduplication, and the fourth principal part has a short **-a-**. In addition to its basic meaning of “stand,” **stō** may also mean “remain standing,” “endure,” or “last.”
- **cadō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus** is an intransitive verb. The third principal part, **cecidī**, exhibits reduplication. In addition to its basic meaning of “fall,” **cadō** may also mean “cease” (when the subject is winds, noise, etc.). It may also have the extended meaning of “die” or “perish.”
- **nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum** is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **nāscor** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **NĀSCOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** is derived from the PIE root ***gneO-** (know). It is an *inchoative* (< **incohō**, start) or *inceptive* (< **incipiō**, begin) verb. An *inchoative* verb indicates that an action is *beginning to occur*. All verbs whose first and second principal parts end in **-scō** and **-scere** are in origin inchoative verbs. The basic meaning of **nōscō** is “begin to know” and thus “learn.” The *perfect* indicative of many inchoative verbs is often equivalent to an English *present* tense since the perfect tense indicates the *completion* of the action of the verb. **nōvī** means “I have learned” and thus “I know.” The *pluperfect* forms may be translated as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. On occasion, the perfect tense may be translated “have learned” or “learned,” but the meaning “know” is more common. When **nōscō** in the perfect tenses takes an infinitive, it means “know how.”

Nātūram hominum nōscere optō.	I desire to learn the nature of human beings.
Lēgēs huius urbis nōvistī?	Do you know [= Have you learned] the laws of this city?
Nōverāsne lēgēs huius urbis?	Did you know (progressive [=Had you learned]) the laws of this city?

The present forms of **nōscō** may mean “recognize” or “become acquainted with” a person. The perfect forms may mean “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” a person or an object of study.

Cicerōnem nōn nōvī.	I do not know (am not acquainted with) Cicero.
---------------------	--

- **cognōscō**, **cognōscere**, **cognōvī**, **cognitus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **com-** to **nōscō**. It exhibits irregular vowel weakening in the fourth principal part. **cognōscō** is a strengthened form of **nōscō** with all the same meanings.

- **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum** is an intransitive third-conjugation deponent verb. In origin an inchoative verb, **proficīscor** means “set out” or “set forth” on a journey or from a certain starting point.
- **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** is an intransitive verb that takes an *ablative* of the thing used or experienced. The ablative is translated as a direct object in English. Compounds of **ūtor** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **ŪTOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Tuō cōnsiliō ūtar.

I shall use your advice.

Utinam bonā nunc fortūnā ūterēmur.

If only we were experiencing good fortune now.

- **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **ferō**. **perferō** regularly means “endure” or “suffer” (hardships, troubles), but it may also mean “report” or “express.”
- **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **re-** to **ferō**. Although **referō** may mean “carry back,” it most commonly means “report.”
- From the basic physical meaning of **aequus, -a, -um** (level or even) come its more expanded senses of “fair” or “just” (level in a legal or political context) and “calm” or “tranquil” (i.e., level-headed). **inīquus, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **aequus**.
- **honestus, -a, -um** is an adjective derived from the noun **honor, honōris m.**, “(political) office”; “honor,” “repute.” In the strictest sense **honestus** describes a person who is “honorable” or “respectable” because he has held a public office. **honestus** has a more extended sense of being “morally honorable” or “respectable.”
- **medius, -a, -um** expresses the notion of the “middle of” a place by modifying that place. It usually appears before the noun it modifies. As a neuter substantive, **medius** is often translated “midst” or “the open.”

Militēs in mediā urbe ā rēge positī sunt.

Soldiers were placed in the middle of the city by the king.

Postquam populō dixit, ē mediō discessit.

After he spoke to the people, he departed (out) from (their) midst.

Cōsul tōtam rem in mediō posuit.

The consul placed the whole matter in the open.

- The fourth principal part of **nōscō, nōtus, -a, -um** (having been learned) often appears as an adjective meaning “known,” “well-known,” or “familiar.” The adjective **nōtus, -a, -um** often appears with a Dative of Reference.
- **apud** is a preposition that takes the accusative. It may mean “at the house of,” “in the presence of,” “among,” or “with” (individuals, groups), and “in (the writings of)” (authors, books). Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.

Cicerō apud frātremanet.

Cicero is staying at the house of/with (his) brother.

Haec apud Rōmānōs sunt iūra.

These are the laws among the Romans.

Haec verba apud Cicerōnem lēgī.

I have read the following words in (the writings of) Cicero.

- **contrā** is an adverb that is often used to emphasize that a statement or action opposes an earlier one (on the contrary, in opposition). Sometimes the second action is understood to be reciprocal rather than in opposition (in turn).

Tibi malus vidētur? Mihi contrā bonus.

Does he seem bad to you? To me, on the contrary, (he seems) good.

Filius patrem amat, pater contrā filium.

The son loves the father, the father in turn (loves) the son.

contrā is also a preposition that takes the accusative. It may have meanings analogous to those of the adverb (against, contrary to), or, particularly with verbs that mean “stand,” it may mean “facing.”

Contrā hostēs ivimus.

We went against the enemies.

Hostēs contrā nostrōs stābant.

The enemies were standing facing our men.

- The adverb **magnopere** is in origin the Ablative of Manner **magnō opere**, “with great work,” and it is sometimes written as two words.

► **satis** may be an indeclinable neuter substantive, which is often followed by a Partitive Genitive, or an adverb. The shortened form **sat** is more common in poetry.

Satis agricolae est ager bonus.

A good field is enough for the farmer. (subst.)

Satisne cōpiārum tibi est?

Do you have enough (of) troops? (subst. + Partitive Gen.)

Satisne labōrābās?

Were you working enough? (adverb)

	Derivatives	Cognates
cadō	cadaver; cadence; cascade; case; chance; accident; occasion; deciduous	
finis	define; final; fine; finish	
genus	genuine; gender; genre; engine; germ; genital; malign	kind; king; genocide; gene
mōs	moral; morose; mores	mood
nōscō	notice; notorious; notify	know; can; ken; diagnosis; noble
cognōscō	cognition; recognition	
satis	satisfy; saturate; satire	sad
spēs		despair; prosper, speed
ūtor	use; utility; utensil	

§94. Relative Clauses of Characteristic

When the verb in a relative clause is in the indicative mood, the relative clause helps make clear *what specific person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. For example:

Virum quī rem publicam petit nōn laudāmus.

The (specific) man (d.o.) who the republic (d.o.) is (actually) attacking we do not praise.

We do not praise the man who is attacking the republic.

When the verb in a relative clause is in the subjunctive rather than the indicative mood, the relative clause may supply information about *what sort of person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. Such a clause is called a **Relative Clause of Characteristic**.¹ For example:

Virum quī rem publicam petat nōn laudāmus.

A man (d.o.) *who the republic (d.o.) would attack* we do not praise.

We do not praise a man *who would attack the republic*.

We do not praise a man *of the sort who attacks the republic*.

Virum quī rem publicam petiverit nōn laudāmus.

A man (d.o.) *of the sort who the republic (d.o.) attacked* we do not praise.

We do not praise a man *of the sort who attacked the republic*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subjunctive mood in Relative Clauses of Characteristic developed from the Potential subjunctive, and it both generalizes about and characterizes an indefinite antecedent.
2. Unlike Purpose clauses and Indirect Commands, Relative Clauses of Characteristic may use both the perfect subjunctive (in primary sequence) and the pluperfect subjunctive (in secondary sequence) because the action of a Relative Clause of Characteristic may have occurred prior to the main verb. Thus in the second sentence above **petiverit** is used to indicate time prior to the main verb and is translated accordingly.
3. The tenses of the subjunctive verbs in Relative Clauses of Characteristic follow the rules of sequence. The syntax of **petat** in the first sentence is **present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time subsequent to the main verb**. The syntax of **petiverit** in the second sentence is **perfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time prior to the main verb**.
4. In a translation of a Relative Clause of Characteristic, the relative pronoun is most often translated “of the sort who/that . . .,” and the subjunctive is translated as an indicative. Sometimes a Relative Clause of Characteristic in the present or imperfect subjunctive may be translated “who/that . . . would . . .”

Certain formulaic phrases with *indefinite antecedents* regularly introduce Relative Clauses of Characteristic. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING PHRASES:

Quis est quī . . .	Who is there (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Quid est quod . . .	What is there (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Nēmō est quī . . .	There is no one (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Nihil est quod . . .	There is nothing (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Sunt quī . . .	There are people (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Sōlus est quī . . .	He is the only one (of the sort) who . . . (would)

1. The Relative Clause of Characteristic is also known as the **Generic Relative Clause**.

In addition to various unspecified or indefinite antecedents, any person or thing may serve as the antecedent for a Relative Clause of Characteristic. For example:

Cicerō erat quī vītā prō rē pūblicā daret.

Cicero was (a man) who would give (his) life for the republic.

Illud est verbum quod omnēs intellegant.

That is a word of the sort that all men understand.

That is a word that all men would understand.

When the main clause contains an expressed or implied negation, the conjunction **quīn** (without its being the case that) may replace a relative pronoun in introducing a Relative Clause of Characteristic. A relative pronoun and the English adverb “not” should be added to the translation of such a clause. For example:

Nēmō est quīn prō patriā pugnet.

There is no one *who* would *not* fight for (his) homeland.

Sōla erat quīn haec intellegeret.

She was the only one *of the sort who* did *not* understand these things.

• DRILL 94, PAGE 413, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§95. Introduction to Participles

A participle has been defined as a *verbal adjective* with the properties of *tense* and *voice*, and one participle, the perfect passive participle, has already been learned. There are a total of four participles in Latin: present active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive.² The following chart presents all the participles and their basic translations:

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
Present	Present Stem + -ns, -ntis (for 3rd-i-stem- and 4th-conjugation verbs, change the stem vowel to -ie-) vocāns, vocantis movēns, moventis regēns, regentis “_____ing” capiēns, capientis audiēns, audientis	—
Perfect	—	4th Principal Part vocātus, -a, -um mōtus, -a, -um rēctus, -a, -um “(having been) _____ed” captus, -a, -um audītus, -a, -um
Future	drop the -us, -a, -um from 4th Principal Part and add -ūrus, -a, -um vocātūrus, -a, -um “about to _____” mōtūrus, -a, -um “_____” rēctūrus, -a, -um captūrus, -a, -um “going to _____” audītūrus, -a, -um “_____”	Present Stem + -ndus, -a, -um (for 3rd-i-stem- and 4th-conjugation verbs, change the stem vowel to -ie-) vocandus, -a, -um movendus, -a, -um regendus, -a, -um “having to be _____ed” capiendus, -a, -um audiendus, -a, -um

OBSERVATIONS

1. A present active participle is a third-declension adjective with one nominative singular form for the masculine, feminine, and neuter (cf. **ingēns, ingentis**). Its stem is found by dropping the ending **-is** from the genitive singular form (§56). *Unlike* other third-declension adjectives, the present active participle has **-ī** or **-e** as its *masculine/feminine singular ablative* ending. When the participle functions as an adjective and modifies an expressed noun, the ablative singular ending is usually **-ī**. When the participle functions as a substantive, the ablative singular ending is usually **-e**. For example:

dē virō regentī	about the ruling man (adjective)
dē regente	about the ruling man/ruler (substantive)

2. The Latin verb has neither a present passive nor a perfect active participle.

2. A short vowel *lengthens* before the nominative singular ending of the present active participle (-ns) (e.g., **regēns** < **rege-** + **ns**). However, a long vowel *shortens* before the -nt- at the end of the stem (e.g., **vocant-** < **vocā-** + **-nt-**).
3. The perfect passive participle of intransitive verbs (e.g., **veniō**) may occur only in the impersonal passive construction with a neuter singular ending (e.g., **ventum est**) (§54).
4. The fourth principal parts of certain intransitive verbs that lack perfect passive participles are future active participles: **futūrus, -a, -um** (about to be); **caritūrus, -a, -um** (about to lack), etc.
5. A long vowel shortens before the -nd- at the end of the stem of the future passive participle (e.g., **vocand-** < **vocā-** + **-nd-**).
6. The future passive participle conveys a sense of obligation or necessity. For example: **oppidum capiendum**, “the town having to be captured” (nom./acc.). For the use of the future passive participle of intransitive verbs in an impersonal passive construction, see §99.

Participles of Irregular Verbs

Sum has only a future active participle (the fourth principal part), **futūrus, -a, -um**, “about to/going to be.” **Possum** has no participles.

The present active participle of **eō** is irregular: **iēns, euntis** (stem = **eunt-**). The future passive participle of **eō** is also irregular: **eundum**. For its use in an impersonal passive construction, see §99. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES. **Eō** forms its future active participle regularly: **itūrus, -a, -um**.

Ferō forms its present active participle regularly: **ferēns, ferentis**.

The regular verb **morior** has an irregular future active participle: **moritūrus, -a, -um**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE.

Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs

The participles of deponent and semideponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation that apply to nondeponent verbs. However, deponent and semideponent verbs have the following participles:

Present active participles that are *active* in both *form* and *meaning*
 Perfect passive participles that are *passive* in *form* but *active* in *meaning*
 Future active participles that are *active* in both *form* and *meaning*
 Future passive participles that are *passive* in both *form* and *meaning*

The following chart provides an example of the forms and basic translations of the participles of deponent verbs.

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
Present	patiēns enduring	_____
Perfect	_____	passus, -a, -um having endured
Future	passūrus, -a, -um about to/going to endure	patiendus, -a, -um having to be endured

§96. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participle, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes participles, they follow the subjunctive and precede the infinitive and imperative. Here is a model synopsis of **sentiō** in the third-person singular feminine:

Principal Parts:		sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus		
Person, Number, and Gender:		3rd sing. f.		
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	sentit	she perceives	sentītur	she is (being) perceived
Imperfect	sentiēbat	she was perceiving	sentiēbātur	she was being perceived
Future	sentiet	she will perceive	sentiētur	she will be perceived
Perfect	sēnsit	1. she perceived 2. she has perceived	sēnsa est	1. she was perceived 2. she has been perceived
Pluperfect	sēnserat	she had perceived	sēnsa erat	she had been perceived
Future Perfect	sēnserit	she will have perceived	sēnsa erit	she will have been perceived
<i>Subjunctive</i>				
Present	sentiat		sentiātur	
Imperfect	sentīret		sentīrētur	
Perfect	sēnserit		sēnsa sit	
Pluperfect	sēnsisset		sēnsa esset	
<i>Participle</i>				
Present	sentiēns	perceiving	————	
Perfect	————		sēnsus, -a, -um	(having been) perceived
Future	sēnsūrus, -a, -um	about to perceive	sentiendus, -a, -um	having to be perceived
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	sentīre	to perceive	sentīrī	to be perceived
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	sentī	perceive	sentīre	be perceived
Plural	sentīte	perceive (pl.)	sentīmini	be perceived (pl.)

OBSERVATION

Since participles are not finite forms, one always gives the *full nominative singular* no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms. In synopses of intransitive verbs, the perfect passive and future passive participles are given in the neuter singular nominative only (e.g., **cessum, cēdendum**).

● DRILL 95–96, PAGE 417, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§97. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive and Circumstantial Uses

The three tenses of the participle—present, perfect, future—*have no absolute time values of their own*; rather, they have only *relative time*:

A *present* participle indicates an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.

A *perfect* participle indicates an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

A *future* participle indicates an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.

For example:

Hominēs in agrīs labōrantēs vīdī. (present active participle)

The men (d.o.) in the fields *working* I saw.

I saw the men *working* in the fields.

Mihi dē militibus captīs dīcit. (perfect passive participle)

To me about the (having been) *captured* soldiers he is speaking.

He is speaking to me about the *captured* soldiers.

Rēx discessūrus arma cēpit. (future active participle)

The king *about to depart* took up arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active participle **labōrantēs** indicates an action occurring at the same time as the main verb, **vīdī**.
2. In the second sentence the perfect passive participle **captīs** indicates an action that occurred before the main verb, **dīcit**.
3. In the third sentence the future active participle **discessūrus** indicates an action that is to occur after the main verb, **cēpit**.
4. Since a participle is a verbal adjective, it usually follows the noun it modifies. Often a participle is separated from its noun by several words in order to enclose a phrase that is syntactically connected to the participle. For example, **labōrantēs** is separated from **hominēs** to enclose the prepositional phrase **in agrīs**.

As in the sentences above, a participle may be used simply to indicate that the noun it modifies has the *attribute* or *quality* described by the participle. Such a use of the participle is called **attributive**. The basic translations supplied for the four Latin participles (_____ing, [having been] _____ed, about to _____, and having to be _____ed) are usually used for translating attributive participles. It is sometimes convenient to translate an attributive participle with a relative clause in English. For example, the last sentence above may be translated “The king *who was about to depart* took up arms.” In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.

A participle may also be used to describe the *circumstances* under which the action of the main clause occurs. This use of the participle is called **circumstantial**. Often the circumstances described by such a participle may be more specifically **temporal**, **causal**, **concessive**, or **conditional**. A phrase containing a circumstantial participle is often best translated into English as a subordinate clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction. For example:

Marcus ad forum iēns interfectus est.

Marcus going to the forum was killed.

While/When Marcus was going to the forum, he was killed. (temporal)

Because Marcus was going to the forum, . . . (causal)

Although Marcus was going to the forum, . . . (concessive)

Marcus ad forum iēns interficiātur.

Marcus going to the forum would be killed.

If Marcus should go to the forum, he would be killed. (conditional)

Caesar suōs hortātus discessit.

Caesar his own (men) (d.o.) having encouraged departed.

When Caesar had encouraged his own men, he departed. (temporal)

After Caesar encouraged his own men, . . . (temporal)

Rēx moritūrus servōs liberāvit.

The king about to die freed (his) slaves.

When the king was about to die, he freed (his) slaves. (temporal)

Because the king was about to die, . . . (causal)

Although the king was about to die, . . . (concessive)

Mīles timōre carēns nōn tamen pugnat.

Although the soldier is without fear, nevertheless he is not fighting. (concessive)

OBSERVATIONS

1. A circumstantial participle may be translated using the basic translation of the participle, but often the full meaning of the participial phrase requires that it be translated as a subordinate clause. When a circumstantial participle is translated as part of a subordinate clause, the participle is translated as a *finite verb*. In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.
2. A circumstantial participle with conditional force always functions as the protasis of a conditional sentence. The main verb is the verb of the apodosis, and it provides the only indication of what type of conditional sentence is represented. In the second sentence above, the main verb **interficiātur** (present subjunctive) indicates that the conditional sentence is a Future Less Vivid, and the participle **iēns** is translated accordingly (If . . . should go).
3. The appropriate force of a circumstantial participle (temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional) can usually be determined by context only. A circumstantial participle with concessive force may be indicated by the presence of the adverb **tamen** (nevertheless) at or near the beginning of the main clause. When **tamen** appears in the main clause, the participle is translated as part of a concessive subordinate clause beginning with the conjunction “although.” A circumstantial participle with conditional force is often indicated by the presence of a main verb in the subjunctive, as in the second sentence above.

☛ DRILL 97, PAGE 421, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§98. Ablative Absolute

A noun in the ablative case that is *accompanied by a circumstantial participle* and *unconnected in syntax* with the rest of the sentence is called an **Ablative Absolute** (< **absolūtus**, having been freed from). For example:

Militibus discēdentibus, omnēs cīvēs ob timōrem fugiēbant.

(With) *the soldiers departing*, all the citizens on account of fear were fleeing.

When *the soldiers were departing*, . . .

Because *the soldiers were departing*, . . .

Although *the soldiers were departing*, . . .

Perfectō bellō, cōnsul Rōmam rediit.

(With) *the war having been completed*, the consul to Rome returned.

When *the war had been completed*, the consul returned to Rome.

Because *the war had been completed*, . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Ablative Absolute functions as a subordinate clause and is part of a complex sentence. Like all participles, the participle in an Ablative Absolute shows time relative to the main verb. In translations of Ablatives Absolute care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle.
2. An Ablative Absolute is often best translated with a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause.
3. The present active and the perfect passive participles appear most often in Ablatives Absolute. The present active participle in the singular in an Ablative Absolute always ends in **-e**.
4. A participle in an Ablative Absolute may precede the noun, as in the second example above.
5. An Ablative Absolute often appears first in a sentence, and several Ablatives Absolute may appear together. The Ablative Absolute allows for the compression of several actions or events into one complex sentence.

Sometimes two nouns (or a noun and an adjective) in the ablative case may form an Ablative Absolute. For example:

Rōmulō rēge, fēlix erat urbs.

(With) *Romulus (being) king*, the city was fortunate.

When *Romulus was king*, . . .

Dīs inimicīs, Aenēās ad Italiam accēdere nōn poterat.

(With) *the gods (being) hostile*, Aeneas was not able to approach Italy.

Because *the gods were hostile*, . . .

OBSERVATION

Since the verb **sum** lacks a present active participle, no participle appears in this type of Ablative Absolute, but the English present participle “being” is supplied as a copulative verb in a translation of an Ablative Absolute of this type. If the Ablative Absolute is translated as a subordinate clause, a finite form of “be” is supplied, and care must be taken to show relative time.

☛ DRILL 98, PAGE 427, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§99. Active and Passive Periphrastics

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the future active participle and a form of **sum** is called an **active periphrastic** (< Greek *periphrazō*, speak around). For example:

Rōmā discessūrī sumus.	<i>We are going to depart from Rome.</i>
Rōmā discessūrī erāmus.	<i>We were going to depart from Rome.</i>
Rōmā discessūrī erimus.	<i>We shall be about to depart from Rome.</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. An active periphrastic indicates a *future* or *intended* action (the future active participle) viewed from another point in time (the form of **sum**). The tense and mood of the active periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of **sum**. For example, **discessūrī sumus** is first person plural masculine present indicative of the active periphrastic. An active periphrastic may occur in any of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future active participle in an active periphrastic.
3. An active periphrastic is best translated word by word, beginning with the form of **sum**.
4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of **sum** may appear before or after the participle in the active periphrastic. For example, **captūrus est** and **est captūrus** are equally correct.

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the future passive participle and a form of **sum** is called a **passive periphrastic**. For example:

Cīvēs regendī sunt.	<i>The citizens are having to be ruled.</i>
	<i>The citizens must be ruled.</i>
	<i>The citizens have to be ruled.</i>
Cīvēs regendī erant.	<i>The citizens were having to be ruled.</i>
	<i>The citizens had to be ruled.</i>
Cīvēs regendī erunt.	<i>The citizens will be having to be ruled.</i>
	<i>The citizens will have to be ruled.</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. A passive periphrastic indicates an action that is viewed as *obligatory* (the future passive participle) at a certain point in time (the form of **sum**). The tense and mood of the passive periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of **sum**. For example, **regendī erant** is third person plural masculine imperfect indicative of the passive periphrastic. A passive periphrastic may occur in any of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future passive participle in a passive periphrastic.
3. Although passive periphrastics may be translated word by word, the alternate translations given above (must, have to, had to, will have to) are to be preferred. Note that “must” can be used *only* for the present indicative of the passive periphrastic.
4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of **sum** may appear before or after the participle in the passive periphrastic. For example, **capiendus est** and **est capiendus** are equally correct.

An active or passive periphrastic may appear wherever any finite verb form may be used. For example:

Mīles, sī hostem capiat, laudandus sit.

The soldier, if the enemy (d.o.) he should capture, *would be having to be praised.*

If the soldier should capture the enemy, *he would have to be praised.*

When an intransitive verb appears in a passive periphrastic, it is a type of impersonal passive construction. For example:

Rōmam veniendum est.

To Rome there must be a coming.

There must be a coming to Rome.

§100. Dative of Agent with a Passive Periphrastic

A noun in the dative case is usually used with a passive periphrastic to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb must be done. Such a dative is called a **Dative of Agent with a passive periphrastic**. For example:

Carmen *mihi* canendum est.

A poem *by me* must be sung.

A poem must be sung *by me*.

***Tibi* moriendum erit.**

By you there will have to be a dying.

You will have to die.

The syntax of the italicized words (**mihi, tibi**) is **Dative of Agent with a passive periphrastic**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Dative of Agent with a passive periphrastic is regularly used *instead of* an Ablative of Personal Agent when the verb is a passive periphrastic.³
2. When a Dative of Agent appears with an impersonal passive periphrastic, a less literal translation in the active voice may be used, as in the second translation of the second example.
3. Occasionally an Ablative of Personal Agent may be used with a passive periphrastic for the sake of clarity. For example:

Carmen tibi ā mē canendum est.

A poem must be sung for you by me.

In this sentence an Ablative of Personal Agent (**ā mē**) is used to avoid the confusion that might arise if there were two datives in the same sentence.

☛ DRILL 99–100, PAGE 431, MAY NOW BE DONE.

3. The Dative of Agent may be derived from the Dative of the Possessor. Thus, **Carmen mihi canendum est** may be understood to mean “I have a poem having to be sung.” Therefore, “A poem must be sung *by me*.”

§101. Genitive of Description

When a noun in the genitive case *modified by an adjective* is used to describe another noun, it is called a **Genitive of Description**. For example:

Rōmulus, vir magnae *diligētiaē*, multa perfēcit.
Romulus, a man of great *diligence*, accomplished many things.

The syntax of the italicized word (*diligētiaē*) is **Genitive of Description**.

§102. Ablative of Description

When a noun in the ablative case *modified by an adjective* is used to describe another noun, it is called an **Ablative of Description**. For example:

Sōlus cum multīs hostibus pugnābat. Erat enim magnā *virtūte*.
He alone with many enemies was fighting. For he was of (with) great *courage*.
He alone was fighting with many enemies. For he was of great *courage*.

The syntax of the italicized word (*virtūte*) is **Ablative of Description**.

OBSERVATION

Like Latin, English attaches some descriptions with “of” and some with “with.” Compare, for example, the phrases “men of great courage” and “men with blue eyes.” English and Latin usages do not always coincide; therefore, idiomatic English may require “of” rather than “with” in the translation of an Ablative of Description.

The noun-adjective phrases that make up Genitives or Ablatives of Description function adjectivally in that they define or limit another noun. The Genitive of Description is thus an extension of the basic function of the genitive case. The Ablative of Description derives from that case’s associative function since an Ablative of Description is an accompanying feature of the noun it describes. Although some kinds of descriptions are limited to the genitive (size, number) and some to the ablative (qualities of the body), in many expressions the Genitive and Ablative of Description appear to have converged in use and meaning during the classical period.

§103. Ablative of Origin

When the ablative case, with or without the preposition *ē/ex* or *dē*, reports *parentage* or *ancestry*, it is called an **Ablative of Origin**. For example:

Aenēās (<i>ē</i>) <i>deā</i> nātus est.	Aeneas <i>from a goddess</i> was born.
(nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum be born)	Aeneas was born <i>from a goddess</i> .

The syntax of the italicized word (*deā*) is **Ablative of Origin**. The Ablative of Origin is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation (§58).

Short Readings

1. A brave and loyal slave faces the severest punishment with equanimity.

post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuum malī. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVI* 741)

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread

2. A proverbial utterance

dictum sapientī sat est. (PLAUTUS, *PERSA* 729)

sapiēns, sapientis sensible, wise

3. An exchange of pleasantries between two characters

Callicles. Ehō tū, tua uxor, quid† agit? *Megaronides*. Immortālis est:

vīvit vīctūraque est. (PLAUTUS, *TRINUMMUS* 55–56)

ehō (interj.) used to attract attention, hey

uxor, uxōris f. wife

†**quid**, here, how

4. A fragment from Ennius cited by Cicero for its brevity and truth

mōribus antiquīs rēs stat Rōmāna virisque. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* V.156)

5. An alliterative line from Ennius

ōrātor sine pāce redit rēgīque refert rem. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* VI.202)

6. The poet describes what happens when news of battle is proclaimed.

pellitur ē mediō sapientia, vī geritur rēs;

spernitur ōrātor bonus, horridus mīles amātur;

haud doctis dictis certantēs, sed maledictis

miscent inter sēsē inimicitias agitantēs. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* VIII.248–51)

spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus scorn, reject

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite

certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

maledictum, maledicti n. insult, taunt

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up, produce

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion

7. The speaker of the prologue of the play generalizes about originality.

nūllumst iam dictum quod nōn sit dictum prius. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 41)

prius (adv.) earlier, before

8. A fragment from the comic poet Lucilius about the relation between work and reward

hunc labōrem sūmās laudem quī tibi ac frūctum ferat. (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE FRAG.* 620)

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take on

laus, laudis f. praise

frūctus, frūctūs m. profit, benefit, advantage

9. The character Thyestes speaks in a fragment of a Greek tragedy.

vigilandum est semper; multae insidiae sunt bonis. (ACCIIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 214)

vigilō (1-intr.) stay awake; be watchful, remain vigilant

10. The orator compares different faults in keeping accounts.

nam quem ad modum turpe est scribere[†] quod nōn dēbeatur, sīc improbum est nōn referre quod dēbeās. aequē enim tabulae condemnantur eius quī vērūm nōn rettulit et eius quī falsum perscrīpsit. (CICERO, *PRŌ ROSCIŌ COMOEDŌ* 2)

turpis, turpe base, shameful

[†]**scribere**, i.e., in account books

improbis, -a, -um wicked, dishonest

tabulae, tabulārum *f. pl.* account books

condemnō (1-tr.) condemn, disapprove

perscribō (*per-* + *scribō*) write out; enter

11. Cicero asks Catiline a rhetorical question.

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est, extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn ōderit? (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM I* 13)

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

extrā (*prep.* + *acc.*) outside

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy

perditus, -a, -um lost, desperate, degenerate

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread

12. Cicero addresses Catiline directly.

ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna. liberā rem pūblicam metū; in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem exspectās, proficīscere. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM I* 20)

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum go out, depart

ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect

13. Cicero begins the conclusion of the defense of his client Caelius.

cōservāte igitur reī pūblicae, iūdicēs, cīvem bonārum artium, bonārum partium, bonōrum virōrum. (CICERO, *PRŌ CAELIŌ* 77)

cōservō (*con-* + *servō*) (1-tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve

igitur (*postpositive conj.*) therefore

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge

14. Cicero reflects on a difference between the state and mankind.

itaque nūllus interitus est reī pūblicae nātūrālis ut hominis, in quō mors nōn modo[†] necessāria est, vērūm etiam optanda persaepe.

(CICERO, *DE RE PŪBLICĀ* III.34, *FRAG.* 2)

itaque (*conj.*) and so, accordingly

interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise

nātūrālis, nātūrāle natural

[†]**nōn modo** = **nōn solum**

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

persaepe (*adv.*) very often

15. A definition of law

lĕx est ratiō summa ĩnsita in nātūrā, quae iubet ea quae facienda sunt prohibetque contrāria. (CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* I.18)

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; rationale

summus, -a, -um highest

ĩnsitus, -a, -um inborn

prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid

contrārius, -a, -um opposite, contrary

16. Cicero comments on the fate of the venerable Cato in the contemporary world.

Catōnem vērō quis nostrōrum ōrātōrum, quī quidem nunc sunt, legit? aut quis nōvit omnĩnō? at quem virum,† dī bonī! mitto† cīvem aut senātōrem aut imperātōrem: ōrātōrem enim hōc locō quaerimus.† (CICERO, *BRŪTUS* 65)

at (conj.) but

†quem virum, *Accusative of Exclamation,* what a man!

†mitto, *here,* send away, dismiss

senātor, senātōris *m.* senator

imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general

†quaerō, *here,* inquire into, examine, consider

17. While pleading in court before Caesar on behalf of a Roman ally, Cicero praises Caesar for his temperate behavior in the wake of his victory over Pompey.

quae semper in cīvīlī victōriā sēnsimus, ea tē victōre nōn vīdimus. sōlus, inquam, es, C. Caesar, cuius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus.

(CICERO, *PRŌ REGE DĒIOTARŌ* 32)

cīvīlis, cīvīle *of or* connected with citizens, civil; resulting from civil war

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier

18. Part of a discussion about the nature of the soul

. . . nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNES* I.43)

celeritās, celeritātis *f.* speed

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus contend; compare

19. A reflection on the causes of human responses to perilous situations

saepe enim multī, quī aut propter victōriae cupiditātem aut propter glōriae aut etiam ut iūs suum et libertātem tenērent volnera excēpērunt fortiter et tulērunt, idem omissā contentiōne dolōrem morbī ferre nōn possunt; neque enim illum quem facile tulerant ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed studiō potius et glōriā.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIONES* II.65)

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

volnus, volneris *n.* wound

excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out; absorb, sustain

omittō (ob- + mittō) discontinue, leave off

contentiō, contentiōnis *f.* effort; competition

dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

morbis, morbī *m.* disease, illness

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* reason

potius (adv.) rather

20. Cicero paraphrases a common saying.

nihil est, inquiunt, quod deus efficere nōn possit. (CICERO, *DE DIVINĀTIONE* II.86)

efficiō (ex- + faciō) make; bring about

21. Cicero expresses his opinion on the only legitimate purpose for war.

quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ob eam causam, ut sine iniūriā in pāce vīvātur. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I.35)

suscipiō (sub- + capiō) undertake, venture upon

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injustice, injury

22. Cicero notes that only one group of Romans was captured at the battle of Cannae.

octō hominum millia tenēbat Hannibal, nōn quōs in aciē cēpisset, aut quī periculō mortis diffūgissent, sed quī relictī[†] in castrīs fuissent[†] ā Paulō et ā Varrōne cōnsulibus. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* III.114)

millia = mīlia

diffugiō (dis- + fugiō) run away, flee in several directions, scatter

[†]**relictī . . . fuissent = relictī . . . essent**

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp

Paulus, Paulī *m.* (L. Aemilius) Paulus (consul 216 B.C.E., leader at the battle of Cannae)

Varrō, Varrōnis *m.* (C. Terentius) Varro (consul 216 B.C.E., leader at the battle of Cannae)

23. Cicero compares Marc Antony to Rome's ancient enemy Hannibal.

oppugnat[†] D. Brūtum, imperātōrem, cōnsulem dēsignātum, civem nōn sibi, sed nōbīs et rei pūblicaē nātum. ergō Hannibal hostis, civis Antōnius? quid ille fēcit hostīliter quod hic nōn aut fēcerit aut faciat aut mōliātur et cōgitet?

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* V 24–25)

[†]**oppugnat**, *subject is Antony*

D. Brūtus, D. Brūtī *m.* D. Brutus (brother of M. Brutus)

imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general

dēsignātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet installed)

ergō (adv.) therefore

hostīliter (adv.) in the manner of an enemy

mōlior, mōliri, mōlitus sum strive to bring about, plan

24. In a letter written in early 54 B.C.E. Cicero comments on the quality of Lucretius's poetry.
 Lucrētī poēmata, ut scrībīs, ita sunt, multīs lūminibus ingenī, multae tamen artis.
 (CICERO, *AD QUINTUM FRĀTREM* II.10.3)

Lucrētius, Lucrētī *m.* Lucretius (94?–55? B.C.E., author of the poem *Dē Rērum Nātūrā*)
poēma, poēmatis *n.* poem; *pl.*, poetry
lūmen, lūminis *n.* light; illumination; ray of light

25. The deaths of brave centurions change the course of an apparently hopeless battle.
 mīlitum pars hōrum† virtūte submōtis hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra
 pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.40)

†**hōrum** refers to the dead centurions.
submoveō (**sub-** + **moveō**) move from an occupied position, drive off
praeter (**prep.** + **acc.**) beyond
incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp

perveniō (**per-** + **veniō**) come through, arrive
barbarus, barbarī *m.* foreigner; barbarian
circumveniō (**circum-** + **veniō**) surround
pereō (**per-** + **eō**), **perīre, perīi, peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die

26. In his monograph on the conspiracy of Catiline, the historian introduces Catiline.
 L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingenīō
 malō prāvōque. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 5)

nōbilis, nōbile noble
prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse

27. The historian begins a brief survey of Roman history
 urbem Rōmam, sicutī ego accēpī, condidēre atque habuēre initiō Troiānī, quī
 Aenēā duce profugī sēdibus incertīs vagābantur, cumque hīs Aborīginēs, genus
 hominum agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, liberum atque solūtum.
 (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 6)

sicutī (**conj.**) just as
condō, condere, condidī, conditus found
initium, initī *n.* beginning
Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan
profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *masc.* *subst.*, exile; refugee
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode

vagor (1-**intr.**) wander
Aborīginēs, Aborīginum *m. pl.* (the) Aborigines (the Italian ancestors of the Romans)
agrestis, agreste of or living in the fields, rustic; uncivilized
solūtus, -a, -um unrestricted, free; unconnected

28. The historian describes the reaction to Cato's speech advocating harsh punishment of the Catilinarian conspirators.

postquam Catō adsēdit, cōsulārēs omnēs itemque senātūs magna pars sententiam eius laudant, virtūtem animī ad caelum ferunt, aliī aliōs increpantēs timidōs vocant. Catō clārus[†] atque magnus habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 53)

adsīdō, adsīdere, adsēdī, — sit down, take one's seat

cōsulārīs, cōsulārīs, -ium *m.* ex-consul

item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise

increpō, increpāre, increpuī, increpītus reproach, upbraid

timidus, -a, -um fearful, cowardly

[†]**clārus**, *here*, honorable

Two Roman proverbs

29. Amōrī finem tempus, nōn animus facit. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A42)
30. Etiam hostī est aequus quī habet in cōsiliō fidem. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* E15)
31. The poet speaks of a common impulse in all living creatures.

omne adeō genus in terrīs hominumque ferārumque
et genus aequoreum, pecudēs pictaeque volucrēs
in furiās ignemque ruunt: amor omnibus īdem. (VERGIL, *GEORGICS* III.242–44)

adeō (adv.) indeed, in fact

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast; **ferārumque**
elides into the next line.

aequoreus, -a, -um of the sea, marine

pecus, pecudīs *f.* (herd) animal

pictus, -a, -um painted, colored

volucris, volucris, -ium *f.* bird

furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire,
frenzy

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire; rage, passion

ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush

32. The severed head of Orpheus still calls for his wife in the underworld.

. . . Eurydicēn vōx ipsa et frīgida lingua
ā miseram Eurydicēn! animā fugiente vocābat;
Eurydicēn tōtō referēbant flūmine rīpae. (VERGIL, *GEORGICS* IV.525–27)

Eurydicē, Eurydicēs *f.* Eurydice (wife of Orpheus);

Eurydicēn = *acc. sing.*

frīgīdus, -a, -um cold, icy

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue

ā (interj.) ah!

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank

33. The first four lines of Vergil's epic poem

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs

Ītaliā, fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit

lītora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō

vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram, . . . (VERGIL, AENEID I.1–4)

ōra, ōrae *f.* shore

profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *masc.*

subst., exile; refugee

Lāvīnus, -a, -um of Lavinium (a town in Italy);

Lavinian

lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach

iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment

superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above;

superum = superōrum

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

memor, memoris mindful, remembering

34. As Troy falls, the ghost of Hector speaks to Aeneas in a dream.

“heu, fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs,” ait, “ēripe flammīs.” (VERGIL, AENEID II.289)

aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = 3rd *sing. pres. act. indic.*

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

35. As the battle turns, Turnus encourages himself.

audentīs Fortūna iuvat. . . . (VERGIL, AENEID X.284)

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid

36. The poet comments on Turnus's exultation in victory.

nescia mēns hominum fātī sortisque futūrae

et servāre modum rēbus sublāta secundīs! (VERGIL, AENEID X.501–2)

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ *gen.*); not knowing how (+ *infin.*)

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away, carry off

secundus, -a, -um favorable

37. Aeneas addresses his son Ascanius.

disce, puer, virtūtem ex mē vērūmque labōrem,

fortūnam ex aliīs. . . . (VERGIL, AENEID XII.435–36)

discō, discere, didicī, — learn

38. The poet addresses his patron Maecenas.

. . . magnum hoc ego dūcō,

quod† placuī tibi, quī turpī sēcernis honestum

nōn patre praeclārō, sed vītā et pectore pūrō. (HORACE, SERMŌNES I.6.62–64)

†**quod**, *here* (*conj.*) the fact that

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcervī, sēcērtus separate, distinguish

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous

pūrus, -a, -um pure

39. The poet warns the would-be writer.

tū nihil invītā dicēs faciēsve Minervā. (HORACE, *ARS POETICA* 385)

invītus, -a, -um unwilling
-ve (enclitic conj.) or

40. The poet comments on the nature of love.

errat quī finem vēsānī quaerit amōris:

vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (PROPERTIUS II.15.29–30)

vēsānus, -a, -um frenzied, mad, insane

41. The poet summarizes his view of one part of human nature.

singula nē referam, nīl nōn mortāle tenēmus

pectoris exceptīs ingeniūque bonīs. (OVID, *TRISTIA* III.7.43–44)

singulī, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time
excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out; exclude

42. The historian describes the distribution of responsibilities by the senate after an embassy to the Latin tribe of the Aequi fails.

Rōmam ut rediēre lēgātī, senātus iussit alterum cōnsulem contrā Gracchum in Algidum exercitum dūcere, alterī populātiōnem finium Aequōrum prōvinciam†

dedit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* III.25.9)

Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus

Algidus, Algidī *m.* Algidus (a mountain in Latium)

populātiō, populātiōnis *f.* plundering

Aequī, Aequōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aequi (an ancient people of Latium)

†**prōvincia, here,** special assignment or task

43. The historian describes an encounter in northern Italy between Carthaginian and Roman forces and the leaders of the two armies.

iam prope in cōspectū erant exercitūs convēnerantque ducēs sicutī inter sē
nōndum satis nōtī, ita iam imbūtus uterque† quādam admirātiōne alterīus.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXI.39.7)

prope (adv.) nearly

cōspectus, cōspectūs *m.* sight

conveniō (con- + veniō) come together

sicutī (conj.) just as

nōndum (adv.) not yet

imbuō, imbuere, imbuī, imbūtus fill, imbue

†**uterque, utraque, utrumque** each; both

admirātiō, admirātiōnis *f.* wonder, admiration

44. The historian summarizes the situation on the Roman side after the disastrous defeat at Cannae.

ad Cannās fugientem cōnsulem vix quīnquāgintā secūtī sunt, alterīus morientis
prope tōtus exercitus fuit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXII.50.3)

Cannae, Cannārum *f. pl.* Cannae (a village in southeast Italy, site of Hannibal's greatest victory)

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

prope (adv.) nearly, almost

45. A succinct summary of the Romans' defeat of King Antiochus's army in the narrow pass of Thermopylae in Greece

multis in ipsō itinere caesis captisque, nōn equis virisque tantum sed etiam elephantis, quōs capere nōn potuerant, interfectis, in castra revertērunt; . . .

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXXVI.19.6)

iter, itineris *n.* journey

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus slaughter, kill

tantum (adv.) only

elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp

revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum turn back, return; **revertērunt**, *subject is the Roman soldiers*

46. The historian's pithy description of Sulla

. . . cōsulātum iniērunt Q. Pompeius et L. Cornēlius Sulla, vir quī neque ad finem victōriae satis laudārī neque post victōriam abundē vituperārī potest.

(VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, *HISTORIAE* II.17.1)

ineō (in- + eō), inīre, inīi/inīvī, initus enter

†**ad**, *here, up to, until*

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

abundē (adv.) amply, fully

vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

47. The poet raises the question of how to judge whether Pompey or Caesar more justly went to war.

victrix causa deīs placuit, sed victa Catōnī. (LUCAN, *BELLUM CIVILE* I.128)

victrix, victricis victorious

deīs = dīs

48. The poet offers a comment on loyalty.

. . . stat nūlla diū mortālibus usquam,

Fortūnā titubante, fidēs. . . . (SILIUS ITALICUS, *PUNICA* XI.3–4)

diū (adv.) for a long time

usquam (adv.) anywhere

titubō (1-intr.) totter, stagger, falter

49. The historian offers an explanation of the emperor Domitian's hatred of the general Agricola.

propriū hūmānī ingenī est ōdisse quem laeseris. (TACITUS, *DE VITA AGRICOLAE* 42)

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm

50. The biographer reports what participants in a mock sea battle said to Claudius before commencing.

havē imperātor, moritūrī tē salūtant! (Suetonius, *VITA CLAUDII* 21)

havē greetings! hail!

imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general

salūtō (1-tr.) greet, hail, salute

51. The jurist Paulus's definition of a day

mōre Rōmānō diēs ā mediā nocte incipit et sequentis noctis mediā parte finitur.

(Justinian, *DIGESTA* 2.12.8)

incipiō (in- + capiō) begin

finiō, finire, finī/finīvī, finitus limit, bound

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus* 33–35

In an aside to the audience the parasite Artotrogus explains why he is forced to cater to the ego of Pyrgopolynices, no matter how distasteful.

Artotrogus. venter creat omnīs hāsce aerumnās: auribus
peraudienda sunt nē dentēs dentiant,
et adsentandumst quidquid hic mentībitur.

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

creō (1-tr.) create, conceive

hāsce = emphatic form of **hās**

aerumna, aerumnae *f.* task, trouble, affliction

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

peraudiō (**per-** + **audiō**) listen to (to the end);

peraudienda sunt, *subject is the boasts of*
Pyrgopolynices

dēns, dentis, -ium *m.* tooth

dentīō, dentīre, —, — cut teeth; grow longer

adsentor (1-intr.) agree (to)

quidquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. rel. pron.,*
whatever

mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, state falsely;

mentībitur = *3rd sing. fut. act. indic.*

Titus Maccius Plautus (ca. 255–184 B.C.E.) was born in north-central Italy. He is the most well-known and successful of Roman comic writers, and twenty of his plays survive. Plautus is renowned for his explosive comic sensibility and verbal creativity, and his plays are an important source of information about living, spoken Latin. Ellipsis, parataxis, colloquialisms, and unusual syntax and word choice abound in Plautus's plays, which are for the most part romantic comedies inhabited by stock characters.

The *Miles Gloriosus* (Braggart Soldier) is considered one of Plautus's finest comedies. Its plot centers on a clever slave (Palaestrio) helping his young master secure the girl of his dreams, but the play also features a host of other memorable characters, including the swaggering, self-important, lying soldier, Pyrgopolynices (Great Tower-Taker), and a clever sycophant, Artotrogus (Bread-Eater).

2. Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus* 42–46

Artotrogus has brought out a make-believe record book of Pyrgopolynices' make-believe victories. Pyrgopolynices asks to be reminded of his military greatness.

Pyrgopolynices. ecquid meministī? *Artotrogus.* meminī centum in Ciliciā
et quīnquāgintā, centum in Scytholatrōniā,
trīgintā Sardōs, sexāgintā Macedones—
sunt hominēs quōs tū occīdistī ūnō diē.

Pyrgo. Quanta istaec hominum summast? *Arto.* septem milia.

ecquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron., anything*

Cilicia, Ciliciae *f.* Cilicia (a country in eastern
Asia Minor)

***Scytholatrōnia, *Scytholatrōniae** *f.* Scythian-
Thief-Land

Sardī, Sardōrum *m. pl.* Sardinians

Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter

quantus, -a, -um how much, how great

istaec = *archaic form of ista*

summa, summae *f.* sum, total

3. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II 1

The opening of Cicero's second speech against Catiline

Tandem aliquandō, Quirītēs, L. Catilinam, furem audāciā, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefāriē mōlientem, vōbīs atque huic urbī ferrō flammāque minitantem ex urbe vel eīcimus vel ēmisimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus. abiit, excessit, ēvāsīt, ērūpīt. nūlla iam perniciēs ā mōnstrō illō atque prōdigio moenibus ipsīs intrā moenia comparābitur. atque hunc quidem ūnum huius bellī domesticī ducem sine contrōversiā vīcimus. nōn enim iam inter latera nostra sīca illa versābitur, nōn in campō, nōn in forō, nōn in cūriā, nōn dēnique intrā domesticōs parietēs pertimēscēmus. locō ille mōtus est cum[†] est ex urbe dēpulsus. palam iam cum hoste, nūllō impediēte, bellum iūstum gerēmus. sine dubiō perdidimus hominem magnificēque vīcimus cum[†] illum ex occultīs insidiīs in apertum latrōcinium coniēcimus.

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at (long) last (often coupled with **tandem** to express finality)

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)

furō, furere, —, — be crazy; rage, rave

audācia, audāciae *f.* boldness; recklessness

scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy

anhelō (1-tr.) breathe out

pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin

nefāriē (adv.) unspeakably, wickedly

mōlior, mōlirī, mōlitus sum plan

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

minitor (1-intr.) threaten (+ dat.)

vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** either . . . or . . .

ēiciō, ēicere, ēicē, ēiectus throw out

ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum go out, depart

prōsequor (prō- + sequor) accompany, escort

excēdō (ex- + cēdō) go out, depart

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus go out, escape

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth

perniciēs, perniciē *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster

mōnstrum, mōnstrī *n.* omen, portent; monster

prōdigium, prōdigī *n.* unnatural event, prodigy; creature, monstrosity

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; devise

domesticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the house; personal, domestic

contrōversia, contrōversiae *f.* dispute, controversy

latus, lateris *n.* side, flank

sīca, sīcae *f.* dagger

versō (1-tr.) twist

campus, campī *m.* plain; *here, supply Martius*, plain of Mars

cūria, cūriae *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

pariēs, parietis *m.* wall (of a house)

pertimēscō, pertimēscere, pertimū, — become very afraid, take fright

[†]**cum**, *here* (conj.) when

dēpellō (dē- + pellō), **dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus** drive away

palam (adv.) openly, publicly

impediō, impedire, impedī/impedivī, impedītus hinder, impede

iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right

dubium, dubiī *n.* doubt

perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy

magnificē (adv.) splendidly, excellently

occultus, -a, -um hidden, secret

apertus, -a, -um open

latrōcinium, latrōciniū *n.* robbery; criminality

coniciō, conicere, conicē, coniectus throw (together), cast, bring

The *Ōrātiō Secunda in Catilinam* was delivered on 9 November 63 B.C.E., one day after the first speech and immediately after Catiline's departure from the city. This second speech was delivered before the people.

4. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicōrum* 5.36

A passage from Cicero's description of the truly free man

an ille mihi liber cui mulier imperat, cui lēgēs impōnit, praescrībit, iubet, vetat quod vidētur?† quī nihil imperantī negāre potest, nihil recūsāre audent? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est; ēicit, abeundum; minātur, extimēscendum.

an (conj.) *introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that*

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

impōnō (in- + pōnō) place, impose (acc.) upon (dat.)

praescrībō (prae- + scrībō) prescribe

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid

†vidētur, *here, seems best*

negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse

recūsō (1-tr.) refuse, reject, oppose

poscō, poscere, poposcī, — demand

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out

minor (1-intr.) threaten

extimēscō, extimēscere, extimuī, — take

fright, be scared

5. Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.140

In speaking of the wonders of the human body and nature's miraculous contribution to it, the character Balbus, recalling Aristotle, attributes to a god one particular human attribute and tells how it sets humans apart from other animals.

quī† prīmum† eōs humō excitātōs celsōs et ērēctōs cōstituit, ut deōrum cognitiōnem caelum intuentēs capere possent. sunt enim ex terrā hominēs nōn ut incolae atque habitātōrēs sed quasi spectātōrēs superārum rērum atque caelestium, quārum spectāculum ad nūllum aliud genus animantium pertinet.

†quī, *connective relative whose antecedent is an unspecified god or divine force*

†prīmum, *here (adv.) first; for the first time*

humus, humī *f.* earth, ground

excitō (1-tr.) cause to move, stir up; raise

celsus, -a, -um lofty, tall; upright, erect

ērēctus, -a, -um upright, erect

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus set up, establish

cognitiō, cognitiōnis *f.* acquaintance, knowledge

intueor, intuērī, intuitus *sum* look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider

habitātor, habitātōris *m.* inhabitant, occupier

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

spectātor, spectātōris *m.* witness, spectator

superus, -a, -um upper, above

caelestis, caeleste heavenly, divine

spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle

animāns, animantis, -ium *m. or f. or n.* living creature

pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus extend, pertain

The *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* is a philosophical work in three books. Each book discusses the approach to divine things of a different school of philosophy: Epicurean, Stoic, and Academic.

6. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 37

Cicero describes Appius Claudius Caecus—consul, censor, builder of the Via Appia—near the end of his life.

quattuor rōbustōs filiōs, quīnque filiās, tantam domum, tantās clientēlās Appius re-
gēbat et caecus et senex; intentum enim animum tamquam arcum habēbat nec lan-
guēscēns succumbēbat senectūti; tenēbat nōn modo† auctōritātem, sed etiam im-
perium in† suōs; metuēbant servī, verēbantur liberī, cārū omnēs habēbant; vigēbat
in illā domō mōs patrius, disciplīna.

rōbustus, -a, -um (physically) strong; mature
tantus, -a, -um so great
clientēla, clientēlae *f.* client's relation to patron;
pl., clients, dependents (individuals, cities, or
provinces)
senex, senis old
intentus, -a, -um stretched; attentive, intent
tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if
arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)
languēscō, languēscere, languī, — grow
feeble, decline
succumbō, succumbere, succubū, succubitus
give in, yield (+ dat.)

senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age
† **nōn modo = nōn solum**
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority, influence,
prestige
† **in, here, over**
metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread
vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, respect,
dread
vigeō, vigēre, viguī, — be vigorous, thrive,
flourish
patrius, -a, -um of or belonging to a father, pater-
nal; ancestral
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training; orderly conduct

The *Dē Senectūte* (or *Catō Maior Dē Senectūte*, Cato the Elder Concerning Old Age) is a short philosophical dialogue with Cato the Elder (author of the *Dē Agrī Cultūrā*) as the chief speaker. The dialogue is set in 150 B.C.E., shortly before Cato's death, and was written in 44 B.C.E. (the same year as the *Dē Amīcitiā*), shortly before Cicero's death.

7. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.1–9

The poet begins his poem with an address to Venus.

Aeneadum genetrīx, hominum dīvomque† voluptās,
 alma Venus, caeli subter lābentia signa
 quae mare nāvigerum, quae terrās frūgiferentīs
 concelebrās, per tē quoniam genus omne animantum
 concipitur vīsique exortum lūmina sōlis:
 tē, dea, tē fugiunt ventī, tē nūbila caeli
 adventumque tuum, tibi suāvīs daedala tellūs
 summittit flōrēs, tibi rīdent aequora pontī
 plācātumque nitet diffūsō lūmine caelum.

5

Aeneadēs, Aeneadum *m. pl.* descendants of Aeneas; Romans

genetrīx, genetrīcis *f.* mother, creator

†**dīvom** = **dīvum** = **dīvōrum**

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

almus, -a, -um nourishing; gracious, kindly

subter (prep. + acc.) under, beneath

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum slip, glide

signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; constellation

nāviger, nāvigera, nāvigerum ship-bearing, navigable

frūgiferēns, frūgiferentis fruit-bearing

concelebrō (1-tr.) visit frequently; fill

animāns, animantis, -ium *m. or f. or n.* living creature; **animantum** = **animantium**

concupiō (**con-** + **cupiō**) conceive, produce

vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view

exorior, exorīrī, exortus sum rise out, emerge, appear

lūmen, lūminis *n.* light

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

nūbila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* clouds

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival

suāvīs, suāve sweet(-smelling), fragrant

daedalus, -a, -um skillful, dexterous, artful

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

summittō (**sub-** + **mittō**) send up (from below), put forth

flōs, flōris *m.* flower, blossom

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus smile, laugh

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water

pontus, pontī *m.* sea

plācō (1-tr.) make calm, soothe, placate

niteō, nitēre, nituī, — be radiant, shine

diffundō, diffundere, diffūdī, diffūsus spread widely, extend, diffuse

8. Catullus XLVI (hendecasyllable; see §113)

A spring poem

Iam vēr ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs,
 iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis
 iūcundīs Zephyrī silēscit aurīs.
 linquantur Phrygiī, Catulle, campī
 Nīcaaeaeque ager ūber aestuōsae:
 ad clārās Asiae volēmus urbēs.
 iam mēns praetrepidāns avet vagārī,
 iam laetī studiō pedēs vigēscunt.
 ō dulcēs comitum valēte coetūs,
 longē quōs simul ā domō profectōs
 dīversae variē viae reportant.

5

10

vēr, vēris *n.* spring

ēgelidus, -a, -um tepid, lukewarm, mild

tepor, tepōris *m. sing. or pl.*, warmth, mildness

furor, furōris *m.* madness

aequinoctiālis, aequinoctiāle equinoctial, of the equinox

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

Zephyrus, Zephyrī *m.* Zephyr (the west wind)

silēscō, silēscere, —, — become still, fall silent, grow calm

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

linquō, linquere, liquī, lictus leave (behind)

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan

campus, campī *m.* plain

Nīcaea, Nīcaee *f.* Nicaea (a city in Bithynia [a Roman province on the coast of Asia Minor])

ūber, ūberis rich, fertile

aestuōsus, -a, -um full of heat, burning, very hot
 Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia (a Roman province [modern Asia Minor])

volō (1-intr.) fly

praetrepidō (1-intr.) tremble in anticipation

aveō, avēre, —, — be eager

vagor (1-intr.) wander

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

vigēscō, vigēscere, —, — come alive, be vigorous

dulcis, dulce sweet

comes, comitis *m. or f.* companion, comrade

coetus, coetūs *m.* gathering

longē (adv.) far, a long way

simul (adv.) at the same time

dīversus, -a, -um different

variē (adv.) variously, differently

reportō (1-tr.) carry back

Gaius Valerius Catullus (84?–54? B.C.E.) was born at Verona, but as a young man he came to live in Rome, where he became associated with several other young poets. These **poetae novī** were very much influenced by the Greek lyric poets and Hellenistic poets. Reacting against long epic and didactic models in earlier Latin poetry, the **neoterics** (< Greek *neōteros*, newer) chose to write shorter, personal lyrics, of which the 116 poems of Catullus are the best surviving examples. By coining new words and by giving new meanings to existing words Catullus created a new poetic diction for Latin. His vocabulary added liveliness, humor, and even obscenity to the language. Many later Latin poets, including Vergil and Horace, were significantly influenced by Catullan diction and style.

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.24–25

In the midst of hostilities with the Helvetians, Caesar is compelled to turn his troops away to seek supplies. The Helvetians follow and harass Caesar's men from behind.

postquam id† animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit† equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superioriōre aciē cōstitērant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

Caesar prīmum† suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. militēs ē locō superioriōre pīlis missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. eā disiectā, glad-iīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

†id = the pursuit of the Helvetians

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī,

animadversus turn one's attention to, notice

proximus, -a, -um nearest

collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill

†**subducō (sub- + ducō)** lead up (from below),

draw up; **subducit**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*

equitātus, equitātūs *m.* cavalry

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinūī, — withstand

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault

interim (adv.) meanwhile

triplex, triplicis threefold; triple

instruō, instruere, instrūxī, instrūctus arrange, draw up

legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion

veterānus, -a, -um veteran, composed of veterans

summus, -a, -um highest; top (of)

iugum, iugī *n.* yoke; (mountain) ridge

Gallia citerior, Galliae citeriōris *f.* Nearer or

Cisalpine Gaul (on the Italian side of the Alps)

proximē (superlative adv.) most recently

cōscribō (con- + scribō) enlist, enroll

collocō (1-tr.) place, position, arrange

mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain

compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus fill completely, cover

intereā (adv.) meanwhile

sarcina, sarcinae *f.* pack, bundle; *pl.*, luggage, baggage

cōferō (con- + ferō) collect, gather together

superior, superius (comparative adj.) upper, higher; **superiōre** = *masc./fem. sing. abl.*

cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, — take one's position, make a stand, halt

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnī/mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify

Helvētiī, Helvētiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Helvetians

carrus, carrī *m.* cart, wagon

impedīmentum, impedīmentī *n.* hindrance; *pl.*, baggage

cōfertissimus, -a, -um very crowded, very dense, very packed close together

reiciō, reicere, reieci, reiectus throw back, drive back

phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx (a close formation of troops)

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) approach (from below)

†**prīmum, here** (adv.) first

deinde (adv.) thereupon, then, next

cōspectus, cōspectūs *m.* (range of) sight, view

removeō (re- + moveō) move back, remove

equus, equī *m.* horse

aequō (1-tr.) make equal

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away

cohortor (1-tr.) exhort, encourage

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in

pīlum, pīlī *n.* spear, javelin

perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfractus break through

disiciō, disicere, disiēcī, disiectus break, rout, disperse

dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrinxī, dēstrictus draw

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.28

Part of Caesar's report about the unusual animals that live in the vast Hercynian forest

tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. hī sunt magnitudīne paulō infrā elephantōs. speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. magna vīs est eōrum et magna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexērunt parcunt. hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt.† hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscētēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. haec studiōsē conquisīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulis prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

ūrus, ūrī *m.* (wild) ox, ure-ox

appellō (1-tr.) call

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* size

paulum, *paulī *n.* small amount, a little; **paulō**, (by) a little

infrā (prep. + acc.) below, smaller than

elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant

color, colōris *m.* color

figurā, figurāe *f.* shape

taurus, taurī *m.* bull

vēlōcitās, vēlōcitātis *f.* speed, fleetness

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus see, catch sight of

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be sparing to, spare (+ dat.)

studiōsē (adv.) eagerly, zealously

fovea, foveae *f.* small pit (for catching animals)

†**interficiunt**, *subject is (the) Germans*

dūrō (1-tr.) harden

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, -ium *m.* young man

vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis *f.* hunting

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus exercise, train

plūrimus, -a, -um very much, very many, (the) most

cornū, cornūs *n.* horn

testimoniū, testimoniū *n.* evidence

laus, laudis *f.* praise

adsuēscō, adsuēscere, adsuēvī, — accustom oneself (to), become accustomed (to)

mānsuēfiō, mānsuēfierī, mānsuēfactus sum be tamed; **mānsuēfierī** = *pres. infin.*

parvulus, -a, -um very small, very young

excipiō (ex- + capiō) except

amplitūdō, amplitūdinis *f.* breadth; size; grandeur

bōs, bovis *m.* bull, ox; **boum** = *gen. pl.*

conquīrō (con- + quaerō), conquīrere, conquisīi/conquisīvī, conquisītus seek after; collect

labrum, labrī *n.* lip

argentum, argentī *n.* silver

circumclūdō, circumclūdere, circumclūsī, circumclūsus surround

amplissimus, -a, -um most magnificent, most splendid

epulae, epulārum *f. pl.* banquet, feast

pōculum, pōculī *n.* drinking cup

11. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 2

The historian reflects on the dual nature of man.

nam utī genus hominum conpositum ex corpore et animā est, ita rēs cūnctae studiaque omnia nostra, corporis alia, alia animī nātūram secuntur. † igitur praeclāra faciēs, † magnae dīvitiae, ad hoc † vīs corporis et alia omnia huiusce modī brevī dilābuntur; at ingenī ēgregia facinora, sicutī anima, inmortālia sunt. postrēmō corporis et fortūnae bonōrum, ut initium, sīc finis est, omniaque orta occidunt et aucta senescunt; animus incorruptus, aeternus, rēctor hūmānī generis agit atque habet cūncta neque ipse habētur.

utī = ut

conpōnō (con- + pōnō) put together, compose
cūnctus, -a, -um all

†secuntur = sequuntur

igitur (conj.) therefore (*usually postpositive*)

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; radiant,
beautiful

†faciēs, faciēī *f.* face; appearance

dīvitiae, dīvitiarum *f. pl.* wealth, riches

†ad hoc (added) to this

huiusce = emphatic form of **huius**

brevis, breve short, brief; brevī, *supply tempore*

dilābor, dilābī, dilāpsus sum slip away, disappear

at (conj.) but

ēgregius, -a, -um outstanding, extraordinary

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed

sicutī (conj.) just as

inmortālia = immortalia

postrēmō (adv.) finally

initium, initii *n.* beginning

orior, oriri, ortus sum rise, arise

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidi, occāsūrus
fall; perish, die

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow, increase

senescō, senescere, senuī, — grow old, grow
weak, decline

incorruptus, -a, -um uncorrupted, pure

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

rēctor, rēctoris *m.* director, ruler, master

hūmānus, -a, -um human

The *Bellum Iugurthae* (War of Jugurtha) is the second of Sallust's surviving historical monographs. It recounts the war between Rome and Jugurtha, king of Numidia (in North Africa), which lasted from 111 to 105 B.C.E. Sallust's focus is the corruption of the Roman aristocracy, which allowed Jugurtha to maintain power by bribing those sent to wage war against him.

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.4–7

The poet describes the beginning of a new age.

ultima Cūmaeī vēnit iam carminis aetās;
 magnus ab integrō saeclōrum nāscitur ordō.
 iam redit et Virgō, redeunt Sāturnia rēgna,
 iam nova prōgeniēs caelō dēmittitur altō.

ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

Cūmaeus, -a, -um of or belonging to Cumae;

of or belonging to the Sibyl of Cumae

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life; era

integer, integra, integrum whole; fresh;

ab integrō, afresh, anew

saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation

ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence

Virgō, Virginis *f.* (the) Virgin (Astraea) (goddess of Justice)

Sāturnius, -a, -um of Saturn (king of the Titans and father of Jupiter and Juno); **Sāturnia**

rēgna, (golden) age of Saturn

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēī *f.* offspring, progeny

dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down

Vergil's first work, the *Eclogues* (< Greek *Eklogai*, Selections) or *Bucolics* (< Greek *Boukolika*, [Poems] of Oxherds), is a collection of ten pastoral poems written between 42 and 39 B.C.E. and published shortly thereafter. The poetry of the *Eclogues* demonstrates Vergil's knowledge of Greek Hellenistic poetry (particularly the work of Theocritus) and his ability to translate this genre into a Roman context. The poems are marked by rustic settings, shepherd-poets engaged in love affairs, poetic contests, and an apparent escapist atmosphere. Closer examination of these poems reveals a sociopolitical element absent from Vergil's Greek models. When first published, the *Eclogues* won Vergil wide praise in Rome's literary circle, and Vergil soon came under the patronage of Maecenas, a wealthy patron of the arts and perhaps Octavian's closest friend.

13. Vergil, *Georgics* I.505–14

The peace-loving poet describes the effects of civil war. These lines conclude the first book of the *Georgics*.

. . . tot bella per orbem, 505

tam multae scelerum faciēs,† nōn ūllus arātrō
dignus honōs, squālent abductis arva colōnīs,
et curvae rigidum falcēs cōnflantur in ēnsem.
hinc movet Euphrātēs, illinc Germānia bellum;
vīcīnae ruptis inter sē lēgibus urbēs 510
arma ferunt; saevit tōtō Mars impius orbe,
ut cum† carceribus sēsē effūdēre quadrīgae,
addunt in spatia, et frūstrā retinācula tendēns
fertur equīs aurīga neque audit† currus habēnās.

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
tam (adv.) so
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime
†**faciēs, faciēi** *f.* face; appearance, sight
arātrum, arātrī *n.* plough
dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.)
honōs, honōris *m.* office; honor, respect
squāleō, squālēre, squālūi, — be dirty; lie barren (from neglect)
abdūcō (ab- + dūcō) lead away, take away, carry off
arvum, arvī *n.* (ploughed) field
colōnus, colōnī *m.* farmer
curvus, -a, -um curved
rigidus, -a, -um rigid, stiff; erect; inflexible
falx, falcis *f.* scythe, sickle
cōnflō (1-tr.) forge
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
hinc (adv.) from or on this side
Euphrātēs, Euphrātī/Euphrātae *m.* (the river) Euphrates
illinc (adv.) from or on that side
Germānia, Germāniae *f.* Germany

vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring
rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus split, burst, break
saeviō, saevīre, saevīi, saevītum behave savagely, rage
†**cum, here** (conj. + perf. indic.) whenever
carcer, carceris *m.* prison; barrier (at the beginning of a racecourse)
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out, pour forth; send forth; **effūdēre, translate as present**
quadrīga, quadrīgae *f.* (four-horse) chariot
addō (ad- + dō) add; increase speed
spatium, spatīi *n.* course, track; lap;
in spatia, lap by lap
frūstrā (adv.) in vain
retināculum, retināculī *n.* rope, rein
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus stretch out, extend
equus, equī *m.* horse
aurīga, aurīgae *f.* charioteer, driver
†**audiō, here**, heed
currus, currūs *m.* chariot
habēna, habēnae *f.* rein

Because of the success of the *Eclogues*, Vergil joined the poets Horace and Propertius in receiving the patronage of Maecenas, a close personal friend of Octavian. Vergil's next work was completed ca. 29 B.C.E. The *Georgics* (< Greek *Geōrgika*, [Poems] About Farming) is a didactic poem in four books on the art of farming. In addition to offering practical advice for farmers, the *Georgics* describes and praises the simplicity and purity of rustic life, and Vergil paints a picture of Italian country life and virtue that stands in stark contrast to the turmoil of actual life in the city Rome.

14. Vergil, *Georgics* II.490–99

In his praise of the life of the farmer the poet makes reference to the Roman poet Lucretius, to the Greek philosopher Epicurus, and, more generally, to any follower of the Epicurean school of philosophy.

fēlix quī potuit rērum cognōscere causās 490

atque metūs omnīs et inexōrābile fātum

subiēcīt pedibus strepitumque Acherontis avārī;

fortūnātus et ille deōs quī nōvīt agrestīs

Pānaque Silvānumque senem nymphāsque sorōrēs.

illum nōn populī fascēs, nōn purpura rēgum 495

flexit et infīdōs agitāns discordia frātrēs,

aut conīūrātō dēscendēns Dācus ab Histrō,

nōn rēs Rōmānae peritūraque rēgna; neque ille

aut doluit miserāns inopem aut invīdit habentī.

inexōrābilis, inexōrābile inexorable, relentless
subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus place (some-
thing, acc.) below (something, dat.)

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

strepitus, strepitūs *m.* noise; roar

Acherōn, Acherontis *m.* Acheron (a river of the
underworld)

avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious

fortūnātus, -a, -um fortunate

agrestis, agreste of or living in the fields, rustic

Pān, Pānos *m.* Pan (an Arcadian pastoral god);

Pāna = *acc. sing.*

Silvānus, Silvānī *m.* Silvanus (a Roman god of
the forest)

senex, senis old

nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph (a semidivine
female spirit of nature)

fascēs, fascium *m. pl.* the *fascēs* (bundle of rods
with an axe, symbol of power)

purpura, purpurae *f.* purple-dyed cloth; purple
color

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend

infīdus, -a, -um faithless, treacherous

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, con-
flict

conīūrō (1-intr.) join in a plot, form a conspiracy;

conīūrātō = *perf. pass. part. used with active
meaning*

dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēsus

go down, descend

Dācus, Dācī *m.* Dacian, inhabitant of Dacia (a
province north of the Danube [modern Roma-
nia and Hungary])

Hister, Histrī *m.* (the) Hister (the lower Danube
river)

pereō (*per-* + *eō*), **perīre, perīī, peritūrus** pass
away, be destroyed; perish, die

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

doleō, dolēre, dolūī, — suffer, grieve, feel pain

miseror (1-tr.) pity

inops, inopis poor, in want

invideō (*in-* + *videō*) envy (+ dat.)

15. Vergil, *Aeneid* X.466–72

Jupiter speaks consoling words to his son Hercules, who is distressed at the imminent death of Pallas.

tum genitor nātum dictīs adfātur amīcīs:
 “stat sua[†] cuique[†] diēs, breve et inreparābile tempus
 omnibus est vītāe; sed fāmam extendere factīs,
 hoc virtūtis opus. Troiae sub moenibus altīs
 tot gnātī cecidēre deum, quīn[†] occidit ūnā[†]
 Sarpēdōn, mea prōgeniēs. etiam sua[†] Turnum
 fāta vocant mētāsque datī pervēnit ad aevī.”

470

tum (adv.) then, at that time

genitor, genitōris *m.* father

adfor (1-tr.) address

[†]**sua** refers to **cuique**, his/her own.

[†]**cuique** = *masc./fem./neut. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, each man, each person, each thing

brevis, breve short, brief

inreparābilis, inreparābile irretrievable

extendō, extendere, extendī, extensus stretch out, extend

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

gnātī = nātī

[†]**quīn, here, (conj.)** really, verily; nay, in fact

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidī, occāsūrus
 fall; perish, die

[†]**ūnā** (adv.) together, at the same time

Sarpēdōn, Sarpēdonis *m.* Sarpedon (Lycian king and Trojan ally, son of Zeus)

prōgeniēs, *prōgeniēī *f.* offspring, progeny

[†]**sua** refers to **Turnum**, his own.

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)

mēta, mētae *f.* goalpost; end, limit

perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ **ad** + acc.)

aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; life

16. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.92–102

Fierce Turnus takes up a spear with which he hopes to kill Aeneas and speaks to it.

exim quae mediis ingentī adnīxa columnae
 aedibus astābat validam vī corripit hastam,
 Actoris Auruncī spoliū, quassatque trementem
 vōciferāns: “nunc, ō numquam frūstrāta vocātūs
 hasta meōs, nunc tempus adest; tē maximus Actor,
 tē Turnī nunc dextra gerit; dā sternere corpus
 lōricamque manū validā lacerāre revulsam
 sēmivirī Phrygis et foedāre in pulvere crīnīs
 vibrātōs calidō ferrō murrāque madentīs.”
 hīs agitur furiīs, tōtōque ardentis ab ōre
 scintillae absistunt, oculīs micat ācribus ignis . . .

95

100

exim (adv.) then, next, thereafter

adnītor, adnītī, adnīxus sum lean against (+ dat.)

columna, columnae *f.* column

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house, abode

astō (ad- + stō), **astāre, astitī**, — stand (near)

corripīō, corripere, corripuī, correptus snatch up

hasta, hastae *f.* spear

Actor, Actoris *m.* Actor (the man who used to own the spear)

Auruncus, -a, -um of Aurunca (a town in Campania), Auruncan

spoliū, spoliū *n.* booty, spoil

quassō (1-tr.) shake, wave, brandish

tremō, tremere, tremuī, — tremble, quiver, quake

vōciferor (1-intr.) shout, yell, cry out

frūstror (1-tr.) deceive, disappoint

vocātus, vocātūs *m.* summons, call

adsum (ad- + sum), **adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus** be present; be at hand

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill

lōrica, lōricae *f.* corselet, cuirass, breastplate

lacerō (1-tr.) tear to pieces, rend, mutilate

revellō, revellere, revulsī, revulsus pull away, tear off

sēmivir, sēmivirī *m. adj.* half-man; semi-masculine

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile

pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust

crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.*, hair

vibrō (1-tr.) give a wavy appearance, crimp, curl

calidus, -a, -um hot

murra, murrae *f.* myrrh (an aromatic gum)

madeō, madēre, —, — be wet, drip

furiae, furiarum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face

scintilla, scintillae *f.* spark

absistō, absistere, abstītī, — move apart; burst forth

micō (1-tr.) dart, flicker, flash

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire

17. Horace, *Carmina* I.23 (Asclepiadean; see §113)

The poet addresses a timid girl.

Vītās innuleō mē similis, Chloē,
quaerentī pavidam montibus āviīs
mātre[m] nōn sine vānō
aurārum et silvae metū.

nam seu mōbilibus vēris inhorruit
adventus foliīs seu viridēs rubum
dīmōvēre lacertae,
et corde et genibus tremit.

atquī nōn ego tē tigris ut aspera
Gaetūlusve leō frangere persequor:
tandem dēsine mātre[m]
tempestīva sequī virō.

5

10

vītō (1-tr.) avoid

(h)innuleus, (h)innuleī *m.* young deer, fawn

similis, simile similar (+ dat.)

Chloē, Chloēs *f.* Chloe

pavidus, -a, -um trembling, frightened

mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain

āvius, -a, -um pathless, trackless

vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; groundless, false

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

silva, silvae *f.* forest; *for purposes of scansion,*
silvae = siluae

seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu . . .**,
whether . . . or (if) . . .

mōbilis, mōbile movable; moving, shifting

vēr, vēris *n.* spring

inhorreō, inhorrēre, inhorruī, — bristle,
quiver, shudder

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival

folium, foliī *n.* leaf

viridis, viride green, verdant

rubus, rubī *m.* bramble, blackberry bush

dīmoveō (dis- + moveō) separate; set in motion

lacerta, lacertae *f.* lizard

cor, cordis *n.* heart

genū, genūs *n.* knee

tremō, tremere, tremuī, — tremble, quiver,
quake

atquī (conj.) but, and yet

tigris, tigris, -ium *m.* or *f.* tiger

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless

Gaetūlus, -a, -um Gaetulian, Moroccan

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

leō, leōnis *m.* lion

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter,
crush

persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly,
pursue

dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīī/dēsīvī, dēsītum stop,
cease (+ infin.)

tempestīvus, -a, -um timely, ripe, ready

Horace's *Carmina* (usually referred to as *Odes*) comprise three books (eighty-eight poems) of lyric poetry published in 23 B.C.E. and a fourth book (fifteen poems), written considerably later, perhaps at the request of Augustus himself. These poems, written in the Greek lyric meters of Sappho, Alcaeus, Archilochus, and others, take as their themes all aspects of poetry, life, and death, but they do so in a delightfully enigmatic fashion. The hallmark of a Horatian ode is meticulous word choice and word placement that impart to the poem many levels of meaning.

18. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXVIII.5.15–16

The historian reports some actions of Philip of Macedon, who is at war with King Attalus of Pergamum. Philip attempts to disrupt a meeting (attended by Attalus) to discuss defending the Aetolians against Philip.

et conciliō quidem dīmissō iam vēnit;† segetibus tamen quae iam prope mātūr-
itātem erant maximē in sinū Aeniānum ēvastātis, Scotussam cōpiās redūcit. ibi ex-
ercitū omnī relictō, cum cohorte rēgiā Dēmētriādem sēsē recipit. inde ut ad omnēs
hostium mōtūs posset occurrere, in Phōcidem atque Euboeam et Peparēthum mit-
tit† quī loca alta ēligerent unde ēditī ignēs appārērent.

concilium, conciliū *n.* gathering, meeting

dīmittō (dis- + mittō) break up, dismiss

†vēnit, *subject is Philip*

seges, segetis *f.* cornfield; crop

prope (prep. + acc.) near (to)

mātūrītās, mātūrītātis *f.* ripeness

maximē (adv.) especially

sinus, sinūs *m.* bay

Aeniānēs, Aeniānum *m. pl.* (the) Aenianes (a
people of Thessaly)

ēvastō (1-tr.) devastate, lay waste

Scotussa, Scotussae *f.* Scotussa (a town in
Thessaly)

redūcō (re- + dūcō) lead back

ibi (adv.) there

cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company, cohort; ret-
inue

rēgius, -a, -um royal, belonging to the king

Dēmētriās, Dēmētriādis *f.* Demetrias (a city in
Thessaly)

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; **sē recipere**,
to withdraw

inde (adv.) thence; thereupon

occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum run up to
meet; **occurrere ad**, to meet, to oppose

Phōcis, Phōcidis *f.* Phocis (a country between
Boeotia and Aetolia)

Euboea, Euboeae *f.* Euboea (an island in the
Aegean)

Peparēthus, Peparēthī *m.* Peparethus (an island
in the Aegean)

†mittit, *historical present tense; translate as perfect*

ēligō (ē- + legō), ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus choose,
select

ēdō (ē- + dō) produce, put forth

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire; signal fire

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, — appear, be
visible

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXX.18.7

Sent into a battle against the Carthaginians, the Roman cavalry almost succeeds in driving back the enemies.

tumultum equestrem auxit clāmor ab legiōnibus additus, nec stetit hostium aciēs
nī Māgo ad† primum equitum mōtum parātōs elephantōs extemplō in proelium
indūxisset; ad quōrum strīdōrem odōremque et adspectum territī equī vānum
equestre auxilium fēcērunt.

tumultus, tumultūs *m.* uproar, commotion, disturbance

equester, equestris, equestre of a horseman; of the cavalry

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus increase

clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout; shouting, clamor

legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion

addō (ad- + dō) add (to)

nī = nisi

Māgo, Māgōnis *m.* Mago (brother of Hannibal)

†ad, here, for

eques, equitis *m.* horseman; *pl.* cavalry

elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant

extemplō (adv.) immediately

indūcō (in- + dūcō) lead (into)

strīdor, strīdōris *m.* harsh noise

odor, odōris *m.* odor; stink

adspectus, adspectūs *m.* sight, appearance

equus, equī *m.* horse

vānus, -a, -um meaningless, useless, vain

20. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.37–42

The poet reflects with bitterness on the early death of fellow elegiac poet Tibullus (55?–19? B.C.E.).

vīve pius—moriēre; pius cole sacra—colentem
mors gravis ā templīs in cava busta trahet;
carminibus cōnfīde bonīs—iacet, ecce, Tibullus:
vix manet ē tōtō parva quod urna capit!
tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae rapuēre rogālēs
pectoribus pāsci nec timuēre tuīs?

40

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; worship

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

cavus, -a, -um hollow

bustum, bustī *n. sing. or pl.,* funeral pyre; grave mound, tomb

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag

cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum put trust in, have confidence in (+ dat.)

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

urna, urnae *f.* urn

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m. or f.* prophet; bard, poet

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off; consume

rogālīs, rogāle of or belonging to a funeral pyre

pāscor, pāscī, pāstus sum feed upon (+ abl.)

21. Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.113–24

The poet describes the legendary Roman rape of the Sabine women, which takes place in the middle of a public entertainment to which the Sabines have been invited.

in mediō plausū (plausūs tunc arte carēbant)

rēx populō praedae signa petīta dedit.

prōtinus exiliunt, animum clāmōre fatentēs,

115

virginibus cupidās iniciuntque manūs.

ut fugiunt aquilās, timidissima turba, columbae,

ut fugit invīsōs agna novella lupōs:

sīc illae timuēre virōs sine mōre† ruentēs;

cōnstitit in nūllā quī fuit ante color.

120

nam timor ūnus erat, faciēs nōn ūna timōris:

pars laniat crīnēs, pars sine mente sedet;

altera maesta silet, frūstrā vocat altera mātrem:

haec queritur, stupet haec; haec manet, illa fugit . . .

plausus, plausūs *m.* clapping, applause

tunc (adv.) then, at that time

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey

signum, signī *n.* sign, signal

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

ex(s)iliō, ex(s)ilire, ex(s)iluī, — spring forth,

jump out

clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus throw (something,

acc.) on (someone, dat.), lay (something, acc.)

on (someone, dat.)

aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle

timidissimus, -a, -um very fearful, very afraid

turba, turbae *f.* crowd

columba, columbae *f.* dove

invīsus, -a, -um hateful, odious

agna, agnae *f.* ewe, lamb

novellus, -a, -um young, tender

lupus, lupī *m.* wolf

†**sine mōre, here,** lawlessly, wildly

ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstiti, — make a stand, halt; remain

color, colōris *m.* color

faciēs, faciē *f.* face; appearance

laniō (1-tr.) tear, mutilate

crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.,* hair

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated

maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim

sileō, silēre, siluī, — be silent

frūstrā (adv.) in vain

queror, querī, questus sum complain, lament

stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, — be stunned, be speechless

The *Ars Amātōria* (Art of Love) is a collection of three books of elegiac poems that are both erotic and didactic in subject matter and style. The poet offers detailed advice to men (books I and II) and to women (book III) on how to seduce and hold love partners. With a mixture of irony and genuine enthusiasm Ovid's counsel favors fun and pleasure over fidelity and morality. This work of the poet may have aroused the displeasure of Augustus and may have led to Ovid's exile.

22. Augustus, *Rēs Gestae Divī Augustī*, Proem, 1–2

The preface and opening words of Augustus's autobiographical report to the Roman people
*Rērum gestārum divī Augustī, quibus orbem terrārum imperiō populī Rōmānī
 subiēcit, et impēnsārum quās in† rem pūblicam populūque Rōmānum fēcit, in-
 cīsārum in duābus ahēneīs pīlīs, quae sunt Rōmae positae, exemplar subiectum.*

*Annōs undēvīgintī nātus exercitum prīvātō cōnsiliō et prīvātā impēnsā comparāvī,
 per quem rem pūblicam ā dominātiōne factiōnis oppressam in libertātem vindicāvī.
 eō nōmine senātus dēcrētīs honōrificīs in ordinem suum mē adlēgit, C. Pānsā et A.
 Hirtiō cōsulibus, cōsulārem locum sententiae dīcendae† tribuēns, et imperium
 mihi dedit.*

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands, world
subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus place below; make (something, acc.) subject to (something, dat.)
impēnsa, impēnsae *f.* expense, expenditure
 †**in, here, for**
incīdō, incidere, incīdī, incīsus cut into, inscribe onto
a(h)ēneus, -a, -um (made of) bronze
pīla, pīlae *f.* column; squared pillar
exemplar, exemplāris, -ium *n.* copy
prīvātus, -a, -um private
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; raise
dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute power, dominion; despotism
factiō, factiōnis *f.* faction, partisanship
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress

vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to; **in libertātem vindicāre**, to free
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name; reason, purpose
dēcrētum, dēcrētī *n.* decision, order, decree
honōrificus, -a, -um conferring honor, honorific
ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class, body
adlēgō (ad- + **lēgō**), **adlegere, adlēgī, adlēctus** elect, admit
C. Pānsa, C. Pānsae *m.* C. (Vibius) Pansa (consul 43 B.C.E.)
A. Hirtius, A. Hirtiū *m.* A. Hirtius (consul 43 B.C.E.)
cōsulāris, cōsulāre of or belonging to a consul, consular; of consular rank
 †**dīcendae, fem. sing. gen. of a gerundive; sententiae dīcendae**, of speaking (my) opinion
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow, assign

The *Rēs Gestae Divī Augustī* is one of three documents that Augustus left with the Vestal Virgins shortly before his death in 14 C.E. This first-person description of Augustus's accomplishments is written in an unadorned and clear style. After Augustus's death, and by his order, the *Rēs Gestae* was inscribed on two pillars placed in front of his mausoleum in Rome and also on numerous copies throughout the empire (often with an accompanying Greek translation). The best surviving copy comes from Ankara in Turkey and includes the initial paragraph presented above.

23. Velleius Paterculus, *Historiae* II.18.1–3

The historian describes a Roman enemy in the East in 88 B.C.E.

Per ea tempora Mithridātēs, Ponticus rēx, vir neque silendus neque dīcendus sine cūrā, bellō ācerrimus, virtūte eximius, aliquandō fortunā, semper animō maximus, cōnsiliis dux, mīles manū,† odiō in Rōmānōs Hannibal, occupātā Asiā necātisque in eā omnibus cīvibus Rōmānīs quōs quidem eādem diē atque hōrā redditīs cīvitatibus litterīs ingentī cum pollicitātiōne praemiōrum interimī iusserat, quō tempore neque fortitudīne adversus Mithridātem neque fidē in† Rōmānōs quisquam Rhodiīs pār fuit—hōrum fidem Mytilēnaeōrum perfidia illūmināvit, quī M'. Aquilius aliōsque Mithridātī vinctōs tradidērunt, quibus libertās in ūnīus Theophanis grātiā postea ā Pompeiō restitūta est—cum† terribilis Italiae quoque vidērētur imminēre, sorte obvēnit Sullae Asia prōvincia.

Mithridātēs, Mithridātis *m.* Mithridates (the Great) (king of Pontus, defeated by Sulla, Lucullus, and Pompey)

Ponticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the region adjoining the Black Sea (Pontus), of Pontus
sileō, silēre, siluī, — be silent; pass over in silence

ācerrimus, -a, -um most or very fierce

eximius, -a, -um outstanding, remarkable

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

†**manus, here,** deed, action

occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy

Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia (a Roman province [modern Asia Minor])

necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; hand over, deliver

litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* letter, epistle

pollicitātiō, pollicitātiōnis *f.* promise

praemium, praemiū *n.* reward, prize

interimō, interimere, interēmī, interēptus kill, do away with

fortitudō, fortitudinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of

†**in, here,** toward

quisquam = *masc./fem. nom. sing. of indef. pron., anyone*

Rhodiī, Rhodiōrum *m. pl.* Rhodians (inhabitants of the island Rhodes off the coast of Asia Minor)

pār, paris equal

Mytilēnaei, Mytilēnaeōrum *m. pl.* Mytileneans, citizens of Mytilene (a city on the island Lesbos off the coast of Asia Minor)

perfidia, perfidiae *f.* faithlessness, treachery

illūminō (1-tr.) illuminate, reveal

M'. Aquilius, M'. Aquiliī *m.* M'. Aquilius

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vinctus bind, join, fetter

Theophanēs, Theophanis *m.* Theophanes (Greek historian from Mytilene, friend of Pompey)

grātia, grātia *f.* favor, kindness; **in grātiā,** for the purpose of pleasing (+ gen.)

postea (adv.) after, afterward

restituō, restituere, restitūi, restitūtus set up again, restore

†**cum, here** (conj. + subjunc.) (under the circumstances) when

terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening

immineō, imminēre, —, — hang over, threaten (+ dat.)

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; lottery

obveniō (ob- + veniō) be assigned to (+ dat.)

Velleius Paterculus was born in southern Italy and served under the future emperor Tiberius as commander of the cavalry in Germany. After his rise to the rank of praetor in 14 C.E., almost nothing is known of his life. The only known work of Velleius Paterculus is the *Historiae*, published in 30 C.E. in two books. The first book, the surviving text of which contains gaps, gives a cursory account of Roman history from Romulus to the fall of Carthage. The second book treats more contemporary history and includes a consistently positive portrait of Tiberius. Notable in the style of Velleius are a certain awkwardness and a pronounced lack of clarity in his long periodic sentences.

24. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 507–11

Eurybates describes the effect of a storm on the Greek sailors and their Trojan captives as they return from Troy.

Nīl ratiō et ūsus audet, ars cessit malīs;
tenet horror artūs, omnis officiō stupet
nāvita relictō, rēmus effugit manūs.
in vōta miserōs ultimus cōgit timor
eademque superōs Trōes et Danaī rogant.

510

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning

ūsus, ūsus *m.* use, experience

horror, horrōris *m.* bristling, stiffening;

trembling, dread

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb

officiū, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task

stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, — be stunned, be

speechless

nāvita = nauta

rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar

effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape, slip from

vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer

ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, cōgē, cōactus drive together, force, compel

superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan (man); **Trōes** = *nom. pl.*

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

rogō (1-tr.) ask (someone, acc.) for (something, acc.)

25. Juvenal, *Saturae* X.283–88

After recovering from a fever that might have killed him, Pompeius Magnus was killed and beheaded in Egypt, to where he had fled during the civil wars with Caesar. The poet reflects on this end in comparison to the deaths of other Roman leaders.

prōvida Pompeiō dederat Campānia febrēs
optandās, sed multae urbēs et pūblica vōta
vīcērunt; igitur fortūna ipsīus et urbis
servātum victō caput abstulit. hōc cruciātū
Lentulus, hāc poenā caruit ceciditque Cethēgus
integer, et iacuit Catilīna cadāvere tōtō.

285

prōvidus, -a, -um having foreknowledge, provident

Campānia, Campāniae *f.* Campania (a province in southern Italy south of Latium)

febris, febris, -ium *f. sing. or pl.,* an attack of fever, fever

vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore; then

caput, capitis *n.* head

cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment

Lentulus, Lentulī *m.* Lentulus (one of the leaders in the Catilinarian conspiracy)

Cethēgus, Cethēgī *m.* Cethegus (one of the leaders in the Catilinarian conspiracy)

integer, integra, integrum whole

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

cadāver, cadāveris *n.* corpse

Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis was born in southern Latium in the middle of the first century c.e. Juvenal began to write poetry sometime after the death of Domitian in 96 and continued to do so for the next thirty years. He lived until at least 127.

The *Saturae* (Satires) are sixteen satirical poems written in dactylic hexameter, which have been divided into five books. The poet caricatures and attacks various manifestations of what he views as the corruption of Roman society. Rhetoric, hypocrisy, the atmosphere surrounding the emperor, women, and human frailty in general are among the subjects scathingly attacked by the poet. Although Juvenal's subject matter is often crude, his poetry is highly developed and often colored by the language of epic and of tragedy.

Continuous Readings

1. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.479–90

While recounting the fall of Troy, Aeneas describes how Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, breaks into the palace of Priam and slaughters the last members of the royal line.

ipse† inter prīmōs correptā dūra bipennī
 līmina perrumpit postisque ā cardine vellit 480
 aerātōs; iamque excīsā trabe firma cavāvit
 rōbora et ingentem lātō dedit ōre fenestram.
 appāret domus intus et ātria longa patēscunt;
 appārent Priamī et veterum penetrālia rēgum,
 armātōsque vident stantīs in līmine prīmō. 485
 at domus interior gemitū miserōque tumultū
 miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus aedēs
 fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea sīdera clāmōr.
 tum pavidae tēctīs mātērēs ingentibus errant
 amplexaeque tenent postis atque ōscula figunt. 490

†ipse refers to Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus).

corripīō, corripere, corripuī, correptus snatch up

bipennis, bipennis *f.* two-edged axe, **bipennī**
 = *abl. sing.*

līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold

perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptus break
 or burst through

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

cardō, cardinis *m.* pivot; hinge

vellō, vellere, velli/vulsī, vulsus pull (up), tear
 (from)

aerātus, -a, -um made of bronze

excīdō, excīdere, excīdī, excīsus cut down,
 cut out

trabs, trabis *f.* tree trunk; beam

firmus, -a, -um strong, sturdy

cavō (1-tr.) hollow out; cut through

rōbur, rōboris *n.* oak tree; timber

lātus, -a, -um broad, wide

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face; aperture, opening

fenestra, fenestrae *f.* window; hole, breach

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus be visible;
 appear

intus (adv.) within, inside

ātrium, ātriū *n.* atrium (the main room of a
 Roman house)

longus, -a, -um long

patēscō, patēscere, patuī, — become visible,
 be disclosed

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

vetus, veteris old, ancient; **veterum** = *gen. pl.*

penetrāle, penetrālis, -ium *n.* inner part, inmost
 recess; inner shrine

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

at (conj.) but

interior, interius (comparative adj.) inner;

interior = *fem. sing. nom.*

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar

miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up;
 throw into confusion

penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply

cavus, -a, -um hollow

plangor, plangōris *m.* beating (of the breast in
 grief); lamentation

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house,
 abode

fēmineus, -a, -um of or belonging to a woman,
 feminine

ululō (1-intr.) howl (in grief or as part of a reli-
 gious ritual), wail

feriō, ferīre, —, — strike, hit

aureus, -a, -um golden

sīdus, sīderis *n.* star; constellation

clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting; noise

tum (adv.) then, at that time

pavidus, -a, -um trembling, frightened

tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house, dwelling

amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum embrace;
 clasp (for protection)

ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss

figō, figere, fixī, fixus fix, affix; plant

2. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.452–62

The poet recounts the tale of Apollo and Daphne.

prīmus amor Phoebī Daphnē Pēnēia, quem nōn
fors ignāra dedit, sed saeva Cupīdinis ira.

Dēlius hunc nūper victā serpente superbus
vīderat adductō flectentem cornua nervō

455

“quid” que “tibī,† lascīve puer, cum fortibus armīs?”

dīxerat; “ista decent umerōs gestāmina nostrōs,
quī† dare certa ferae, dare vulnera possumus hostī,

quī† modo pestiferō tot iūgera ventre prementem
strāvimus innumerīs tumidum Pŷthōna sagittīs.

460

tū face nescio quōs† estō contentus amōrēs
inrītāre tuā, nec laudēs† adserere nostrās!”

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
Daphnē, Daphnēs *f.* Daphne (a nymph, daughter of the river Peneus)
Pēnēius, -a, -um of Peneus (a river god)
fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck
ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, ignorant
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage
Dēlius, -a, -um of Delos, Delian; *masc. subst.*, Delian Apollo
nūper (adv.) recently
serpēns, serpentis, -ium *f.* snake, serpent
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead toward; draw back, bend
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend
cornū, cornūs *n.* horn; *sing. or pl.*, bow; **cornua** = *acc. pl.*
nervus, nervī *m.* sinew; (bow-)string
†The final **-i** of **tibī** here scans *long*.
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
deceō, decēre, —, — fit, benefit
umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder
gestāmen, gestāminis *n.* something worn or carried; ornament, weapon
†**quī**, antecedent is **nōs** implied in **nostrōs**
fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast
vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound

modo (adv.) only, now; just now
pestifer, pestifera, pestiferum disease-carrying, deadly
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
iūgerum, iūgerī *n.* *iugerum* (measure of land = $\frac{2}{3}$ acre); acre
venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach
premō, premere, pressī, pressus press (down), burden; afflict
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill
innumerus, -a, -um innumerable, countless
tumidus, -a, -um swollen
Pŷthōn, Pŷthōnis *m.* Python; **Pŷthōna** = *acc. sing.*
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
†**nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod** (indef. adj.) sometimes written as two words, some . . . or other
estō = 2nd *sing. fut. act. imper.*, used in formal language or general precepts for orders, (you will) be
contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied
inrītō (= **irritō**) (1-tr.) provoke, stimulate
†**laus, laudis** *f.* praise
adserō, adserere, adseruī, adsertus claim as one's own, lay claim to; **nec . . . adserere** = *negative imperative*

§104. Rhetorical Terms

Writers of Latin prose and poetry regularly employed many modes of expression that are called **rhetorical devices**. Rhetoric, the principal subject studied in Roman education, may be defined as the art of persuasion in speech or in writing. *How* Roman speakers or writers expressed something was virtually inseparable from *what* they said or wrote. Indeed, the chosen style of any writer is in large part reflected in his distinctive use of the devices of rhetoric. LEARN THE FOLLOWING BASIC RHETORICAL TERMS AND THEIR DEFINITIONS. BE PREPARED TO IDENTIFY THEM IN THE READINGS.

Alliteration	repetition of the same sound at the beginning of successive words
Anaphora	(< Greek <i>anaphora</i> , “rising; repetition”) repetition of the same word or words at the beginning of successive phrases or clauses
Antithesis	(< Greek <i>antithesis</i> , “opposition”) opposition or contrast of two ideas
Assonance	(< <i>assonō</i> , “sound in accompaniment”) repetition of identical or similar sounds in words
Asyndeton	(< Greek <i>asyndetos</i> , “unconnected”) absence of connectives between phrases or clauses
Chiasmus	(< Greek <i>chiasmus</i> , “placing crosswise”) arrangement of pairs, the second element of which is in inverted order (ABBA)
Ellipsis	(< Greek <i>elleipsis</i> , “ellipse, omission”) omission of one or more grammatical elements that may be supplied from context
Hendiadys	(< Greek <i>hen dia duoin</i> , “one through two”) one idea expressed through two nouns connected by “and” when a closer relation is suggested
Hyperbaton	(< Greek <i>hyperbatos</i> , “going beyond”) separation of two words that normally belong together
Tricolon	(< Greek <i>trikōlos</i> , “three-limbed”) three-part structure comprising three words, phrases, or clauses

Examples

quis hanc contumēliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?
(Cato, quoted in Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* X.3.17)

(tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Who is able to endure *this abuse, who this authority, who this slavery?*

haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta nīmīrum, in quā *nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās, nūlla* stabilis
benivolentiae potest esse *fidūcia* . . . (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 52–53)

(tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, hyperbaton)

This indeed is without doubt the life of tyrants, in which *no faith, no affection, no trust* of constant goodwill is able to exist.

ergō *Hannibal hostis, cīvis Antōnius?* (Cicero, *Philippics* V 24)

(chiasmus, antithesis, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Therefore (*is*) *Hannibal an enemy, (but) Antony a citizen?*

omnēs enim in cōnsulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse prōvinciae. (Cicero, *Philippics* IV 9)
(hyperbaton)

For *all the provinces* ought to be in the right and power of the consul.

neque enim illum quem facile tulerant ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed *studiō*
potius et glōriā. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* II.65)
(hendiadys)

Nor indeed that (pain) that they had easily endured had they endured because of reason or wisdom, but rather because of *a zeal for glory*.

tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae rapuēre rogālēs
pectoribus pāscī nec timuēre tuīs? (Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.41–42)
(alliteration)

Sacred poet, have the flames of the funeral pyre consumed you
and have they not feared to feed on your chest?

. . . *haud doctīs dictīs certantēs, sed maledictīs* . . . (Ennius, *Annālēs* VIII.250)
(assonance)

. . . contending not at all by learned words, but by insults . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. Several rhetorical devices may be combined in the same sentence. In the first example the tricolon gains speed through the use of anaphora and asyndeton. The repeated element **quis** emphasizes the structure of the tricolon and allows the succeeding elements to be highlighted (**contumēliam, imperium, servitūtem**).
2. Although the limbs of a tricolon are often of uniform length, the third limb is often expanded, as in the second example (**nūlla . . . fidūcia**).
3. In the second and fourth examples hyperbaton adds liveliness or surprise to the words that have been separated (**nūlla . . . fidūcia** and **omnēs . . . prōvinciae**).
4. In the fifth example the hendiadys **studiō . . . et glōriā** (because of zeal . . . and glory) expresses one idea: because of a zeal for glory.

When one studies a particular writer's use of rhetoric, it is convenient to refer to the unit known as the **period** (< Greek *periodos*, "a going around") or periodic sentence. A **periodic sentence** is a complex sentence arranged in such a way that meaning is not fully grasped until the end. The most important elements of the main clause are often placed at the beginning and the end, enclosing several subordinate structures. Additional elements and subordinate clauses are arranged within the whole for maximum cohesion and clarity. For example:

Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I. 24)

The Helvetians, having followed with all their wagons, brought together (their) baggage into one place; they themselves, with the battle line being very dense, with our cavalry having been driven back, with a phalanx having been made, approached up to our first battle line.

The periodic structure of this sentence may be represented as follows:

Helvētīi

cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī
impedīmenta in ūnum locum *contulērunt*;

ipsī

cōnfertissimā aciē,
reiectō nostrō equitātū,
phalange factā,
sub prīmam nostram aciem *successērunt*.

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary

- ▶ **audācia, audāciae** *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity
- ▶ **campus, campī** *m.* (flat) plain
- ▶ **castra, castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) camp
- ▶ **mūrus, mūrī** *m.* wall
- ▶ **paulum, *paulī**¹ *n.* small amount, a little
- ▶ **signum, signī** *n.* sign, signal; standard
- ▶ **tēlum, tēlī** *n.* spear; weapon

- ▶ **ignis, ignis, -ium** *m.* fire
- ▶ **imperātor, imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
- ▶ **legiō, legiōnis** *f.* legion
- ▶ **lūx, lūcis** *f.* light, daylight
 - ▶ **prīmā lūce** (idiom) at dawn
- ▶ **maiōrēs, maiōrum** *m. pl.* ancestors

- ▶ **sēnsus, sēnsūs** *m.* perception, feeling; sense

- arbitror** (1-tr.) judge, consider, think
- putō** (1-tr.) think, suppose

- ▶ **soleō, solēre, solitus sum** be accustomed

- ▶ **crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** trust, believe (+ dat.)
- ▶ **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus** throw; utter; lay, establish
 - ▶ **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus** throw out, expel

- ▶ **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** speak, talk
- ▶ **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** find, discover
- ▶ **sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus** know
 - ▶ **nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītus** not know

- ▶ **pereō, perīre, perī, peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die

- longus, -a, -um** long; far; long-standing; far-reaching
- ▶ **summus, -a, -um** highest; top (of); last, final

- brevis, breve** short, brief
- humilis, humile** humble
- sapiēns, sapientis** wise
- ▶ **similis, simile** similar (+ gen. or dat.)
 - ▶ **dissimilis, dissimile** dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.)

- ▶ **diū** (adv.) for a long time
- fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse** (§105)
- ▶ **igitur** (postpositive conj.) therefore
- longē** (adv.) a long way, far; by far
- ▶ **parum** (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough
 - (adv.) too little, inadequately
- primum** (adv.) first; for the first time
- quam primum**, as soon as possible
- quam** (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (§112)

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular form of **paulum** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

- **audācia, audāciae** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-ia* to the stem of **audāx**. **audācia** may have a positive sense (boldness, confidence), but more often has a negative sense of excessive boldness (recklessness, audacity).
- **campus, campī** *m.* is a flat expanse of land or “plain.” The **Campus Martius** (< **Martius**, *-a, -um*, of or belonging to Mars) was the plain just outside the sacred boundary of Rome, on which the Roman troops trained, Roman armies mustered before entering the city in triumph, and Roman citizens gathered in assembly for elections. **campus** without an accompanying adjective may refer to the *Campus Martius*.
- Although **castra, castrōrum** *n. pl.* is plural in form, it has a singular meaning (military encampment). **castra** appears in two common idioms: **castra pōnere**, “to pitch or make camp” and **castra movēre**, “to break camp.”
- **paulum, *paulī** *n.* appears in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular only. It often functions as an Ablative of Degree of Difference (§112). It is also commonly found with a Partitive Genitive.

Paulō ante discesserant.
Paulum eī erat pecūniae.

They had departed earlier by a little (a little earlier).
There was a little of money to him.
He had a little (of) money.

- **signum, signī** *n.* may mean any sort of mark or “sign.” It may also mean “signal” or, in military contexts, a “standard” identifying a unit of the Roman army.
- **tēlum, tēlī** *n.* originally referred only to a throwing weapon (spear, javelin, dart), but its use was soon extended to include other weapons. It may also refer to the shaft of a throwing weapon as opposed to the point.
- The ablative singular of **ignis, ignis, -ium** *m.* is usually **ignī** (by analogy with *neuter* third-declension *i*-stem nouns). In poetry and in post-Augustan Latin, the regular form **igne** also occurs.
- **imperātor, imperātōris** *m.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-tor** to the present stem of the verb **imperō**. An **imperātor** is one who gives orders, and the word is most often used of a military “commander” or “general.” It is also an honorific title granted to a victorious commander either by his troops or by the senate.
- **legiō, legiōnis** *f.* was the largest unit of the Roman army. Its size ranged at various periods of the Roman Republic and Empire from 4,200 to 6,000 men.
- **lūx, lūcis** *f.* may mean “light” generally or “daylight” (the light of the sun). It may also mean “light” more metaphorically (mental illumination, light [of hope], etc.). **primā lūce**, literally “at first light,” is an Ablative of Time When.
- **maiōrēs, maiōrum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the comparative adjective **maior, maius** (§111).
- **sēnsus, sēnsūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **sentiō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **sēns-** and was then lost.
- **soliō, solēre, solitus sum** is an intransitive semideponent verb. It regularly takes a Complementary Infinitive.

Bonus sine irā dicere solet.

A good man is accustomed to speak(ing) without anger.

- **crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** may be transitive or intransitive. When transitive, it often takes a neuter pronoun as a direct object. When **crēdō** is intransitive, it may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb. In the passive, **crēdō** may have a personal subject. **crēdō** may also introduce an Indirect Statement (§107).

Tē amō, crēde mihi.

I love you, believe me. (Dative with an Intransitive Verb)

Crēdunt id quod vident.

They believe that thing that they see. (d.o.)

Crēditur captus esse.

He is believed to have been captured. (passive voice, personal subject)

Crēdisne mē tē amāre?

Do you believe that I love you? (Indirect Statement)

- The first letter of the verb **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus** is a *consonantal i* and is thus pronounced like English *y*. **iaciō** may mean “throw” or “cast” in a literal sense (rocks, javelins, lightning bolts) or a metaphorical one (injury, abuse, ridicule, remarks, kisses). It may also mean “lay” or “establish” (foundations, walls, ram-parts).
- **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **iaciō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the first, second, and fourth principal parts. In the first two principal parts (and all forms made from them), the first **-i-** is pronounced as a consonantal **-i-** followed by the vocalic **-i-**, as if

they were spelled **ēīciō*, **ēīcere*. In the third principal part (*ēīcī*), the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to *-ē*. The *-i-* in the third and fourth principal parts is consonantal. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *IACIŌ* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ĒICIŌ*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *IACIŌ* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** often appears absolutely. In classical Latin, the person with whom one speaks is expressed by *cum* and a person in the ablative. Except in early Latin **loquor** does *not* take a Dative of Indirect Object. Compounds of **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **LOQUOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of *in-* to **veniō** and does *not* exhibit vowel weakening. Unlike **veniō**, **inveniō** is a transitive verb.
- **sciō, scīre, scī/scīvī, scītus** means “know” in the broadest sense of the word. In particular, **sciō** means “know” facts. **sciō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short *-i-* of the stem *sci-* always contracts with the appropriate endings (**scīstī, scīstis**). When **sciō** takes an infinitive, it means “know how.”

Poēta causās rērum scit.
Caesar vincere scīvit.

The poet knows the causes of things.
Caesar knew how to conquer.

The present active imperative forms of **sciō** almost never appear in the Latin that survives, but this verb uses instead the future active imperative forms **scītō** (singular) and **scītōte** (plural) with present meanings.

- **nesciō, nescīre, nescī/nescīvī, nescītus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **sciō**. **nesciō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short *-i-* of the stem **nesci-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**nescīstī, nescīstis**). When **nesciō** takes an infinitive, it means “not know how.”
- **pereō, perīre, perī, perītūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to the irregular verb **eō**. **pereō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only *one* third principal part. **pereō** may be used synonymously for **morior** and be translated “perish” or “die.” When its subject is not human, **pereō** may mean “pass away” or “be destroyed.” The first person singular present active subjunctive may be used as an Optative, future wish capable of fulfillment, to assert something strongly. The first person (singular and plural) perfect active indicative—and occasionally other forms—may be used hyperbolically to express panic (I am/We are destroyed/lost/done for).

Multī militum perierunt.
Magnaē urbēs cum moenibus pereunt.
Peream nisi ista mē movent verba.
Ingeniō meō perī!

Many of the soldiers died.
Great cities with their (city) walls pass away.
May I die if those words do not move me.
I am lost because of my own talent!

- In addition to “highest,” “final,” and “last,” the irregular superlative adjective **summus, -a, -um** may mean “top of” when it modifies a place: **summa moenia**, “the top of the city walls” (subj., d.o.).
- **similis, simile** and **dissimilis, dissimile** may take either a genitive or a dative expressing that which something is “similar” or “dissimilar” to.

Patris similis est hic filius.
Quid illī simile bellō fuit?

This son is similar to (his) father.
What was similar to that war?

- The temporal adverb **diū** often appears in the phrase **iam diū**, “for a long time now/already.” When this phrase occurs with a verb in the present tense, the present tense reports an action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. When this phrase occurs with a verb in the imperfect tense, the imperfect tense reports an action that had been going on for some time and was still going on (§90). These uses of the present and imperfect tenses require special English translations.

Hoc iam diū dicō.
Hoc iam diū dīcēbam.

I have been saying this thing for a long time now.
I had been saying this thing for a long time already.

- In classical Latin, **igitur** is most frequently a postpositive conjunction. (In the historians Sallust and Tacitus, however, **igitur** is nearly always placed first.) **igitur** is used to join a sentence with a preceding one to indicate the consequence or inference of a preceding idea or series of ideas.
- Like **satis**, **parum** may be an indeclinable neuter substantive or an adverb. While **satis** means “enough,” **parum** describes what falls short of enough (too little).

	Derivatives	Cognates
audācia	audacity	
brevis	brief; abbreviate	merry ; pretzel
campus	campus	
crēdō	credo ; credit ; credible ; miscreant	heart; discord ; courage ; cardiac
iaciō	inject ; adjective; jet	catheter
ignis	ignite ; igneous	
longus	longitude ; lunge; longevity ; purloin	long; linger ; belong ; Lent
loquor	loquacious ; circumlocution; soliloquy	
lūx	Lucifer ; luculent	light
mūrus	mural	
parum		poor; filly ; puer
putō	compute	
sciō	science ; prescient	shyster ; schism ; rescind ; shed
signum	sign; signal ; seal	
similis	similar ; assimilate ; resemble	simplex ; simple ; same; single ; sandhi ; seem

§105. Infinitives

In addition to the present active infinitive (the second principal part) and present passive infinitive (§31), there are three other infinitives in regular use in Latin: the perfect active infinitive, perfect passive infinitive, and future active infinitive. The following chart presents these infinitives and their basic translations:

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
Present	2nd Principal Part vocāre movēre regere “to _____” capere audīre	Change final -e of 2nd Principal Part to -ī (in 3rd conjugation, change final -ere to -ī) vocārī movērī regī “to be _____ed” capī audīrī
Perfect	Perfect Active Stem from 3rd Principal Part + -isse vocāvīsse mōvīsse rēvīsse “to have _____ed” cēpīsse audīvīsse	Perfect Passive Participle + esse vocātus, -a, -um esse mōtus, -a, -um esse rēctus, -a, -um esse “to have been _____ed” captus, -a, -um esse audītus, -a, -um esse
Future	Future Active Participle + esse vocātūrus, -a, -um esse mōtūrus, -a, -um esse rēctūrus, -a, -um esse captūrus, -a, -um esse audītūrus, -a, -um esse “to be about to/ to be going to _____”	Rare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect active infinitive of **eō** may be either **ivisse** or **isse** (< **i-** + **-isse**). Any perfect active stem that ends in short **-i-** contracts with the **-i-** of the perfect active infinitive ending **-isse**. For example: **cupisse, quaesisse**.

2. Deponent verbs have three infinitives: present passive (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example:

cōnārī	to attempt
cōnātus, -a, -um esse	to have attempted
cōnātūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to attempt

3. Semideponent verbs have three infinitives: present active (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example:

audēre	to dare
ausus, -a, -um	to have dared
ausūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to dare

4. A future passive infinitive exists in Latin, but it is rarely used. For its formation see §144, n. 4.
5. The future active infinitive of **sum** (**futūrus, -a, -um esse**) has an alternate form: **fore**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR INFINITIVE FORM.
6. The order of compound infinitive forms may be reversed. For example, **vocātus esse** and **esse vocātus** are equally correct.

Periphrastic Infinitives

Active and passive periphrastics also have infinitive forms. For example:

Active Periphrastic Infinitives

Present	rēctūrus, -a, -um esse	to be about to rule
Perfect	rēctūrus, -a, -um fuisse	to have been about to rule

Passive Periphrastic Infinitives

Present	regendus, -a, -um esse	to be having to be ruled
Perfect	regendus, -a, -um fuisse	to have been having to be ruled

OBSERVATION

The present infinitive of the active periphrastic is also used as the future active infinitive of the verb. Thus, for example, **rēctūrus, -a, -um esse** may be identified as the present infinitive of the active periphrastic of **regō** or as the future active infinitive of **regō**.

§106. Synopsis VII: Complete

When one generates a synopsis that includes the infinitive, the infinitive follows the participle and precedes the imperative. Here is a model synopsis of **agō** in the third person plural neuter:

Principal Parts:		agō, agere, ēgī, āctus		
Person, Number, and Gender:		3rd pl. n.		
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Translation</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Translation</i>
<i>Indicative</i>				
Present	agunt	they are driving	aguntur	they are (being) driven
Imperfect	agēbant	they were driving	agēbantur	they were being driven
Future	agent	they will drive	agentur	they will be driven
Perfect	ēgērunt/ ēgēre	1. they drove 2. they have driven	ācta sunt	1. they (n.) were driven 2. they (n.) have been driven
Pluperfect	ēgerant	they had driven	ācta erant	they (n.) had been driven
Future Perfect	ēgerint	they will have driven	ācta erunt	they (n.) will have been driven
<i>Subjunctive</i>				
Present	agant		agantur	
Imperfect	agerent		agerentur	
Perfect	ēgerint		ācta sint	
Pluperfect	ēgissent		ācta essent	
<i>Participle</i>				
Present	agēns	driving	—	
Perfect	—		āctus, -a, -um	(having been) driven
Future	āctūrus, -a, -um	about to drive	agendus, -a, -um	having to be driven
<i>Infinitive</i>				
Present	agere	to drive	agī	to be driven
Perfect	ēgisse	to have driven	āctus, -a, -um esse	to have been driven
Future	āctūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to drive	RARE	
<i>Imperative</i>				
Singular	age	drive	agere	be driven
Plural	agite	drive (pl.)	agimini	be driven (pl.)

§107. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative

In both English and Latin what someone says may be reported in a *direct quotation*. For example:

He says, "I understand well the poems of Vergil."
 Dīcit, "Carmina Vergilī bene intellegō."

Speech, thoughts, and perceptions may also be reported *indirectly*. In English, no comma and no quotation marks are used, the conjunction "that" is usually added, and changes in pronouns and verb tenses regularly occur. For example:

He says *that he understands well the poems of Vergil*.
 (Original statement: I understand well the poems of Vergil.)
 We thought *that he understood well the poems of Vergil*.
 (Original thought: He understands well the poems of Vergil.)

Each italicized phrase is a subordinate clause, part of a complex sentence, the main clause of which is the introductory phrase (He says, We thought). Such subordinate clauses are rendered in Latin by a construction called **Indirect Statement**. An Indirect Statement in Latin:

1. is introduced by a **verb of perception**
2. lacks a subordinating conjunction equivalent to the English "that"²
3. has a subject in the *accusative* case (called a **Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement**)³
4. has a verb in the infinitive³

OBSERVATION

A verb of perception is a verb of speaking, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like. In addition, certain phrases with related meanings—"There is a rumor," "There was a story," etc.—may also introduce Indirect Statement.

The tense and voice of the infinitive in Indirect Statement correspond as closely as possible to the tense and voice of the verb in the direct statement, thought, or perception that is being reported indirectly. In addition, the infinitive in an Indirect Statement shows time relative to the verb of perception that introduces it.

A *present* infinitive represents an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.

A *perfect* infinitive represents an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

A *future* infinitive represents an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.⁴

2. It is possible in colloquial English to omit the subordinating conjunction "that." For example: "We thought he understood well the poems of Vergil."

3. Cf. the English "I know *him to be* honorable" (= I know that he is honorable).

4. Cf. the relative time of participles, §97.

For example:

Carmina Vergilī bene <i>intelligit</i> .		<i>He understands</i> well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō	<i>eum</i> carmina Vergilī	I think <i>that he understands</i> . . .
Cōgitābam	bene <i>intellegere</i> .	I was thinking <i>that he understood</i> . . .
Cōgitābō		I shall think <i>that he understands</i> . . .
Carmina Vergilī bene <i>intellēxit</i> .		<i>He understood</i> well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō	<i>eum</i> carmina Vergilī	I think <i>that he understood</i> . . .
Cōgitābam	bene <i>intellēxisse</i> .	I was thinking <i>that he had understood</i> . . .
Cōgitābō		I shall think <i>that he understood</i> . . .
Carmina Vergilī bene <i>intelleget</i> .		<i>He will understand</i> well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō	<i>eum</i> carmina Vergilī	I think <i>that he will understand</i> . . .
Cōgitābam	bene <i>intellēctūrum</i>	I was thinking <i>that he would understand</i> . . .
Cōgitābō	<i>esse</i> .	I shall think <i>that he will understand</i> . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Subject Accusative is usually the first word of an Indirect Statement in Latin. The word “that” should be added at the beginning of an English translation of an Indirect Statement, and the infinitive should be translated as a finite verb.
2. In each Indirect Statement the syntax of **eum** is **Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement**.
3. The infinitives **intellegere**, **intellēxisse**, and **intellēctūrum esse** are, respectively, present active, perfect active, and future active. Each is translated into English by a *finite verb* that shows *time relative to the main verb*. Care must be taken to indicate the relative time to the main verb of the infinitive in an Indirect Statement.
4. Any participle that is part of an infinitive in Indirect Statement agrees with the Subject Accusative in *gender, number, and case*. For example, the future active participle **intellēctūrum** (part of the future active infinitive) is *masculine singular accusative* to agree with **eum**.
5. An Indirect Statement is a noun clause. It most often functions as the direct object of the verb of perception that introduces it.

When the infinitive in an Indirect Statement is a linking verb such as **sum**, it is often accompanied by a **Predicate Accusative** or a **Predicate Adjective in the Accusative case**. For example:

Cōgitāsne nostram rēginam esse *fēminam* magnae sapientiae?
Do you think that our queen is *a woman* of great wisdom?
Cōgitāsne nostram rēginam esse *fēlicem*?
Do you think that our queen is *fortunate*?

The syntax of **fēminam** is **Predicate Accusative**, and the syntax of **fēlicem** is **Predicate Adjective in the Accusative case**.

The *esse* of infinitives that are compound forms may be omitted.⁵ For example

Dīcit sē quattuor diēbus ad prōvinciam *profectūram*. (future active infinitive)
 She says that she within four days to the province *will set forth*.
 She says that she *will set forth* to the province within four days.

In the English sentence “It is said that Marcus will lead the troops into battle,” the verb of perception “is said” is used impersonally. In classical Latin this impersonal use of a verb of perception in the passive voice is avoided in the present system. Instead, the subject of the Indirect Statement appears as the subject of the verb of perception. This is called the **personal construction** of an Indirect Statement. For example:

Marcus dīcitur cōpiās in proelium ductūrus esse.
 Marcus is said the troops (d.o.) into battle to be going to lead.
 Marcus is said to be going to lead the troops into battle.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the personal construction the subject of the verb of perception in the passive voice is *nominative*, and the infinitive is translated with its basic meaning (§105). If the infinitive is a compound form, as in the sentence above, the participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the nominative subject of the sentence.
2. If the verb of perception is a compound form in the perfect passive system, it may be used impersonally with the entire Indirect Statement functioning as the impersonal subject. For example:

Dictum est Marcum cōpiās in proelium ductūrum esse.
 It was said that Marcus the troops (d.o.) into battle would lead.
 That Marcus would lead the troops into battle was said.
 It was said that Marcus would lead the troops into battle.

☛ DRILL 107, PAGE 461, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§108. A Note on the Subject Accusative

A Subject Accusative may appear as the subject of an infinitive in constructions other than Indirect Statement. For example:

Optō <i>mē</i> esse bonum.	I desire <i>myself</i> to be good.
Militēs stāre iussit.	<i>The soldiers</i> to stand he ordered. He ordered <i>the soldiers</i> to stand.
Satis est <i>mē</i> servitūte liberārī.	Enough (it) is <i>for me</i> from slavery to be freed. It is enough <i>for me</i> to be freed from slavery.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the syntax of *esse* is Object Infinitive, and the syntax of *mē* is **Subject Accusative**. In the second sentence the syntax of *stāre* is Object Infinitive, and the syntax of *militēs* is **Subject Accusative**. (*optō* and *iubeō* are not verbs of perception.)

5. Cf. the omission of the forms of *sum* in compound forms of the perfect passive system (§53).

2. In the third sentence, the syntax of **liberārī** is Subject Infinitive, and the syntax of **mē** is **Subject Accusative**. It is often convenient to translate such noun clauses with the English words “for . . . to . . .”

§109. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

When a complex sentence is subordinated in Indirect Statement, the main clause appears with a Subject Accusative and verb in the infinitive. The subordinate clause appears with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.⁶ Compare the same sentence presented first as a direct quotation and then in Indirect Statement:

Dux dicit/dicēbat, “Miles quī fūgit poenās dabit.”

The leader says/was saying, “The soldier who fled will pay the penalty.”

Dux dicit militem quī fūgerit poenās datūrum esse.

The leader says that the soldier who *fled* will pay the penalty.

Dux dicēbat militem quī fūgisset poenās datūrum esse.

The leader was saying that the soldier who *had fled* would pay the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative verb (**fūgit**) in the relative clause of the direct quotation appears as a perfect subjunctive in primary sequence (**fūgerit**) and a pluperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence (**fūgisset**) when the direct quotation is reported indirectly. These tenses reflect the fact that the action of the verb in the relative clause in the direct quotation happened *prior* to the time of the main verb (**dicit/dicēbat**).

2. The syntax, for example, of **fūgisset** in the third sentence is **pluperfect subjunctive, Subordinate Clause in Indirect Statement, secondary sequence, time prior to the main verb**.

Although there is no special English translation for the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, the subjunctive mood indicates that the subordinate clause is to be understood as *part of the original statement or perception* being reported indirectly.

By contrast, the indicative mood appears in a subordinate clause in indirect statement when the subordinate clause: 1. is an addition of the writer or speaker of the sentence or 2. contains information vouched for by the writer or speaker. For example:

Cicerō sēnsit rem pūblicam, quam magnopere amābat, servandam esse.

Cicero perceived that the republic, which he greatly was loving, had to be saved.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the person reporting Cicero’s feeling that the republic had to be saved indicates by the use of the indicative mood (**amābat**) in the relative clause either 1. that the entire subordinate clause is *not* part of what Cicero felt, but is rather an addition of the writer or speaker, or 2. that the writer vouches for Cicero’s love of the republic.

● DRILL 109, PAGE 469, MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. When certain types of conditional sentences are subordinated in Indirect Statement, they are treated differently from other complex sentences. The rules for the subordination of conditional sentences are not presented in this book.

§110. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

In both English and Latin, adjectives and adverbs may appear in *three degrees*. For example:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
tall	taller; rather tall	tallest; very tall
quickly	more quickly; rather quickly	most quickly; very quickly

Comparative Degree of Adjectives

All regular first-second- and third-declension adjectives in Latin form the comparative degree in the same way. The comparative degree of every adjective in Latin is a third-declension adjective with two forms in the nominative singular. The endings **-ior** (m./f.), **-ius** (n.) are added to the stem of the positive degree of the adjective. For example:

Positive degree	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
Stem for forming the comparative	pulchr-
Comparative degree	pulchrior, pulchrius
Stem of the comparative adjective	pulchriōr-

The comparative degree of the adjective **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	M./F.	N.	M./F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōra
Gen.	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum
Dat.	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus
Acc.	pulchriōrem	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs/pulchriōrīs	pulchriōra
Abl.	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus

OBSERVATIONS

- The stem of adjectives in the comparative degree is obtained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. For example: genitive singular = **pulchriōris**; stem = **pulchriōr-**.
- The declension of the comparative degree of adjectives uses *some but not all i-stem features* of third-declension adjectives:
 - the ablative singular ending may be either **-e** or **-ī**.
 - the neuter plural nominative/vocative and accusative is **-a** (not **-ia**).
 - the genitive plural ending is **-um** (not **-ium**).
 - the masculine/feminine plural accusative ending may be either **-ēs** or **-īs**.
- The comparative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: “_____er,” “more _____,” “quite _____,” “rather _____,” “too _____.”
- Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the comparative degree. For example: **amantior, amantius**, “more loving”; **optātior, optātius**, “more (having been) desired.”

Comparative Degree of Adverbs

To form the comparative degree of an adverb in Latin, add the ending **-ius** to a stem found by dropping the ending of the positive degree. For example:

Positive degree	pulchrē, fortiter
Stem for forming the comparative	pulchr-, fort-
Comparative degree	pulchrius, fortius

OBSERVATIONS

1. All regular adverbs formed from first-second- and third-declension adjectives form the comparative degree in the same way.
2. The comparative degree of every adverb is identical with the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative adjective.
3. The comparative degree of an adverb has a variety of translations: “more _____-ly,” “quite _____-ly,” “rather _____-ly,” “too _____-ly.”

Superlative Degree of Adjectives

To form the superlative degree of an adjective in Latin, add **-issimus, -a, -um** to the stem of the adjective in the positive degree. If the masculine singular nominative form of the positive degree ends in **-r**, add **-rimus, -a, -um** to that form. For example:

Positive degree	fortis, forte	Stem: fort-
Superlative degree	fortissimus, -a, -um	
Positive degree	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	masc. sing. nom. = pulcher
Superlative degree	pulcherrimus, -a, -um	

Five adjectives in Latin form the superlative degree by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the stem.⁷ These adjectives are:

facilis, facile	easy
difficilis, difficile	difficult
similis, simile	similar
dissimilis, dissimile	dissimilar
humilis, humile	humble

For example:

Positive degree	humilis, humile	Stem: humil-
Superlative degree	humillimus, -a, -um	

OBSERVATIONS

1. The superlative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: “_____ -est,” “most _____,” “very _____.”
2. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the superlative degree. For example: **amantissimus, -a, -um**, “most loving,” **amātissimus, -a, -um**, “most loved.”

7. A sixth adjective, **gracilis, gracile**, “slender, fine, graceful,” also forms its superlative degree by the addition of **-limus**, but the superlative degree of this adjective is rare.

Superlative Degree of Adverbs

To form the superlative degree of an adverb in Latin, add the ending **-ē** to the stem of the superlative degree of the adjective. For example:

Superlative degree of the adjective	fortissimus, -a, -um
Stem of the superlative adjective	fortissim-
Superlative degree of the adverb	fortissimē

OBSERVATION

The superlative degree of an adverb is translated "most _____-ly," "very _____-ly."

When one generates the comparative and superlative forms of an adjective or adverb from the positive form, one is said to **compare** that adjective or adverb. For example:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>Adjective</i>		
honestus, -a, -um honorable	honestior, honestius more honorable, etc.	honestissimus, -a, -um most honorable, etc.
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful	pulchrior, pulchrius more beautiful, etc.	pulcherrimus, -a, -um most beautiful, etc.
fortis, forte brave	fortior, fortius braver, rather brave, etc.	fortissimus, -a, -um bravest, most brave, etc.
<i>Adverb</i>		
honestē honorably	honestius more honorably, etc.	honestissimē most honorably, etc.
pulchrē beautifully	pulchrius more beautifully, etc.	pulcherrimē most beautifully, etc.
fortiter bravely	fortius more bravely, etc.	fortissimē most bravely, etc.

☛ DRILL 110, PAGE 471, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§111. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Certain adjectives and adverbs in Latin have irregular forms in the comparative and superlative degrees. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR FORMS:

A D J E C T I V E S		
<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus, -a, -um good	melior, melius better	optimus, -a, -um best
malus, -a, -um bad	peior, peius⁸ worse	pessimus, -a, -um worst
magnus, -a, -um great	maior, maius⁸ greater	maximus, -a, -um greatest
parvus, -a, -um small	minor, minus smaller	minimus, -a, -um smallest
multus, -a, -um much, many	plūs/plūrēs, plūra more	plūrimus, -a, -um most
_____	prior, prius earlier	prīmus, -a, -um first

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declensions of all irregular comparative adjectives follow the pattern of **pulchrior, pulchrius**, but the genitive plural of **plūs** is **plūrium** (not **plūrum*).
2. The comparative degree of the adjective **multus, -a, -um** has regular comparative adjective forms in the plural, but the singular exists only as a neuter substantive, "(the amount) more," which is usually followed by a Partitive Genitive. For example, **plūrēs amīcī** (more friends [subj.]; **plūrēs** is masculine plural nominative to agree with **amīcī**), but **plūs pecūniae** ([the amount] more of money; **plūs** is a neuter substantive, singular nominative or accusative, followed by **pecūniae**, Partitive Genitive).

A D V E R B S		
<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bene well	melius better	optimē best
male badly	peius⁹ worse	pessimē worst
magnopere greatly	magis more (greatly)	maximē most greatly; especially
parum too little	minus less	minimē least; not at all
multum much	plūs more	plūrium most
_____	prius before, sooner	primum first
saepe often	saepius more often	saepissimē most often
diū for a long time	diūtius longer	diūtissimē longest

OBSERVATION

In the comparative degree several irregular adverbs are identical with the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding comparative adjectives: **melius, peius, minus, and prius**.

☛ DRILL 111, PAGE 475, MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. **Peior, peius** and **maior, maius** are pronounced as if they were spelled **peiior, *peiuis* and **maiior, *mauius*. In each word the first *-i-* combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, *-ei-* or *-ai-*, the latter of which is pronounced exactly the same as *-ae-*. In each case the second *-i-* is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English *-y-*.

9. **Peius** is pronounced as if it were spelled **peiuis*. The first *-i-* combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, *-ei-*. The second *-i-* is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English *-y-*.

§112. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees

The comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs is regularly used to make comparisons between two persons or things. For example:

Altior est filius quam pater (est).
 Taller is the son *than* (his) father (is).
 The son is *taller than* (his) father.
Omnēs sentiunt hunc hominem pulchrius cecinisse quam illum.
 All men feel that this man *more beautifully* sang *than* that man.
 All men feel that this man sang *more beautifully than* that man.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Latin word that corresponds to the English conjunction “than” is **quam**.
2. When comparisons are made with **quam**, the elements being compared must be in the same case.

When someone or something is compared to what is viewed as the *absolute standard* of a particular quality, an **Ablative of Comparison** is used instead of **quam** and the same case. For example:

Patria mihi vītā meā est cārior.
 The homeland is dearer to me *than my life*. (Life is viewed as the absolute standard of dearness.)
Quis est nostrō rēge peior?
 Who is worse *than our king*? (Our king is viewed as the absolute standard of badness.)

The syntax of each italicized word (*vītā*, *rēge*) is **Ablative of Comparison**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Comparison arose from the original separative or “from” function of the ablative case (e.g., From [the standpoint of] my life the country is dearer).

A noun or, more commonly, a neuter singular substantive in the ablative case is used to indicate *the degree or amount by which* persons or things being compared differ. Such an ablative is called an **Ablative of Degree of Difference**. For example:

Multō altior est filius quam pater. *By much* taller is the son than (his) father.
 The son is *much* taller than (his) father.
Multīs ante diēbus Rōmā discessit. Earlier *by many days* from Rome he departed.
 He departed from Rome many *days* earlier.

The syntax of each italicized word (*multō*, *diēbus*) is **Ablative of Degree of Difference**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Degree of Difference is a variety of the Ablative of Means.

A Purpose clause that contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree is frequently introduced by **quō** instead of **ut**. Such a clause is a type of Relative Clause of Purpose (§89). For example:

Clārā vōce dīcō quō melius audiās.

By means of a clear voice I speak *by which (degree)* better you may hear.

I speak by means of a clear voice *in order that by this (degree)* better you may hear.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this construction **quō** is neuter singular ablative of the relative pronoun, and its antecedent is the *entire idea expressed by the main clause*. The syntax of **quō** is Ablative of Degree of Difference (modifying the comparative adverb in the Purpose clause). That is, “I speak by means of a clear voice in order that, *by the degree to which I speak in that way, (by that degree)* you may hear *better.*”

2. The second English translation given above (in order that . . . by this [degree] . . . may) is to be preferred. The English phrase “by this (degree)” preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative pronoun in Latin achieves. The words “in order that . . . may” clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

The Partitive Genitive (§34) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference may be found with adjectives and adverbs in the superlative degree. For example:

Fortissimus omnium es.

The bravest *of all people* you are. (**omnium** = Partitive Genitive)

You are the bravest *of all people*.

Gladium multō optimum habeo.

A sword (d.o.) *by much* the best I have. (**multō** = Ablative of Degree of Difference)

I have *by far* the best sword.

The adverb **quam**, “as,” “how,” may be added to an adjective or adverb in the superlative degree to express the highest possible degree. The resulting phrase is translated “as _____ as possible.”

Quam clārissima est vōx eius.

As clear as possible is her voice.

Her voice is *as clear as possible*.

Pugnāte quam ācerimē.

Fight (pl.) *as fiercely as possible*.

Short Readings

1. The hungry parasite Ergasilus laments his fate.

miser homō est quī ipse sibi quod edit quaerit et id aegrē invenit,
sed ille est miserior quī et aegrē quaerit et nihil invenit;
ille miserrimust[†] quī cum[†] ēsse cupit, tum quod edit nōn habet.

(PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVĪ* 461–63)

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; **edit** = 3rd sing. pres. act. subjunc.

aegrē (adv.) scarcely, with difficulty

[†]**miserrimust** = **miserrimus est**

[†]**cum**, *here* (conj.) when

tum (adv.) then, at that time

2. An excerpt from a prologue spoken by an actor to the audience.

sī vērum dixī, signum clārum date mihi
ut vōs mī esse aequōs iam inde ā prīncipiō sciam.
quī ūtuntur vīnō vetere sapientis putō.

et quī libenter veterēs spectant fābulās. (PLAUTUS, *CASINA* 3–6)

mī = **mihi**

inde (adv.) from there

prīncipium, prīncipiī *n.* beginning

vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

vetus, veteris old

libenter (adv.) gladly

spectō (1-tr.) look (at); observe

fābula, fābulae *f.* story, tale; play, drama

3. The slave Toxilus explains why he is about to throw a party for all those who helped him overcome his enemy.

improbus est homō quī beneficium scit accipere et reddere nescit.

(PLAUTUS, *PERSA* 762)

improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless

beneficium, beneficiī *n.* kindness; favor, benefit

reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return

4. The character Chremes responds to a suggestion that he mind his own business.

homō sum: hūmānī nīl ā mē aliēnum putō. (TERENCE, *HEAUTON TIMOROU MENOS* 77)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien; estranged

5. An example of a proposition based on a false cause

amor fugiendus nōn est; nam ex eō vērissima nāscitur amīcītia.

(*RHĒTORICA AD HERENNIUM* II.35.15)

6. Cicero sums up a description of a Sicilian house that was plundered by Verres.

Domus erat nōn dominō magis ornāmentō quam cīvitātī. (CICERO, *IN VERREM* II 4.5)

ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embellishment

7. In ridiculing an opposing argument, the orator recalls popular opinion about wisdom and stupidity.

sapientissimum esse dīcunt eum cui quod opus sit ipsī veniat in mentem; proximē accēdere† illum quī alteriūs bene inventīs obtemperet. in stultitiā contrā est: minus enim stultus est is cui nihil in mentem venit quam ille quī quod stultē alterī venit in mentem comprobāt. (CICERO, *PRŌ CLUENTIŌ* 84)

proximē (adv.) most nearly

†accēdō, *supply ad sapientissimum*

obtemperō (1-intr.) attend (to),
submit (to) (+ dat.)

stultitia, stultitiae *f.* stupidity, folly

stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

comprobō (1-tr.) approve of, assent to

8. Cicero comments on why elections are so unpredictable.

nihil est incertius vulgō, nihil obscurius voluntāte hominum, nihil fallācius ratiōne tōtā comitiōrum. (CICERO, *PRŌ MURENĀ* 36)

vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude,
crowd

obscurus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure; uncertain

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning;
way, method

comitia, comitiōrum *n. pl.* (elective) assembly
(of the Roman people)

9. Cicero tells Catiline clearly that the conspiracy is at an end.

tenēris undique; lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM I* 6)

undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides

10. After Cicero reassures the senate that all classes of the Roman people will support strong action against Catiline, he summarizes the nature of the plebs.

multō vērō maxima pars eōrum quī in tabernīs sunt, immō vērō†—id enim potius est dīcendum—genus hoc ūniversum amantissimum est ōtī.

(CICERO, *IN CATILINAM IV* 17)

taberna, tabernae *f.* shop

†immō vērō, *introduces a remark that makes a preceding phrase or comment more precise, rather, more precisely*

potius (comparative adv.) rather

ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole

ōtium, ōtīī *n.* leisure

11. In a speech delivered after Cicero's return from exile, the orator recalls those whom he missed most.

quid dulcius hominum generī ab nātūrā datum est quam suī† cuique† liberī?† mihi vērō et propter indulgentiam meam et propter excellēns eōrum ingenium vitā sunt meā cāriōrēs. (CICERO, *POST REDITUM AD POPULUM* 2)

dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant

†suī refers to *cuique*, his own.

†*cuique* = *masc. sing. dat. of indef. pron., each man*

†liberī, *here*, children

indulgentia, indulgentiae *f.* leniency, indulgence

excellēns, excellentis outstanding

12. After Cicero describes the many different areas of expertise required of an orator, he gives the following summary.

quam ob rem nihil in hominum genere r̄arius perfectō† or̄atōre invenīrī potest.

(CICERO, *DE OR̄ATORE* I.127)

r̄arus, -a, -um rare, uncommon

†**perfectus, -a, -um** complete, perfect

13. After Crassus imagines a broader ideal of the orator and his education, he turns to Antonius and comments on his view.

tū autem, quoniam exiguīs quibusdam finibus tōtum or̄atōris mūnus circumdedistī.

hōc facilius nōbīs expōnēs ea quae abs tē dē officiis praeceptisque or̄atōris quaesīta

sunt; . . . (CICERO, *DE OR̄ATORE* I.264)

exiguus, -a, -um small, little, scanty

circumdō (circum- + dō), circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus enclose, surround

expōnō (ex- + pōnō) set out, explain

abs = ab

officium, officiū *n.* duty, function

praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* rule, precept

14. A Ciceronian closing

haec, ut brevissimē dīcī potuerunt, ita ā mē dicta sunt. (CICERO, *DE OR̄ATORE* II.174)

15. Cicero resumes stating his main point after a short digression.

dictum est igitur† ab erudītissimīs virīs nisi sapientem liberum esse nēminem.

(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* 5.33)

†**igitur, here,** so then

erudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

16. In a case argued before Julius Caesar as judge, the orator addresses Caesar directly.

itaque illam tuam praeclārissimam et sapientissimam vōcem† invītus audīvī: “satis

diū vel nātūrae vīxī vel glōriae.” satis, sī ita vīs,† fortasse nātūrae, addō, etiam sī

placet, glōriae, at quod maximum est, patriae certē parum. (CICERO, *PRŌ MARCELLŌ* 25)

itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly

praeclārus, -a, -um (very) famous

†**vōx, here,** sentence, saying

invītus, -a, -um unwilling, reluctant

†**vīs = 2nd sing. pres. act. indic. of volō, velle,**

voluī, — want

fortasse (adv.) perhaps

addō (ad- + dō) add

at (conj.) but

17. In a rhetorical overstatement Cicero favorably compares Roman writers to their Greek predecessors.

. . . sed meum semper iudicium fuit omnia nostrōs aut invēnisse per sē sapientius quam Graecōs aut accepta ab illīs fēcisse meliōra . . .

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAЕ DISPUTATIONES* I.1)

iudicium, iudiciī *n.* judgment, opinion

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

18. An opinion about the nature of death

sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAЕ DISPUTATIONES* I.18)

discessus, discessūs *m.* departure

19. A remark of Aristotle is recalled in a discussion of the relative longevity of mortal beings.

apud† Hypanim fluvium, quī ab Eurōpae parte in Pontum influit, Aristotelēs ait bestiolās quāsdam nāscī quae ūnum diem vīvant.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAЕ DISPUTATIONES* I.94)

†**apud**, *here, near*

Hypanis, Hypanis *m.* Hypanis (a river in Asia Minor); **Hypanim** = *acc. sing.*

fluvius, fluvī *m.* river, stream

Eurōpa, Eurōpae *f.* Europe

Pontus, Pontī *m.* Black Sea

influo, influere, influxi, influxus flow (into)

Aristotelēs, Aristotelis *m.* Aristotle

aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

bestiola, bestiolae *f.* little creature

20. Cicero suggests avoiding pretense.

quodsī vultum tibi, sī incessum fingerēs, quō gravior vidērēre, nōn essēs tuī similis; verba tū fingās et ea dīcās quae nōn sentiās? (CICERO, *DE DIVINATIONE* II.77)

quodsī (conj.) but if

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

incessus, incessūs *m.* walking, gait

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make; contrive

21. After Cicero recommends that extraordinary powers be granted to the young Octavian, the orator explains to the senate why he is sure that Caesar's adopted son will not repeat the mistakes of his father.

nihil est illi† rē pūblicā cārius, nihil vestrā auctōritāte gravius, nihil bonōrum virōrum iudiciō optātius, nihil vērā glōriā dulcius. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* V 50)

†**illi** refers to Octavian.

auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority

iudicium, iudiciī *n.* judgment, opinion

dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant

22. The orator suggests that one of the threats presented by Antony was foreshadowed by Caesar.

invītus dīcō, sed dicendum est: hasta Caesaris, patrēs cōnscrīptī, multīs improbīs et spem adfert et audāciam. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS VIII* 9)

invītus, -a, -um unwilling, reluctant

hasta, hastae *f.* spear; distribution of booty

improbus, -a, -um wicked

adferō, adferre, adtulī, adlātus bring forth; impart, produce

23. Cicero speaks affectionately of his best friend, Atticus.

. . . Pompōnium Atticum sīc amō ut alterum frātre. nihil est illō mihi nec† cārius nec† iūcundius. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIARES XIII.1.5*)

Pompōnius Atticus, Pompōniū Atticī *m.* Pomponius Atticus

†The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

24. When Cicero finds his movements carefully monitored and controlled by Caesar's right-hand man, Antony, he complains to Atticus.

quidnam mihi futūrum est aut quis mē nōn solum infēlicior sed iam etiam turpior? (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM X.12.1*)

quisnam, quidnam (interrog. pron.) who, tell me; what, tell me

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

25. Caesar describes a moment of confusion in his camp as the enemy unexpectedly attacks.

tōtis trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ VI.37*)

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic

tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar

26. Caesar describes rumors flying through the camp.

alius castra iam capta prōnuntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ VI.37*)

prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

barbarus, -a, -um foreign

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus struggle; claim

27. The historian describes the character of the early Romans.

igitur domī militiaeque bonī mōrēs colēbantur; concordia maxuma, minuma avāritia erat; iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 9)

militia, militiae *f.* military service; **militiae** = *loc.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate

concordia, concordiae *f.* harmony

maxuma = **maxima**

minuma = **minima**

avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice

28. Catiline exhorts his troops before the final battle against Cicero's forces.

semper in proeliō eīs maximum est perīculum quī maxumē timent; audācia prō mūrō habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 58)

maximum = **maximum**

maxumē = **maximē**

29. Adherbal addresses the Roman senate about his cousin Jugurtha's cruel treatment of captives.

captī ab Iugurthā pars in crucem āctī, pars bestiīs obiectī sunt, paucī, quibus relicta est anima, clausī in tenebrīs cum maerōre et lūctū morte graviōrem vītam exigunt.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 14)

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha (king of Numidia)

crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal

obicīō (ob- + iaciō) throw in front of, throw to (+ dat.)

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus close, shut; confine, enclose

tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

maeror, maerōris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

exigō (ex- + agō), exigere, exēgī, exāctus drive out; spend, pass

30. The biographer offers his opinion about the egotism of the Athenian politician and general Alcibiades.

huic maximē putāmus malō fuisse nimiam opīniōnem ingenīi atque virtūtis.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VITA ALCIBIADIS* 7)

nimius, -a, -um excessive, too great

opīniō, opīniōnis *f.* opinion, judgment

31. The shepherd Mopsus shows deference to his friend Menalcas.

tū maior: tibi mē est aequum pārēre . . . (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* V.4)

32. After a storm has torn apart the Trojan fleet, Aeneas tries to revive the spirits of his companions.

ō sociī (neque enim ignārī sumus ante malōrum),

ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque finem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.198–99)

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, ignorant, unaware

33. The Trojan Ilioneus, fearing that his friend and leader is dead, describes Aeneas to Dido.

rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter

nec pietāte fuit nec bellō maior et armīs. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.544–45)

iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right

pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

34. The poet declares a new beginning for the war books that make up the second half of his epic.

. . . maior rērum mihi nāscitur ordō,

maius opus moveō. . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* VII.44–45)

ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class

35. Aeneas taunts an enemy in battle.

quō, moritūre, ruis maiōraque vīribus audēs? (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.803)

quō (interrog. adv.) (to) where, whither

ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush, run

36. The poet advises a friend to take nothing for granted.

inter spem cūramque, timōrēs inter et irās

omnem crēde diem tibi dīlūxisse suprēmum:

grāta superveniet quae nōn spērābitur hōra. (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.4.12–14)

dīlūcēsco, dīlūcēscere, dīlūxī, — become light,
dawn

superveniō (super- + veniō) come down from
above, arrive (unexpectedly)

suprēmus, -a, -um final, last

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming,
pleasing

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

37. The elegist makes reference to Vergil's *Aeneid* as it is being written.

cēdite, Rōmānī scrīptōrēs, cēdite, Graī!

nescio quid† maius nāscitur Īliade. (PROPERTIUS II.34.65–66)

scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer

Graius, -a, -um Greek; **Graī** = *voc. pl.*; **Graī** scans as if it were spelled *Graīi.

†**nescioquis, nescioquid** (indef. pron.) *sometimes written as two words*, someone or other, something or other

Īlias, Īliadis *f.* the *Iliad*

38. In a poetic fiction Sappho addresses her beloved.

tū mihi cūra, Phaōn! tē somnia nostra redūcunt,

somnia formōsō candidiōra diē;

illīc tē inveniō, quamvīs regiōnibus absīs;

sed nōn longa satis gaudia somnus habet. (OVID, *HERŌIDES* XV.123–26)

Phaōn, Phaōnis *m.* Phaon

somnium, somniū *n.* dream

redūcō (re- + dūcō) lead back, bring back

formōsus, -a, -um beautiful

candidus, -a, -um white, bright, radiant

illīc (adv.) there

quamvīs (conj. + subjunc.) although

regiō, regiōnis *f.* region, land

absum (ab- + sum), abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus

be absent

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

39. Helen addresses Paris in an imaginary letter.

apta magis Venerī quam sunt tua corpora† Martī.

bella gerant fortēs; tū, Pari, semper amā! (OVID, *HERŌIDES* XVII.253–54)

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit

†**corpus, here, pl.,** (physical) bearing, physique

Paris, Paridis *m.* Paris (son of Priam); **Pari** = *voc. sing.*

40. The poet explains why he writes elegiac poetry.

Arma gravī numerō violentaque bella parābam

ēdere, māteriā conveniente modīs;

pār erat inferior versus; rīsisse Cupīdō

dīcitur atque ūnum surripuisse pedem. (OVID, *AMŌRES* I.1–4)

numerus, numerī *m.* number; meter

violentus, -a, -um violent

ēdō (ē- + dō) produce

māteria, māteriaē *f.* material; subject matter

conveniō (con- + veniō) fit, be suitable (+ dat.)

pār, paris equal

inferior, inferius lower

versus, versūs *m.* (line of) verse

rīdēō, rīdēre, rīdī, rīsūs laugh (at)

surripīō, surripere, surripuī, surreptus take

secretly, steal

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

41. The advice-giving poet recommends persistence to the would-be lover.

quid magis est saxō dūrum, quid mollius undā?

dūra tamen mollī saxa cavantur aquā.

Pēnelopēn ipsam, perstā modo, tempore vincēs;

capta vidēs sērō Pergama, capta tamen. (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* I.475–78)

saxum, saxī *n.* rock

mollis, molle soft

unda, undae *f.* wave; water

cavō (1-tr.) make hollow, hollow out

aqua, aquae *f.* water

Pēnelopē, Pēnelopēs *f.* Penelope; **Pēnelopēn**

= *acc. sing.*

perstō (per- + stō) stand firm, remain

steadfast, persevere

sērō (adv.) late

Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel

of Troy); Troy

42. The poet gives advice on concealing a particular physical flaw.

sī brevis es, sedeās nē stāns videāre sedēre. (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* III.263)

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated

43. When Hannibal hesitates to follow up his victory at Cannae by pressing his advantage, his lieutenant Maharbal criticizes him. The historian comments on the benefit to Rome.

“nōn omnia nīmīrum eīdem dī dedēre. vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescīs.”

mora eius diēi satis† crēditur salūtī fuisse urbī atque imperiō.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXII.51.4)

nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, evidently

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

†**satis**, *here*, generally

44. After a murderous plot is foiled in the Sicilian town of Syracuse, the public's emotions rage back and forth concerning what to do with the conspirators. The historian characterizes the crowd.

ea nātūra multitūdinis est: aut servit humiliter aut superbē dominātur; libertātem, quae media est, nec struere modicē nec habēre sciunt.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXIV.25.8)

multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude

serviō, servīre, servīi/servīvī, servītum be a slave

superbē (adv.) proudly; haughtily, arrogantly

dominor (1-intr.) be a master

struō, struere, strūxī, strūctus construct, devise

modicē (adv.) moderately, temperately

45. The historian describes the valor of C. Popilius Sabellus in a battle against the Histri, a people living along the lower Danube river.

is pede sauciō relictus longē plūrimōs hostium occīdit.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XLI.4.6)

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

saucius, -a, -um wounded

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill

46. Part of a consul's address to his soldiers, in which he explains his delay in beginning a battle with the enemy, caused in part by his concern for constructing a military camp

maiōrēs vestrī castra mūnīta portum ad† omnēs cāsūs exercitūs dūcēbant esse, unde ad pugnam exīrent, quō iactātī tempestāte pugnae receptum habērent.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XLIV.39.2)

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīi/mūnīvī, mūnītus
fortify

portus, portūs *m.* port, harbor; haven

†**ad**, *here*, against

pugna, pugnae *f.* battle

exeō (ex- + eō) go out

iactō (1-tr.) toss, harass

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm

receptus, receptūs *m.* place of retreat, refuge

47. The tribune Valerius Flaccus concludes an address to his men, in which he encourages them to fight against Hannibal's besieging forces.

ego certē speciōsam optāns mortem aut fēlicem audāciae exitum vel sōlus prōcurrere parātus sum. (VALERIUS MAXIMUS, *FACTA ET DICTA MEMORABILIA* III.2.20)

speciōsus, -a, -um beautiful, splendid, brilliant

exitus, exitūs *m.* outcome

vel (adv.) even

prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prōcurrī, prōcursūrus rush forth (into battle)

48. An utterance of a jurist in a rhetorical exercise

quaedam iūra nōn scripta, sed omnibus scriptis certiōra sunt.

(SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRŌVERSIAE* I.1.14)

49. The philosopher quotes the opinion of the Greek philosopher Epicurus about the nature of poverty and comments upon it.

“honestā,” inquit, “rēs est laeta paupertās.” Illa vērō nōn est paupertās sī laeta est; nōn quī parum habet sed quī plūs cupit pauper est.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* II.6)

paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty

pauper, pauperis poor

50. The philosopher ponders the relation between hope and fear.

quemadmodum eadem catēna et custōdiam et mīlitem cōpulat, sic ista, quae tam dissimilia sunt, pariter incēdunt; spem metus sequitur.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* V.7)

catēna, catēnae *f.* chain

custōdia, custōdiae *f.* captive, prisoner

cōpulō (1-tr.) unite; connect

tam (adv.) so

pariter (adv.) equally; in like manner

incēdō (in- + cēdō) proceed; appear, occur

51. Having explained that a beneficial friendship arises between people of like minds and similar learning, the philosopher gives his younger friend a reason to be quick in his studies.

Adfer itaque tē mihi ingēns mūnus, et quō magis instēs, cōgitā tē mortālem esse, mē senem. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* XXXV.3)

adferō, adferre, adtulī, adlātus bring forth; give

itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly

instō (in- + stō), **instāre, institī**, — press on, pursue eagerly

senex, senis old

52. Phaedra explains her silence.

cūrae levēs locuntur,† ingentēs stupent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *PHAEDRA* 607)

†**locuntur = loquuntur**

stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, — be stunned (into silence)

53. In an imagined conversation with his friend Serenus, the philosopher first asks whether his friend believes that the philosophers they admire lived up to their own ideals.

nōn dubiē respondēbis sic illōs vīxisse quemadmodum dīxerant esse vīvendum:
atquī nēmō illōrum rem pūblicam administrāvit. “nōn fuit,” inquis, “illīs aut ea
fortūna aut ea dignitās quae admittī ad pūblicārum rērum tractātiōnem solet.”

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VIII.6.5)

dubiē (adv.) doubtfully; **nōn dubiē**, undoubtedly
atquī (conj.) and yet, but still
administrō (1-tr.) take charge of, manage

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status
admittō (ad- + mittō) admit; grant access
tractātiō, tractātiōnis *f.* management

54. Age and wisdom are not necessarily linked.

saepe grandis nātū senex nūllum aliud habet argumentum quō sē probet diū
vīxisse praeter aetātem. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* IX.3.8)

grandis, grande great
nātus, nātūs *m.* birth; age
senex, senis old
argumentum, argumentī *n.* proof

probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life

55. Pompey the Great rushes to arms without fear.

aut nihil est sēnsūs animīs ā morte relictum
aut mors ipsa nihil. . . . (LUCAN, *BELLUM CĪVĪLE* III.39)

56. Pliny identifies two worthy human endeavors.

equidem beātōs putō quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scribenda aut
scribere legenda. (PLINY THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE* VI.16.3)

beātus, -a, -um blessed, happy, fortunate

57. The historian reports a claim and a practice of the Germans.

fuisse apud eōs et Herculem memorant, prīmumque omnium virōrum fortium itūrī
in proelia canunt. (TACITUS, *GERMĀNIA* 3.1)

Herculēs, Herculis *m.* Hercules (son of Jupiter and Alcmene)
memorō (1-tr.) recount, relate; say

58. Aulus Gellius recalls the opinion of an ancient poet.

alius quīdam veterum poētārum, cuius nōmen mihi nunc memoriae nōn est,
vēritātem temporis filiam esse dīxit. (AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* XII.11.7)

vetus, veteris old; **veterum** = *gen. pl.*
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Boeōtia* frag.1–9

A fragment from a lost play of Plautus, in which a parasite makes a lament

ut† illum dī perdant p̄rimus quī hōrās repperit
 quīque adeō p̄rimus statuit hīc sōlārium;
 quī mihi comminuit miserō articulātīm diem.
 nam ūnum mē puerō venter erat sōlārium,
 multō omnium istōrum optimum et vērissimum.
 ubi is tē monēbat, ēssēs, nisi cum† nīl erat;
 nunc etiam quod est nōn ēstur nisi sōlī libet.
 itaque adeō iam opplētum oppidum est sōlāriis:
 maior pars populī āridī reptant fame.

5

†ut = **utinam**

perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy, kill

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus find, discover

adeō (adv.) to that point; to such an extent; in addition to that, moreover

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand, set up, erect, station

hīc (adv.) here

sōlārium, sōlārī *n.* sundial

comminuō, comminuere, comminūī,

comminūtus break into pieces, shatter

articulātīm (adv.) limb by limb, limb from limb

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; **ēssēs** = 2nd *sing. imperf. act. subjunc.*, *iterative subjunc.*, “you used to eat”; **ēstur** = 3rd *sing. pres. pass. indic.*

†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

libet, libere, libuit or libitum est (impersonal verb) it is pleasing

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

oppleō, opplere, opplēvī, opplētus fill completely, fill up

āridus, -a, -um dry; parched, shriveled

reptō (1-intr.) crawl about, creep along

famēs, famis *f.* hunger, starvation

2. Cicero, *Prō Quīnctiō* 95

The orator summarizes the terrible predicament of his client.

miserum est exturbārī fortūnīs omnibus, miserius iniūriā; acerbum est ab aliquō circumvenīrī, acerbius ā propinquō; calamitōsum est bonīs ēvertī, calāmitōsius cum dēdecore; fūnestum est ā fortī atque honestō virō iugulārī, fūnestius ab eō cuius vōx in praeconiō quaestū prōstitit: indignum est ā parī vincī aut superiōre, indignius ab īferiōre atque humiliōre; luctuōsum est trādī alterī cum bonīs, luctuōsius inimicō; horribile est causam capitis dīcere, horribilius priōre locō[†] dīcere.

exturbō (1-tr.) drive out, drive away

iniūriā (adv.) unjustly

aliquō = *masc. sing. abl. of indefinite pron., someone*

circumveniō (*circum* + *veniō*) circumvent, deceive, cheat

propinquus, propinquī *m.* relation, relative

calamitōsus, -a, -um ruinous, destructive

ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversus turn out, drive out

dēdecus, dēdecoris *n.* shame, disgrace, dishonor

fūnestus, -a, -um deadly, fatal, destructive

iugulō (1-tr.) cut the throat of, kill, slay

praecōnius, -a, -um of a public herald

quaestus, quaestūs *m.* profit; **quaestus**

praecōnius, office of the public herald

prōstō (*prō* + *stō*), **prōstāre, prōstitī**, —
be set out for sale

indignus, -a, -um unworthy

pār, paris equal

superior, superius superior

īferior, īferius inferior

luctuōsus, -a, -um full of sorrow, lamentable, grievous

horribilis, horribile horrible, dreadful

caput, capitis *n.* head; life; **causam capitis dīcere**, to plead a case for one's life

[†]**priōre locō**, in the earlier place (i.e., before the prosecution has spoken)

3. Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 30

Cicero compares two skills of great importance in Roman life.

duae sint artēs igitur quae possint locāre hominēs in amplissimō gradū dignitātis, ūna imperātōris, altera ōrātōris bonī. ab hōc enim pācis ornāmenta retinentur, ab illō bellī perīcula repelluntur. cēterae tamen virtūtēs ipsae per sē multum valent, iūstitia, fidēs, pudor, temperantia; quibus tē, Servī, excellere omnēs intellegunt.

locō (1-tr.) place	cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished	iūstitia, iūstitiae <i>f.</i> justice, fairness, equity
gradus, gradūs <i>m.</i> step, pace; tier, rank	pudor, pudōris <i>m.</i> shame, decency, modesty
dignitās, dignitātis <i>f.</i> dignity, rank, status	temperantia, temperantiae <i>f.</i> self-control, moderation
ornāmentum, ornāmentī <i>n.</i> adornment, embellishment	Servius, Serviī <i>m.</i> Servius (Sulpicius Rufus) (the prosecutor in the case)
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp	excellō, excellere, —, — be superior, be conspicuous, excel
repellō (re- + pellō), repellere, reppulī, repulsus push back, repel	

The *Prō Murēnā* is Cicero's speech in defense of L. Licinius Murena (consul 62 B.C.E.), who was charged with corruption after his victory in the consular elections in 63. The trial took place at the time of the exposure of the Catilinarian conspiracy. The prosecution was supported by, among others, Cato the Younger, the staunch moral and political conservative.

4. Cicero, *In Catilīnam* I 27

In his speech attacking Catiline, Cicero uses the rhetorical device of *prosopopoeia*, a sustained speech in character with words and gestures appropriate to the assumed identity.

etenim sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārior, sī cūncta Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica loquātur: “M. Tullī, quid agis? tūne eum quem esse hostem comperistī, quem ducem bellī futūrum vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castrīs hostium sentīs, auctōrem sceleris, prīncipem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocātōrem servōrum et cīvium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videātur?”

cūnctus, -a, -um all	coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis <i>f.</i> conspiracy
comperiō, comperīre, comperī, compertus find out, learn	ēvocātor, ēvocātōris <i>m.</i> summoner, recruiter
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect	perditus, -a, -um lost, degenerate, desperate
auctor, auctōris <i>m.</i> source, author	exeō (ex- + eō) go out
scelus, sceleris <i>n.</i> wicked deed, crime; villainy	abs = ab
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief; <i>subst.</i> , leading man	ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out
	immittō (in- + mittō) send in, send against

5. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.178

Cicero explains why it is important for an orator to appeal to an audience's emotions.

plūra enim multō hominēs iūdicant odiō aut amōre aut cupiditatē aut irācundiā aut dolōre aut aliquā permōtiōne mentis quam vēritatē aut praescrīptō aut iūris normā aliquā aut iūdicī formulā aut lēgibus.

iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

irācundia, irācundiae *f.* hot temper, anger

dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

aliquā = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any

permōtiō, permōtiōnis *f.* strong emotion

vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth

praescrīptum, praescrīptī *n.* rule, precept

norma, normae *f.* standard

iūdicium, iūdicīi *n.* judgment, opinion; legal proceeding

formula, formulae *f.* formula, rule, standard

The *Dē Ōrātōre* is a dialogue written shortly after Cicero's forced retirement from public life in 55 B.C.E. The dialogue is set in 91, and the chief speakers are the orators L. Licinius Crassus and M. Antonius (the grandfather of Marc Antony). The date places the dialogue immediately before the beginning of the war between Rome and her Italian allies or *socii*. This Social War marks the beginning of a series of internal conflicts in the Roman Republic. All the characters in this fictional dialogue are historical, and many of them were to die within a few years of the dramatic date of the dialogue. In the first of the three books of the *Dē Ōrātōre*, the speakers discuss the importance of a liberal education for an orator. The remaining books are devoted to a closer analysis of the various parts of oratory.

6. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* III.127

A report about what the sophist Hippias of Elis claimed when he happened to attend the Olympic games

. . . glōriātus est cūctā paene audiente Graeciā nihil esse ūllā in arte rērum omnium quod ipse nesciret; nec solum hās artis, quibus liberālēs doctrīnae atque ingenuae continērentur, geōmetriam, mūsicam, litterārum cognitiōnem et poētārum, atque illa quae dē nātūrīs rērum, quae dē hominum mōribus, quae dē rēbus pūblicis dīcerentur, sē tenēre sed ānulum quem habēret, pallium quō amictus, soccōs quibus indūtus esset sē suā manū cōnfēcisse.

glōrior (1-tr.) boast

cūctus, -a, -um all

paene (adv.) nearly, almost

liberālis, liberāle befitting a free man, honorable

doctrīna, doctrīnae *f.* teaching; science, art

ingenuus, -a, -um free-born; noble

contineō (con- + teneō), continēre, continuī, contentus hold in; *passive*, consist in, rest upon (+ abl.)

geōmetria, geōmetriae *f.* geometry

mūsica, mūsicae *f.* (art of) music

litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* literature

cognitiō, cognitiōnis *f.* knowledge, familiarity (with) (+ gen.)

ānulus, ānulī *m.* ring

pallium, palliī *n.* cloak

amicīō, amicīre, amicuī, amictus clothe, cover

soccus, soccī *m.* (light) shoe

induō, induere, induī, indūtus clothe, dress

cōnficiō (con- + faciō) make, produce

7. Catullus I (hendecasyllable; see §113)

The dedicatory poem of Catullus's published **libellus**

Cui dōnō lepidum novum libellum

āridā modo pūmice expolitum?

Cornēlī, tibi; namque tū solēbās

meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās

iam tum, cum[†] ausus es ūnus Italōrum

5

omne aevum tribus explicāre cartīs

doctīs, Iuppiter, et labōriōsīs.

quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī

quālecumque; quod, <ō> patrōna virgō,

plūs ūnō maneat perenne saeclo.

10

lepidus, -a, -um pleasant, charming, elegant

libellus, libellī m. (little) book

āridus, -a, -um dry

modo (adv.) only, now; just now

pūmex, pūmicis f. pumice stone

expoliō, expolire, expoliī/expolīvī, expolitū

smooth, polish, finish

Cornēlius, Cornēliī m. Cornelius (Nepos) (writer of history and biography)

aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something

nūgae, nūgārum f. pl. trifles, nuggets; nonsense

tum (adv.) then, at that time

[†]**cum**, *here* (conj.) when

Italī, Italōrum m. pl. Italians

aevum, aevī n. age, lifetime; generation

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, reveal, explain

c(h)arta, c(h)artae f. leaf (of papyrus); book

doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite

labōriōsus, -a, -um full of labor, elaborate

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*, whatever

quālecumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.*, of whatever sort

patrōna, patrōnae f. patroness, protectress

virgō, virginis f. maiden, virgin

perennis, perenne everlasting, perpetual, perennial

saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī n. age, generation

8. Catullus XIII (hendecasyllable; see §113)

The poet issues an unusual invitation.

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
 paucīs, sī tibi dī favent, diēbus,
 sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
 cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs.
 haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
 cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī
 plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
 sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs
 seu quid[†] suāvius ēlegantiusve est;
 nam unguentum dabo,[†] quod meae puellae
 dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
 quod tū cum[†] olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
 tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

5

10

cēnō (1-intr.) dine

Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum be favorable, favor
 (+ dat.)

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring
 toward, bring along

cēna, cēnae *f.* dinner

candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant

vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

sal, salis *n.* salt; wit

cachinnus, cachinnī *m.* loud laugh

venustus, -a, -um charming, pleasing

plēnus, -a, -um full

sacculus, sacculī *m.* (little) bag, wallet

arānea, arāneae *f.* spider; cobweb

merus, -a, -um pure, unmixed

seu (conj.) or if

[†]quid, here, neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,
 anything

suāvis, suāve sweet, pleasant; fragrant

ēlegāns, ēlegantis select, tasteful, elegant

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

unguentum, unguentī *n.* ointment; perfume

[†]The -ō of dabō here scans *short*.

dōnārunt = dōnāvērunt

[†]cum, here (conj.) when

olfaciō, olfacere, olfēcī, olfactus smell

rogō (1-tr.) ask

nāsus, nāsī *m.* nose

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.32–33

After representatives of the Gallic tribes (led by their spokesman Diviciacus) tearfully expressed their concern about the Germans' incursions into their territory, Caesar noticed and inquired about the grim silence of the Sequani.

cum† ab hīs† saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit: hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod† sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxiliū implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī. hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum. hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit.

†cum, here (conj. + subjunc.) when

†hīs = the Sequani

exprimō (ex- + premō), exprimere, expressī, expressus squeeze out, wring out, elicit

Dīviciācus, Dīviciāci *m.* Diviciacus (leader of the Aeduans)

Aeduus, -a, -um Aeduan (a member of the Aedui, a Gallic tribe)

Sēquanī, Sēquanōrum *m. pl.* (the) Sequani (a Gallic tribe)

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

†quod, here (conj.) because

occultum, occultī *n.* secrecy; in occultō, in secret

queror, querī, questus sum complain, lament

implōrō (1-tr.) ask for

absēns, absentis absent

Ariovistus, Ariovistī *m.* Ariovistus (German king)

crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis *f.* cruelty, harshness

velut (conj.) just as

cōram (adv.) face to face

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present

horreō, horrēre, horruī, — shudder at, tremble at

proptereā quod (conj.) because

facultās, facultātis *f.* opportunity, possibility

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

recipiō (re- + capiō) receive, welcome

potestās, potestātis *f.* power

cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment

cōfirmō (1-tr.) strengthen, encourage

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum promise

beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority; influence

addūcō (ad- + dūcō) induce, persuade

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

concilium, conciliī *n.* council, meeting, assembly

dīmittō (dis- + mittō) send away, dismiss

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* II.3

When Caesar reaches the territory of the Belgae by a surprisingly swift march, a neighboring tribe responds.

eō† cum† dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecombōgium prīmōs cīvitātis mīsērunt quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum omnīnō coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; . . .

†eō, *here* (adv.) to that place (= the territory of the Belgae)
 †cum, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) when
 imprōvisum, imprōvisī *n.* that which is unforeseen; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly
 celeriter (adv.) swiftly
 opīniō, opīniōnis *f.* opinion, belief
 Rēmī, Rēmōrum *m. pl.* (the) Remi (a Gallic tribe)
 proximus, -a, -um nearest, next
 Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
 Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae (a Gallic tribe of Celtic and German descent)
 Iccius, Iccī *m.* Iccius
 Andecombōgius, Andecombōgi *m.* Andecombogius

potestās, potestātis *f.* power
 permittō (per- + mittō) entrust; permittere, *supply sē as Subject Accusative*
 reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
 cōnsentiō (con- + sentiō) agree; plot together
 coniūrō (1-intr.) swear together; conspire
 obses, obsidis *m. or f.* hostage
 imperātum, imperātī *n.* order, command
 recipiō (re- + capiō) receive, welcome; recipere, *supply eōs*
 frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain
 cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), (the) other
 iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, aid; iuvāre, *supply eōs*

11. Vergil, *Eclogues* I.19–25

One shepherd tells another (Meliboeus) of a mistaken idea.

Urbem quam dīcunt† Rōmam, Meliboee, putāvī
 stultus ego huic nostrae similem, quō saepe solēmus 20
 pastōrēs ovium tenerōs dēpellere fētūs.
 sīc canibus catulōs similēs, sīc mātribus haedōs
 nōram, sīc parvīs compōnere magna solēbam.
 vērūm haec tantum aliās inter caput extulit urbēs
 quantum lenta solent inter vīburna cupressī. 25

†dīcō, *here*, call

Meliboeus, Meliboeī *m.* Meliboeus

stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

pastor, pastōris *m.* shepherd

ovis, ovis, -ium *m.* or *f.* sheep

tener, tenera, tenerum tender; young

dēpellō (dē- + pellō) drive (away)

fētus, fētūs *m.* offspring, young

canis, canis *m.* or *f.* dog

catulus, catulī *m.* puppy

haedus, haedī *m.* young goat, kid

nōram = nōveram

compōnō (con- + pōnō) put together; compose;
 compare

tantum (adv.) to so great an extent, so greatly, so
 much

caput, capitis *n.* head

efferō (ex- + ferō) raise up, bring forth, elevate

quantum (adv.) (as much) as, (as greatly) as;

tantum . . . quantum . . . , as much . . . as . . .

lentus, -a, -um pliant; clinging

vīburnum, vīburnī *n.* guelder rose

cupressus, cupressī *f.* cypress tree

12. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.40–56

Aeneas reports the vain warning of the priest Laocoön as the Trojans debate whether to bring the Greeks' gift of a horse into the city.

p̄rimus ibi ante omnīs magnā comitante catervā 40
 Lāocoön ardēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,
 et procul “ō miserī, quae tanta īnsānia, cīvēs?
 crēditis āvectōs hostīs? aut ūlla putātis
 dōna carēre dolīs Danaum? sīc nōtus Ulīxēs?
 aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī, 45
 aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,
 īnspectūra† domōs ventūraque† dēs super urbī,
 aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite,† Teucrī,
 quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentīs.”

ibi (adv.) there; then

comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend

caterva, catervae *f.* throng, crowd, troop

Lāocoön, Lāocoöntis *m.* Laocoön

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage

dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dē(cu)currī, dēcursum run
 down, hurry down

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance

tantus, -a, -um so great

īnsānia, īnsāniae *f.* madness, insanity

āvehō, āvehere, āvexī, āvectus convey away;
passive, go away, depart

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick; cunning

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks;

Danaum = Danaōrum

Ulīxēs, Ulīxis *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose

lignum, lignī *n.* wood

occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal

Achīvī, Achīvōrum *m. pl.* Achaeans, Greeks

fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, construct, devise

māchina, māchinae *f.* mechanism; structure

īnspicō, īnspicere, īnspexi, īnspectus examine,
 inspect, observe

**†īnspectūra, ventūra, fut. act. participles expressing
 purpose**, in order to . . .

dēs super (adv.) from above

aliquis = *masc. nom. sing. of indef. pron. used
 adjectivally*, some

lateō, latēre, latuī, — (intr.) hide, lie hidden,
 be concealed

error, errōris *m.* mistake; deceit

equus, equī *m.* horse

†nē crēdite = negative imper.

Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer,
 Teucrians, Trojans

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*,
 whatever

sīc fātus validīs ingentem vīribus hastam
 in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum
 contorsit. stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō
 īnsonuēre cavae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.
 et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,
 impulerat ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,
 Troiaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta, manērēs.

for (1-tr.) speak, utter
hasta, hastae *f.* spear
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
ferus, ferī *m.* wild beast
curvus, -a, -um curved
compāgēs, compāgis *f.* joint, seam; fastening
alvus, alvī *f.* belly
contorqueō, contorquēre, contorsī, contortus
 twist; hurl
tremō, tremere, tremuī, — tremble, quiver,
 shake
uterus, uterī *m.* belly, womb
recutiō, recutere, recussī, recussus strike (back),
 shake
īnsonō, īnsonāre, īnsonuī, — make a loud
 noise, resound

cavus, -a, -um hollow
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
caverna, cavernae *f.* cavern, cavity, hollow
laevus, -a, -um left; unfavorable, adverse; dull
impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
 push on; drive, compel; **impulerat**, *pluperf.*
indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Mixed
Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence; subj. is
"he" (Laocoön)
Argolicus, -a, -um of Argos, Argive; Greek
foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile; wound savagely,
 mangle; *supply nōs as subj. of foedāre*
latebra, latebrae *f.* hiding place, lair, recess
Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* III.374–80

Helenus the seer begins his response to Aeneas, who has asked for advice on how to proceed to Italy.

Nāte deā (nam tē maiōribus ire per altum
 auspiciīs manifesta fidēs;† sīc fāta deum rēx 375
 sortitur volvitque vicēs, is vertitur ordō)
 pauca tibi ē multīs, quō tūtior hospita lūstrēs
 aequora et Ausoniō possīs cōnsidere portū,
 expediam dictīs; prohibent nam cētera Parcae
 scīre Helenum fārīque vetat Sātūrnīa Iūnō . . . 380

auspiciū, auspiciī *n.* augury, omen
manifestus, -a, -um revealed by clear signs, plain,
 obvious
 †**fidēs**, *here*, proof
sortior, sortiri, sortitus sum assign by lot,
 determine
volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus turn, turn over;
 bring round
 —, **vicis** *f.* turning, turn; change; lot
vertō, vertere, verti, versus turn
ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence
tūtus, -a, -um safe
hospitus, -a, -um hospitable
lūstrō (1-tr.) traverse; survey
aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water
Ausonius, -a, -um of Ausonia, Ausonian, Italian

cōnsidō, cōnsidere, cōnsēdī, — sit; settle,
 make one's home
portus, portūs *m.* harbor; refuge, haven
expediō, expedire, expediti/expeditivī, expeditus
 unravel, explain
prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibuī,
prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
 (the) other
Parcae, Parcārum *f. pl.* Parcae (goddesses of fate)
Helenus, Helenī *m.* Helenus (seer, son of Priam)
for (1-tr.) speak, utter
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid
Sātūrnīus, -a, -um of Saturn (king of the Titans
 and father of Juno); Saturnian

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.653–57

The wounded Rutulian Saces implores Turnus to enter the battle.

Turne, in tē suprēma salūs, miserēre tuōrum.
 fulminat Aenēās armīs summāsque minātur
 dēiectūrum arcēs Italum excidiōque datūrum, 655
 iamque facēs ad tēcta volant. in† tē ōra Latīnī,
 in† tē oculōs referunt;† . . .

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
suprēmus, -a, -um final, last
misereror, miserēri, miseritus sum pity, take pity
 on (+ gen.)
fulminō (1-intr.) strike (like lightning), flash
 fiercely
minor (1-intr.) threaten
dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, topple, over-
 throw; **dēiectūrum, datūrum**, *subject is sē*
arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

Italī, Italōrum *m. pl.* Italians; **Italum = Italōrum**
excidium, excidiū *n.* (military) destruction
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house
volō (1-intr.) fly
 †**in**, *here*, toward
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face
Latīnī, Latīnōrum *m. pl.* (the) Latins (the peoples
 of Latium)
 †**referō**, *here*, direct

15. Horace, *Carmina* I.5 (Asclepiadean; see §113)

The poet addresses an old and dangerous flame.

Quis† multā gracilis tē puer in rosā
 perfūsus liquidīs urget odōribus
 grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?
 cui flāvam religās comam
 simplex munditiīs? heu quotiēns fidem 5
 mūtātōsque deōs flēbit et aspera
 nigrīs aequora ventīs
 ēmīrābitur insolēns,
 quī nunc tē fruitur crēdulus aureā,
 quī semper vacuam, semper amābilem 10
 spērat, nescius aurae
 fallācis. miserī, quibus
 intemptāta nitēs: mē tabulā sacer
 vōtīvā pariēs indicat ūvida
 suspendisse potenti 15
 vestīmenta maris deō.

†**quis**, here, *interrog. pron. used adjectivally*, what, which
gracilis, gracile slender, thin, fine
rosa, rosae *f.* rose
perfundō, perfundere, perfūdī, perfūsus pour over, spray, drench
liquidus, -a, -um liquid, clear
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, — weigh down; press hard; urge, pursue
odor, odōris *m.* odor, scent
grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming, pleasing
Pyrrha, Pyrrhae *f.* Pyrrha
antrum, antrī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto
flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
religō (1-tr.) bind back, bind up; unbind
coma, comae *f.* hair
simplex, simplicis simple, plain
munditia, munditiae *f.* elegance, refinement
quotiēns (adv.) how many times
mūtō (1-tr.) change
flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)
asper, aspera, asperum harsh, rough; severe
niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black
aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
ēmīror (1-tr.) (thoroughly) admire, marvel at, be astonished at

insolēns, insolentis unaccustomed, unfamiliar
fruo, fruī, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
crēdulus, -a, -um trusting, credulous
aureus, -a, -um golden
vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle; free, available; carefree
amābilis, amābile lovable
spēro (1-tr.) hope (for)
nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous
intemptātus, -a, -um untried
niteō, nitēre, nituī, — be radiant, shine
tabula, tabulae *f.* plank, tablet
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
vōtīvus, -a, -um votive, offered in fulfillment of a vow
pariēs, parietis *m.* wall (of a building)
indicō (1-tr.) declare, indicate
ūvidus, -a, -um moist, wet, damp
suspendō, suspendere, suspendī, suspēnsus hang, suspend, hang up
potēns, potentis powerful, having power over (+ gen.)
vestīmentum, vestīmentī *n.* garment; *pl.*, clothing

16. Horace, *Carmina* II.9 (Alcaic strophe; see §113)

The poet advises a lugubrious friend, Valgius.

Nōn semper imbrēs nūbibus hispidōs
 mānant in agrōs aut mare Caspium
 vexant inaequālēs procellae
 ūsque nec Armeniūs in ōrīs,
 amīce Valgī, stat glaciēs iners
 mēnsis per omnīs aut Aquilōnibus
 querquēta Gargānī labōrant
 et foliīs viduantur ornī:
 tū semper urgēs flēbilibus modīs
 Mystēn adēptum nec tibi vesperō
 surgente dēcēdunt amōrēs
 nec rapidum fugiente sōlem.

5

10

imber, imbris, -ium *m.* rain, shower

nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud

hispidus, -a, -um hairy; rough, bristly

mānō (1-intr.) trickle, drip, stream, flow

Caspīus, -a, -um Caspian

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

inaequālis, inaequāle uneven, unlike; that
roughens the sea

procella, procellae *f.* blast (of wind), windstorm

ūsque (adv.) continuously

Armenius, -a, -um Armenian

ōra, ōrae *f.* shore

Valgius, Valgī *m.* (C.) Valgius (Rufus) (an
Augustan elegiac poet)

glaciēs, glaciē *f.* ice

iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert

mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *m.* month

Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo (the north wind)

querquētum, querquētī *n.* oak forest, oak grove

Gargānus, Gargānī *m.* Garganus (a mountain in
Horace's home district of Apulia)

folium, foliī *n.* leaf

viduō (1-intr.) deprive of (+ abl.)

ornus, ornī *f.* ash tree

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, — weigh down; press hard
flēbilis, flēbile plaintive; tearful

Mystēs, Mystae *m.* Mystes; **Mystēn** = *acc. sing.*

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēptus remove, take
away

vesper, vesperī *m.* Vesper, the evening star;
evening

surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise, rise up

dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down, depart

rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming;
rushing, rapid

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

at nōn ter aevō fūnctus amābilem
plōrāvit omnīs Antilochum senex
annōs nec inpūbem parentēs

15

Trōilon aut Phrygiae sorōrēs
flēvĕre semper. dēsine mollium
tandem querellārum et potius nova
cantēmus Augustī tropaea

Caesaris et rigidum Niphātēn,
Mēdumque flūmen gentibus additum
victīs minōrēs volvere verticēs
intrāque praescrīptum Gelōnōs
exiguīs equitāre campīs.

20

at (conj.) but

ter (adv.) three times, thrice

aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime; period of time, generation

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum perform, execute; complete (+ abl.)

amābilis, amābile lovable

plōrō (1-tr.) weep for, mourn

Antilochus, Antilochī *m.* Antilochus (son of Nestor, slain by Memnon)

senex, senis old; *masc. subst.*, old man

inpūbēs, inpūbis underage, youthful, beardless

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

Trōilus, Trōilī *m.* Troilus (youngest son of Priam and Hecuba, killed by Achilles); Trōilon = *acc. sing.*

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan

flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

dēsino, dēsinerere, dēsī/dēsīvī, dēsitum stop, cease; cease (from) (+ gen.)

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

querella, querellae *f.* complaint, lament

potius (adv.) rather

cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)

tropaeum, tropaeī *n.* trophy; victory

rigidus, -a, -um rigid, stiff; inflexible; frozen

Niphātēs, Niphātae *m.* the Niphates (a mountain range in Armenia); Niphātēn = *acc. sing.*

Mēdus, -a, -um of or belonging to the Medes, Median, Persian; Mēdum flūmen = the Euphrates (by which the Parthians dwelled)

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family

addō (ad- + dō) add

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll

vertex, verticis *m.* swirling water, whirlpool, eddy

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

praescrīptum, praescrīptī *n.* boundary line, limit

Gelōnī, Gelōnōrum *m. pl.* the Geloni (a nomadic tribe of Scythians who often made raids on horseback into Roman territory)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight

equitō (1-intr.) ride (on horseback)

17. Horace, *Ars Poētica* 323–26

The poet compares Greeks and Romans.

Graīs ingenium, Graīs dedit ōre rotundō
Mūsa loquī, praeter laudem nūllius avārīs.
Rōmānī puerī longīs ratiōnibus assem
discunt in partīs centum dīdūcere . . .

325

Graius, -a, -um Greek; **Graīs** = *dat. pl.*;

Graīs scans as if it were spelled *Graīis.

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth

rotundus, -a, -um rounded

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

praeter (*prep.* + *acc.*) beyond, except

laus, laudīs *f.* praise

avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious; hungry (for)
(+ *gen.*)

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; calculation

as, assis, -ium *m. as* (a small denomination of
Roman money)

discō, discere, didicī, — learn (how) (+ *infin.*)

dīdūcō (dis- + dūcō) divide, split

The *Ars Poētica* is one of Horace's *Epistulae*, a collection of long hexameter didactic poems on a variety of subjects. The poet of the *Ars Poētica* offers observations and guidance on poetry generally and drama in particular. This playful, imaginative, and insightful 476-line poem speaks with authority on both style and content, but its overall structure and prescription for poetry are elusive.

18. Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.61–66

The poet reassures a whole variety of future lovers.

seu caperis p̄rīmīs et adhūc crēscentibus annīs,
ante oculōs veniet v̄era puella tuōs;
sīve cupis iuvenem, iuvenēs tibi mīlle placēbunt.
cōgēris vōtī nescius esse tuī;
seu tē forte† iuvat sēra et sapientior aetās,
hoc quoque, crēde mihi,† plēnius agmen erit.

65

adhūc (*adv.*) up to the present time; still

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase

sīve/seu (*conj.*) or if; **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu) . . .**
whether . . . or if . . .

iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* or *f.* young man, young
woman

cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive to-
gether, force, compel

vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ *gen.*)

†**fors, fortis, -ium** *f.* chance, luck

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist, aid; give
pleasure, delight

sērus, -a, -um late; advanced

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life

†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.

plēnus, -a -um full

agmen, agminis *n.* line (of march); throng; train

19. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* VII.17–23

After the Colchian king Aeëtes explains the impossible labors that Jason and the Argonauts must perform in order to win the Golden Fleece, the king's daughter Medea scolds herself for the feelings aroused in her by the handsome stranger Jason.

excute virgineō conceptās pectore flammās,
 sī potes, infēlix! sī possem, sānior essem!
 sed trahit invītam nova vīs, aliudque cupīdō,
 mēns aliud suādet: videō meliōra probōque,
 dēteriōra sequor! quid† in† hospite, rēgia virgō,
 ūreris et thalamōs aliēnī concipis orbis?
 haec quoque terra potest quod amēs dare . . .

20

excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus throw out,
 shake off, drive away

virgineus, -a, -um of or belonging to a maiden,
 maidenly

concipiō (con- + capiō) conceive, produce;
 imagine

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend,
 urge, advise

probō (1-tr.) approve of

dēterior, dēterius worse

†**quid**, *here* (adv.) why

†**in**, *here*, in the case of

hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host

rēgius, -a, -um royal

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame,
 consume

thalamus, thalamī *m. sing. or pl.*, inner room,
 wedding chamber; marriage

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien,
 strange; foreign

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world, region

20. Ovid, *Tristia* II.421–30

After defending his poetic license by reference to Greek writers, the poet turns to Roman writers for support as well.

nēve peregrīnīs tantum dēfendar ab armīs,
 et Rōmānus habet multa iocōsa liber.
 utque suō Martem cecinit gravis Ennius ōre—
 Ennius ingeniō maximus, arte rudis—
 explicat ut causās rapidī Lucretīus ignis,
 cāsūrumque triplex vāticinātur opus,
 sic sua[†] lascīvō cantāta est saepe Catullō[†]
 fēmina, cui falsum Lesbia nōmen erat;
 nec contentus eā, multōs vulgāvit amōrēs,
 in quibus ipse suum fassus adulterium est.

425

430

nēve (conj.) = nē + -ve (enclitic conj.) or

peregrīnus, -a, -um foreign

tantum (adv.) only

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect,
 defend

iocōsus, -a, -um full of jokes; laughable,
 funny

Ennius, Enniī *m.* Ennius

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; voice; eloquence

rudis, rude rough; crude, unrefined

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, reveal, explain

rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming;
 rushing, rapid

Lucretīus, Lucretiī *m.* Lucretius

triplex, triplicis threefold; tripartite; triplex . . .

opus refers to Lucretius's division of the uni-
 verse into sea, land, and sky.

vāticinor (1-tr.) warn of, predict, prophesy

[†]sua refers to Catullō, "his own."

lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from
 restraint

cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)

[†]Catullō = *Dative of Agent*

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied; contained

vulgō (1-tr.) make (something) public; make
 famous

adulterium, adulteriī *n.* adultery

The *Tristia* is one of two works composed by Ovid after he was forced to leave Rome by Augustus in 8 c.e. In five books of elegiac verse the poet interweaves appeals to Augustus for his recall with accounts of life and weather in an uncivilized land far from Rome.

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* V.49.6

After the long, painful siege of Rome by the Gauls that nearly ends in surrender, the Romans, led by the dictator Camillus, rout the Gauls first in Rome and then outside it. The historian describes the second battle.

ibi caedēs omnia obtinuit; castra capiuntur et nē nuntius quidem clādis relictus. dictātor recipērātā ex hostibus patriā triumphāns in urbem redit, interque iocōs mīlitārēs quōs inconditōs iaciunt, Rōmulus ac parēns patriae conditorque alter urbis haud vānīs laudibus appellābātur.

ibi (adv.) there; then

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

obtinēō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus
persist in; extend over, have a hold on

nuntius, nuntiū *m.* messenger

clādēs, clādis *f.* slaughter, destruction

dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator (an emergency officer with unlimited powers)

reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain

triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph

iocus, iocī *m.* joke, jest

mīlitāris, mīlitāre military

inconditus, -a, -um unpolished, rough, crude

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent

conditor, conditōris *m.* founder

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; groundless, false

laus, laudis *f.* praise

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.49.10

Aemilius Paulus responds to Cn. Lentulus's request that he, Paulus, save himself and leave the ravaged battlefield.

“abī, nuntiā pūblicē patribus: urbem Rōmānam mūniant ac priusquam victor hostis adveniat praesidiīs firment; prīvātīm Q. Fabiō L. Aemilium praeceptōrum eius memorem et vīxisse adhūc et morī. mē in hāc strāge mīlitum meōrum patere expīrāre, nē aut reus iterum ē cōsulātū sim <aut>† accūsātor collēgae existam ut aliēnō crīmine innocentiam meam prōtegam.” haec eōs agentēs† prius turba fugientium cīvium, deinde hostēs oppressere.

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report
mūniō, mūnīre, mūniī/mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify
priusquam (conj. + subjunc.) before
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
adveniō (ad- + veniō) arrive; **adveniat**, *subjunc.*
expressing anticipation, can arrive
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
firmō (1-tr.) strengthen
prīvātīm (adv.) in private, privately
Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus)
 (consul 233, 228, 215, 214, 209 B.C.E.; censor 230; dictator 217; one of the heroes of the second Punic war)
L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliī *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus)
 (consul 216 B.C.E.; one of the Roman leaders at the battle of Cannae)
praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* (piece of) advice, instruction
memor, memoris mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
adhūc (adv.) up to this time
strāgēs, strāgis *f.* destruction, slaughter

ex(s)pīrō (1-intr.) breathe out, expire; die
reus, reī *m.* defendant (when Paulus was first consul in 219, he was accused of embezzlement)
iterum (adv.) again, a second time
 †Pointed brackets mark an element added by scholars.
accūsātor, accūsātōris *m.* accuser, prosecutor
collēga, collēgae *m.* colleague (in office)
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itī, — stand out, appear; prove to be
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; done by another
crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime
innocentia, innocentiae *f.* innocence
prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus protect, defend
 †**agō, here**, speak about, discuss
turba, turbae *f.* crowd
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress; overwhelm, crush

23. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXX.30.18

In 202 B.C.E. a besieged Hannibal attempted to negotiate terms of peace with his respected Roman counterpart, the great general Scipio Africanus. Scipio rejected Hannibal's pleas and then decisively defeated the Carthaginians in the last battle of the second Punic war. The following passage is a portion of Hannibal's speech to Scipio, as reported by the historian. Hannibal tries to convince Scipio to avoid a pitched battle.

maximae cuique[†] fortunae minimē crēdendum est. in bonīs tuīs rēbus, nostrīs dubiīs, tibi ampla ac speciōsa danti est pāx, nōbīs petentibus magis necessāria quam honesta. melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; haec in tuā, illa in deōrum manū est. nē tot annōrum fēlicitātem in[†] unīus hōrae dederis[†] discrīmen.

[†]cuique = *fem. sing. dat. of indef. adj.*, each

dubius, -a, -um uncertain, doubtful

amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished

speciōsus, -a, -um attractive, splendid

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

tūtus, -a, -um safe

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for), expect

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

fēlicitās, fēlicitātis *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity

[†]dare . . . in . . . , to consign . . . to . . .

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

discrīmen, discrīminis *n.* decisive point, determination

24. Seneca the Younger, *Dialogi* IV.31.4

The philosopher advises Novatus on what kind of behavior he may expect from human beings.

quid enim mīrum est malōs mala facinora ēdere? quid novī est sī inimīcus nocē amīcus offendit, filius lābitur, servus peccat? turpissimam aiēbat Fabius imperātō excūsatiōnem esse “nōn putāvī.” ego turpissimam hominī putō. omnia putā, epectā: etiam in bonīs mōribus aliquid existet asperius. fert† hūmāna nātūra ī sidiōsōs animōs, fert ingrātōs, fert cupidōs, fert impiōs. cum† dē ūnīus mōribi iūdicābis, dē pūblicīs cōgitā. ubi maximē gaudēbis, maximē metuēs; ubi tranquil tibi omnia videntur, ibi nocitūra nōn dēsunt sed quiēscunt. semper futūrum aliquod tē offendat exīstimā.

mīrus, -a, -um marvelous, astonishing
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime
ēdō (ē- + dō) emit; produce, perform; commit
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus be harmful, do harm
offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus trouble, upset, give offense to, annoy
lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum slip, glide; fall; fall into error
peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful
aiō (defective verb) say; **aiēbat** = 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic.
Fabius, Fabiū *m.* (Q.) Fabius (Maximus) (hero of the second Punic war)
excūsatiō, excūsatiōnis *f.* excuse
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect
aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. or acc. of indef. pron., something*
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itī, — stand out, appear

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless; severe
†**ferō, here,** produce
hūmānus, -a, -um human
īnsidiōsus, -a, -um treacherous, deceitful
ingrātus, -a, -um ungrateful; unpleasant, displeasing
†**cum, here** (conj.) when
iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge, determine
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased
metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread
tranquillus, -a, -um calm, quiet, still
ibi (adv.) there; then
dēsum (dē- + sum), **dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus** be absent, be lacking
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum be asleep, be dormant, lie quiet
exīstimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think

In twelve books together given the title *Dialogi* (Dialogues), although they are not written in dialogue form, Seneca discusses a number of moral and philosophical ideas. For the most part each book is addressed to a different person and treats a single question. Three books of the *Dialogi* (III–V) discuss fully the question of how anger may be restrained. Taken together they are often entitled *Dē Irā*.

25. Florus, *Epitoma Bellorum Omnium* I.31

Florus summarizes the opinions of two famous Romans about how best to deal with Carthage after that city rearmed itself for the first time in fifty years (ca. 152 B.C.E.).

Catō inexpliābili odiō dēlendā esse Carthāginem, et cum[†] dē aliō cōnsulerētur, prōnuntiābat, Scīpiō Nāsica servandā nē, metū ablātō aemulae, luxuriārī felicitās urbis inciperet; medium senātus ēlēgit ut urbs tantum locō movērētur.[†] nihil enim speciōsius vidēbātur quam esse Carthāginem quae nōn timērētur.

inexpliābilis, inexpliābile implacable

[†]**cum**, *here* (conj. + subconj.), (under the circumstances) when

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsulūī, cōnsultus take counsel, consult

prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare

Scīpiō Nāsica, Scīpiōnis Nāsicae *m.*

(P. Cornelius) Scipio Nasica (consul

162 B.C.E., censor 159, political opponent of Cato the Elder)

aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rival; **aemulae**, *supply*
urbis

luxurior (1-tr.) indulge to excess, revel immoderately

fēlicitās, fēlicitātis *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity

incipiō (**in-** + **capiō**) take on, begin

ēligō (**ē-** + **legō**), **ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus** select, choose

tantum (adv.) only

[†]**ut . . . movērētur** is a substantive clause explaining **medium**; translate “that . . . be moved.”

speciōsus, -a, -um attractive, splendid

Nothing certain is known about the writer Florus—not even his first name. One of the works that is attributed to a writer named Florus is entitled *Epitoma dē Titō Liviō Bellorum Omnium Annōrum DCC* (An Abridgement from Titus Livius of All the Wars of Seven Hundred Years). The work is a concise summary and reconstruction of the history of Roman military encounters and the rise of the Roman people to prominence in the Mediterranean. Although the title suggests that the author is summarizing the historian Livy, Florus’s *Epitoma* makes reference to that historian among many other historians and writers. Internal evidence, as well as the association of the Florus of the *Epitoma* with other writers of the same name, suggests that the work was written in the second century C.E.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam I* 11

Having revealed Catiline's dangerous plans, Cicero boasts of his own survival.

magna dīs immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsī Iovī Statōrī, antiquissimō custōdī huius urbis, grātia, quod† hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque infestam reī pūblicaē pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. nōn est saepius in† ūnō homine summa salūs perīclitanda reī pūblicaē. quam diū† mihi cōsulī dēsīgnātō, Catilīna, insidiātus es, nōn pūblicō mē praesidiō, sed prīvātā dīligentiā dēfendī. cum† proximīs comitiīs cōsulārībus mē cōsulem in campō† et competītōrēs tuōs interficere voluistī, compressī cōnātūs tuōs nefāriōs amicōrum praesidiō et cōpiīs nullō tumultū pūblicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnscumque mē petistī, per mē tibi obstitī, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum magnā calamitāte reī pūblicaē esse coniūctam.

Stator, Statōris *m.* (the) Stayer or Protector
custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector, sentry
grātia, grātiaē *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks
 †**quod**, *here* (conj.) because
tam (adv.) so
taeter, taetra, taetrum repulsive, foul
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
infestus, -a, -um hostile, harmful
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
totiēns (adv.) so many times
effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape
 †**in**, *here*, in the case of
perīclitor (1-tr.) put in peril, endanger
 †**quam diū**, *here*, as long as
dēsīgnātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet installed)
insidiōr (1-intr.) lie in wait for; plot against (+ dat.)
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
prīvātus, -a, -um private
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend
 †**cum**, *here* (conj.) when

proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last
comitia cōsulāria, comitiōrum cōsulārīum *n. pl.* consular elections
 †**campō**, *supply Martiō* (the Campus Martius, where elections were held)
competītōr, competītōris *m.* competitor, rival
volō, velle, voluī, — be willing, want, wish
comprimō, comprimere, compressī, compressus crush; subdue, suppress
cōnātus, cōnātūs *m.* attempt
nefārius, -a, -um unspeakable, wicked
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar
concitō (1-tr.) stir up, rouse
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
quotiēnscumque (conj.) however often, as often as
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus stand in the way; hinder, block (+ dat.)
perniciēs, perniciēī *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury
coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctus join together

Cicero's first speech, *In Catilinam I*, was delivered before the members of the senate (including Catiline himself) in 63 B.C.E. Having learned that Catiline had recruited an army and was planning the murders of all the leading men of the state, the consul Cicero sought to inform the senate and win their approval for action against the conspirators. Despite some strong support, even among the senators, Catiline and his forces were ultimately defeated, and Catiline was killed in a battle north of Rome.

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 1

Sallust begins his account of the Catilinarian conspiracy with a broad discussion of the human condition.

Omnis hominēs quī sēsē student praestāre cēteris animālibus summā ope nītī decet nē vītā silentiō trāseant, velutī pecora quae nātūra prōna atque ventrī oboedientia fīxit. sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est: animī imperiō, corporis servitiō magis ūtimur; alterum nōbīs cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. quō mihi rēctius vidētur ingenī quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere, et, quoniam vīta ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, memoriā nostrī quam maxumē longam efficere; nam dīvitiārum et formae glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtūs clāra aeternaque habētur.

studeō, studēre, studuī, — be eager, desire
praestō (prae- + stō), praestāre, praestitī,
praestātūrus stand before, be superior, excel
 (+ dat.)

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
 (the) other

ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort;
pl., power, resources, wealth

nītor, nītī, nīxus/nīsus sum rest upon, rely on
 (+ abl.); make an effort, strive

decet, decēre, decuit, — (impersonal verb) it is
 becoming, it is proper (+ acc. + infin.)

silentium, silentiī *n.* silence; **silentiō**, *Ablative of*
Manner, in silence

trāseō (trāns- + eō), trānsire, trānsiī/trānsivī,
trānsitus go across, pass through

velutī (conj.) even as, just as

pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock;
pl., farm animals

prōnus, -a, -um leaning or bending forward
venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant,
 subject

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make;
 imagine

situs, -a, -um placed, set, situated

servitium, servitiī *n.* slavery

bēlua, bēluae *f.* wild beast

commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in
 common

rēctus, -a, -um straight; right, correct

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory, remembrance

maxumē = maximē; quam maxumē longam =
quam longissimam

efficiō (ex- + faciō) bring about

dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches

forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty

fluxus, -a, -um flowing, loose; weak, fleeting,
 perishable

fragilis, fragile easily broken, frail

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.491–505

instat vī patriā† Pyrrhus; nec claustra nec ipsī
 custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
 iānuā, et ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
 fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs prīmōsque trucīdant
 immisī Danaī et lātē loca mīlite complent. 495
 nōn sīc, aggeribus ruptīs cum† spūmeus amnis
 exiit oppositāsque ēvīcit gurgite mōlēs,
 fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnīs
 cum stabulīs armenta trahit. vīdī ipse furentem
 caede Neoptoleum geminōsque in līmine Atrīdās, 500
 vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās
 sanguine foedantem quōs ipse sacrāverat ignīs.

instō (*in-* + *stō*), **instāre**, **instītī**, **instātūrus** press (hostilely), press on
 †**patrius**, **-a**, **-um**, of or belonging to a father, paternal; ancestral
Pyrrhus, **Pyrrhī** *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles) (= Neoptolemus)
claustrum, **claustrī** *n.* bolt, bar
custōs, **custōdis** *m.* or *f.* guard(ian), protector, sentry
sufferō (*sub-* + *ferō*), **sufferre**, **sustulī**, **sublātus** endure, withstand
labō, **labāre**, **labāvī**, — be shaky, totter, give way
ariēs, **arietis** *m.* (battering) ram; the **-i-** of **ariete** is here consonantal for purposes of scansion.
crēber, **crēbra**, **crēbrum** frequent, repeated
iānuā, **iānuae** *f.* door
ēmoveō (*ē-* + *moveō*) remove, dislodge
prōcumbō, **prōcumbere**, **prōcubūī**, **prōcubitum** bend forward; fall down, crash
cardō, **cardinis** *m.* pivot; hinge
postis, **postis**, **-ium** *m.* doorpost, jamb
fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum** be made; **fit** = 3rd *sing. pres. act. indic.*
rumpō, **rumpere**, **rūpī**, **ruptus** split, burst, break
aditus, **aditūs** *m.* approach, entrance, doorway
trucīdō (1-tr.) slaughter, butcher
immittō (*in-* + *mittō*) send in, send against
Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
compleō, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētus** fill completely

agger, **aggeris** *m.* mound; bank (of a river)
 †**cum**, **here** (conj. + perf. indic.) whenever; translate **exiit** and **ēvīcit** as pres. indic.
spūmeus, **-a**, **-um** foamy, frothy
amnis, **amnis**, **-ium** *m.* stream, torrent
exeō (*ex-* + *eō*), **exīre**, **exīī/exīvī**, **exitum** go out
oppōnō (*ob-* + *pōnō*) place in the way, place against
ēvincō (*ē-* + *vincō*) defeat utterly, overcome
gurgis, **gurgitis** *m.* swirling water, eddy, whirlpool
mōlēs, **mōlis**, **-ium** *f.* mass; dam
arvum, **arvī** *n.* (ploughed) field
furō, **furere**, —, — be crazy; rage, rave
cumulus, **cumulī** *m.* heap, pile; mass, wave
stabulum, **stabulī** *n.* stable, shed, stall
armentum, **armentī** *n.* herd; bull, head of cattle; *pl.*, cattle
trahō, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **tractus** draw, drag
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter
Neoptolemus, **Neoptolemī** *m.* Neoptolemus (son of Achilles) (= Pyrrhus)
geminus, **-a**, **-um** twin-born, twin
līmen, **līminis** *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
Atrīdēs, **Atrīdae** *m.* son of Atreus (either Agamemnon or Menelaus)
Hecuba, **Hecubae** *f.* Hecuba (wife of Priam)
nurus, **nurūs** *f.* daughter-in-law
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile
sacrō (1-tr.) make sacred, consecrate

quīnquāgintā illī thalamī, spēs tanta nepōtum,
 barbaricō postēs aurō spoliīsque superbī
 prōcubuēre; tenent Danaī quā[†] dēficit ignis.

505

thalamus, thalamī *m. sing. or pl.*, inner room,
 wedding chamber; marriage

tantus, -a, -um so great

nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson

barbaricus, -a, -um barbarian

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

spolium, spoliī *n.* booty, spoil

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubūī, prōcubitum

bend forward; fall down, crash

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

[†]**quā**, *here* (adv.) where

dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.463–77

filius huic Veneris “figat tuus omnia, Phoebē,
tē meus arcus,” ait: “quantōque animālia cēdunt
cūncta deō, tantō minor est tua glōria nostrā.”

465

dixit et ēlīsō percussīs āere pennīs
inpiger umbrōsā Parnāsī cōnstitit arce
ēque sagittiferā prōmpsit duo tēla pharetrā
dīversōrum operum: fugat hoc, facit illud amōrem.

quod facit aurātum est et cuspide fulget acūtā;
quod fugat obtūsum est et habet sub harundine plumbum.

470

hoc deus in nymphā Pēnēide fixit, at illō
laesit Apollineās trāiecta per ossa medullās.

prōtinus alter amat, fugit altera nōmen amantis,

silvārum latebrīs captīvārumque ferārum

475

exuviīs gaudēns innuptaeque aemula Phoebēs.

vitta coērcēbat positōs sine lēge capillōs.

figō, figere, fixī, fixus fix, pierce

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)

aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = 3rd *sing. pres. act. indic.*

quantus, -a, -um how much

cūnctus, -a, -um all

tantus, -a, -um so much

ēlīdō, ēlīdere, ēlīsī, ēlīsus break thoroughly,
batter, cut

percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike,
beat; **percussīs . . . pennīs**, by the beating of
wings

āēr, āeris *m.* air

penna, pennaē *f.* wing

inpiger, inpigra, inpigrum not slow, energetic,
brisk

umbrōsus, -a, -um shady

Parnāsus, Parnāsī *m.* Parnassus (a mountain in
Greece)

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, — make a stand,
halt

arx, arcis *f.* citadel; height, peak

sagittifer, sagittifera, sagittiferum arrow-bearing

prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsi, prōmptus bring
forth, draw

pharetra, pharetraē *f.* quiver

dīversus, -a, -um different

fugō (1-tr.) cause to flee, put to flight

aurātus, -a, -um made of gold, golden

cuspis, cuspidis *f.* sharp point, tip

fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, — shine, gleam

acūtus, -a, -um sharp, pointed

obtūsus, -a, -um blunt, dull

harundō, harundinis *f.* reed; (arrow) shaft

plumbum, plumbī *n.* lead

nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph (a semidivine spirit)

Pēnēs, Pēnēidos descended from (the river god)
Peneus; **Pēnēide** = *abl. sing.*

at (conj.) but

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm, wound

Apollineus, -a, -um of or belonging to Apollo

trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix

os, ossis *n.* bone

medulla, medullae *f.* marrow; *pl.*, vitals, innards

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

silva, silvae *f.* forest

latebra, latebrae *f.* hiding place, lair, recess

captīvus, -a, -um captive, captured (in hunting or
fishing)

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast

exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor; skin(s)
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in),
be glad, be pleased

innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden

aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rivaling (+ gen.)

Phoebē, Phoebēs *f.* Phoebē (Diana); **Phoebēs** =
gen. sing.

vitta, vittae *f.* headband

coērcēō, coērcēre, coērcuī, coērcitus restrain,
keep back

capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.*, hair

§113. About Meter II

The Roman poets learned from Greek models the dactylic hexameter, the meter of epic, and the elegiac couplet, the meter of love poetry (§83). Some also chose to imitate meters of such Greek lyric poets as Archilochus, Sappho, and Alcaeus.¹

Lyric poetry (originally so called because it was recited with the accompaniment of music played on a lyre) most often found its subject matter in the events and concerns of personal, private life: friendship, humor, love, wine, mortality. Both Catullus and Horace brought lyric meters into Latin poetry, but in his four books of *Odes*, Horace demonstrated mastery of a far greater variety of these meters.

Since all Latin poetry is quantitative, the basic rules for scanning lyric meters (for determining long and short syllables and marking elisions) are the same as those used for scanning dactylic hexameters and elegiac couplets. Some lyric poems use dactylic lines or sequences of dactylic feet, but many lyric meters have lines that are not divided into feet.

Certain lyric units may be learned and identified, but one generally learns the metrical scheme for each complete lyric line. Some lyric poems have only one metrical scheme that is repeated in every line (**stichic verse**), some have two metrical schemes in alternation (**couplets**), and others have four lines that repeat (**strophic or stanzaic verse**).

Stichic verse is indicated when each line begins at the left-hand margin. (For example, dactylic hexameter is stichic verse.) Each indented line indicates a metrically different line.

Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry

acephalous (< Greek *akephalos*, headless) missing the first element

metron (< Greek *metron*, measure) the smallest metrical unit allowed in a given scheme

dimeter consisting of two metra

trimeter consisting of three metra

tetrameter consisting of four metra

pentameter consisting of five metra

hexameter consisting of six metra

NOTE: FOR DACTYLS ONE DACTYLIC FOOT = ONE METRON

FOR IAMBS, TROCHEES, AND ANAPESTS TWO FEET = ONE METRON

iamb ◡ –

iambic metron x – ◡ –

bacchiac ◡ – –

dactyl – ◡ ◡

1. Other Roman poets wrote tragedies and imitated the meters found in Greek tragic poetry. The Roman adaptations of these meters are not presented in this book.

spondee --
 adonic - - - - x
 hemiepes - - - - - x
 anapest - - -
 trochee - -
 trochaic metron - - - x
 cretic - - -
 choriamb - - - -
 glyconic x x - - - - x
 hipponactean x x - - - - - x
 pherecratean x x - - - - x

Hendecasyllable

Many of the short poems of Catullus employ a repeating eleven-syllable line with this scheme:

x x - - - - - x
 - - - - -
Iam vēr ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs
 - - - - -
iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two syllables and the last syllable are anceps (§83).
2. The hendecasyllabic line is basically iambic in rhythm. An **iamb** is a metrical unit composed of one short syllable followed by one long syllable (˘-). The unit - - - -, called a **choriamb**, is characteristic of this meter and several other lyric meters. Meters constructed around the choriamb are called **Aeolic** meters.
3. A word usually ends after the fifth or sixth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Choliambic (Limping Iambic)

Several of Catullus's short poems employ a repeating iambic line with this scheme:

x - - - / x - - - / x - - x
 ˘ - - ˘ - - / ˘ - - ˘ - - / ˘ - - ˘ - -
Miser Catul/le, dēsīnās / ineptīre
 ˘ - - ˘ - - / ˘ - - ˘ - - / ˘ - - ˘ - -
et quod vidēs / perīsse per/ditum dūcās.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sequence x - - - is called an **iambic metron** (< Greek *metron*, measure) and is composed of two iambs (˘- - -), although the first syllable is *anceps*. When scanning, one regularly marks off each iambic metron.

2. Because a long is substituted for a short in the second iamb of the last metron of the line, this meter is said to “limp” or slow down.
3. A word usually ends after the fifth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line’s caesural pause.

Sapphic Strophe

Two of Catullus’s and many of Horace’s poems employ a stanzaic form possibly created by the Greek poet Sappho and bearing her name:

--x- // --x- (cretic and acephalous hipponactean)

--x- // --x-

--x- // --x-

---x (adonic)

Integer vītae // scelerisque pūrus

nōn eget Maurīs // iaculis neque arcū

nec venēnātīs // gravidā sagittīs

Fusce, pharetrā . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first three lines of the Sapphic strophe have the same metrical scheme, a line composed of two lyric units, the **cretic** (--) and the **hipponactean** (x x ---x). Because the hipponactean is missing the first element, it is called “headless” or **acephalous**. Note that the choriamb (---) is present in the hipponactean. There is a regular caesura after the fifth syllable.
2. The last line of the Sapphic strophe resembles the last two feet of a dactylic hexameter line. This short line is called an **adonic**.

Asclepiadean Meters

Lyric meters that feature a unit known as a **glyconic** (x x ---x) are called **Asclepiadean** meters after an Alexandrian love poet, Asclepiades, who lived in the third century B.C.E. Horace employs several Asclepiadean meters, some of which are presented below.

One Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

xx --- // ---x

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius

rēgālīque sitū // p̄ramidum altius

Another Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is tripled:

x x - - - - // - - - - // - - - - x

Tū nē quaesieris // scīre nefās // quem mihi, quem tibi
fīnem dī dederint, // Leuconoē, // nec Babylōniōs

A third Asclepiadean meter employs a glyconic line alternating with a glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

x x - - - - x
x x - - - - // - - - - x

Dōnec grātus eram tibi
nec quisquam potior bracchia candidae

A stanzaic meter features the glyconic and variations:

x x - - - - // - - - - x (glyconic with doubled choriamb)

x x - - - - // - - - - x

x x - - - - x (pherecratean)

x x - - - - x (glyconic)

Quis multā gracilis // tē puer in rosā

perfūsus liquidīs // urget odōribus

grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?

cui flāvam religās comam

Archilochian Meter

Horace borrowed several meters from the Greek poet Archilochus. One of them employs a couplet form, the first line of which is dactylic hexameter, the second line of which is a hemiepes.

- - - / - - - / - - - / - - - / - - - / - x
- - - / - - - / x

Diffū/gēre ni/vēs, // rede/unt iam / grāmina / campīs

arbori/busque co/mae

Alcaic Strophe

Horace's most intricate metrical form was borrowed from the Greek poet Alcaeus:

x - - - / x // - - - - x (iambic metron and acephalous glyconic)

x - - - / x // - - - - x

x - - - / - - - - / - (iambic dimeter and one syllable)²

- - - - - / - - x (hemiepes and bacchiac)

̄ - - - - - / ̄ - - - - - // ̄ - - - - - ̄ - - - - -
Nōn semper im/brēs // nūbibus hispidōs

̄ - - - - - / ̄ - - - - - // ̄ - - - - - ̄ - - - - -
mānant in a/grōs // aut mare Caspium

̄ - - - - - / ̄ - - - - - // ̄ - - - - - ̄ - - - - -
vexant inae/quālēs procel/lae

̄ - - - - - / ̄ - - - - - // ̄ - - - - - ̄ - - - - -
ūsque nec Armeniīs in ōrīs

2. In the second iambic metron, the first syllable is always long.

CHAPTER XII

Vocabulary

- ▶ **grātia, grātia** *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks
- ▶ **littera, litterae** *f.* letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letter, epistle
- ▶ **memoria, memoriae** *f.* memory

- ▶ **dubium, dubii** *n.* doubt, hesitation (§117)

- ▶ **gēns, gentis, -ium** *f.* nation, people; family
- ▶ **fors, fortis, -ium** *f.* chance, luck
- ▶ **mōns, montis, -ium** *m.* mountain
- ▶ **rūmor, rūmōris** *m.* rumor

- ▶ **fās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted
 - ▶ **nefās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden; sacrilege

- ▶ **dubitō** (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (§117)
- ▶ **ōrō** (1-tr.) beg (for)
- ▶ **rogō** (1-tr.) ask (for)
- ▶ **spērō** (1-tr.) hope (for)

- ▶ **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus** accomplish, complete
- ▶ **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum** forget (+ gen.)
- ▶ **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** put in charge (of)

- ▶ **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus** carry (into); inflict (on)
- ▶ **praefērō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus** prefer
- ▶ **praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus** be in charge (of), be in command (of)

- ▶ **volō, velle, voluī, —** be willing, want, wish (§119)
 - ▶ **mālō, mālle, māluī, —** want more, prefer (§119)
 - ▶ **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —** be unwilling, not want, not wish (§119)

- ▶ **dignus, -a, -um** worthy (of) (+ abl.)
 - ▶ **indignus, -a, -um** unworthy (of) (+ abl.)
- ▶ **dubius, -a, -um** doubtful (§117)
 - an** (conj.) *introduces an alternative question, or* (§114); *introduces an Indirect Question, whether* (§116)
 - ▶ **cum** (conj.) when; since; although (§118)
 - ▶ **modo** (adv.) only, just; now, just now
 - ▶ **ne** (conj.) *in Indirect Question, or not* (§116)
 - nōnne** (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “yes”* (§114)
 - num** (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “no”* (§114); *introduces an Indirect Question, whether* (§116)
 - praeter** (prep. + acc.) beyond; except
 - quīn** (conj.) *introduces Doubling clause, that* (§117)
 - quō** (interrog. adv.) to where, whither
 - ▶ **tum or tunc** (adv.) then, at that time
 - unde** (interrog. adv.) from where, whence
 - utrum** (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct question or Indirect Question* (§114, §116)
 - utrum . . . an . . .** whether . . . or . . .
 - ne . . . an . . .**
 - . . . an . . .** (§114, §116)

Vocabulary Notes

- **grātia, grātiaē** *f.* may mean the “favor” or “kindness” that one shows to another or the “gratitude” one feels in return for a favor or kindness. Both the singular and the plural may be used in a variety of idioms: **grātiā agere**, “to give thanks”; **grātiām** or **grātiās habēre**, “to have gratitude.”
- In the singular **littera, litterae** *f.* refers to a “letter” of the alphabet. In the plural it most often means a single “epistle” or “letter.” An adjective of quantity or number may be added to indicate more than one letter.

Filiō litterās mīsī.

I sent a letter to (my) son.

Filiō multās litterās mīsī.

I sent many letters to (my) son.

The plural of **littera** may also mean, more abstractly, “(humane) letters,” “literature.”

- **dubium, dubiū** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **dubius, -a, -um**. It regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubling clause (§117).
- **gēns, gentis, -ium** *f.* may refer to a collective “people” or “nation.” Among Roman citizens, a **gēns** was a group of families that shared the same **nōmen** (name) (§16). **gēns** may also refer to an individual family. In the plural, **gentēs** may mean “nations of the world” or “the human race” as a whole.
- **rūmor, rūmōris** *m.* may mean “rumor” or “gossip.” The phrase **rūmor est** introduces an Indirect Statement (§107).

Rūmor est Caesarem venīre.

There is a rumor that Caesar is coming.

- **fās** is an indeclinable neuter noun. Its strict meaning is what is “right” according to divine law, as opposed to **iūs**, which indicates “right” according to human law. It may also be used of “(what is) permitted” or “(what is) lawful” in a more general sense. It commonly occurs in parenthetical remarks, such as **sī fās (est)** (if it is right). It is also often used as a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Accusative.

Fās est hoc facere.

To do this thing is right.

- **nefās** is an indeclinable neuter noun formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **fās**. Thus its strict meaning is what is an “offense” according to divine law (sacrilege).
- When the verb **dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus** means “hesitate,” it is often followed by a Complementary Infinitive. When it means “doubt,” it regularly introduces an Indirect Question or a Doubling clause (§117).
- **ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus** takes a **double accusative**; that is, it may have *two* Accusative, Direct Objects, the *person begged* and *the thing begged for*. It may also introduce an Indirect Command.

Cīvēs deōs pācem ōrant.

The citizens beg the gods for peace.

Militēs ōrēmus nē discēdant.

Let us beg the soldiers that they not depart.

- **rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus** may introduce an Indirect Question (§116) or an Indirect Command. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object expressing the *person asked* or *the thing asked for*. Like **ōrō, rogō** may take a double accusative.

Militēs auxilium rogēmus.

Let us ask the soldiers for aid.

- **spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus** is a *denominative* verb formed from the noun **spēs**. **spērō** may be followed by an Accusative, Direct Object, or it may introduce an Indirect Statement.
- **cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **faciō**. It may mean “accomplish” or “complete” (tasks, duties, written works, periods of time). It is a synonym of **perficiō**. **cōficiō** may also mean “wear out” or “kill.”
- **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum** may introduce an Indirect Statement. It often takes a Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting (Objective Genitive) (cf. **meminī**). **oblīvīscor** may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. When it takes an Object Infinitive, **oblīvīscor** may mean “forget” or “forget how.”

Numquam oblīvīscar illius noctis.

I shall never forget that night. (Objective Genitive)

Omnia oblīvīscēbar.

I was forgetting all things. (Accusative, Direct Object)

Miser poēta scribere oblītus est.

The wretched poet forgot how to write. (Object Infinitive)

- **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **faciō**. **praeficiō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Senātus Caesarem cōpiīs in Italiā praeficiet.

The senate will put Caesar in charge of the troops in Italy.

- **inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** to **ferō**. **inferō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121). It may mean “carry in” or “inflict” (war, injury, disgrace).

Bellum incolīs intulimus.

We inflicted war on the inhabitants.

- **praefērō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **ferō**. **praefērō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Mortemne servitūtī praefers?

Do you prefer death to slavery?

- **praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **sum**. **praesum** is an intransitive verb that takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Cōpiīs praeerat.

He was in command of the troops.

- **volō, velle, voluī, —** is an irregular verb. For its forms see §119. **volō** may be transitive (want, wish) or may be used absolutely (be willing). While **optō, cupiō**, and **volō** all express desire, **volō** suggests a stronger sense of will or purpose on the part of the subject. **volō** appears in two common idioms: **bene velle**, “to wish well,” and **male velle**, “to wish ill.” Both are followed by a Dative of Reference.
- **mālō, mālle, māluī, —** is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the comparative adverb **magis** to **volō**. For its forms and the constructions that accompany it, see §119.
- **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —** is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the adverb **nōn** to **volō**. For its forms see §119. It has meanings that are parallel to **volō** (not want, not wish, be unwilling), and it may mean “refuse.”
- **dignus, -a, -um** is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition “of.” **dignus** may also be used absolutely (deserving, worthwhile).

Hoc opus vestrā cūrā dignum est.
Dignum est multa scire.

This work is worthy of your (pl.) concern.
To know many things is worthwhile.

- **indignus, -a, -um** is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is *un-*worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition “of.”
- **dubius, -a, -um** regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).
- The conjunction **cum** was developed from an old accusative form of the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**, and the archaic form **quom** is common in Roman writers prior to Cicero. This conjunction is not linguistically related to the preposition that is spelled identically. For its use see §118.
- **modo** is an adverb that was in origin the ablative singular of **modus**, but note that the final **-o** is short. **modo** is often used to strengthen an imperative (only, just). It may be used as a temporal adverb (now, just now) and may appear in place of **solum** in the expression **nōn modo . . . sed/vērūm etiā . . .**
- **tum** (adv.) and **tunc** (adv.) are synonymous. **tunc** is formed by the addition of the emphatic suffix **-ce** to **tum**. In early Latin **tunc** was more emphatic than **tum**. By the Augustan period this emphasis was less pronounced. **tum** may be used with **cum** with a variety of emphases. The correlatives **cum . . . tum . . .** may be translated “when . . . then/at the same time . . .,” “both . . . and (especially) . . .,” or “not only . . . but also . . .”

Cum illud faciēbat, tum discēdēbam.

When he was doing that thing, then/at the same time I was departing.

Cōnsilium cum patriae tum sibi inimicum capiēbat.

He was forming a plan hostile both to his country and (especially) to himself.

Dicere vīsa est cum honestam sententiam, tum vērām.

She seemed to speak not only an honorable opinion, but also a true (one).

dignus	Derivatives	Cognates
gēns	dignity; indignant; disdain; dainty	decent; doctor; dogma
mōns	gentle; gentile	kin; king; gender; genealogy; gene
oblivīscor	mountain; amount	mouth; imminent; menace
rogō	oblivious; oubliette	slime; slip
volō	interrogate; abrogate	rich; reckless
	voluntary; velleity; volition; malevolence	voluptuous; will; wealth; well

§114. Direct Questions

A **direct question** is a question written or uttered directly. In Latin a direct question may be introduced by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the first word of the question or by nothing at all. For example:

Lēgistīne illud carmen?	Did you read that poem?
Illud carmen lēgistī?	Did you read that poem?

Direct questions may also be introduced by the interrogative particles **nōnne** and **num**. **Nōnne** introduces a question to which the expected answer is *yes*. **Num** introduces a question to which the expected answer is *no*. For example:

Nōnne illud carmen lēgistī?	You read that poem, didn't you? (Yes)
Num illud carmen lēgistī?	You didn't read that poem, did you? (No)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Nōnne** is formed from the combination of **nōn** and **-ne**. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **nōnne**, a phrase such as “didn't you?” is added to make clear that the expected answer is *yes*.
2. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **num**, a negative adverb *and* a phrase such as “did you?” are added to make clear that the expected answer is *no*.

Direct questions may also be introduced by a variety of interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs. The following is a list of all the words presented in Chapters I–XII that may introduce questions.

quis, quid	who, what
quī, quae, quod	what _____, which
cūr quam ob rem quārē	} why
ubi	when
ubi	where
unde	from where, whence
quō	to where, whither
quemadmodum	how
quō modō	in what way, how
uter, utra, utrum	which one (of two)

A question such as “Will you come to Rome or will you stay in the country?” is called a **double direct question**. A double direct question in Latin may be introduced by the interrogative particle **utrum**, by **-ne**, or by nothing at all. The conjunction **an** (or) introduces the second question. For example:

Utrum Rōmam veniēs an rūri manēbis?

Rōmamne veniēs an rūri manēbis?

Rōmam veniēs an rūri manēbis?

To Rome will you come *or* in the country will you stay?

Will you come to Rome *or* will you stay in the country?

Utrum Rōmam veniēs an nōn?

Will you come to Rome *or* (will you) not (come to Rome)?

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no differences in meaning among the first three double direct questions. Double direct questions introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.
2. **Utrum** is in origin the neuter singular accusative of the interrogative adjective **uter, utra, utrum** used adverbially (whether). In double direct questions it may introduce the first question, but it should not be translated.
3. The ellipsis of certain words from one or both questions is a regular feature of double direct questions. Although in the last sentence only **nōn** appears after **an**, the rest of the second question may easily be supplied from the first question.
4. Additional questions may be added to double direct questions using the conjunction **an**.

§115. Deliberative Subjunctive

A verb in the present subjunctive in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is deliberating about or weighing courses of action for the present or the future. A verb in the imperfect subjunctive in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is deliberating about an action in the past. The adverb **nōn** is used for negation. This independent use of the subjunctive is called **Deliberative** (< **dēliberō**, “weigh”). For example:

Quid nunc agam?

What *should I do* now?

What *am I to do* now?

Quid illō tempore agerem?

What *should I have done* at that time?

What *was I to do* at that time?

Nōn venīrem Rōmam?

Should I not have come to Rome?

Was I not to have come to Rome?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Deliberative subjunctive is a variety of the Hortatory subjunctive. Unlike the Hortatory subjunctive, which expresses the will of the subject, the Deliberative subjunctive asks about the will of the person addressed. The Deliberative subjunctive most commonly occurs in the first person.
2. The English words “am/are/is . . . to” or “should” are regularly used to translate a Deliberative subjunctive in present or future time.
3. The English words “was/were . . . to” or “should have” are regularly used to translate a Deliberative subjunctive in past time.
4. The syntax of, for example, *agerem* is **imperfect subjunctive, Deliberative, past time**.

5. Sometimes an independent subjunctive appearing in a question is *Potential* rather than *Deliberative*. For example:

Quis rem pūblicam perīre cupiat? Who *would desire* the republic to perish?

☛ DRILL 114–115, PAGE 499, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§116. Indirect Questions

When a question is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the question is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Question**. For example:

What do those poets think about the nature of the gods? (Direct Question)

I do not know *what those poets think about the nature of the gods*. (Indirect Question)

When a direct question is reported indirectly in English, the subject and the verb of the direct question may have to be changed (for example, “do . . . think” becomes “think”). In Latin, *the verb of the indirect question is in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence*. For example:

Nesciō quid illī poētae dē nātūrā deōrum cōgitent.

I do not know what those poets about the nature of the gods *think*.

I do not know what those poets *think* about the nature of the gods.

Nesciō quid illī poētae dē nātūrā deōrum cōgitāverint.

I do not know what those poets *thought* about the nature of the gods.

Nesciō quid dē nātūrā deōrum dictūrus sīs.

I do not know what *you will (are going to) say* about the nature of the gods.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Indirect Question is a noun clause. It functions as either the direct object or (less frequently) the subject of the verb that introduces it.
2. Many Indirect Questions in early Latin appear with their verbs in the indicative. The use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions may have its origin in Deliberative subjunctives that were then made indirect. Regardless of the origin, the use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.
3. Future time in Indirect Questions is frequently indicated by the active periphrastic.
4. The syntax of, for example, **cōgitāverint** is **perfect subjunctive, Indirect Question, primary sequence, prior time**.
5. Most often the subjunctive verb in an Indirect Question should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

An Indirect Question may be introduced by any of the interrogative words used to introduce direct questions. When an original direct question has no interrogative

word or is introduced by the enclitic **-ne**, the indirect form may be introduced by the interrogative particle **num** or **an**, “whether.” For example:

Rōmam ire optat?	Is she desiring to go to Rome?
Quaesivērunt num Rōmam ire optāret.	They asked <i>whether</i> she was desiring to go to Rome.

Double Indirect Questions may be introduced by **utrum**, **-ne**, or nothing at all. The conjunction **an** (or) introduces the second question. Double Indirect Questions use the negative conjunction **necne**, “or not,” instead of **an nōn** (as in double direct questions). For example:

Utrum Rōmam ire optat an rūri manēre?	Is she desiring to go to Rome or to remain in the country?
Quaesii utrum Rōmam ire optāret an rūri manēre.	I asked <i>whether</i> she was desiring to go to Rome or to stay in the country.
Utrum Rōmam ire optat an nōn?	Is she desiring to go to Rome or not?
Quaesii utrum Rōmam ire optāret necne.	I asked <i>whether</i> she was desiring to go to Rome or not.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Double Indirect Questions introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.
2. In double Indirect Questions, the English word “whether” is used to translate **utrum** or **-ne**. “Whether” must be added to the English translation when the beginning of a double Indirect Question is not indicated in Latin.

Occasionally the verb in the subjunctive mood in an Indirect Question represents an *original* independent use of the subjunctive. For example:

Nesciō quid faciam.	I do not know <i>what I should do</i> .
----------------------------	---

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence, although **faciam** could represent a direct question with a verb in the indicative mood (**Quid faciō?** What am I doing?), the translation indicates that the original question had a verb in the subjunctive mood (**Quid faciam?** What should I do? [Deliberative subjunctive]).
2. The Deliberative subjunctive is the most common kind of independent subjunctive to appear in an Indirect Question. Occasionally a Potential subjunctive may also appear in an Indirect Question.

§117. Doubling Clauses

When an Indirect Question introduced by **num**, **an** (whether), or another interrogative word is preceded by a verb or other expression of doubting, the Indirect Question is sometimes called a **Doubling clause**. For example:

Omnēs dubitābant num Cicerō locūtūrus esset. (dubitō [1-tr.] doubt)

All men were doubting *whether* Cicero was going to speak.

Dubium est an nostrī vincant. (dubium, dubiī *n.* doubt)

There is a doubt *whether* our men are conquering.

When the expression of doubting is negated, or when negation is implied, the Doubling clause is introduced by the conjunction **quīn** (that). For example:

Nōn dubitāvī quīn Cicerō locūtūrus esset.

I did not doubt *that* Cicero was going to speak.

Nūllum dubium est quīn nostrī vincant.

There is no doubt *that* our men are conquering.

Quis dubitet quīn nostrī vincant?

Who would doubt *that* our men are conquering?

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because they are essentially Indirect Questions, Doubling clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.
2. In the third sentence negation is implied because the answer to this rhetorical question would be “no one.”

☛ DRILL 116–117, PAGE 505, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§118. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum*

The subordinating conjunction **cum** has a variety of meanings. The verb in a **cum** clause may be in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, depending on what particular type of clause **cum** introduces.

Type of Clause	Mood of Verb	Translation of <i>cum</i>
Temporal	Indicative	“(at the time) when” ¹
Circumstantial	Indicative (primary) (rare)	“(under the circumstances) when”
	Subjunctive (secondary)	
Causal	Subjunctive	“since/because”
Concessive	Subjunctive	“although”

1. When **cum** is followed by a *perfect* indicative and the verb in the main clause is *present* indicative, **cum** should be translated “whenever,” and the *perfect* indicative should be translated as a *present*. When **cum** is followed by the *pluperfect* indicative and the verb in the main clause is *imperfect* indicative, **cum** should be translated “whenever,” and the *pluperfect* indicative should be translated as an *imperfect*.

Like other subordinate clauses, **cum** clauses may *precede* or *follow* main clauses. When the subjunctive mood is used for the verb in a **cum** clause, the rules of sequence are followed. For example:

Temporal

Militēs ad campum accessērunt cum signum datum est.

The soldiers toward the plain approached (*at the time*) when the signal was given.

The soldiers approached the plain when the signal was given.

Cum militēs in campō vidī, magnopere timeō.

Whenever soldiers (*d.o.*) on the plain I see, greatly I am afraid.

Whenever I see soldiers on the plain, I am greatly afraid.

Cum militēs in campō videram, magnopere timēbam.

Whenever I saw (*repeatedly*) soldiers on the plain, I used to be greatly afraid.

Circumstantial

Hoc, cum dīcunt, intellegere mihi nōn videntur.

This thing, (*under the circumstances*) when they say, to understand to me they do not seem.

When they say this thing, they do not seem to me to understand (it).

Caesar, cum loqueretur, ab inimicis interfectus est.

Caesar, (*under the circumstances*) when he was speaking, by (his) enemies was killed.

When Caesar was speaking, he was killed by (his) enemies.

Causal

Pugnāre nōn possum cum gladiō caream.

To fight I am not able because a sword I am lacking.

I am not able to fight because I am lacking a sword.

Concessive

Cicerō, cum in oppidō parvō nātus esset, Rōmae tamen vivēbat.

Cicero, although in a small town he had been born, in Rome nevertheless he used to live.

Although Cicero had been born in a small town, nevertheless he used to live in Rome.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The use of the subjunctive mood in circumstantial, causal, and concessive **cum** clauses reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.
2. A **cum** clause followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood may introduce a circumstantial, causal, or concessive clause. Context usually makes clear which sense is appropriate. For example, in the last sentence above the presence of **tamen** in the main clause indicates that the preceding subordinate clause is *concessive*.
3. The subjunctive verb in a **cum** clause should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

● DRILL 118, PAGE 509, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§119. The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*

The irregular verbs **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, —, “be willing, want, wish”; **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, “be unwilling, not want, not wish”; and **mālō**, **mälle**, **māluī**, —, “want more, prefer” have active forms only. They have a number of irregular forms in the present system. All the forms of the perfect active system are regular. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND FORMS:

	Present Active Indicative			Present Active Subjunctive		
<i>Singular</i>						
1	volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
2	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3	vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
<i>Plural</i>						
1	volumus	nolumus	mālumus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint
Present Active Infinitive:		velle nōlle mälle	Present Active Participle:		volēns, volentis nōlēns, nōlentis	
Present Active Imperative: nōlī (singular); nōlīte (plural)						

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are two common, older forms of **vult** and **vultis**: **volt** and **voltis**. The forms given above replaced these older forms during the first century B.C.E., but the older forms occur frequently in many classical authors, including Cicero. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE ARCHAIC FORMS.
2. **Nōlō** was formed by the addition of **nōn** to **volō**. In the present active indicative conjugation of **nōlō**, three forms (the second and third person singular and the second person plural) are simply **nōn** and the corresponding form of **volō**.
3. **Mālō** was formed by the addition of **magis** to **volō**, and it therefore may take structures that regularly accompany the comparative degree. For example:

Sapiēns amīcitiām omnibus rēbus mālit. (Ablative of Comparison)

A wise man friendship (d.o.) than all things would want more.

A wise man would want friendship more than all things.

Nostrī pugnāre quam fugere māluērunt. (comparison with **quam**)

Our men to fight than to flee preferred.

Our men preferred to fight (rather) than to flee.

4. In the imperfect and future active indicative, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** are conjugated as if they were regular third-conjugation verbs with the stems **vole-**, **nōle-**, and **māle-**, respectively. The first person singular future active indicative forms of **nōlō** (***nōlam**) and **mālō** (***mālam**) do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.
5. The present active subjunctive of **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** may be compared to the present active subjunctive of **sum** (**sim**, **sīs**, **sit**, etc.). The imperfect active subjunctive is formed regularly from the irregular present active infinitives **velle**, **nōlle**, and **mälle**.
6. **Mālō** does not have a present active participle.
7. **Volō** and **mālō** do *not* have imperative forms. For the use of the imperative forms of **nōlō** (**nōlī** and **nōlīte**) see §120.

§120. Negative Commands with *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and an Infinitive

Nōlī and **nōlīte** are used *with infinitives to express negative commands*. For example:

<i>Nōlī, amīce, mē ōdisse.</i>	<i>Be unwilling, friend, me (d.o.) to hate.</i> <i>Do not hate me, friend.</i>
<i>Nōlīte ex prōvinciā discēdere.</i>	<i>Be unwilling (pl.) from the province to depart.</i> <i>Do not (pl.) depart from the province.</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although a Jussive subjunctive may be used to express a negative command, **nōlī** or **nōlīte** is a more common way of expressing this idea in classical Latin prose.
2. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 119–120, PAGE 515, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§121. Dative with a Compound Verb

Many compound verbs, which have been formed by the addition of certain prepositions as prefixes to simple verbs, regularly appear with a dative that is connected in sense with the meaning of the preposition. Such a dative is called a **Dative with a Compound Verb**. For example:

<i>Ille cōpiīs praeest. (praesum [prae- + sum] be in charge [of])</i>
<i>That man (with reference) to the troops is in charge.</i>
<i>That man is in charge of the troops.</i>
<i>Iste patriae bellum īferet. (īferō [in- + ferō] carry [in], inflict [on])</i>
<i>That (contemptible) man (with reference) to the country war (d.o.) will inflict.</i>
<i>That contemptible man will inflict war on the country.</i>

The syntax of each italicized word (**cōpiīs**, **patriae**) is **Dative with a Compound Verb**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a preposition is compounded with a transitive verb, the resulting compound verb may take both an Accusative, Direct Object and a Dative with a Compound Verb.
2. A Dative with a Compound Verb replaces a prepositional phrase that has an equivalent meaning. For example, the idea expressed by the dative **patriae** in the second sentence above might also have been conveyed by **in patriam**, “against the country.” Many compound verbs that take a Dative with a Compound Verb are also found with corresponding prepositional phrases.

3. When prefixes related to the following prepositions are used to form compound verbs, the resulting compound verbs *may* take a Dative with a Compound Verb:

ad	ob (prep. + acc.) in front of ²
ante	post
circum (prep. + acc.) around	prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before
cum	sub
in	super (prep. + acc. <i>or</i> abl.) above
inter	

4. A Dative with a Compound Verb is seldom translated with the English prepositions “to” or “for.” The second English translations of the two sentences above are to be preferred because they best represent the meanings of the compounds that result from the addition of the prepositions to the simple verbs.

2. Although the preposition **ob** regularly means “on account of,” “because of,” its original meaning was spatial (in front of, in the way of).

Short Readings

1. A frustrated wife responds to her husband.

vĕra dīcō, sed nĕquīquam, quoniam nōn vīs crĕdere. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 835)

nĕquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

2. A truism from Plautus

tum dĕnique hominĕs nostra intellegimus bona,

quom, quae in potestāte habuimus, ea āmīsimus. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVI* 142–43)

dĕnique (adv.) finally, at last

quom = cum

potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power; possession

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose

3. A comic character states his dilemma.

nunc ego inter sacrum saxumque stō, nec quid faciam sciō. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVI* 617)

sacrum, sacrī *n.* sacred place

saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone

4. The slave Tranio responds understandingly to an obnoxious remark of his friend Grumio.

quasi invidĕre mī hōc vidĕre, Grumiō,

quia mihi bene est et tibi male est; dignissimumst. (PLAUTUS, *MOSTELLARIA* 51–52)

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

invidĕō (in- + vidĕō) envy, be jealous of

mī = mihi

Grumiō, *Grumiōnis *m.* Grumio

quia (conj.) because

dignissimumst = dignissimumst

5. A slave answers a question about his future.

ūnum hoc sciō: quod fors feret ferĕmus aequō animō. (TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 138)

Two Roman proverbs

6. Nescit quō tendat quī multās sequitur sĕmitās. ([VARRO], *SENTENTIAE* 88)

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tĕnsus aim, direct oneself, travel

sĕmita, sĕmitae *f.* path

7. Nescīre quid sit paupertās optimus est ad summās dīvitias prōgressus.

([VARRO], *SENTENTIAE* 95)

paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty

dīvitiae, dīvitiarum *f. pl.* wealth

prōgressus, prōgressūs *m.* progress; course

8. A definition of a rhetorical term

frequentātiō est cum rēs tōtā causā dispersae cōguntur in ūnum locum quō gravior aut ācrior aut crīminōsior ōrātiō sit. (*RHETORICA AD HERENNIUM* IV.52.22)

frequentātiō, frequentātiōnis *f.* concentration; assembling

dispergō, dispergere, dispersī, dispersus spread about, scatter, disperse

cōgō (co- + agō), **cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** drive together; bring together, collect

crīminōsus, -a, -um accusatory, damning

9. Cicero gives this as an example of a rhetorical statement that is obviously false.

nēmō est quīn pecūniam quam sapientiam mālit. (*CICERO, DE INVENTIÖNE* I.80)

10. The orator exhorts Catiline directly.

mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis atque incendiōrum.

(*CICERO, IN CATILINAM* I 6)

mūtō (1-tr.) change

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

incendium, incendiū *n.* fire; arson

11. The orator utters some dramatic rhetorical questions.

ō dī immortalēs! ubinam gentium sumus? in quā urbe vīvimus? quam rem pūblicam habēmus? (*CICERO, IN CATILINAM* I 9)

ubinam (interrog. adv.) where ever, where indeed

12. After yet another attack on Catiline, Cicero asks a rhetorical question.

sed cūr iam diū dē ūnō hoste loquimur et dē eō hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem, et quem, quia, quod semper voluī, mūrus interest, nōn timeō; dē hīs quī dissimulant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nōbīscum sunt nihil dīcimus?

(*CICERO, IN CATILINAM* II 17)

quia (conj. + indic.) because

intersum (inter- + sum), **interesse, interfuī**, — be between

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend

remanēō (re- + manēō) remain

13. While speaking about fellow citizens who have joined Catiline's conspiracy, Cicero sums up his patriotic feelings.

. . . iam nōn possum oblīvīscī meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōnsulem, mihi aut cum hīs vīvendum aut prō hīs esse moriendum.

(*CICERO, IN CATILINAM* II 27)

14. Cicero recounts what a leading man said about Cicero's exile.

. . . L. Cotta dixit id quod dignissimum rē publicā fuit, nihil dē mē āctum esse iūre, nihil mōre maiōrum, nihil lēgibus; . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 73)

L. Cotta, L. Cottae *m.* L. (Aurelius) Cotta (consul 65 B.C.E.)

15. Forced to concede that those who are dead cannot be said to be miserable, a character in a philosophical dialogue raises another objection.

quid? quī vivimus, cum moriendum sit, nōnne miserī sumus? quae enim potest in vitā esse iūcunditās cum diēs et noctēs cōgitandum sit iam iamque† esse moriendum? (CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.14)

iūcunditās, iūcunditātis *f.* delight, enjoyment

†iam iamque, at any time now

16. After a short interruption, a philosophical speaker returns to his argument.

mors igitur† ipsa, quae videtur nōtissima rēs esse, quid sit primum est videndum.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.18)

†igitur, here, as I was saying

17. In a fictional dialogue with his brother, Cicero derides the *haruspex*, the soothsayer who uses the entrails of sacrificial victims to foretell the future.

quid? dē officiō num quis† haruspicem cōnsulit quem ad modum sit cum parentibus, cum frātribus, cum amicīs vivendum, quem ad modum utendum pecuniā, quem ad modum honōre, quem ad modum imperiō? ad sapientēs haec, nōn ad dīvinōs† referrī† solent. (CICERO, *DE DIVINATIONE* II.11)

officiū, officiū *n.* duty, obligation, function

†quis, here, *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone

haruspex, haruspicis *m.* soothsayer, diviner

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsulūi, cōnsultus consult;

ask the advice of (someone) about

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent

honor, honōris *m.* (elective) office

†dīvinus, dīvinī *m.* soothsayer, prophet

†referō, here, refer

18. Cicero discusses the competing loyalties affecting many Romans.

ego mehercule et illi† et omnibus mūnicipibus duās esse cēnsēō patriās, ūnam nātūrae, alteram cīvitatīs: ut ille Catō, quom esset Tusculī nātus, in populī Rōmānī civitātem susceptus est, ita, quom ortū Tusculānus esset, cīvitatē Rōmānus, habuit alteram locī patriam, alteram iūris; . . . (CICERO, *DE LĒGIBUS* II.5)

†illi refers to Cato.

mūniceps, mūnicipis *m.* citizen or native of a mūnicipium (a self-governing community in Italy)

cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus hold as one's opinion, think

quom = cum

Tusculum, Tusculī *n.* Tusculum (a town in Latium)

suscipiō (sub- + capiō) receive, adopt

ortus, ortūs *m.* origin, birth, ancestry

Tusculānus, -a, -um Tusculan

19. Cicero explains why he attaches such importance to officeholders.

ut enim magistrātibus lēgēs, sīc populō praesunt magistrātūs vērēque dīcī potest magistrātum lēgem esse loquentem, lēgem autem mūtum magistrātum.

(CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* III.2)

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* officeholder, magistrate
mūtus, -a, -um mute, incapable of speaking; silent

20. Cicero gives his opinion about the destiny of the Roman people.

populum Rōmānum servīre fās nōn est, quem dī immortalēs omnibus gentibus imperāre voluērunt. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* VI 19)

serviō, servīre, serviī/serviī, servītum be a slave; serve

21. An excerpt from Cicero's translation of Plato's *Timaeus*

deus autem et ortū et virtūte antiqūiōrem genuit animum eumque ut dominum atque imperantem oboedientī praefēcit corporī . . . (CICERO, *TIMAEUS* 21)

ortus, ortūs *m.* rising; origin, ancestry
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus create, beget (of a father)
oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant, subject

22. Cicero explains to his friend Atticus why he is determined to erect a shrine in honor of his recently deceased daughter, Tullia.

sed iam quasi vōtō quōdam et prōmissō mē tenēri putō, longumque illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, quod mihi tamen nimium longum vidētur. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.18.1)

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer
prōmissum, prōmissī *n.* promise
exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

23. Cicero describes the effects of receiving his friend Atticus's letters.

tamen adlevor cum loquor tēcum absēns, multō etiam magis cum tuās litterās legō. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.39.2)

adlevō (1-tr.) lift up, raise; comfort, console
absēns, absentis not present, absent

24. A disparaging remark of Caesar

oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vallō atque fossā mūniērunt . . .

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* V.21)

Britannī, Britannōrum *m. pl.* (the) Britanni
silva, silvae *f. sing. or pl.*, forest
impeditus, -a, -um obstructed

vallum, vallī *n.* rampart, palisades
fossa, fossae *f.* ditch
mūniō, mūnīre, mūniī/mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify

25. Caesar finds a convenient point in his narrative to begin a digression.

quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.11)

pervenīō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ ad + acc.)
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien,
 strange; out of place
Gallia, **Galliae** *f.* Gaul

Germānia, **Germāniae** *f.* Germany
nātiō, **nātiōnis** *f.* nation
prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) put forward; state

26. Roman veterans, cornered and faced with difficult odds, refuse to panic.

itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō equite Rōmānō, quī iis erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.40)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
cohortor (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
C. Trebōnius, **C. Trebōniī** *m.* C. Trebonius
eques, **equitis** *m.* horseman, cavalryman
praepōnō (prae- + pōnō) put in front (of), put in
 charge (of)

perrumpō, **perrumpere**, **perrūpī**, **perruptus** burst
 through
incolumis, **incolume** unharmed, safe
pervenīō (per- + veniō) arrive at; get through (to)

27. Caesar recalls the endurance of his men when faced with starvation.

nūlla tamen ex iis vōx est audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indigna. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VII.17)

maiestās, **maiestātis** *f.* dignity, majesty
superior, **superius** upper, higher; earlier, previous
victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory

28. Caesar explains why a certain Varus may have believed a false report.

. . . nam quae volumus, ea crēdimus libenter, et quae sentīmus ipsī reliquōs sentīre spērāmus . . . (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ CIVILI* II.27)

libenter (adv.) gladly, willingly
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

29. Catiline speaks of the strong bond between himself and his fellow conspirators.

idem velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēmum firma amīcitia est.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 20)

dēmum (adv.) precisely, only
firmus, -a, -um strong, durable, steadfast

30. An observation about Cicero's closest friend, T. Pomponius Atticus

honōrēs nōn petiit, cum eī patērent propter vel grātiam vel dignitātem.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VITA ATTICĪ* 6)

honor, honōris *m.* public or political office

pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open

vel (adv.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** either . . . or . . .

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status

Some Roman proverbs

31. Malus bonum ubi sē simulat tunc est pessimus. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M9)

simulō (1-tr.) pretend, simulate

32. Male facere quī vult numquam nōn causam invenit.

(PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M28)

33. Omnēs aequō animō pārent ubi dignī imperant.

(PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* O6)

34. Peccāre paucī nōlunt, nūllī nesciunt. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* P35)

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong

35. Stultum facit Fortūna quem vult perdere. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* S29)

stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

perdō (**per-** + **dō**) lose; destroy

36. The shepherd Tityrus describes the signs of evening's approach.

et iam summa procul villārum culmina fūmant

maiōrēsque cadunt altīs dē montibus umbrae. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* I.83)

procul (adv.) at a distance

villa, villae *f.* country house, farmhouse

culmen, culminis *n.* summit, roof

fūmō, fūmāre, fūmāvī, — emit smoke, smoke

37. Charon objects to ferrying Aeneas to the underworld.

corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carīnā. (VERGIL, *AENEID* VI.391)

vīvus, -a, -um living

Stygius, -a, -um of or belonging to the river Styx, Stygian

vectō (1-tr.) carry, convey

carīna, carīnae *f.* keel; ship

38. Horace describes the influence of Greek culture on the Romans.

Graecia capta ferum victōrem cēpit et artīs
intulit agrestī Latīō . . . (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* II.1.156–57)

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
agrestis, agreste of or living in the fields, rustic; uncivilized
Latium, Latī *n.* Latium (an area in central Italy)

39. The poet explains his poetic mission.

mē Venus artificem tenerō praefēcit amōrī . . . (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* I.7)

artifex, artificis skilled, artistic
tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate, young

40. Juno reflects on her rivalry with Bacchus.

ipse[†] docet quid agam (fās est ab hoste docērī) . . . (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSES* IV.428)

[†]**ipse** refers to Bacchus.
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach

41. In a mock legal case an advocate explains to the jury the difficulty of a woman torn between the wishes of her father and her husband.

scītis quemadmodum suōs amet: nōn magis sine patre vīvere potest quam sine virō.
(SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRŌVERSIAE* II.2.2)

42. Arguing that doing good can never be harmful and is often profitable, the philosopher offers some pithy advice.

alium rē, alium fidē, alium grātiā, alium cōnsiliō, alium praeceptīs salūbribus ad-
iūvā. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DE BENEFICIIS* I.2.4)

praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* rule, precept
salūbris, salūbre beneficial, helpful
adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus help, assist

43. The philosopher gives his opinion about how the performance of good deeds is repaid by good men.

aequissima vōx est et iūs gentium prae sē ferēns: “redde quod dēbēs.”
(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DE BENEFICIIS* III.14.3)

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; **prae sē ferre**, to exhibit in one’s demeanor, display; declare
reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

44. A quotation from the Greek philosopher Hekaton

sī vīs amārī, amā. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MORĀLES* IX.6)

45. The philosopher concludes a letter encouraging his friend Lucilius to learn to accept life's unpredicability. The first line is a translation from the Greek philosopher Cleanthes.

dūcunt volentem fāta, nōlentem trahunt.

sīc vīvāmus, sīc loquāmur; parātōs nōs inveniāt atque inpigrōs fātum. hic est magnus animus quī sē eī trādīdit; at contrā ille pusillus et dēgener quī obluctātur et dē ordine mundī male exīstimat et ēmendāre māvult deōs quam sē. valē.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* CVII.11–12)

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; pull
inpiger, inpigra, inpigrum not slothful; active, energetic
at (conj.) but
pusillus, -a, -um very small, petty, mean
dēgener, dēgeneris lowborn; degenerate, ignoble

obluctor (1-intr.) struggle, resist
ordō, ordinis *m.* order
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
exīstimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think
ēmendō (1-tr.) correct, reform

46. A comparison of the workings of reason and anger

ratīō id iūdicāre vult quod aequum est: īra id aequum vidērī vult quod iūdicāvit.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* III.18.1)

ratīō, ratīōnis *f.* account, reason
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine

47. Quintilian assesses the Roman elegists.

elegiā quoque Graecōs prōvocāmus, cuius mihi tersus atque ēlegāns maximē videtur auctor Tibullus. sunt quī Propertium mālint. Ovidius utrōque[†] lascīvior, sicut dūrior Gallus. (QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* X.1.93)

elegiā, elegiāe *f.* elegiac poetry, elegy
Graeci, Graecōrum *m.* (the) Greeks
prōvocō (prō- + vocō) (1-tr.) challenge, rival
tersus, -a, -um polished, refined, neat
ēlegāns, ēlegantis refined, cultivated; graceful; apt (in choosing words)
auctor, auctōris *m.* source; author
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* (Albius) Tibullus (elegiac poet [55?–19 B.C.E.])

[†]**utrōque** = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
sicut (conj.) just as
Gallus, Gallī *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus (elegiac poet [69?–26 B.C.E.])

48. A piece of Quintilian's wit

... quī stultīs vidērī ērudītī volunt stultī ērudītīs videntur.

(QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* X.7.21)

stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish
ērudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

49. The satirist derides life in Rome.

quid Rōmae faciam? mentīrī nescio;† . . . (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* III.41)

mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum tell a falsehood, lie

†The final -ō of **nesciō** here scans *short*.

50. The satirist advocates telling the truth in court.

summum crēde nefās animam praeferre pudōrī . . . (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* VIII.83)

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

51. What should men ask from the gods?

ōrandum est ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō. (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* X.356)

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane, sound

52. After a catalogue of men's crimes the satirist appends a tart remark.

hūmānī generis mōrēs tibi nōsse volentī

sufficit ūna domus;† . . . (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* XIII.159–60)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

nōsse = nōvisse

sufficiō (sub- + faciō) be sufficient, be adequate

†**domus**, *here*, courthouse

53. Religious practices of the Germans

deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt, cui certīs diēbus hūmānīs quoque hostiīs
litāre fās habent. Herculem ac Martem concessīs animālībus plācant.

(TACITUS, *GERMĀNIA* 9.2)

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate; worship

hūmānus, -a, -um human

hostia, hostiae *f.* (sacrificial) victim

litō (1-tr.) sacrifice

Herculēs, Herculis *m.* Hercules

concedō (con- + cēdō), concedere, concessī,

concessus grant, yield, give

plācō (1-tr.) appease, propitiate

54. The historian comments on the superstitious responses of Roman soldiers to a strange drought.

quod in pāce fors seu nātūra, tunc fātum et ira deī vocābātur.

(TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* IV.26)

seu (conj.) or if; or

55. Gellius comments on the importance of usage to common speech.

sed nīmīrum cōnsuētūdō vīcit, quae cum omnium domina rērum, tum maximē
verbōrum est. (AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* XII.13.16)

nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, of course

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage

domina, dominae *f.* mistress, ruler

Longer Readings

1. Naevius, *alia carmina epica* frag. 64.1-4

The epitaph of the early Roman poet Naevius

Inmortālēs mortālēs sī foret fās flēre,
 flērent dīvae Camēnae Naevium poētam.
 itaque postquam est Orchī trāditus thēsaurō,
 oblītī sunt Rōmae loquier linguā Latīnā.

inmortālīs = immortalīs

foret = esset

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

Camēna, Camēnae *f.* Camena (any one of the
 Italic divinities connected with springs and
 waters and identified with the Greek Muses)

Naevius, Naevīi *m.* Naevius

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

Orchī = Orcī

thēsaurus, thēsaurī *m.* treasure-chamber, vault;
 storehouse

loquier = loquī

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

Latīnus, -a, -um of or belonging to Latium (an
 area in central Italy), Latin

Gnaeus Naevius (270–201 B.C.E.) wrote tragedies, comedies, and an epic poem about the first war with Carthage entitled *Bellum Pūnicum*, approximately eighty lines of which survive. Naevius wrote in the accentual Saturnian rhythm native to Italy rather than in the quantitative dactylic hexameter adapted from Greek models by later Latin epic poets.

2. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 19

Cicero concludes his account of the special position and value of poets.

sit igitur, iūdicēs, sānctum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen, quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit. saxa atque sōlitūdīnēs vōcī respondent, bestiae saepe immānēs cantū flectuntur atque cōsistunt; nōs īnstitūtī rēbus optimīs nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur?

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* judge, juror

sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless

hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, cultured

nōmen, nōminis *n.* name

barbaria, barbariae *f.* foreign or barbarian world; barbarity, barbarousness

violō (1-tr.) treat without respect, dishonor, outrage, violate

saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone

sōlitūdō, sōlitūdīnis *f.* solitude, wasteland, uninhabited country

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature

immānis, immāne savage, brutal; tremendous, immense

cantus, cantūs *m.* singing, song

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence

cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, — halt, stop, stand (still)

īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus set up, establish; train, instruct

In 62 B.C.E. Cicero successfully defended with his *Prō Archiā* (On Behalf of Archias) the citizenship of A. Licinius Archias, a Greek poet and teacher who had been granted citizenship many years earlier. Cicero took the opportunity presented by the case to make an impassioned plea on behalf of the importance of poetry and the liberal arts in general.

3. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.24

L. Licinius Crassus, a famous orator of his day, speaks to his friend Catulus in defense of relaxation. He recalls an earlier conversation with the orator and lawyer Scaevola.

itaque illud ego, quod in causā Curiānā Scaevolae dixī, nōn dixī secus ac sentiēbam: nam “sī,” inquam, “Scaevola, nūllum erit testāmentum rēctē factum, nisi quod tū scripseris, omnēs ad tē civēs cum tabulīs veniēmus, omnium testāmenta tū scribēs ūnus. quid igitur?” inquam. “quandō agēs negōtium pūblicum? quandō amicōrum? quandō tuum? quandō dēnique nihil agēs?” tum illud addidī: “mihi enim liber esse nōn vidētur, quī nōn aliquandō nihil agit.” in quā permaneō, Catule, sententiā mēque, cum hūc vēnī, hoc ipsum, nihil agere et plānē cessāre, dēlectat.

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

Curiānus, -a, -um of or belonging to Curius

Scaevola, Scaevolae *m.* (Q. Mucius) Scaevola (consul 117 B.C.E.)

secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; **secus ac,** other(wise) than

testāmentum, testāmentī *n.* will, testament

rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly

tabula, tabulae *f.* (writing) tablet; *pl.*, document, deed, record

quandō (interrog. adv.) when

negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up

addō (ad- + dō) add

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally

permaneō (per- + maneō) remain; persist (in), remain steady

Catulus, Catulī *m.* (Q. Lutatius) Catulus (consul 102 B.C.E.)

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; utterly, absolutely

cessō (1-intr.) stop, desist; do nothing, rest

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

4. Cicero, *Prō Scaurō* 4

In order to cast doubt on a foreign witness, Cicero recalls a famously incredible story.

at Graeculī quidem multa fingunt, apud quōs etiam Theombrotum Ambraciōtam ferunt sē ex altissimō praecipitāsse mūrō, nōn quō[†] acerbitātis accēpisset[†] aliquid, sed, ut videō scrīptum apud Graecōs, cum summī philosophī Platōnis graviter et ornātē scrīptum librum dē morte lēgisset,[†] in quō, ut opīnor, Sōcratēs illō ipsō diē quō erat eī moriendum permulta disputat: hanc esse mortem quam nōs vītā putārēmus, quom corpore animus tamquam carcere saeptus tenērētur, vītā autem esse eam, quom īdem animus vinclis corporis liberātus in eum sē locum unde esset ortus retulisset.[†]

at (conj.) but

Graeculī, Graeculōrum *m. pl.* (the) (contemptible) Greeks

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus fashion, contrive; imagine

Theombrotus, Theombrotī *m.* Theombrotus

Ambraciōtēs, Ambraciōtae *m.* a man of Ambracia (a Greek town in Epirus), (an) Ambracian

praecipitō (1-tr.) throw, hurl; **praecipitāsse** = **praecipitāvīsse**

[†]**quō**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) because

acerbitās, acerbitātis *f.* bitterness; grief, sorrow

[†]**accēpisset**, *sequence determined by praecipitāsse*

aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something, anything

Graecī, Graecōrum *m. pl.* (the) Greeks

philosophus, philosophī *m.* philosopher

Plato, Platōnis *m.* Plato

ornātē (adv.) elegantly

[†]**lēgisset**, *sequence determined by praecipitāsse*

opīnor (1-tr.) think, suppose

Sōcratēs, Sōcratis *m.* Socrates

permultus, -a, -um very much, very many

disputō (**dis-** + **putō**) examine, investigate; dis-

cuss; **disputat**, *historical present tense, used here to add vividness; translate as past*

quom = **cum**

tamquam (conj.) as if

carcer, carceris *m.* prison

saepiō, saepīre, saepsi, saeptus fence in, enclose

vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī *n.* chain

orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise

[†]**retulisset**, *represents perfect indicative in a cum-whenever clause subordinated in indirect statement; sē referre*, to return

The *Pro Scaurō* (54 B.C.E.) is a speech delivered by Cicero in defense of Marcus Aemilius Scaurus, who had been charged with extortion while acting as praetor and propraetor in Sardinia. Scaurus was acquitted.

5. Catullus XLV (hendecasyllable)

The poet paints a picture of mutual love.

Acmēn Septimius, suōs amōrēs,
tenēns in gremiō “mea” inquit “Acmē,
nī tē perditē amō atque amāre porrō
omnēs sum assiduē parātus annōs,
quantum quī pote plūrimum perīre,
sōlus in Libyā Indiāque tostā
caesiō veniam obuius leōnī.”

hoc ut dīxit, Amor sinistrā ut ante
dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.

at Acmē leviter caput reflectēns
et dulcis puerī ēbriōs ocellōs
illō purpureō ōre suāviāta,
“sīc,” inquit “mea vīta, Septimille,
huic ūnī dominō ūsque serviāmus,
ut multō mihi maior ācriorque
ignis mollibus ardet in medullīs.”

hoc ut dīxit, Amor sinistrā ut ante
dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.

Acmē, Acmēs *f.* Acme; **Acmēn** = *acc. sing.*
Septimius, Septimiū *m.* Septimius
gremium, gremiū *n.* bosom, lap
nī = nisi
perditē (*adv.*) ruinously, recklessly, desperately
porrō (*adv.*) forward; hereafter; in turn, further-
more
assiduē (*adv.*) continually, constantly
quantum (*adv.*) as much as
pote (*indeclinable adj.*) having the power, able;
quī pote = is quī potest
Libya, Libyae *f.* Libya (a province in North Africa)
India, Indiae *f.* India, the Far East
torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus parch, roast, scorch,
burn
caesius, -a, -um (of eyes only) cutting, sharp;
cat-eyed, gray-eyed
obuius, -a, -um in the way, so as to meet, face to
face with (+ *dat.*)
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left; *fem. subst.*, left
side

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right
side
sternuō, sternuere, sternuī, — sneeze
approbātiō, approbātiōnis *f.* approval
at (*conj.*) but
caput, capitis *n.* head
reflectō, reflectere, reflexī, reflexus bend back
dulcis, dulce sweet; pleasant
ēbrius, -a, -um drunk, intoxicated
ocellus, ocelli *m.* (little) eye
purpureus, -a, -um dark red, crimson, purple
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth
suāvior (1-*tr.*) kiss
Septimillus, Septimillī *m.* (little) Septimius
ūsque (*adv.*) continuously
serviō, servīre, servīi/servīvī, servītum be a slave;
serve (+ *dat.*)
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire
(with passion)
medulla, medullae *f.* marrow; *pl.*, vitals, innards

5

10

15

nunc ab auspiciō bonō profectī
 mūtuīs animīs amant amantur: 20
 ūnam Septimius misellus Acēm
 māvult quam Syriās Britanniāsque;
 ūnō in Septimiō fidēlis Acēm
 facit dēliciās libīdinēsque.
 quis ūllōs hominēs beātiōrēs 25
 vīdit, quis Venerem auspicātiōrem?

auspicium, auspiciū *n.* augury, omen, divine sign
mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual
Septimius, Septimī *m.* Septimius
misellus, -a, -um poor (little), wretched, pitiable
Acēm, Acēs *f.* Acme; **Acēm** = *acc. sing.*
Syria, Syriae *f.* Syria

Britannia, Britanniae *f.* Britain
fidēlis, fidēle faithful
dēliciae, dēliciārū *f. pl.* delight
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
beātus, -a, -um happy, blessed, fortunate
auspicātus, -a, -um favorable, auspicious

6. Catullus LXIX

Why does Rufus repel women?

Nōlī admīrārī quārē tibi fēmina nūlla,
 Rūfe, velit tenerum supposuisse femur,
 nōn sī illam rārae labefactēs mūnere vestis
 aut perlūcidulī dēliciīs lapidis.
 laedit tē quaedam mala fābula, quā tibi fertur 5
 valle sub ālārūm trux habitāre caper.
 hunc metuunt omnēs; neque mīrum: nam mala valdē† est
 bestia, nec quīcum bella† puella cubet.
 quārē aut crūdēlem nāsōrum interfice pestem
 aut admīrārī dēsine cūr fugiunt. 10

admīror (1-tr.) be astonished (at), wonder (at)
Rūfus, Rūfī *m.* Rufus
tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate,
 young
suppōnō (sub- + pōnō) put under; join
femur, femoris *n.* thigh
rārus, -a, -um loose-knit; exquisite, rare
labefactō (1-tr.) cause to totter, weaken
vestis, vestis, -ium *f.* clothing, garment
perlūcidulus, -a, -um transparent, translucent
dēliciae, dēliciārū *f. pl.* delight
lapis, lapidis *m.* stone
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm
fābula, fābulae *f.* story, tale
vallēs, vallis, -ium *f.* valley, vale
āla, ālae *f.* wing; *here*, armpit

trux, trucus wild, rough, fierce, ferocious
habitō (1-intr.) live
caper, caprī *m.* billy goat
metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread
mīrus, -a, -um marvelous, astonishing
 †**valdē**, *here*, very
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature
quīcum = quācum
 †**bellus, -a, -m** pretty, charming, lovely
cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum lie down, sleep
crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel
nāsus, nāsī *m.* nose
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīi/dēsīvī, dēsītum stop,
 cease (+ infin.)

7. Catullus LXXII

The poet explains to Lesbia his conflicting feelings.

Dicēbās quondam solum tē nōsse Catullum,

Lesbia, nec prae mē velle tenēre Iovem.

dilēxī tum tē nōn tantum ut vulgus amīcam,

sed pater ut nātōs dīligit et generōs.

nunc tē cognōvī: quārē etsī impēnsius ūror,

multō mī tamen es vīlior et levior.

“quī† potis est?” inquis. quod† amantem iniūria tālis

cōgit amāre magis, sed bene velle minus.

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

nōsse = **nōvisse**

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before

diligō, dīligere, dilēxī, dīlectus value, esteem,
love

tantum (adv.) so much

vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude,
crowd

amīca, amīcae *f.* (female) friend; mistress

gener, generī *m.* son-in-law

impēnsus, -a, -um heavy; costly

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame

mī = **mihi**

vīlis, vīle worthless, cheap

†**quī**, *here* (adv.) how

potis (indeclinable adj.) having the power, able;
possible

†**quod**, *here* (conj.) because

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

tālis, tāle such, of such a sort

cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive
together; force, compel

8. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.15

Caesar describes the end of a battle against a German tribe.

Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs, sē ex castrīs eīēcērunt,[†] et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, relicuā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, relicuī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitudīne, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadrīngentōrum trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans

tergum, tergī *n.* back

clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting

abiciō (*ab-* + *iaciō*) throw away

militāris, militāre military

[†]**sē eīcere** to rush forth

cōnfluēs, cōnfluentis, -ium *m.* meeting place (of rivers), confluence

Mosa, Mosae *f.* (the) Meuse (a river in northern Gaul)

Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in north-eastern Gaul)

perveniō (*per-* + *veniō*) arrive at (+ *ad* + *acc.*)

relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

dēspērō (1-tr.) give up as hopeless, despair of

numerus, numerī *m.* number

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

praecipitō (1-tr.) throw *or* hurl headlong

ibi (*adv.*) there

lassitudō, lassitudinis *f.* weariness, fatigue

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress, overwhelm, crush

incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe

perpaucī, perpaucae, perpauca very few

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

tantus, -a, -um so great

caput, capitis *n.* head

recipiō (*re-* + *capiō*) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.25

From their ships anchored a short distance away in sufficiently deep water, Caesar's men attempted to come ashore in Britain. Frightened by the Celts on shore and by the deep water, they hesitated.

quod[†] ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs in-
ūsitiātor et mōtus ad[†] ūsum expeditior, paulum[†] removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et
rēmīs incitārī et ad[†] latus apertum hostium cōstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tor-
mentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit. quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. nam et
nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī
cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. at nostrīs militibus cūctantibus
maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus
deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “dēsilitē,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis
aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblicaē atque imperātōrī officium
praestiterō.” hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam
ferre coepit. tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī
ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.

†**quod** refers to the hesitation of Caesar's men.
animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī,
animadversus turn (one's) attention to,
notice
nāvis, nāvīs, -ium *f.* ship; **nāvī** = *abl. sing.*
barbarus, barbarī *m.* foreigner
inūsitiātus, -a, -um unusual, extraordinary
†**ad, here, for** (the purpose of)
ūsus, ūsus *m.* use; benefit, advantage
expeditus, -a, -um unimpeded, light-armed, free
†**paulum** (*adv.*) a little
removeō (re- + moveō) remove; move back
onerārius, -a, -um for transport, cargo-
rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
incitō (1-tr.) set in motion
†**ad, here, at, near**
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
apertus, -a, -um open; exposed
cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus set
up, establish; draw up, station
inde (*adv.*) from there, thence
funda, fundae *f.* sling
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
tormentum, tormentū *n.* engine of war, missile-
shooting machine, catapult
prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpuli,
prōpulsus push forward; repel
submoveō (sub- + moveō) drive off

figūra, figūrae *f.* shape
permovēō (per- + moveō) disturb; frighten
cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, — stop, stand
still, halt
pēs, pedis *m.* foot; **pedem referre,** to retreat
at (*conj.*) but
cūctor (1-intr.) delay, hesitate
altitudō, altitudinis *f.* height; depth
aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle; standard (of a legion)
obtestor (1-tr.) call to witness; swear by; beseech,
implore
ēveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, turn out
dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsiliū, dēsultus jump or leap
down
commilitō, commilitōnis *m.* fellow soldier
prōdō (prō- + dō) hand over
officiū, officii *n.* obligation; duty
praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestāturus
perform, carry out
prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) hurl forward or forth
—, —, **coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began,
have begun
cohortor (co- + hortor) exhort, encourage; speak
encouragingly
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great
dēdecus, dēdecoris *n.* disgrace, dishonor
admittō (ad- + mittō) allow, permit
ūniversus, -a, -um all together

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.8

After making various preliminary arrangements (**hīs rēbus**), Caesar prepared to cross over from Gaul to Britain, but all did not go as planned.

hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit et lēnī Africō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. tum rursus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārun. accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus.

Labiēnus, Labiēnī, m. (Titus) Labienus (one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul)
continēns, continentis, -ium n. mainland; **continentī = abl. sing.**
eques, equitis m. horseman, cavalryman
portus, portūs m. port, harbor
tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum defend, protect
frūmentarius, -a, -um of or concerned with corn or grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, corn or grain supply
prōvideō (prō- + videō) provide for, see to
Gallia, Galliae f. Gaul
pār, paris equal
numerus, numerī m. number
sōl, sōlis m. sun
occāsus, occāsūs m. setting
nāvis, nāvis, -ium f. ship
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen, release; **nāvem solvere**, to set sail
lēnis, lēne gentle, light
Africus, Africī m. Africus (southwest wind)
prōveho, prōvehere, prōvexī, prōvectus carry forward, convey
circiter (adv.) about
ventus, ventī m. wind
intermittō (inter- + mittō) interrupt; **ventō intermissō**, with the wind having died down
cursum, cursūs m. course; progress, speed

dēferō (dē- + ferō) bring down
aestus, aestūs m. tide; current
orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left; **sub sinistrā**, on the left-hand side, to his left
Britannia, Britanniae f. Britain
cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus catch sight of, see
rursus (adv.) again
commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis f. changing, change
rēmūs, rēmī m. oar
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus strive, direct one's course
ēgressus, ēgressūs m. disembarking, landing
superior, superius earlier
aestās, aestātis f. summer
admodum (adv.) to a great degree, much
vectōrius, -a, -um of or for carrying
nāvigiūm, nāvigiū n. vessel, ship; **vectōriūm nāvigiūm**, transport ship
rēmigō (1-intr.) row; **rēmigandī, neut. sing. gen. of verbal noun**, of rowing
adaequō (1-tr.) make equal; reach; **adaequārun = adaequāvērunt**
merīdiānus, -a, -um of midday, noon-
ferē (adv.) nearly

11. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 110

Bocchus, the king of Mauretania (in northern Africa) and the former ally of Jugurtha in his war against the Romans, speaks to Sulla, a lieutenant of the Roman general Marius. Bocchus informs Sulla about his own future plans.

cēterum dē rē pūblicā vostrā, quoius cūrātor hūc missus es, paucīs[†] accipe. bellum ego populō Rōmānō neque fēcī neque factum umquam voluī; at finīs meōs advorsum armātōs armīs tūtātus sum. id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet. gerite quod voltis cum Iugurthā bellum.

cēterum (adv.) moreover; however that may be, but

vostrā = vestrā

quoius = cuius

cūrātor, cūrātoris *m.* curator; guardian

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

[†]**paucīs**, *supply verbīs*

at (conj.) but

advorsum (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of

armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier

tūtōr (1-tr.) protect, guard

omittō (**ob-** + **mittō**) disregard, pass over; discontinue, leave off

quandō (conj.) since, as

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha (a Numidian king)

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* IX.32–36

A young shepherd makes a modest boast.

. . . et mē fēcēre poētam

Pīerides, sunt et mihi carmina, mē quoque dīcunt[†]

vātem pāstōrēs; sed nōn ego crēdulus illīs.

nam neque adhūc Variō videor nec dīcere Cinnā

digna, sed argūtōs inter strepere ānser olōrēs.

Pieris, Pieridos *f.* daughter of Pierus, Muse;

Pierides = *nom. pl.*

[†]**dīcō**, *here*, call

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet

pāstor, pāstōris *m.* herdsman, shepherd

crēdulus, -a, -um trusting (in) (+ dat.)

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time

Varius, Varii *m.* (L.) Varius (Rufus) (poet and friend of Horace and Vergil)

Cinna, Cinnae *m.* (Helvius) Cinna (poet and friend of Catullus)

argūtus, -a, -um sharp; clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful

strepō, strepere, strepuī, strepitum make a loud noise, screech

ānser, ānseris *m.* goose

olor, olōris *m.* swan

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.847–53

In the underworld Aeneas learns of the Roman mission from the soul of his father, Anchises.

excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera
 (crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent† dē marmore vultūs,
 ōrābunt† causās melius, caelīque meātūs
 dēscribent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent:†
 tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
 (hae tibi erunt artēs), pācīque impōnere mōrem,
 parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.

850

excūdō, excūdere, excūdī, excūsus hammer out,
 forge, fashion

spīrō (1-intr.) breathe; live

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze

vīvus, -a, -um living

†**dūcō, here,** produce, form

marmor, marmoris *n.* marble

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

†**ōrō, here,** plead

meātus, meātūs *m.* movement, progress

dēscribō (dē- + scribō) draw, mark out

radius, radiī *m.* ray; rod; compass

surgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectus rise

sīdus, sideris *n.* star

†**dīcō, here,** name

impōnō (in- + pōnō) place on, impose on

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful,
 be sparing (+ dat.)

subiectus, -a, -um subordinate, subject

dēbellō (1-tr.) fight (someone, acc.) to the finish,
 subdue

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.657–71

As Aeneas and the Trojans make a strong attack, a comrade of Turnus describes the perilous situation.

“ . . . mussat rēx ipse Latīnus
quōs generōs vocet aut quae sēsē ad foedera flectat.
praetereā rēgīna, tuī fidissima, dextrā
occidit ipsa suā lūcemque exterrita fūgit.
sōlī prō portīs Messāpus et ācer Atīnās
sustentant aciēs. circum hōs utrimque phalangēs
stant dēnsae strictisque seges mucrōnibus horret
ferrea; tū currum dēsertō in grāmine versās.”

660

mussō (1-intr.) mutter (in uncertainty)

Latīnus, Latīnī *m.* Latinus (king of Latium)

gener, generī *m.* son-in-law

foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend

praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore,
in addition

fidus, -a, -um faithful, loyal, devoted; trusting

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*,
right hand

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidī, occāsūrus
fall; perish, die

exterreō (ex- + terreō) terrify

porta, portae *f.* gate

Messāpus, Messāpī *m.* Messapus (an Italian
leader and ally of Latinus and Turnus)

Atīnās (nom. sing. only) Atinas (an Italian
warrior)

sustentō (1-tr.) support, uphold, sustain

circum (prep. + acc.) around

utrimque (adv.) on both sides

phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx (a close formation
of troops)

dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus bare, un-
sheathe

seges, segetis *f.* field or crop (of standing corn)

mucrō, mucrōnis *m.* point (of a sword); sword

horreō, horrēre, horruī, — stand up, bristle;
tremble, shudder

ferreus, -a, -um made of iron

currus, currūs *m.* chariot

dēsertō, dēsere, dēsere, dēsere, dēsere forsake, aban-
don, desert

grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; pasture

versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning around

obstipuit variā cōnfūsus imāgine rērum
 Turnus et obtūtū tacitō stetit; aestuat ingēns
 ūnō in corde pudor mixtōque īnsānia lūctū
 et furiīs agitātus amor et cōnscia virtūs.

665

ut primum† discussae umbrae et lūx reddita mentī,
 ardentis oculōrum orbīs ad moenia torsit
 turbidus ēque rotis magnam respexit ad urbem.

670

obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipūī, —

be dumbstruck, be stunned, be dazed

varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting

cōfundō, cōfundere, cōnfūdī, cōnfūsus pour together; confuse, trouble

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness; appearance

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)

obtūtus, obtūtūs *m.* gaze, stare

tacitus, -a, -um silent

aestuō (1-intr.) burn, blaze, seethe

cor, cordis *n.* heart

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up, produce

īnsānia, īnsāniae *f.* madness, insanity

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

cōnsciūs, -a, -um conscious, aware

†**ut primum**, as soon as

discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter; scatter, disperse, break up

reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return; restore

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsūrus burn, be on fire

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle, orb

torqueō, torquēre, torsi, tortus twist, turn

turbidus, -a, -um agitated, wild, frantic

rota, rotae *f.* wheel; *pl.*, chariot

respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectus look back

(at)

15. Horace, *Carmina* I.11 (Asclepiadean)

Leuconoë longs to know the future.

Tū nē quaesieris, scīre nefās, quem mihi, quem tibi
 finem dī dederint, Leuconoē, nec Babylōniōs
 temptāris numerōs. ut[†] melius quidquid erit patī.
 seu plūrīs hiemēs seu tribuit Iuppiter ultimam,
 quae nunc oppositīs dēbilitat pūmicibus mare
 Tyrrhēnum: sapiās, vīna liquēs, et spatiō brevī
 spem longam resecēs. dum loquimur, fūgerit invida
 aetās: carpe diem quam minimum[†] crēdula posterō.

5

Leuconoē, Leuconoēs *f.* Leuconoë

Babylōnius, -a, -um of Babylonia, Babylonian

temptō (1-tr.) test, try; **temptāris = temptāveris**

numerus, numerī *m.* number; numerical symbol

[†]**ut, here** (adv.) how

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,*
 whatever

seu (conj.) or if; **seu . . . seu . . .**, whether . . .
 or if . . .

hiem(p)s, hiemis *f.* winter; storm

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow,
 assign

ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

oppōnō (*ob-* + *pōnō*) place in the way, expose

dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken

pūmex, pūmicis *f.* pumice stone, volcanic rock

Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um Tyrrhenian, Tuscan,

Etruscan; **mare Tyrrhēnum**, Tyrrhenian Sea
 (the sea along the west coast of Italy)

sapiō, sapere, sapiī/sapivī, — be intelligent,
 show good sense

vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

liquō (1-tr.) make liquid; strain, purify

spatium, spatiī *n.* course, track; space, (interval
 of) time

resecō, resecāre, —, **resectum** cut short,
 restrain, cut back

dum (conj.) while

invidus, -a, -um bearing ill-will, envious

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptus pluck, gather;
 seize; criticize, carp at

[†]**minimum = minimē**

crēdulus, -a, -um trusting (in) (+ dat.)

posterus, -a, -um next, following

16. Horace, *Carmina* IV.7 (Archilochean)

Spring brings thoughts of death for mortals.

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt iam grāmina campīs
 arboribusque comae;
 mūtāt terra vicēs, et dēcrēscentia rīpās
 flūmina praetereunt.

Grātia† cum nymphīs geminīsque sorōribus audet
 dūcere nūda chorōs.

5

inmortālia nē spērēs, monet annus et almus
 quae rapit hōra diem.

frīgora mītēscunt Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās,
 interitūra simul

10

pōmifer autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
 brūma recurrit iners.

damna tamen celerēs reparant caelestia lūnae:
 nōs ubi dēcidimus

quō pater Aenēās, quō dīves Tullus et Ancus,
 pulvis et umbra sumus.

15

diffugiō (dis- + fugiō) scatter

nix, nivis *f.* snow

grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; pasture

arbor, arboris *f.* tree

coma, comae *f. sing. or pl.,* hair

mūtō (1-tr.) change

—, **vicis** *f.* turning, turn; succession,
 alternation

dēcrēsco, dēcrēscere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus diminish,
 decrease

rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

praetereō (praeter- + eō), **praeterīre, praeterīi/**
praeterīvi, praeteritus go by, pass by;
 pass over

†**Grātia**, *here*, a Grace (goddess of charm and
 beauty, attendant of Venus)

nympha, nympphae *f.* nymph (a semidivine spirit)

geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude

chorus, chorī *m.* dance; chorus, troop of dancers

inmortālis = immortālis

almus, -a, -um nourishing; gracious, kindly

rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off;
 consume

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

frīgus, frīgoris *n.* cold; *pl.,* cold weather

mītēscō, mītēscere, —, — grow mild,
 become gentle

Zephyrus, Zephyrī *m.* Zephyr (the west wind)

vēr, vēris *n.* spring

prōterō, prōterere, prōtrīvi, prōtrītus tread under
 foot, tramp down

aestās, aestātis *f.* summer

intereō (inter- + eō), **interīre, interīi, interīturus**
 perish, be destroyed, disappear

simul (conj.) at the same time as, as soon as

pōmifer, pōmifera, pōmiferum fruit-bearing

autumnus, autumnī *m.* autumn, fall

frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit

effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out;
 send forth

brūma, brūmae *f.* winter

recurrō, recurrere, recurri, recursum run or
 hurry back

iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert; motionless

damnum, damnī *n.* loss; waning

celer, celeris, celere swift, fast

reparō (1-tr.) recover, restore, repair

caelestis, caeleste heavenly, celestial

lūna, lūnae *f.* moon

dēcidō (dē- + cadō), **dēcidere, dēcidī, —** fall down

dīves, dīvitis rich, wealthy

Tullus, Tullī *m.* Tullus (Hostilius) (third of the
 legendary kings of Rome)

Ancus, Ancī *m.* Ancus (Martius) (fourth of the
 legendary kings of Rome)

pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust

quis scit an adiciant hodiernae crāstina summae†
tempora dī superī?
cūncta manūs avidās fugient hērēdis, amīcō†
quae dederīs† animō. 20
cum semel occiderīs et dē tē splendida Mīnōs
fēcerit arbitria,
nōn, Torquāte, genus, nōn tē fācundia, nōn tē
restituēt pietās.
īnfernīs neque enim tenebrīs Dīāna† pudīcum 25
līberat Hippolytum
nec Lēthaea valet Thēseus abrumpere cārō
vincula Pīrithoō.

adiciō (ad- + iaciō) add to; **adiciant** scans as
**adiiciant* with the first -i- being consonantal.
hodiernus, -a, -um of today
crāstinus, -a, -um of tomorrow
†**summa**, **summae** *f.* sum, whole, total
superus, -a, -um upper; **dī superī**, gods above
cūnctus, -a, -um all
avidus, -a, -um desirous, eager, greedy
hērēs, **hērēdis** *m.* or *f.* heir; heiress
†**amīcus**, *here*, (your) own
†The -i- of **dederis** here scans *long*.
semel (adv.) once; once and for all
occidō (ob- + cadō), **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus**
fall, perish, die; the -i- of **occideris** here scans
long.
splendidus, -a, -um brilliant, glittering; mag-
nificent
Mīnōs, **Mīnōis** *m.* Minos (judge in the under-
world)
arbitrium, **arbitrī** *n.* judgment
Torquātus, **Torquātī** *m.* Torquatus

fācundia, **fācundiae** *f.* eloquence
restituō, **restituere**, **restituī**, **restitūtus** set up
again, restore, revive
pietās, **pietātis** *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness,
piety
īnfernus, -a, -um lower, infernal
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
†The -i- of **Dīāna** here scans *long*.
pudīcus, -a, -um chaste, pure, honorable
Hippolytus, **Hippolytī** *m.* Hippolytus (son of
Theseus)
Lēthaeus, -a, -um of Lethe (the river of forgetful-
ness in the underworld)
Thēseus, **Thēseī** *m.* Theseus (hero from Athe-
nian myth and close friend of Pirithoüs)
abrumpō, **abrumpere**, **abrūpī**, **abruptus** break
off, sever
vinculum, **vinculī** *n.* bond, chain
Pīrithoüs, **Pīrithoī** *m.* Pirithoüs (friend of
Theseus)

17. Horace, *Ars Poētica* 361–65

The poet compares poetry to painting.

ut pictūra poēsis: erit quae, sī propius stēs,
tē capiat magis, et quaedam, sī longius abstēs;
haec amat obscūrum, volet haec sub lūce vidērī,
iūdicis argūtum quae nōn formīdat acūmen;
haec placuit semel, haec deciēns repetīta placēbit.

365

pictūra, pictūrae *f.* picture, painting

poēsis, poēsis *f.* poetry; poem

propius (comparative adv.) nearer, more closely

abstō (ab- + stō), abstāre, —, — stand away,
stand at a distance

obscūrus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge

argūtus, -a, -um sharp; shrewd, clever

formīdō (1-tr.) fear, dread

acūmen, acūminis *n.* sharpness; mental acute-
ness, judgment

semel (adv.) once, one time

deciē(n)s (adv.) ten times

repetō (re- + petō) seek again; return to

18. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* V.190–94

Just as the hero Perseus resolves to use the Gorgon’s head to rout his enemies, one of them, Nileus—who falsely claims to be descended from the river Nile—begins to taunt Perseus.

“adspice,” ait, “Perseu, nostrae prīmordia gentis:
magna ferēs tacitās sōlācia mortis ad umbrās,
ā tantō cecidisse† virō”; pars ultima vōcis
in mediō suppressa sonō est, adapertaque velle
ōra loquī crēdās, nec sunt ea pervia verbīs.

190

adspiciō, adspicere, adspexī, adspectus look
toward, look at; behold

aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = 3rd sing. pres.
act. indic.

Perseus, Perseī *m.* Perseus (son of Zeus and
Danaë, who killed the Gorgon and rescued
Andromeda); **Perseu** = *voc. sing.*

prīmordia, *prīmordiōrum *n. pl.* beginnings,
origin; source

tacitus, -a, -um silent

sōlācium, sōlāciū *n.* comfort, solace, relief

tantus, -a, -um so great

†**cecidisse**, *supply tē as Subject Accusative*

ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

supprimō, supprimere, suppressī, suppressus
press down, crush; check, block

sonus, sonī *m.* sound, noise; utterance

adaperiō, adaperīre, adaperīvī, adapertus
open wide

ōs, ōris *n. sing. or pl.,* mouth

pervius, -a, -um that makes a passage for, passable

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.50.6

After the disastrous battle of Cannae, the remaining Roman soldiers were divided into two camps. In the smaller camp, the tribune urges his men to action.

P. Semprōnius Tuditānus tribūnus mīlitum “capī ergō māvoltis,” inquit, “ab avārisimō et crūdēlissimō hoste aestimārique capita vestra et exquirī pretia ab interrogantibus Rōmānus cīvis sīs an Latīnus socius, ut ex tuā contumēliā et miserīā alterī honōs quaerātur? nōn tū† sī quidem L. Aemilī cōsulis, quī sē bene morī quam turpiter vīvere māluit, et tot fortissimōrum virōrum quī circā eum cumulātī iacent cīvēs estis. sed antequam opprimit lūx maiōraque hostium agmina obsaepiunt iter, per hōs, quī inordinātī atque incompositī obstrepunt portīs, ērumpāmus. ferrō atque audāciā via fit quamvīs per cōfertōs hostēs . . .”

P. Semprōnius Tuditānus, P. Semprōniū

Tuditānī *m.* P. Sempronius Tuditanus (consul 204 B.C.E., a military tribune at the battle of Cannae)

tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military commander

ergō (adv.) therefore

avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious

crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel

aestimō (1-tr.) price, value, assess

caput, capitis *n.* head

exquirō (ex- + quaerō), **exquirere, exquisivī, exquisitus** ask (about), inquire

pretium, pretiī *n.* price

interrogō (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate

Latīnus, -a, -um of or belonging to Latium (an area in central Italy); Latin

contumēlia, contumēliae *f.* abuse

miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

honōs, honōris *m.* office; honor, respect

† **nōn tū**, supply **capī mālēs**; **tū** refers to each individual soldier in the group being addressed.

L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliū *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E., one of the Roman leaders at the battle of Cannae)

turpiter (adv.) foully; basely, shamefully

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

circā (prep. + acc.) around, near

cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap up

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

antequam (conj.) before

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress, overwhelm

agmen, agminis *n.* line (of march); throng

obsaepiō, obsaepire, obsaepsī, obsaeptus block, obstruct, shut off

iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route

inordinātus, -a, -um not regularly arranged, disordered

incompositus, -a, -um not in proper formation, disorganized

obstrepō, obstrepere, obstrepuī, obstrepitum make a loud noise in front of (+ dat.)

porta, portae *f.* gate

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth

fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made; **fit** = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

quamvīs (adv.) even though

cōfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together

20. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* XCI.17

The philosopher recalls a moment in Alexander the Great's education.

Alexander Macedonum rēx discere geōmetriam coeperat, infēlix, scītūrus quam† pusilla terra esset ex quā minimum occupāverat. ita dīcō: infēlix ob hoc, quod† intellegere dēbēbat falsum sē gerere cognōmen. quis enim esse magnus in pusillō potest? erant illa quae trādēbantur† subtilia et dīligentī intentiōne discenda, nōn quae perciperet vēsānus homō et trāns Ōceanum cōgitātiōnēs suās mittēns. “Facilia,” inquit, “mē docē.” cui praeceptor “ista,” inquit, “omnibus eadem sunt, aequē difficilia.”

Alexander, Alexandrī *m.* Alexander
Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* (the) Macedonians
discō, discere, didicī, — learn
geōmetria, geōmetriae *f.* geometry
 —, —, **coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began
 †**quam**, *here* (interrog. adv.) how
pusillus, -a, -um very small, petty, insignificant
occupō (1-tr.) take possession of, seize
 †**quod** (conj.) because
cognōmen, cognōminis *n.* cognomen

†**trādō**, *here*, propound, teach
subtilis, subtile fine, subtle
dīligēns, dīligentis diligent
intentiō, intentiōnis *f.* exertion, effort; attention
percipiō (per- + capiō) perceive; understand
vēsānus, -a, -um insane; impetuous
trāns (prep. + acc.) across
Ōceanus, Ōceanī *m.* ocean
cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* reflection, thought
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach
praeceptor, praeceptōris *m.* teacher

Seneca's *Epistulae Mōrālēs* (*Letters Concerned with Ethics*) is a collection of 124 letters in which he attempts to answer questions concerning moral conduct and moral improvement. Written in a plain style, the *Epistulae* often end with pointed, epigrammatic *sententiae*.

21. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CVII.8

The philosopher muses on man's response to the ever-changing nature of things.

hanc rērum condiōnem mūtāre nōn possumus; illud possumus, magnum sūmere
 animum et virō bonō dignum, quō fortiter fortuīta patiāmur et nātūrae cōsentiā-
 mus. nātūra autem hoc quod vidēs rēgnum mūtātiōnibus temperat; turbantur maria
 cum quiēvērunt; flant in vicem ventī; noctem diēs sequitur; pars caelī cōnsurgit,
 pars mergitur. contrāriīs rērum aeternitās cōnstat.

condiciō, condiōnis <i>f.</i> contract, agreement; condition	flō (1-intr.) blow —, vicis <i>f.</i> turn; succession; in vicem , in turn; against one another
mūtō (1-tr.) change	ventus, ventī <i>m.</i> wind
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take on, assume	cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrēxī, cōnsurrēctus stand up, rise
fortuītus, -a, -um determined by chance, acciden- tal, fortuitous	mergō, mergere, mersī, mersus plunge, dip; <i>pass.</i> , sink (below the horizon), go down
cōsentiō (con- + sentiō) be in harmony (with); assent (to)	contrārius, -a, -um opposite, contrary
rēgnum, rēgnī <i>n.</i> kingdom, realm	aeternitās, aeternitātis <i>f.</i> eternity
mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis <i>f.</i> change, alteration	cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōnstītī, cōnstātūrus stand still; be composed (of); depend (upon), consist (in) (+ abl.)
temperō (1-tr.) restrain; moderate, temper	
turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion	
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī , — fall asleep; be at rest; subside	

22. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 466–76

Eurybates describes the beginning of a storm that overwhelms the Greek fleet as it returns from Troy.

nox p̄ma caelum sparserat stellīs, iacent
 dēserta ventō vēla. tum murmur grave,
 maiōra minitāns, collibus summīs cadit
 tractūque longō lītus ac petrae gemunt;
 agitāta ventīs unda ventūrīs tumet 470
 cum subitō lūna conditur, stellae latent;
 nec ūna nox est: dēnsa tenebrās obruit
 calīgō et omnī lūce subductā fretum
 caelumque miscet. undique incumbunt simul
 rapiuntque pelagus īnfimō ēversum solō 475
 adversus Eurō Zephyrus et Boreae Notus.

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter,
 sprinkle
stellā, stellae *f.* star
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest, lie still
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus forsake,
 abandon, desert
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
murmur, murmuris *n.* rumble, roar
minitor (1-tr.) threaten
collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill
tractus, tractūs *m.* dragging; trail; extent,
 expanse
lītus, lītōris *n.* shore, beach
petra, petrae *f.* rock, boulder
gemō, gemere, genuī, gemitum groan, moan
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
unda, undae *f.* wave, water
tumeō, tumēre, tumuī, — swell
subitō (adv.) suddenly
lūna, lūnae *f.* moon
condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build;
 conceal; bury
lateō, latēre, latuī, — (intr.) hide, lie hidden,
 be concealed
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
obruō, obruere, obruī, obrutus cover up, over-
 whelm
calīgō, caliginis *f.* dimness; fog, mist; darkness
subdūcō (sub- + dūcō) lead up (from below);
 remove, take away
fretum, fretī *n.* strait; sea, (the) deep
miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up
undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides
incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, — fall (on),
 throw oneself (on), bear down (on)
simul (adv.) at the same time; together
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off;
 consume
pelagus, pelagī *n.* (deep) sea
īnfimus, -a, -um lowest, bottom (of), depths (of)
ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversus turn upside
 down, churn up
solum, solī *n.* soil; base, foundation
adversus, -a, -um turned toward; opposite, hos-
 tile, adverse (+ dat.)
Eurus, Eurī *m.* Eurus (the east wind)
Zephyrus, Zephyrī *m.* Zephyrus (the west wind)
Boreās, Boreae *m.* Boreas (the north wind)
Notus, Notī *m.* Notus (the south wind)

23. Seneca the Younger, *Dialogi* VII.26.6

The philosopher imagines what the wise man would say to the mass of humanity, who do not know what is important.

sic vestrās hālūcinātiōnēs ferō quemadmodum Iuppiter optimus maximus ineptiās poētārum, quōrum alius illi ālās inposuit, alius cornua, alius adulterum illum indūxit et abnoctantem, alius saevum in deōs, alius inīquum in hominēs, alius raptōrem ingenuōrum et cognātōrum quidem, alius parricīdam et rēgnī aliēnī paternīque expugnātōrem: . . .

hālūcinātiō, hālūcinātiōnis *f.* hallucination
ineptiae, ineptiārum *f. pl.* trifles, absurdities
āla, ālae *f.* wing
inpōnō (in- + pōnō) put upon
cornu, cornūs *n.* horn; **cornua** = *acc. pl.*
adulter, adulterī *m.* adulterer
indūcō (in- + dūcō) lead in; represent
abnoctō (1-intr.) stay out all night
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

raptor, raptōris *m.* abductor
ingenuus, -a, -um free-born; noble
cognātus, -a, -um kindred
parricīda, parricīdae *m.* parricide
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another
paternus, -a, -um of or belonging to a father
expugnātor, expugnātōris *m.* taker, conqueror

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam I* 12–13

nunc iam[†] apertē rem pūblicam ūniversam petis, templa deōrum immortalium, tēcta urbis, vītam omnium cīvium, Italiam tōtam ad exitium et vāstitātem vocās. quā rē, quoniam id quod est primum, et quod huius imperī disciplīnaeque maiōrum propriū est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id quod est ad[†] sevērītatem lēnius, ad[†] commūnem salūtem ūtilius. nam sī tē interficī iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris, exhauriētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum magna et perniciosā sentīna reī pūblīcae. quid est, Catilīna? num dubitās id mē imperante facere quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās? exīre ex urbe iubet cōnsul hostem. interrogās mē num in exsilium? nōn iubeō, sed sī mē cōnsulis, suādeō.

[†]nunc iam, now at last

apertē (adv.) openly

ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole

tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house

exitium, exitiī *n.* destruction, ruin

vāstitās, vāstitātis *f.* devastation

disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

nōndum (adv.) not yet

[†]ad, here, with regard to, with a view to

sevērītās, sevērītātis *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity

lēnis, lēne mild, gentle

commūnis, commūne common

ūtilis, ūtile useful

resideō, residēre, resēdī, — be left, remain

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

coniūrātor, coniūrātōris *m.* conspirator

sīn (conj.) but if

dūdum (adv.) some time ago, before; iam

dūdum, for a long time now, long since

exeō (ex- + eō) go out, depart

exhauriō, exhaurīre, exhausī, exhaustus drain dry

comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade

perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, ruinous

sentīna, sentīnae *f.* bilgewater; cesspool; dregs, scum

*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

interrogō (inter- + rogō) (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus consult

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend, urge, advise

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 1–2

sed diū magnum inter mortālīs certāmen fuit vīne corporis an virtūte animī rēs mīlītāris magis prōcēderet. nam et priusquam incipiās, cōsultō et, ubi cōsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est. ita utrumque† per sē indigēns; alterum alteriūs auxiliō eget.

2. Igitur initiō rēgēs—nam in terrīs nōmen imperī id primum fuit—dīvorsī pars ingenium, aliī corpus exercēbant: etiam tum vīta hominum sine cupiditate agitābatur; sua† quoiq̄ue satis placēbant. postea vērō quam in Asiā Cȳrus, in Graeciā Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs coepere urbīs atque nātiōnēs subigere, lubīdinem dominandī† causam bellī habēre, maxumam glōriam in maxumō imperiō putāre, tum dēmum periculō atque negōtiīs conpertum est in bellō plūrumum ingenium posse. quod si† rēgum atque imperatōrum animī virtūs in pāce ita ut in bellō valeret, aequābilis atque cōstantius sēsē rēs hūmānae habērent, neque aliud aliō† ferrī neque mūtārī ac miscērī omnia cernerēs. nam imperium facile iīs artibus retinētur quibus

certāmen, certāminis *n.* competition; dispute, quarrel
mīlītāris, mīlītāre military; **rēs mīlītāris**, military practice
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, progress, succeed
priusquam (conj. + subjunc.) before
incipiō (in- + capiō) take on, begin; **incipiās**, *subjunc. expressing anticipation, you can begin*
cōsultum, cōsultī *n.* resolution, plan
cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus take counsel, consult, consider, plan; **cōsulueris**, *perfect subjunctive with an idealized second person; translate as indicative*
mātūrē (adv.) quickly, in good time
†**utrumque** = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron., each thing (of two)*
indigēns, indigentis needy, not self-sufficient
egeō, egēre, egui, — lack, want, need (+ abl.)
initium, initī *n.* beginning
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
dīvorsus, -a, -um opposite, separate, different
exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; spend, pass
†**sua** refers to **quoiq̄ue**, his/her own things.
quoiq̄ue = *masc./fem. sing. dat. of indef. pron., each or every man or woman*
postea . . . quam = **postquam**
Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia (modern Asia Minor)
Cȳrus, Cȳri *m.* Cyrus (a Persian king)
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um Lacedaemonian, Spartan; *subst., (a) Spartan*

Athēniēnsis, Athēniēnse Athenian; *subst., (an) Athenian*
—, —, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began
nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
subigō (sub- + agō), subigere, subēgī, subactus drive under, force; subdue, conquer
lubīdō, lubīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
†**dominandī** = *neut. sing. gen. of verbal noun of dominor* (1-intr.), of being master, of ruling
maxumam = **maximam**
maxumō = **maximō**
dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only;
tum dēmum, only then
negōtium, negōtiū *n.* business, (business) activity
conperiō, conperire, conperī, conpertus find out, learn
plūrumum = **plūrimum**
†**quod si** (conj.) but if
aequābilis, aequābile consistent, equitable;
aequābilis . . . sēsē habērent . . ., would be more equitable . . .
cōstāns, cōstantis firm, steady, invariable, constant
hūmānus, -a, -um human
†**aliō, here** (adv.) to another place
mūtō (1-tr.) change
miscēō, miscēre, miscui, mixtus mix, stir up
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, determine, perceive
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinui, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp

initiō partum est. vērum ubi prō labōre dēsīdia, prō continentīā et aequitāte lubīdō atque superbia invāsēre, fortūna simul cum mōribus inmūtātur. ita imperium semper ad optimum quemque† ā minus bonō trānsfertur. Quae hominēs arant, nāvīgant, aedificant, virtūtī omnia pārent. sed multī mortālēs, dēditī ventrī atque somnō, indoctī incultīque vītam sicutī peregrīnantēs trānsiēre; quibus profectō contrā nātūram corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. eōrum ego vītam mortemque iuxtā aestumō, quoniam dē utrāque† silētur. vērum enim vērō† is dēmum mihi vīvere atque fruī animā vidētur quī aliquō negōtiō intentus praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit. sed in magnā cōpiā rērum aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit.

initium, initiī *n.* beginning

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear (of a mother); create

dēsīdia, dēsīdiae *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth

continentia, continentiae *f.* restraint, temperance, moderation

aequitās, aequitātis *f.* evenness, calmness; equity, fairness

lubīdō, lubīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; arrogance, haughtiness

invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely), invade, attack

simul (adv.) at the same time

inmūtō (1-tr.) alter, change

optimum = optimum

†**quemque** = *masc. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, each man

trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), **trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus** carry across, shift

arō (1-tr.) plough, till, cultivate

nāvīgō (1-tr.) sail

aedificō (1-tr.) build

dēdō (dē- + dō) give up, surrender, deliver; dedicate

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

indoctus, -a, -um not learned, ignorant

incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated

sicutī (conj.) just as

peregrīnor (1-intr.) dwell abroad; be an alien; travel abroad

trānseō (trāns- + eō), **trānsīre, trānsīi/trānsīvi, trānsitus** go across, pass through

profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

onus, oneris *n.* load, burden; trouble, difficulty

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally

aestumō (1-tr.) estimate, value, reckon

†**utrāque** = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. pron.*, each (of two)

sileō, silēre, siluī, — be silent; pass over in silence

†**vērum enim vērō** but at the same time

dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any

negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business

intentus, -a, -um stretched, attentive, intent, occupied

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ostēnsus present, show; offer

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.506–17

forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requīrās.

urbis utī captae cāsum convulsaque vīdit

līmīna tēctōrum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,

arma diū senior dēsuetā trementibus aevō

circumdat nēquīquam umerīs et inūtile ferrum

510

cingitur, ac dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostis.

aedibus in mediīs nūdōque sub aetheris axe

ingēns āra fuit iuxtāque veterrima laurus

incumbēns ārae atque umbrā complexa Penātis.

hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquīquam altāria circum,

515

praecipitēs ātrā ceu tempestāte columbae,

condēnsae et dīvum† amplexae simulācra sedēbant.

forsitan (adv.) perhaps

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

requirō (re- + quaerō), **requirere, requisīi/**
requisīvi, requisītus seek again; ask or
inquire about

utī = ut

convellō, convellere, convelli, convulsus pull up
(violently), tear up, wrench

līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold

tēctum, tēcti *n.* roof; house

penetrāle, penetrālis, -ium *n.* inner part, inmost
recess

senex, senis old

dēsuetus, -a, -um unfamiliar (from lack of use)

tremō, tremere, tremuī, — tremble, quiver,
quake

aevum, aevi *n.* age, lifetime

circumdō (circum- + dō) place (something)
around, put (something) on

nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail

umerus, umeri *m.* shoulder

inūtilis, inūtile unfit for use; useless

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīctus gird, equip, put on;
cingitur, translate with active meaning

dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together,
closely packed

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house,
abode

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted

aethēr, aetheris *m.* ether (the upper region of the
sky), heaven

axis, axis *m.* axis

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally
vetus, veteris old, ancient; **veterrima** = *fem. sing.*
nom. of superlative adj.

laurus, laurī *f.* laurel tree

incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, — fall (on),
throw oneself (on); lean (on)

complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace;
encircle, enclose

Penātēs, Penātium *m. pl.* Penates (guardian
deities of a household or country)

hīc (adv.) here

Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba (wife of Priam)

nāta, nātae *f.* daughter

altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)

circum (prep. + acc.) around; **altāria circum** =
circum altāria

praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

ceu (conj.) (in the same way) as, like

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm

columba, columbae *f.* dove

condēnsus, -a, -um close together, tightly packed

† **dīvum** = **dīvōrum**

amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum embrace;
clasp (for protection)

simulācrum, simulācrī *n.* image, statue

sedeō, sedere, sedī, sessūrus sit, be seated

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.478–89

multī illam petiēre, illa āversāta petentēs
 inpatiēns expersque virī nemora āvia lūstrat
 nec quid Hymēn, quid Amor, quid sint cōnūbia cūrat.
 saepe pater dīxit: “generum[†] mihi, filia, dēbēs,”
 saepe pater dīxit: “dēbēs mihi, nāta, nepōtēs”;
 illa velut crīmen taedās exōsa iugālēs
 pulchra verēcundō suffūderat ōra rubōre
 inque patris blandīs haerēns cervīce lacertīs
 “dā mihi perpetuā, genitor cārissime,” dīxit
 “virginitāte frui! dedit hoc pater ante Diānae.”
 ille quidem obsequitur, sed tē decor iste quod optās
 esse vetat, vōtōque tuō tua forma repugnat.

480

485

āversor (1-tr.) turn away from; reject
inpatiēns, impatientis not enduring, intolerant
expers, expertis having no part, lacking
 experience
nemus, nemoris *n.* wood, forest
āvius, -a, -um pathless, trackless
lūstrō (1-tr.) move through, roam
Hymēn (nom. only) Hymen (god of marriage);
 marriage
cōnūbium, cōnūbiū *n. sing. or pl.*, marriage,
 marriage rites
cūrō (1-tr.) watch over; care
[†]**gener, generī** *m.* son-in-law
nāta, -ae *f.* daughter
nepōs, nepōtis *m. or f.* grandchild
velut (conj.) even as, just as
crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime
taeda, taedae *f.* torch
exōsus, -a, -um hating, detesting (+ acc.)
iugālis, iugāle of or belonging to marriage,
 matrimonial, nuptial

verēcundus, -a, -um modest, restrained
suffundō, suffundere, suffūdī, suffūsus
 cover, fill, suffuse
ōs, ōris *n. sing. or pl.*, mouth; face
rubor, rubōris *m.* redness; blush
blandus, -a, -um charming, ingratiating,
 seductive
haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus cling, stick
cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck
lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm
perpetuus, -a, -um continual, without inter-
 ruption; perpetual, everlasting
genitor, genitōris *m.* father
virginitās, virginitātis *f.* virginity; celibate life
fruor, frui, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
obsequor (ob- + sequor) comply (with), submit
decor, decōris *m.* good looks, beauty, grace
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer
forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty
repugnō (1-intr.) fight against, resist (+ dat.)

§122. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Forms, and Syncopation

Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings

Although classical Latin writers established strict rules of spelling and morphology for Latin words, many works that have survived indicate that these writers also allowed certain exceptions to the rules. Writers of both prose and poetry sometimes sought special effects of style by including certain words with **archaic spellings**. These forms had existed in the Latin of an earlier time, but they had gradually fallen out of use and been replaced by later spellings. In epic poetry these archaisms were felt to contribute to an appropriately august and elevated diction. In the works of the historian Sallust archaisms represented a deliberate rebellion against the Ciceronian standard and became a hallmark of his unique style. Even Cicero made use of such forms when their archaic feeling contributed to a desired stylistic effect.

One common type of archaism is the *unassimilated form* of a compound word.¹ An **unassimilated form** is a form in which the ordinary assimilation of two consonants does not occur or is not written.² For example:

adcēdō = accēdō inpius = impius

Other archaic spellings give evidence of how the pronunciation of *vowels* changed as Latin developed.

maxumus = maximus (-u- > -i-)
vostra = vestra (-o- > -e-)

antīquos = antīquus (-os > -us)
suom = suum (-om > -um)

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE UNASSIMILATED FORMS AND OTHER ARCHAIC SPELLINGS. IN ADDITION, LEARN TO RECOGNIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS:

quoius = cuius olli = illī (dative singular)
quoi = cui -āī = -ae (genitive singular)
quom = cum (conjunction)³

Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System

Forms of the perfect active system of first- and second-conjugation verbs may be shortened by removing *the -v- and the following vowel from the regular forms*. This shortening is sometimes called **syncopation** (< Greek *synkopē*, “cutting short”), and forms that have been shortened are called **syncopated forms**. For example:

1. For an explanation of assimilation see the vocabulary notes of Chapter V.

2. With few exceptions, the earliest surviving copies of ancient works were written at least eight hundred years after they were originally produced. Therefore, while the existence of both unassimilated and assimilated forms suggests that words continued to be pronounced in *both* ways, nothing can be said with complete certainty.

3. Cf. the vocabulary note on the conjunction **cum**, p. 355.

amāstī (< amā[vi]stī)	optārim (< optā[ve]rim)
dēlērunt (< dēlē[ve]runt)	
cōgitāram (< cōgitā[ve]ram)	imperāssēmus (< imperā[vi]ssēmus)
laudārō (< laudā[ve]rō)	dēlēsse (< dēlē[vi]sse)

OBSERVATION

Any form of the perfect active system may be syncopated except the first person singular, third person singular, and first person plural perfect active indicative. Third person plural perfect active indicative forms made with the ending **-ēre** also cannot be syncopated.

Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations may also appear in shortened forms in the perfect active system, but these shortened forms do not always result from syncopation. For example:

audīstī (< audī[vi]stī)	audieris (= audīveris)
audīssem (< audī[vi]ssem)	audiit (= audīvit)
audīsse (< audī[vi]sse)	audieram (= audīveram)
nōrās (< nō[ve]rās)	audierit (= audīverit)
nōrint (< nō[ve]rint)	

OBSERVATION

Some shortened perfect active system forms of the third and fourth conjugations are generally believed to be the result of syncopation (e.g., **audīstī**, **audīssem**, **audīsse**, **nōrās**, **nōrint**). Others are thought to be formed from alternate (and earlier) third principal parts (e.g., **audieris** < **audiī**). In such cases the short **-i-** that appears is part of the perfect active stem (e.g., **audi-** < **audiī**).⁴

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE SHORTENED AND SYNCOPATED FORMS.

Common Archaic Verb Forms

In the perfect passive system, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect forms of **sum** sometimes appear in place of the expected present, imperfect, and future forms. For example:

oblītus fuī = oblītus sum
relictus fuerat = relictus erat
servātus fuerō = servātus erō
passa fuisset = passa esset

The future active infinitive **fore** was in origin a present infinitive with the meaning “to become.” From this infinitive a regularly formed imperfect subjunctive, common in early Latin, continued to be used in classical Latin, and its forms

4. In third-conjugation verbs, the familiar third principal parts with a **-v-** are thought to have developed by analogy with the principal parts of other verbs. (Cf., for example, **petīī** or **petīvī**; **quaesīī** or **quaesīvī**). By the classical period, forms derived from either principal part are common.

were alternates of the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (**essem**, **essēs**, etc.). These alternate forms may also be used in compound or periphrastic forms. For example:

foret = esset
missūrus foret = missūrus esset
timendī forent = timendī essent

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE ARCHAIC FORMS.

CHAPTER XIII

Vocabulary

- ▶ **nihilum, nihili** or ***nīlum, nīli** *n.* nothing
- ▶ **pretium, pretiū** *n.* price, value
- ▶ **honor, honōris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office
- ▶ **lūmen, lūminis** *n.* light, radiance; *pl.*, eyes
- ▶ **scelus, sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
- ▶ **vulnus, vulneris** *n.* wound
- ▶ **aestimō** (1-tr.) estimate, value
- ▶ **ex(s)pectō** (1-tr.) wait (for), await, expect
- ▶ **moror** (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait
- ▶ **mūtō** (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange
- ▶ **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus** buy
- ▶ **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** reckon (§129)
- ▶ **gradior, gradī, gressus sum** proceed, walk, step
- ▶ **ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum** go out, come out
- ▶ **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus** take on, begin
- ▶ **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** destroy; lose
- ▶ **vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus** sell
- ▶ **—, —, coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun
- ▶ **fiō, fierī, factus sum** become, happen; be made, be done (§126)
- ▶ **cēterus, -a, -um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
- ▶ **grātus, -a, -um** charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased
- ▶ **ingrātus, -a, -um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased
- ▶ **saevus, -a, -um** cruel, savage
- ▶ **tantus, -a, -um** so much, so great (§125)
- ▶ **quantus, -a, -um** how much, how great; as much, as great (§125)
- ▶ **tālis, tāle** such, of such a sort (§125)
- ▶ **quālis, quāle** what sort of; of which sort, as (§125)
- ▶ **tot** (indeclinable adj.) so many (§125)
- ▶ **quot** (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (§125)
- ▶ **ad** (prep. + acc.) for (the purpose of) (§123)
- ▶ **antequam** (conj.) before (§124)
- ▶ **causā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§123)
- ▶ **dōnec** (conj.) while, as long as; until (§124)
- ▶ **dum** (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (§124)
- ▶ **dummodo** (conj.) provided that (§124)
- ▶ **grātiā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§123)
- ▶ **modo** (conj.) provided that (§124)
- ▶ **priusquam** (conj.) before (§124)
- ▶ **quia** (conj.) because (§124)
- ▶ **quod** (conj.) because (§124)
- ▶ **tam** (adv.) so (§125)

Vocabulary Notes

- ***nīlum**, **nīlī** *n.* is a contracted form of **nihilum**, **nihilī** *n.* Both words are commonly used as Genitives of Indefinite Value (§129), Ablatives of Price (§130), and Ablatives of Degree of Difference (§112).
- **pretium**, **pretiī** *n.* is often used as a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129) or an Ablative of Price (§130).
- **honor**, **honōris** *m.* may indicate the general notion of “respect” or “honor” or a more concrete mark of respect given to someone. It commonly refers to a political “office.” The archaic nominative singular form **honōs** remains common throughout the classical period.
- **lūmen**, **lūminis** *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **lūceō**, **lūcere**, **lūxī**, — (shine, emit light). In addition to meaning “light” or “radiance” **lūmen** is often used metaphorically to mean the “light” of life or the “enlightenment” of literature, the arts, etc. It is also used in the plural, particularly in poetry, to mean “eyes,” either because the eye is an opening that admits light or from the idea that glancing at something casts light upon the object.
- **scelus**, **sceleris** *n.* is used to refer to a specific “wicked deed” or “crime,” or it may refer more generally to the abstract idea of “villainy” or “wickedness.”
- **aestimō**, **aestimāre**, **aestimāvī**, **aestimātus** often appears with either a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129) or an Ablative of Price (§130).
- **ex(s)pectō**, **ex(s)pectāre**, **ex(s)pectāvī**, **ex(s)pectātus** is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely with the meaning “wait.” It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by **dum** or **dōnec** (§124). The **s** placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an **s**.
- **moror**, **morārī**, **morātus sum** may be used transitively (hinder, delay) or intransitively (delay, wait). It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by **dum** or **dōnec** (§124).
- **mūtō**, **mūtāre**, **mūtāvī**, **mūtātus** may mean “take in exchange” or “give in exchange” with an Ablative of Price (§130). When it is used absolutely, **mūtō** means “change” in the sense of “undergo a change” or “become different.”

Quis servitūtem libertāte mūtet?
Quis libertātem servitūte mūtet?

Who would take slavery in exchange for freedom?
Who would give freedom in exchange for slavery?

- When the verb **faciō** is used with a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129), it is best translated as “reckon.”
- **ēgredior**, **ēgredi**, **ēgressus sum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **gradior**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **GRADIOR** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒGREDIOR**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **GRADIOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** to **capiō**. **incipiō** is a transitive verb that most frequently appears with an Object Infinitive. In classical Latin the perfect active and perfect passive forms of **incipiō** are rare. The forms of the defective verb —, —, **coepī**, **coeptus** are used instead. However, the perfect passive participle **inceptus**, **-a**, **-um** is commonly used.
- **perdō**, **perdere**, **perdidī**, **perditus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **dō**. **perdō** may mean “destroy” or “cause ruin to” (people, things) or “lose” (people, troops, citizenship, beauty). It may also mean “waste” (resources, opportunities). The perfect passive participle **perditus**, **-a**, **-um** is frequently used as an adjective meaning “(morally) lost,” “ruined,” or “depraved.” The adverb **perditē** means “recklessly,” “desperately,” or “ruinously.”
- —, —, **coepī**, **coeptus** is a defective verb. It has forms in the perfect active and perfect passive systems only. In classical Latin, forms of **coepī** are regularly used instead of the perfect active and passive forms of **incipiō**.
- **grātus**, **-a**, **-um** and the compound adjective **ingrātus**, **-a**, **-um** (< **in-** + **grātus**, **-a**, **-um**) have both active and passive senses. The meanings given for these words in the vocabulary list reflect first their active senses and then their passive ones.
- The preposition **ad** is regularly used with gerunds and gerundives to mean “for (the purpose of)” (§123), but it may also have this sense with nouns or pronouns standing alone, particularly demonstratives.

Dux multa ad hoc fēcerat.

The leader had done many things for this purpose.

- The words **causā** and **grātiā** are Ablatives of Cause used as prepositions that take the *genitive* case. The word in the genitive case *precedes* either **causā** or **grātiā**. These words most commonly appear with gerunds or gerundives (§123), but they may also appear with nouns standing alone, particularly abstract nouns.

- **dummodo** is a conjunction formed by the addition of the adverb **modo** to the conjunction **dum** and may be written as one or two words (**dummodo** or **dum modo**). It may introduce a Proviso clause (§124), and, because of this combination, **modo** alone may also introduce a Proviso clause.

	Derivatives	Cognates
cēterus	etc. (et cetera)	he, him, her, it
gradior	digress, progress, congress	grade; degree
grātus	grace; grateful; gratify; gratis; ingrate; agree; congratulate	
mūtō	mutate; commute; permutation	immune; mistake
pretium	praise; price; precious	interpret
vulnus	vulnerable	Valhalla; Valkyrie

§123. Gerunds and Gerundives

In English there are two verbal nouns, the infinitive (to _____) and the **gerund** (_____ing). For example:

I like *to read*. (infinitive functioning as d.o. of the verb “like”)

Reading is enjoyable. (gerund functioning as subject of the verb “is”)

I exercise my mind by *reading*. (gerund functioning as object of the preposition “by”)

In Latin there are the same two verbal nouns, the *infinitive* and the *gerund*. There is in addition a verbal adjective, the **gerundive**, which has no exact counterpart in English. The features of the gerund and the gerundive are listed and compared below.

GERUND (Verbal Noun)	GERUNDIVE (Verbal Adjective)
1. is a neuter singular noun appearing in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. (The nominative is supplied by the <i>Subject Infinitive</i> .)	1. is never a substantive but <i>must</i> agree with a noun in gender, number, and case.
2. is formed with the present stem + -ndī, -ndō, -ndum, -ndō (3rd <i>i-stem-</i> and 4th-conjugation verbs change stem vowel to -ie-): [Nom. vidēre to see/seeing] Gen. videndī of seeing Dat. videndō to/for seeing Acc. videndum seeing (d.o.) Abl. videndō by (etc.) seeing	2. is identical in all forms with the <i>future passive participle</i> (e.g., amandus, -a, -um, audiendus, -a, -um), but contains no idea of obligation or necessity.
3. can have any noun syntax (Objective Genitive, Ablative of Means, etc.) and is translated accordingly by the English gerund: cupidus regendī desirous of ruling (Objective Gen.)	3. is lacking in English and so must be changed into a <i>gerund with a direct object</i> when translating into English: dōnīs mittendīs by sending gifts
4. is used to express <i>purpose</i> in the <i>genitive</i> with causā or grātiā (placed after) and in the <i>accusative</i> with ad : videndī causā for the sake of seeing ad videndum for the purpose of seeing	4. is used to express <i>purpose</i> in the <i>genitive</i> with causā or grātiā (placed after) and in the <i>accusative</i> with ad : rēgis videndī causā for the sake of seeing the king ad rēgem videndum for the purpose of seeing the king

The following sentences illustrate the uses of the gerund and the gerundive.

Mihi est amor *scrībendī*. (gerund, Objective Gen.)

I have a love *of writing*.

Mihi est amor *carminum scrībendōrum*. (gerundive, modifies **carminum**,

I have a love *of writing poems*. Objective Gen.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a Latin gerund would take a direct object, the gerundive construction is usually preferred, as in the second sentence.
2. The Latin gerundive, an *adjective* modifying a noun, is translated into English as a gerund, a verbal *noun*, with a direct object.

Arma cēpit *ad pugnandum*. (gerund expressing purpose with **ad**, for the purpose of)

He took up arms *for the purpose of fighting*.

Rōmam vēnī *ad mātrem videndam*. (gerundive expressing purpose with **ad**)

I came to Rome *for the purpose of seeing (my) mother*.

Rōmam vēnī multa *videndī causā*. (gerund expressing purpose with **causā**, for the sake of)

I came to Rome *for the sake of seeing many things*.

OBSERVATION

In the third sentence a gerund with a neuter plural substantive as direct object is preferred to the gerundive construction to avoid ambiguity:

multōrum videndōrum causā

“for the sake of seeing many *things*”

or “for the sake of seeing many *men*”

Occasionally the gerundive construction is used to express purpose in the accusative case without **ad**. For example:

Caesar Quintō lēgātō *sociōs dūcendōs* trādīdit.

Caesar to Quintus (his) lieutenant *the allies to be led* handed over.

Caesar handed over to (his) lieutenant Quintus *the allies to be led*.

Caesar handed over *the allies* to (his) lieutenant Quintus *for leading*.

OBSERVATION

In such a construction the gerundive still expresses purpose, but it must be translated differently: “to be _____ed” or “for _____ing.”

☛ DRILL 123, PAGE 533, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§124. Subordinate Clauses III

Certain subordinating conjunctions are followed by verbs sometimes in the indicative and sometimes in the subjunctive with a difference in meaning.¹ When any of these conjunctions is followed by an indicative verb, the action of the verb is represented by the writer or speaker as actual or factual. When the same conjunction is followed by a subjunctive verb, the verbal action is represented as alleged, apparent, or anticipated—that is, *nonfactual*.

Conjunction	With Indicative	With Subjunctive
dum/dōnec	“while/as long as/until” (action accomplished)	“until . . . should” (action anticipated)
antequam/ priusquam	“before” (action accomplished)	“before . . . can/could” (action anticipated)
quod/quia	“because” (cause represented as true)	“allegedly because,” “apparently because”

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood

Dum/Dōnec mē amābās, fēlix eram.

While (As long as) me (d.o.) you were loving, happy I was.

As long as you were loving me, I was happy.

In illō locō manēbant dum/dōnec verba Cicerōnis audivērunt.

In that place they were remaining until the words (d.o.) of Cicero they heard.

They were remaining in that place until they heard the words of Cicero.

Discessimus ē forō antequam/priusquam Cicerō orātiōnem cōnfēcit.

We departed from the forum before Cicero (his) speech (d.o.) completed.

We departed from the forum before Cicero completed his speech.

Caesar suōs laudābit quod/quia fortiter pugnāvērunt.

Caesar his own men (d.o.) will praise because bravely they fought.

Caesar will praise his own men because they fought bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first three sentences the actions in the subordinate clauses are presented as actually having occurred: you *did* use to love me, they *did* hear Cicero's words, and Cicero *did* complete his speech.
2. In the last sentence the reason given for Caesar's praise of his men is vouched for (by the writer of the sentence) as the true reason: his men *did* fight bravely, and this is why Caesar will praise them.

Dum haec ā militibus geruntur, lēgātī ab hostibus vērunt.

While these things by the soldiers were being managed, legates from the enemies came.

While these things were being managed by the soldiers, legates came from the enemies.

1. For subordinating conjunctions followed by verbs in the indicative mood, see §48. For *cum* clauses see §118.

OBSERVATION

When the verb in the main clause is a past tense, the *present indicative*, the so-called “historical present,” is regularly used with the conjunction **dum**, “while.” This special use of the present indicative should be translated as an imperfect indicative.

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood

When verbs in such subordinate clauses appear in the *subjunctive* mood, the writers or speakers represent the verbal actions as *nonfactual*.

In illō locō manēbānt *dum/dōnec* verba Cicerōnis audīrent.

They were remaining in that place *until they should hear* the words of Cicero.

Discessimus ē forō *antequam/priusquam* Cicerō orātiōnem habēret.

We departed from the forum *before Cicero could make* a speech.

Caesar suōs laudābit *quod/quia* fortiter pugnāverint.

Caesar will praise his own men *apparently because they fought* bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The tenses of the subjunctive verbs in these subordinate clauses follow the rules of sequence.
2. In the first two sentences the actions of the verbs in the subordinate clauses are presented as merely *anticipated* and not as having actually occurred. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with **dum** or **dōnec**, the English word “should” is used to translate a subjunctive verb in either primary or secondary sequence. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with **antequam** or **priusquam**, the English word “can” is used to translate a subjunctive verb in primary sequence, and “could” is used to translate a subjunctive verb in secondary sequence.
3. In the last sentence the reason given is not vouched for but is merely surmised by the writer or speaker or alleged by someone else. In such a causal clause, the English adverb “apparently” or “allegedly” is added to the translation.
4. The syntax, for example, of **audīrent** in the first sentence is **imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, temporal clause expressing anticipation, subsequent time**. The syntax of **pugnāverint** in the third sentence is **perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, clause of apparent or alleged cause, prior time**.

Sometimes **antequam** and **priusquam** are divided. For example:

Multa *ante/prius* experiēris *quam* tuum inimicum vincās.

Many things (d.o.) *sooner* you will try *than* your enemy (d.o.) *you can overcome*.

Sooner will you try many things *than you can overcome* your enemy.

You will try many things *before you can overcome* your enemy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjunctions **antequam** and **priusquam** are made of the comparative adverbs **ante** and **prius** (sooner) and the conjunction **quam** (than). When **antequam** or **priusquam** is divided, each element *may* be translated separately, but the last translation given above, in which the conjunction is translated “before” where the **quam** appears, is to be preferred.
2. **Antequam** and **priusquam** may be split when followed by either the indicative or the subjunctive mood.

Proviso Clauses

The conjunction **dum**, sometimes strengthened by the adverb **modo**, “only,” may introduce a subordinate clause stating a *provision under which* the event of the main clause can occur. Such a clause is called a **Proviso clause**. **modo alone** may also introduce such a clause. The verb in a Proviso clause is always in the *subjunctive* mood. The particle **nē** is used for negation. For example:

Magnō mē metū liberābis dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus sit.

From great fear me (d.o.) you will free *provided that between me and you a wall be*.

You will free me from great fear *provided that a wall be between me and you*.

Omnia prō dominō facere volō dum nē peream.

All things for (my) master to do I am willing *provided that I not perish*.

I am willing to do all things for my master *provided that I not perish*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Subjunctive verbs in Proviso clauses follow the rules of sequence. The syntax, for example, of **sit** in the first sentence is **present subjunctive, primary sequence, Proviso clause**.
2. A Proviso clause is regularly translated with an English present subjunctive (e.g., “be” and “perish” in the sentences above).²

☛ DRILL 124, PAGE 539, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§125. Correlatives

Certain Latin adverbs and adjectives appear in two closely related forms.

<i>Demonstrative</i>	<i>Exclamatory/Interrogative/Relative</i>
tam (adv.) so	quam (adv.) how; as
tālis, tāle such, of such a sort	quālis, quāle what sort of; of which sort, as
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great	quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; as much, as great
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many	quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many

The words in the column on the left are demonstrative because they *point out* a certain degree, amount, or quality, often referring to a preceding sentence or answering a question. The words in the column on the right function in three distinct ways. They may be used to make exclamations (exclamatory), to ask questions (interrogative), and to correlate with corresponding demonstrative words (relative). The following sentences illustrate these various functions.

Quam altus est!	<i>How tall he is!</i> (exclamatory)
Quam altus est?	<i>How tall is he?</i> (interrogative)
Tam altus est.	He is <i>so</i> tall (i.e., this tall). (demonstrative)
Tam altus est quam pater.	He is <i>so</i> tall <i>as</i> (his) father. (demonstrative/relative)

2. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word “to” omitted (“work,” “complete,” “do,” etc.).

OBSERVATIONS

1. The only difference in Latin between the exclamatory and interrogative sentences is the punctuation.
2. In the last sentence **quam** is *correlative* with **tam**. A **correlative** is an adjective, adverb, or pronoun that *corresponds with* a parallel adjective, adverb, or pronoun in the same sentence. In this sentence **tam**, a *demonstrative* adverb, and **quam**, a *relative* adverb, are correlatives, and the whole complex sentence is a **correlative sentence**. **Quam** introduces a *relative clause* in which certain grammatical elements are omitted. With no ellipsis the last example above would be written as follows:

Tam altus est quam altus est pater. He is so tall as tall (his) father is.

3. When **quam** is correlative with **tam**, an idiomatic English translation uses “as” to translate both **quam** and **tam**: He is *as* tall *as* (his) father.

Quantam pecūniam habuit! *How much* money he had! (exclamatory)
Quantam pecūniam habuit? *How much* money did he have? (interrogative)
Tantam pecūniam habuit.
 He had *so much* money (i.e., this much money). (demonstrative)
Tantam pecūniam habuit quanta erat satis.
 He had *so much* money *as* (*much*) was enough. (demonstrative/relative)
 He had *as much* money *as* was enough.

OBSERVATION

In correlative sentences such as the last sentence, the relative adjective must agree in *gender* and *number* with its antecedent, but its *case* is determined by its syntax *within* the relative clause. Thus, **quanta** is *feminine* and *singular* to agree with **pecūniam**, but it is *nominative* because it modifies the ellipsed subject (**pecūnia**) of **erat**.

With adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree,³ a correlative sentence may appear, usually with the relative clause preceding the main clause. For example:

Quō maius est periculum, eō magis timēmus.
 By (the degree to) *which* greater is the danger, *by this* (degree) more greatly we fear.
 The greater the danger is, *the* more greatly we fear.
Quantō fortius pugnābis, tantō plūs glōriae capiēs.
 By *how much* more bravely you will fight, *by so much* more of glory you will win.
 The more bravely you will fight, *the* more (of) glory you will win.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first example above **quō**, a *relative* pronoun, and **eō**, a *demonstrative* pronoun, are correlatives. The demonstrative **eō** is commonly used in this construction, but occasionally **hōc** appears instead.
2. The syntax of each italicized word (**quō**, **eō**, **quantō**, **tantō**) in the sentences above is Ablative of Degree of Difference.
3. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

Correlatives in correlative sentences are often best translated idiomatically. Here is a list of the correlatives included in this chapter and their respective idiomatic translations:

3. This construction also appears (less frequently) with superlative adjectives or adverbs.

tam . . . quam . . .	as . . . as . . .
tālis . . . quālis . . .	such . . . as . . . or of such a sort . . . as . . .
tantus . . . quantus . . .	as great . . . as . . . or as much . . . as . . .
tot . . . quot . . .	as many . . . as . . .
quō . . . eō (hōc) . . .	the (more) . . . the (more) . . .
quantō . . . tantō . . .	the (more) . . . the (more) . . .

☛ DRILL 125, PAGE 543, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§126. The Irregular Verb *fiō*

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, “become, happen; be made, be done,” is an irregular verb. The present system of **fīō** has *active forms with passive meanings*, and these forms supply the passive of the present system of **faciō**. The perfect system of **fīō** is supplied by the perfect passive system of **faciō**. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS:

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
<i>Sing.</i>					
1	fīō	fiēbam	fiam	fiam	fierem
2	fīs	fiēbās	fiēs	fiās	fierēs
3	fi	fiēbat	fiēt	fiat	fieret
<i>Pl.</i>					
1	fīmus	fiēbāmus	fiēmus	fiāmus	fierēmus
2	fi <i>tis</i>	fiēbātis	fiētis	fiātis	fierētis
3	fiunt	fiēbant	fiēt	fiant	fierent
<i>Imperative:</i>					
	<i>Sing.</i>	fi			
	<i>Pl.</i>	fi <i>te</i>			

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present, imperfect, and future indicative and present subjunctive conjugations of **fīō** are all formed with the stem **fi-**. By contrast, the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive have a *short -i-*. The imperfect subjunctive is formed with an imaginary present active infinitive form (*fiere), the final *-e* of which is lengthened to form the stem (**fiērē-**).
2. The imperative forms **fi** and **fi***te* are rare in the Latin literature that survives.
3. **Fīō** has no participles, but **faciō** supplies both the perfect passive participle (**factus, -a, -um**) and the future passive participle (**faciendus, -a, -um**).
4. When **fīō** means “become” or “be made,” it may be accompanied by a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Adjective in the Nominative case. For example:

Rēx fiat. Let him become/Let him be made king. (predicate nom.)
Misera puella fiet. The girl will become miserable. (predicate adj.)

☛ DRILL 126, PAGE 547, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§127. Adverbial Accusative

When a noun, pronoun, or adjective in the accusative case is used adverbially to express the *extent* to which the action of a verb is performed, it is called an **Adverbial Accusative**. For example:

Nihil hās litterās intellegimus.

To the extent (of) nothing this letter (d.o.) we understand.

Not at all do we understand this letter.

Tantum mē nōn amās quantum tē amō.

For so great an extent me (d.o.) you do not love as great an extent you (d.o.) I love.

You do not love me as much as I love you.

The syntax of each italicized word (**nihil**, **tantum**, **quantum**) is **Adverbial Accusative**.

Several nouns, pronouns, and adjectives in the singular accusative form are commonly used as Adverbial Accusatives. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVES:

magnam partem for a great part
maximam partem for the greatest part, for the most part
multum much, a lot
nihil not at all
plūrimum very much
quantum how much, as much
quid to what extent, why
sōlum only
tantum so much, only (so much)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a substantive adjective is used as an Adverbial Accusative, it is always neuter singular.
2. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of *extent* that *limited* the action of the verb. The Adverbial Accusative is developed from this original idea of the accusative (cf. the Accusative of Duration of Time).

§128. Accusative of Exclamation

When a noun in the accusative case is used to express an exclamation, it is called an **Accusative of Exclamation**. Such an accusative is often accompanied by an exclamatory adjective or adverb or by an interjection. For example:

Quem virum!

What a man!

Mē miserum!

Miserable me!

The syntax of each italicized word (**virum**, **mē**) is **Accusative of Exclamation**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Accusative of Exclamation developed from the Accusative, Direct Object. It is understood as the direct object of an unexpressed thought or perception (e.g., What a man [I am thinking of]!).
2. The interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod** may also be used to make exclamations, as in the first example.

§129. Genitive of Indefinite Value

With verbs of *considering*, *reckoning*, and *valuing*, certain words in the genitive case may express the *approximate worth or value* of something. This use of the genitive case is called a **Genitive of Indefinite Value**. For example:

Tuum cōsiliū magnī (pretiī) habeo. (pretium, pretiī *n.* price, value)
Your advice (d.o.) *of great (value)* I consider.
I consider your advice *of great value*.
Quis pecūniā plūris quam amōrem faciat? (faciō, reckon)
Who money (d.o.) *of more (value)* than love would reckon?
Who would reckon money *of more value* than love?

The syntax of each italicized word (**magnī, plūris**) is **Genitive of Indefinite Value**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each adjective in the sentences above is neuter singular genitive, either functioning as a substantive or modifying a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning “value,” **pretiī**. The Genitive of Indefinite Value is closely related to the Genitive of Description (§101).
2. Although the Latin word for “value” may be unexpressed, such a word should be added to the English translation of the Genitive of Indefinite Value.
3. Certain nouns appear as Genitives of Indefinite Value to express ideas of worthlessness. For example:

Eum nihili dūcō. I consider him *of no value*. (**nihilum, nihili** *n.* nothing)

§130. Ablative of Price

With verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *valuing*, and *exchanging*, certain words in the ablative case may express *the price at which* something is bought or sold. This use of the ablative case is called an **Ablative of Price**. For example:

Ista fēmina viri vītā aurō vendidit. (vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell)
That contemptible woman of (her) husband the life (d.o.) *for gold* sold.
That contemptible woman sold the life of her husband *for gold*.
Magnō (pretiō) ab omnibus virtūs aestimātur. (aestimō [1-tr.] estimate, value)
At a great (price) by all (people) excellence is valued.
Excellence is valued *at a great price* by all people.

The syntax of each italicized word (**aurō, magnō**) is **Ablative of Price**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Ablative of Price was originally used instead of the Genitive of Indefinite Value to express the *exact amount of money* for which something was bought or sold. Its uses were later extended to less precise ideas of cost or value.
2. Although the Ablative of Price is essentially an Ablative of Means, it is often better translated with the English prepositions “for” or “at (the price of).”

3. A wide variety of words may be conceived as the price or cost of something (e.g., **vītā**, **patriā**). An adjective (e.g., **magnō**, **parvō**) used as an Ablative of Price either functions as a substantive or modifies a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "price," **pretiō**. However, four adjectives always appear in the Genitive of Indefinite Value rather than the expected Ablative of Price: **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūris**, and **minōris**.

☛ DRILL 127–130, PAGE 551, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the tragic poet Naevius

. . . ego semper plūris fēcī
potiōremque habuī libertātem multō quam pecūniam.

(*NAEVIUS, PALLIATAE FRAG.* 9–10)

potior, potius more powerful; more desirable, more precious

2. Amphitruo and his slave Sosia enter the stage, and Amphitruo accuses Sosia of lying.

Amphitruō. Age ī tū secundum. *Sōsia.* Sequor, subsequor tē.

Amph. Scelestissimum tē arbitror. *Sōs.* Nam quam ob rem?

Amph. Quia id quod neque est neque fuit neque futūrum est
mihi praedicās. (*PLAUTUS, AMPHITRUO* 551–54)

secundum (adv.) following, behind

subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow close behind

scelestus, -a, -um wicked

praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare

3. A slave recalls a Greek proverb.

. . . quem dī dīligunt

adulēscēns moritur, dum valet, sentit, sapit. (*PLAUTUS, BACCHIDES* 816–17)

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus value, esteem, love

adulēscēns, adulēscētis young, youthful

sapiō, sapere, sapiī/sapīvī, — be intelligent, show good sense

4. Mistaken for his twin brother, Menaechmus is reviled by his brother's parasite, Peniculus.

Menaechmus. Quis hic est quī adversus it mihi?† *Pēniculus.* Quid ais, homō

levior quam plūma, pessime et nēquissime,

flāgitium hominis, subdole ac minimī preti? (*PLAUTUS, MENAECHEMI* 487–89)

adversus (adv.) opposite; **adversus ire**, to go to meet (+ dat.)

†The final -i of **mihi** here scans *long*.

aiō (defective verb) say; **ais** = 2nd sing. pres. act. *indic*.

plūma, plūmae *f.* feather

nēquissimus, -a, -um most worthless, worst

flāgitium, flāgitī *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace

subdolus, -a, -um deceitful, treacherous, sly

5. In explaining why he will not boast of his victories, Stratophanes, a soldier and buffoon, speaks about the trustworthiness of different kinds of witnesses.

plūris est oculātus testis ūnus quam aurītī decem;

quī audiunt audīta dīcunt, quī vident plānē sciunt. (*PLAUTUS, TRUCULENTUS* 489–90)

oculātus, -a, -um having eyes

testis, testis, -ium *m.* witness

aurītus, -a, -um having ears

plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; obviously

6. The character Geta despairs.

hoccin saeculum! ō scelera, ō genera sacrilega, ō hominem inpium!

(TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 304)

hoccin = **hocne**; **-ne**, here, indicates an indignant statement

saec(u)lum, **saec(u)lī** *n.* age, generation

sacrilegus, **-a**, **-um** temple-robbing; sacrilegious

7. A fragment from the satirist Lucilius

ō cūrās hominum! ō quantum est in rēbus ināne! (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE FRAG.* 9)

ināne, **inānis**, **-ium** *n.* empty space, void

8. Cicero comments on Athens and its great lawgiver, Solon.

prūdentissima cīvitas Athēniēnsium, dum ea rērum potīta est, fuisse trāditur; eius porrō cīvitatīs sapientissimum Solōnem dīcunt fuisse, eum quī lēgēs quibus hodiē quoque ūtuntur scrīperit. (CICERO, *PRŌ S. ROSCIŌ AMERINŌ* 70)

prūdēns, **prūdētis** showing foresight, prudent, sagacious

Athēniēnsis, **Athēniēnse** Athenian

potior, **potīrī**, **potītus sum** be master (of), control (+ gen.)

porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore

Solō(n), **Solōnis** *m.* Solon (sixth-century B.C.E. lawgiver)

hodiē (adv.) today

9. Cicero describes his reception when he arrived in Sicily to collect evidence against Verres.

nēminī meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī neque[†] pūblicē neque[†] prīvātīm fuit: vim in inqūirēndō tantam habuī quantam mihi lēx dabat, nōn quantam habēre poteram istōrum studiō quōs iste[†] vexārat. (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 1.16)

adventus, **adventūs** *m.* arrival

sūmptus, **sūmptūs** *m.* expense, cost

[†]The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

prīvātīm (adv.) in private, privately

inqūirō (in- + **quaerō**), **inqūirere**, **inqūisīi/**

inqūisīvī, **inqūisītus** inquire into, investigate

[†]**iste** refers to Verres.

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

10. Cicero attacks Verres for one of his many illegal acts.

ēripis hērēditātem quae vēnerat ā propinquō, vēnerat testāmentō, vēnerat lēgibus; quae bona is quī testāmentum fēcerat huic Hēraclīō, aliquantō antequam est mortuus, omnia ūtenda ac possidenda trādiderat . . . (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 2.46)

ēripīō, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** tear away, snatch away

hērēditās, **hērēditātis** *f.* inheritance

propinquus, **-a**, **-um** near, close; *subst.*, relative

testāmentum, **testāmentī** *n.* will

Hēraclīus, **Hēraclīi** *m.* Heraclius

aliquantum, **aliquantī** *n.* a little, a small amount

possideō, **possidēre**, **possēdī**, **possessus** occupy; take control of, possess

11. Cicero expresses his willingness to endure unpopularity now that Catiline has left the city. *est mihi tantī, Quirītēs, huius invidiae falsae atque inīquae tempestātem subīre, dum modo ā vōbīs huius horribilis bellī ac nefārii perīculum dēpellātur. dīcātur sānē ēiectus esse ā mē, dum modo eat in exsilium. sed mihi crēdite, nōn est itūrus.* (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* II 15)

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm
subeō (*sub-* + *eō*), **subīre, subīi/subīvī, subitūrus** undergo, endure
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
nefārius, -a, -um unspeakable, wicked
dēpellō (*dē-* + *pellō*), **dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus** drive away
sānē (*adv.*) by all means

12. After his return from exile Cicero describes the debt he owes to Pompey the Great. *huic ego hominī, Quirītēs, tantum dēbeō quantum hominem hominī dēbere vix fās est.* (CICERO, *POST REDITUM AD POPULUM* 17)

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
vix (*adv.*) scarcely, hardly

13. A character in Cicero's dialogue about law explains the importance of **imperium**. *nihil porrō tam aptum est ad iūs condiōnemque nātūrae—quod quom dīcō, lēgem ā mē dīcī intellegī volō—quam imperium, sine quō nec domus ūlla nec cīvītās nec gēns nec hominum ūniversum genus stāre, nec rērum nātūra omnis nec ipse mundus potest.* (CICERO, *DE LĒGIBUS* III.2)

porrō (*adv.*) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore
aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit
condiō, condiōnis *f.* contract; condition, situation
ūniversus, -a, -um entire, (taken as a) whole
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world

14. Pleading before Caesar on behalf of one of Pompey's followers, Cicero appeals to Caesar's merciful side. *nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, nūlla dē virtūtibus tuīs plūrimīs nec† admīrābilior nec† grātior misericordiā est. hominēs enim ad deōs nūllā rē propius accēdunt quam salūtem hominibus dandō.* (CICERO, *PRŌ LIGĀRIŌ* 37–38)

populāris, populāre of the **populus**; popular; admired
bonitās, bonitātis *f.* (moral) goodness; kindness, generosity
admīrābilis, admīrābile astonishing; admirable, wonderful
miserīcordia, miserīcordiae *f.* pity
propius (*comparative adv.*) nearer

†The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

15. Cicero explains the importance of knowing Latin.

nōn enim tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre, neque tam† id mihi
ōrātōris bonī quam† cīvis Rōmānī proprium vidētur. (CICERO, *BRŪTUS* 140)

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; excellent, outstanding

Latīnē (adv.) (in) Latin

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

†**tam . . . quam . . .**, here, so much . . . as . . .

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (+ gen.)

16. Cicero's translation of Simonides' epitaph for the Spartan dead at Thermopylae

Dīc, hospes, Spartaē nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentēs,
dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNES* I.101)

hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger

Sparta, Spartaē *f.* Sparta

hīc (adv.) here

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless

obsequor (**ob-** + **sequor**) comply with, submit to

17. A famous anecdote about the Athenian statesman Themistocles

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō† Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset,
quaerentibusque respondēbat Miltiadis tropaeīs sē ē somnō suscitārī.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNES* IV.44)

noctū = **nocte**

†**in pūblicō**, in (a) public (place)

Themistoclēs, Themistoclis *m.* Themistocles

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

Miltiadēs, Miltiadis *m.* Miltiades (an Athenian
commander at Marathon)

tropaeum, tropaeī *n.* trophy (set up to mark the
defeat of an enemy)

suscitō (1-tr.) cause to rise, rouse

18. Meditating on how often philosophers have easily endured exile from their homelands, a
character suggests a reevaluation of the importance of the state.

quantī vērō ista cīvitās aestimanda est ex quā bonī sapientēsque pelluntur?

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNES* V.109)

19. The character Cotta utters a wish while speaking against the tenets of Epicureanism.

utinam tam facile vēra invenīre possem quam falsa convincere!

(CICERO, *DĒ NATŪRĀ DEŌRUM* I.91)

convincō (**con-** + **vincō**) overcome; prove wrong, refute

20. The character Balbus closes his presentation of the Stoic view of the gods.

mala enim et impia cōnsuētūdō est contrā deōs disputandī, sīve ex animō id fit
sīve simulātē. (CICERO, *DE NATŪRĀ DEŌRUM* II.168)

cōnsuētūdō, **cōnsuētūdinis** *f.* practice, custom, habit

disputō (**dis-** + **putō**) (1-tr.) argue one's case, debate

sīve (conj.) or if, whether; **sīve . . . sīve . . .**, whether . . . or (if) . . .

simulātē (adv.) in pretense

21. Although Cicero has been sleeping more since retiring from politics, he claims that his own dreams have remained pretty much the same.

. . . nec tam multum dormiēns ūllō somniō sum admonitus, tantīs praesertim dē
rēbus, nec mihi magis umquam videor quam cum aut in forō magistrātūs aut in
cūrīā senātum videō, somniāre. (CICERO, *DE DĪVINĀTIŌNE* II.142)

dormiō, **dormīre**, **dormiī/dormīvī**, **dormītum**
sleep, be asleep

magistrātus, **magistrātūs** *m.* officeholder,
magistrate

somnium, **somniī** *n.* dream

cūrīa, **cūrīae** *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house

admoneō (**ad-** + **moneō**) remind, advise

somniō (1-intr.) dream

praesertim (adv.) especially, above all

22. Cicero adduces a famous Roman family as an example of how real glory endures.

Tiberius enim Gracchus, P. f.,[†] tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum
Rōmānārum manēbit . . . (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* II.43)

[†]P. f. = **Publiī filius**

23. Cicero claims that Caesar often cited two lines of a Greek tragedy, which Cicero here translates.

nam sī violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā
violandum est; aliīs rēbus pietātem colās. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* III.12)

violō (1-tr.) violate, transgress against

rēgnō (1-tr.) rule as king, reign

pietās, **pietātis** *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** cultivate

24. Cicero closes a letter to his friend Atticus with a word about the letter's deliverer.

Cossinius hic, cui dedī litterās, valdē[†] mihi bonus homō et nōn levis et amāns tuī
vīsus est et tālis quālem esse eum tuae mihi litterae nuntiārant.

(CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* I.19.11)

Cossinius, **Cossiniī** *m.* Cossinius

[†]**valdē**, *here*, very

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report

25. Cicero pays his friend Atticus a compliment.

Rōmae enim videor esse cum tuās litterās legō et, ut fit in tantīs rēbus, modo hoc modo illud audīre. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* II.15.1)

26. Cicero writes to Brutus about his opinion of the consuls for 43 B.C.E. and the young Octavian.

quālis tibi saepe scrīpsī cōsulēs, tālēs exstitērunt. Caesaris vērō puerī mīrifica indolēs virtūtis. utinam tam facile eum flōrentem et honōribus et grātiā regere ac tenēre possīmus quam facile adhūc tenuimus! (CICERO, *AD BRŪTUM* 9.1)

ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itī, — stand out, appear; prove to be
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, amazing
indolēs, indolis *f.* innate quality, nature; (natural) tendency (for) (+ gen.)
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, — blossom; prosper; be at the height of one's power
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time

27. While writing his autobiography, Cicero contemplates insulting two consuls, A. Gabinius and L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, both of whom supported Clodius's prosecution of Cicero, which led to the latter's exile.

itaque mīrificum embolium cōgitō[†] in secundum librum meōrum temporum inclūdere dīcentem Apollinem in conciliō deōrum quālis reditus duōrum imperātōrum futūrus esset, quōrum alter exercitum perdidisset, alter vendidisset.

(CICERO, *AD QUINTUM FRĀTREM* III.1.24)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, wonderful, marvelous
embolium, emboliī *n.* interlude; insertion
[†]**cōgitō, here,** have in mind, plan (+ infin.)

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose, include
concilium, conciliī *n.* (popular) assembly, council
reditus, reditūs *m.* return

28. The poet laments man's irrational fear of death.

ō miserās hominum mentēs, ō pectora caeca!
 quālibus in tenebrīs vītae quantisque perīclīs
 dēgitur hoc aevī quodcumquest! . . . (LUCRETIVUS, *DE RERUM NĀTŪRĀ* I.14–16)

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
perīclīs = perīculīs
dēgō (dē- + agō), dēgere, —, — spend, pass
aevum, aevī *n.* age, life(time)
quodcumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.*, whatever

29. Imitation is the sincerest form of flattery. (hendecasyllable)

Disertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
 quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
 quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
 grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
 agit pessimus omnium poēta,
 tantō pessimus omnium poēta
 quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus. (CATULLUS XLIX)

disertus, -a, -um well-spoken, eloquent
nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson; descendant
patrōnus, patrōnī *m.* patron; defender

30. The poet states a paradox.

Ōdī et amō. quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
 nescio,† sed fierī sentiō et excrucior. (CATULLUS LXXXV)

fortasse (adv.) perhaps
requīrō (re- + quaerō), **requīrere, requīsīi/requīsīvī, requīsītus** seek again, ask, inquire
 †The final -ō of **nesciō** here scans *short*.
excruciō (1-tr.) torture

31. The poet strives to express how much he loved Lesbia.

Nūlla potest mulier tantum sē dīcere amātam
 vērē quantum ā mē Lesbia amāta mea est.
 nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit umquam foedere tanta
 quanta in amōre tuō ex parte reperta meā est. (CATULLUS LXXXVII)

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover

32. The soldiers of the enemy break ranks to the benefit of Caesar's men.

ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multītūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum
 fuit diēi spatium, . . . (CAESAR, DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ II.11)

multītūdō, multītūdinis *f.* multitude
spatium, spatī *n.* course, track; space, interval

33. Caesar explains why he thinks certain Gallic tribes surrendered so quickly.

nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac
 minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

(CAESAR, DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ III.19)

suscipiō (sub- + capiō) undertake, venture upon
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
alacer, alacris, alacre quick, swift; keen, eager
prōmptus, -a, -um quick to respond, ready
mollis, molle gentle, soft, mild
resistēns, resistentis enduring, firm
calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune,
 injury

34. In the territory of the Morini, Caesar is about to launch an expedition to Britain.

dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* IV.22)

nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship

Morinī, Morinōrum *m. pl.* (the) Morini (a Belgic tribe)

superior, superius upper, higher; earlier

excūsō (1-tr.) excuse

barbarus, -a, -um foreign; barbarous, uncivilized

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage

imperitū, -a, -um inexperienced (in), unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum promise

35. Several of Caesar's soldiers, against orders, leave their positions in the middle of a battle on land and sea and attempt to reach land on their own.

pars eōrum studiō spectandī ferēbātur, pars etiam cupiditāte pugnandī.

([CAESAR], *DE BELLŌ ALEXANDRINŌ* 20)

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

36. When he is recommending a harsh penalty against Catiline, Cato recalls an outstanding example of Roman austerity.

apud maiōrēs nostrōs T. Manlius Torquātus bellō Gallicō filium suum, quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat, necārī iussit atque ille ēgregius adulēscēns inmoderātae fortitūdinis morte poenās dedit.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 52)

T. Manlius Torquātus, T. Manliī Torquātī *m.*

T. Manlius Torquatus (dictator 353 B.C.E.)

Gallicus, -a, -um Gallic

necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill

ēgregius, -a, -um outstanding, extraordinary

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, -ium *m.* young man

inmoderātus, -a, -um unrestrained, immoderate;

inmoderātae fortitūdinis, *genitive expresses the charge*, for (his) unrestrained bravery

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

37. The historian summarizes Cato's character.

esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat; ita, quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum adsequēbātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 54)

assequor (ad- + sequor) go after, pursue

38. The historian compares Caesar and Cato.

Caesar dandō, sublevandō, ignōscundō, Catō nihil largiundō glōriam adeptus est. in alterō miseris perfugium erat, in alterō malis perniciēs. illius facilitās, huius cōstantia laudābātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 54)

sublevō (1-tr.) raise; assist

ignōscō (in- + nōscō), **ignōscere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtus** forgive, pardon; **ignōscundō** = *archaic form of ignōscendō*

largior, **largīrī**, **largītus sum** give (generously), bestow; **largiundō** = *archaic form of largiendō*

adipīscor, **adipīscī**, **adeptus sum** reach, obtain, gain, get

perfugium, **perfugiū** *n.* place of refuge, shelter, sanctuary

perniciēs, **perniciē** *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster

facilitās, **facilitātis** *f.* facility, ease; indulgence

cōstantia, **cōstantiae** *f.* firmness, steadfastness, resolution

39. A writer expresses indignation at a line in Cicero's poem about his consulship.

tamen audet dīcere: "Ō fortūnātam nātam, mē cōnsule, Rōmam!" tē cōnsule fortūnātam, Cicerō? immō vērō infēlicem et miseram . . .

([SALLUST], *IN M. TULLIUM CICERONEM* 5)

fortūnātus, -a, -um fortunate

immō vērō (adv.) no, even

Two Roman proverbs

40. Beneficium accipere libertātem est vendere. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B5)

beneficium, **beneficiū** *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

41. Brevis ipsa vīta est, sed malis fit longior. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B36)

42. After a refrain in a funeral song for the shepherd Daphnis, the poet gives evidence for the power of poetry.

dūcite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, dūcite Daphnin.

carmina vel caelō possunt dēdūcere lūnam,

carminibus Circē sociōs mūtāvit Ulīxī, . . . (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* VIII.68–70)

Daphnis, **Daphnidis** *f.* Daphnis; **Daphnin** = *acc. sing.*

vel (adv.) even

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring down

lūna, **lūnae** *f.* moon

Circē, **Circēs** *f.* Circe (a witch from Colchis who detained Odysseus and his men)

Ulīxēs, **Ulīxis/Ulīxī** *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

43. The poet concludes an enumeration of Aeneas's many trials.

tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.33)

mōlēs, **mōlis**, -ium *f.* mass, weight, burden; enterprise, responsibility

condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** found

44. Aeneas describes a grim scene in a wall painting he discovers in Carthage.

ter circum Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs

exanimumque aurō corpus vendēbat Achillēs. (VERGIL, AENEID I.483–84)

ter (adv.) three times

circum (prep. + acc.) around

Īliacus, -a, -um Ilian, Trojan

raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force; seize; drag

Hector, Hectoris *m.* Hector; Hectora = *acc. sing.*

exanimus, -a, -um lifeless

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles

45. Angry Dido feels that further appeals to Aeneas will be useless.

nam quid dissimulō aut quae mē ad maiōra reservō?

num flētū ingemuit nostrō? num lūmina flexit?

num lacrimās victus dedit aut miserātus amantem est? (VERGIL, AENEID IV.368–70)

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend, dissemble

reservō (1-tr.) save, hold back

flētus, flētūs *m.* weeping, tears

ingemō, ingemere, ingemuī, — groan, lament

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend, turn

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

miseror (1-tr.) pity

46. The poet comments on the lives of words.

multa renāscuntur quae iam cecidēre cadentque

quae nunc sunt in honōre vocābula, sī volet ūsus, †

quem penes arbitrium est et iūs et norma loquendī. (HORACE, ARS POETICA 70–72)

renāscor (re- + nāscor) be reborn; be revived

vocābulum, vocābulī *n.* word; term

†ūsus, ūsus *m.* use; usage

penes (prep. + acc.) in the power of; quem

penes = penes quem

arbitrium, arbitriī *n.* power of decision, determination; supervision, control

norma, normae *f.* standard

47. The poet has been away from Rome and away from Cynthia.

nōn sum ego quī fueram: mūtāt via longa puellās.

quantus in exiguō tempore fūgit amor!

nunc primum longās sōlus cognōscere noctēs

cōgor et ipse meīs auribus esse gravis. (PROPERTIUS I.12.11–14)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, cōegī, cōactus drive together, force, compel

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

48. Addressing his beloved Cynthia, the poet links love and mortality.

dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre:

nox tibi longa venit, nec reditūra diēs. (PROPERTIUS II.15.23–24)

sinō, sinere, sī/sīvī, situm allow, permit

satiō (1-tr.) sate, satisfy

49. What is most effective in wooing?

quid tibi praecipiam tenerōs quoque mittere versūs?

ei mihi! nōn multum carmen honōris habet.

carmina laudantur, sed mūnera magna petuntur:

dummodo sit dīves, barbarus ipse placet.

aurea sunt vērē nunc saecula: plūrimus aurō

vēnit honōs, aurō conciliātur amor. (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* II.271–76)

praeciipiō (*prae-* + *capiō*) advise

tener, tenera, tenerum tender; delicate, soft

versus, versūs *m.* verse

ei (interj.) alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me

dīves, dīvitis rich, wealthy

barbarus, -a, -um foreign; barbarous, savage

aureus, -a, -um golden

saeculum, saeculī *n.* generation, lifetime; *sing.*

or pl., age

conciliō (1-tr.) unite; acquire, win

50. The poet looks at the darker side of love.

lītore quot conchae, tot sunt in amōre dolōrēs;

quae patimur, multō spīcula felle madent. (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* II.519–20)

lītus, litoris *n.* shore, beach

concha, conchae *f.* shellfish; seashell

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

spīculum, spīculī *n.* sharp point (of a weapon),

arrow; sting

fel, fellis *n.* liver, (black) bile (the source of rage);

venom

madeō, madēre, —, — be wet, drip

51. The poet in exile comments with emotion on the death of his parents.

fēlicēs ambō tempestivēque sepultī,

ante diem poenae quod periēre meae!

mē quoque fēlicem, quod nōn vīventibus illīs

sum miser, et dē mē quod doluēre nihil! (OVID, *TRISTIA* IV.10.81–84)

ambō, ambae, ambō (*pl. adj. and pron.*) both; **ambō** = *masc. nom. pl.*

tempestivē (*adv.*) opportunely, at the right time

sepeliō, sepelīre, sepeliī/sepelivī, sepultus bury

doleō, dolēre, doluī, — suffer, grieve, feel pain

52. A tribune of the people, A. Verginius, concludes a speech intended to warn the people about Caeso Quinctius, a champion of the patricians.

expectāte dum cōsul aut dictātor fiat quem prīvātum vīribus et audāciā rēgnan-
tem vidētis. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* III.11.13)

dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator (an emergency officer with unlimited powers)

prīvātus, -a, -um private; *subst.*, private citizen

rēgnō (1-tr.) rule; act in a kingly way, tyrannize

53. After stating that the law of nature is a continuous alternation of good and bad things, the philosopher suggests the proper human response.

ad hanc lēgem animus noster aptandus est; hanc sequātur. huic pāreat. et quaecumque fiunt, dēbuisse fierī putet nec velit obiurgāre nātūram. optimum est pati quod ēmendāre nōn possīs, et deum, quō auctōre cūncta prōveniunt, sine murmurātiōne comitārī; malus mīles est quī imperātōrem gemēns sequitur.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* CVII.9)

aptō (1-tr.) fit, adapt, attune

quaecumque = *neut. pl. nom. of indef. pron.*,
whatever things

obiurgō (1-tr.) find fault with, reprimand

ēmendō (1-tr.) correct; remedy, cure

auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author

cūnctus, -a, -um all

prōveniō (**prō-** + **veniō**) come forth, emerge,
arise

murmurātiō, murmurātiōnis *f.* grumbling,
muttering

comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend

gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitum groan, moan

54. Clytaemnestra laments both the horrors of the house of Atreus and the beginning of the Trojan war.

ō scelera semper sceleribus vincēns domus:

cruōre ventōs ēmimus, bellum nece! (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 169–70)

crur, cruōris *m.* (fresh) blood, gore

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

nex, necis *f.* murder

55. While plotting revenge against his brother, Thyestes, Atreus speaks to himself.

haec ipsa pollēns inclitī Pelopis domus

ruat vel in mē dummodo in frātrem ruat. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *THYESTES* 190–91)

polleō, pollēre, —, — be powerful

inclitus, -a, -um famous, renowned

Pelops, Pelopis *m.* Pelops (son of Tantalus and father of Atreus and Thyestes)

ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush; fall (with violence)

vel (*adv.*) even

56. Part of the historian's account of the late-night encounter between Alexander the Great and Clitus, one of his senior generals—the two had just quarreled drunkenly and bitterly at a banquet. Alexander had left earlier and armed himself.

abierant cēterī, Clītus ultimus sine lūmine exibat. quem rēx quisnam esset interrogat. ēminēbat etiam in vōce sceleris quod parābat atrōcītās.

(CURTIUS RUFUS, *HISTORIAE ALEXANDRĪ MAGNĪ* VIII.1.50)

Clītus, Clītī *m.* Clitus

ultimus, -a, -um last

exeō (**ex-** + **eō**) go out, leave

quisnam, quidnam (*interrog. pron.*) just who,
just what

interrogō (**inter-** + **rogō**) ask, inquire; **interrogat**,
*historical present tense, used here to add
vividness; translate as past*

ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī, — stand out, be
conspicuous

atrōcītās, atrōcītātis *f.* hideousness, atrocity,
cruelty

57. The poet remarks on the curious fate of one of his little books.

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fidentīne, libellus;
sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus. (MARTIAL I.38)

recitō (1-tr.) read aloud (in public), recite

Fidentīnus, Fidentīnī *m.* Fidentinus

libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book

58. Unlike Romans of old, who were able to exercise the rights of free citizens all their lives, those of Pliny's generation have had this experience for a short time only.

breve tempus (nam tantō brevius omne quantō fēlicius tempus) quō libet scīre
quid sīmus, libet exercēre quod scīmus. (PLINY THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE* VIII.14.10)

libet, libēre, libuit or **libitum est** it is pleasing, there is a desire

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy; exercise, perform

59. The historian describes the experience of repression under Domitian.

memoriam quoque ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus sī tam[†] in nostrā potestāte
esset oblīvīscī quam[†] tacēre. (TACITUS, *DE VITĀ AGRICOLAE* 2)

[†]**tam . . . quam . . .**, *here*, as much . . . as . . .

potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent

60. The historian quotes this tortured sentence from a letter written by Tiberius to the senate as proof of the emperor's inner torment.

quid scribam vōbīs, patrēs cōscriptī, aut quō modō scribam, aut quid omnīnō
nōn scribam hōc tempore, dī mē deaque peius perdant quam perire mē cōtīdiē
sentiō sī sciō. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* VI.6)

cōtīdiē (adv.) daily, every day

61. The historian comments on Tiberius's habit of consulting an astrologer.

sed mihi haec ac tālia audientī in incertō iūdicium est fātōne rēs mortālium et ne-
cessitāte immūtābilī an forte volvantur. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* VI.22)

iūdicium, iūdicī *n.* judgment, opinion

necessitās, necessitātis *f.* necessity

immūtābilis, immūtābile unchangeable, unalterable

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn; determine

62. The historian reports one way Caesar found to keep up the population of the city.
omnīsque medicīnam Rōmae professōs et liberālium artium doctōrēs, quō liben-
tius et ipsī urbem incolerent et cēterī adpeterent, cīvitate dōnāvīt.

(Suetonius, *VITA IULII* 42)

medicīna, medicīnae <i>f.</i> medicine	doctor, doctōris <i>m.</i> teacher
profiteor, profitērī, professus sum profess; follow as a pursuit, practice	libenter (<i>adv.</i>) gladly
liberālis, liberāle characteristic of a free man, liberal	incolō, incolere, incoluī, — inhabit
	appetō (<i>ad- + petō</i>) strive after, seek; make for

63. The historian quotes from a letter of Augustus to Tiberius.
attenuātum tē esse continuātiōne labōrum cum audiō et legō, dī mē perdant nisi
cohorrēscit corpus meum; tēque ōrō ut parcās tibi, . . . (Suetonius, *VITA TIBERII* 21)

attenuō (1-tr.) make thin, impair, weaken
continuātiō, continuātiōnis *f.* continuance, prolongation
cohorrēscō, cohorrēscere, cohorruī, — shudder, shiver
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

64. According to the historian, these were Nero's last words.
quālis artifex pereō! (Suetonius, *VITA NERONIS* 49)

artifex, artificis *m.* artist

65. A young man's epitaph
Decem et octō annōrum nātus vīxī ut potuī bene, grātus parentī atque amicīs om-
nibus. iocēris, lūdās, hortor: hīc summa est sevērītās. (*CIL* VI.16169)

parēs, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent
iocor (1-intr.) joke, jest
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus play
hīc (*adv.*) here, in this place
sevērītās, sevērītātis *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 13

Cicero concludes his defense of the time he has spent on literary pursuits.

quā rē quis tandem mē reprehendat, aut quis mihi iūre suscēnseat, sī, quantum cēterīs ad suās[†] rēs obeundās, quantum ad fēstōs diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs, quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt tempestīvis convīviīs, quantum dēnique alveolō, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sūmpserō?

reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī,

reprehēnsus seize, catch; blame, censure

suscēnsēō, suscēnsēre, suscēnsuī, — be angry with (+ dat.)

[†]**suās** refers to **cēterīs**, their own

obeō (ob- + eō), obīre, obīi/obīvī, obitus go to meet; enter into, take on

fēstus, -a, -um festal; **fēstus diēs**, festival day, holiday

lūdus, lūdī *m.* game, play, sport; *pl.*, (public) games

celebrō (1-tr.) celebrate

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

requiēs, requiētis *f.* rest, relaxation; **requiem** = *acc. sing.*

concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow, assign

tempestīvus, -a, -um timely, ripe, ready;

tempestīvum convīvium, sumptuous or elaborate dinner party (that starts early)

convīvium, convīvī *n.* dinner party, banquet, feast

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up

alveolus, alveolī *m.* gaming board

pila, pilae *f.* ball

egomet = emphatic form of **ego**

recolō, recolare, recoluī, recultus cultivate again; resume, practice again

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take (and use)

2. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 14

The study of literature stands in an important relation to public and political life.

nam nisi multōrum praeceptīs multisque litterīs mihi ab adulēscientiā suāsissem nihil esse in vitā magnō opere[†] expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem, in eā autem persequendā omnīs cruciātūs corporis, omnia perīcula mortis atque exsili parvī esse dūcenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac tantās dīmiciātōnēs atque in hōs prōfligātōrum hominum cōtīdiānōs impetūs obiēcissem. sed plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebrīs omnia nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet.[†] quam multās nōbīs imāginēs nōn solum ad intuendum vērū etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum virōrum expressās scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! quās ego mihi semper in administrandā rē publicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōnē hominum excellentium cōnformābam.

praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* advice, instruction, precept

adulēscientia, adulēscientiae *f.* youth, adolescence
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend, urge, advise; persuade (+ dat.)

[†]**magnō opere = magnopere**

expetō (ex- + petō) ask for, seek (after)

laus, laudis *f.* praise

honestās, honestātis *f.* honor, integrity

persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, pursue

cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment

dīmiciātō, dīmiciātōnis *f.* battle, fight, struggle

prōfligātus, -a, -um dissolute, depraved

cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault

obicīō (ob- + iaciō) throw (in front of), throw (in the way of), interpose

plēnus, -a, -um full

exemplum, exemplī *n.* example

vetustās, vetustātis *f.* (old) age, antiquity

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

[†]**accēdō, here, be added**

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness

intueor, intuērī, intuitus sum look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider

imitor (1-tr.) practice, copy, imitate

exprimō, exprimere, expressī, expressus squeeze out; portray, depict

scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin

administrō (1-tr.) assist; manage, administer

prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) exhibit; keep (before one), bear in mind, hold up (as an example)

cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* thinking, contemplation, thought

excellēns, excellentis outstanding

cōnformō (1-tr.) shape, fashion

3. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 18–19

Cicero muses on the divine endowment of all poets.

atque sic ā summīs hominibus ērudītissimīsque accēpimus cēterārum rērum studia ex doctrīnā et praeceptīs et arte cōnstāre, poētā nātūrā ipsā valēre et mentis vīribus excitārī et quasi dīvīnō quōdam spīritū īnflārī. quā rē suō iūre noster ille Ennius sānc-tōs appellat poētās, quod quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs esse videantur.

ērudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished
doctrīna, doctrīnae *f.* teaching, instruction, training
praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* advice, instruction, precept
cōnstō (con- + stō), cōnstāre, cōstitī, cōstātūrus stand, be established; consist in, rest on, be composed of (+ **ex** + *abl.*)
excitō (1-tr.) arouse

quasi (adv.) as if, as it were
spīritus, spīritūs *m.* spirit
īnflō (1-tr.) blow on, inspire
Ennius, Ennī *m.* Ennius
sānctus, -a, -um sacred, holy
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any
commendō (1-tr.) entrust

4. Cicero, *Post Reditum Ad Populum* 16

Cicero describes to the people the groundswell of support for him while he was in exile. He singles out one man's aid in particular.

ita mē nūdum ā propinquīs, nūllā cognātiōne mūnītum, cōsulēs, praetōrēs, tribūnī plēbis, senātus, Italia cūncta semper ā vōbīs dēprecāta est, dēnique omnēs quī vestrīs maximīs beneficiīs honōribusque sunt ornātī, prōductī ad vōs ab eōdem, nōn solum ad mē cōservandum vōs cohortātī sunt, sed etiam rērum meārum gestārum auctōrēs, testēs, laudātōrēs fuērunt. quōrum prīnceps ad cohortandōs vōs et ad rogandōs fuit Cn. Pompeius, vir omnium quī sunt, fuērunt, erunt, virtūte, sapientiā, glōriā prīnceps: quī mihi ūnus ūnī prīvātō amīcō eadem omnia dedit quae ūniversae reī pūblicae, salūtem, ōtium, dignitātem.

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare; lacking the protection of (+ ā + abl.)
propinquus, -a, -um near, close; *subst.*, relative
cognātiō, cognātiōnis f. kinship
mūniō, mūnīre, mūniī/mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify; defend, protect
praetor, praetōris m. praetor (a judicial official both in and outside of Rome)
tribūnus, tribūnī m. tribune (military commander); (plebeian) magistrate
plēbs, plēbis f. (the) plebs (the general body of Roman citizens)
cūnctus, -a, -um all
dēprecor (1-tr.) beg mercy for, intercede for
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
beneficium, beneficiī n. service, kindness; favor, benefit

ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate; show respect (to)
prōdūcō (prō- + dūcō) bring forth, present
cōservō (con- + servō) (1-tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve
cohortor (co- + hortor) (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
auctor, auctōris m. source, author
testis, testis, -ium m. or f. witness
laudātor, laudātōris m. praiser; character witness
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief; *subst.*, leading man
prīvātus, -a, -um private
ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole
ōtium, ōtiī n. leisure
dignitās, dignitātis f. dignity, rank, status

The *Post Reditum Ad Populum* was delivered by Cicero after his return from exile in 57 B.C.E. Cicero gives thanks to the people for their part in his recall, while at the same time recounting his role in important events of the past (notably, of course, the suppression of the Catilinarian conspiracy).

5. Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* I.29

Cotta begins his refutation of Epicurean philosophy with a show of modesty and an old story.

ut enim modo dīxī, omnibus ferē in rēbus sed maximē in physicīs quid nōn sit citius quam quid sit dīxerim. rogēs mē quid aut quāle sit deus; auctōre ūtar Simōnide, dē quō cum quaesīvisset hoc idem tyrannus Hierō, dēliberandī sibi ūnum diem postulāvit; cum idem ex eō postrīdiē quaereret, bīduum petīvit; cum saepius duplicāret numerum diērum admīrānsque Hierō requīreret cūr ita faceret, “quia quantō diūtius cōnsīderō,” inquit, “tantō mihi spēs vidētur obscūrior.” sed Simōnidēn arbitror (nōn enim poēta solum suāvis vērūm etiam cēterōquī doctus sapiēnsque trāditur), quia multa venīrent in mentem acūta atque subtīlia, dubitantem quid eōrum esset vērissimum dēspērāsse omnem vērītātem.

ferē (adv.) nearly, almost

physica, physicōrum *n. pl.* physics, natural philosophy

citius (comparative adv.) more swiftly, more quickly

auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author

Simōnidēs, Simōnidis *m.* Simonides (Greek poet); **Simōnidēn** = *acc. sing.*

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* tyrant, ruler

Hierō, Hierōnis *m.* Hiero (ruler of Syracuse)

dēliberō (1-tr.) consider, deliberate

postulō (1-tr.) ask for, request

postrīdiē (adv.) on the following day

bīduum, bīduī *n.* (period of) two days

duplicō (1-tr.) double

admīror (1-tr.) wonder (at), be astonished (at)

requīrō (**re-** + **quaerō**), **requīrere**, **requīsīi/**
requīsīvī, requīsītus seek (again), ask (again)

cōnsīderō (1-tr.) reflect (upon), contemplate, consider

obscūrus, -a, -um obscure, shadowy, indistinct
suāvis, suāve delightful, agreeable

cēterōquī (adv.) in other respects

doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite

acūtus, -a, -um acute, sagacious, intelligent

subtīlis, subtīle fine, subtle

dēspērō (**dē-** + **spērō**) (1-tr.) despair of

vērītās, vērītātis *f.* truth

6. Cicero, *De Senectūte* 74–75

Cato on death

moriendum enim certē est et incertum an hōc ipsō diē. mortem igitur omnibus hōrīs independentem timēns quī poterit animō cōnsistere? dē quā nōn ita longā disputātiōne opus esse vidētur, cum recorder nōn L. Brūtum quī in liberandā patriā est interfec-tus, nōn duōs Deciōs quī ad voluntāriam mortem cursum equōrum incitāvērunt, nōn M. Atilium quī ad supplicium est profectus ut fidem hostī datam cōservāret, nōn duōs Scīpiōnēs quī iter Poenīs vel corporibus suis obstruere voluērunt, nōn avum tuum L. Paulum quī morte luit collēgae in Cannēnsī ignōminiā temeritātem, nōn M. Marcellum cuius interitum nē crūdēlissimus quidem hostis honōre sepultūrae carēre passus est, sed legiōnēs nostrās, quod scripsī in Orīginibus, in eum locum saepe profectas alacrī animō et ērēctō unde sē reditūras numquam arbitrārentur. quod igitur adulēscentēs et iī quidem nōn solum indoctī, sed etiam rūsticī contem-nunt, id doctī senēs extimēscent?

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour**impedeō, impendēre**, —, — hang over, threaten**cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōstitī**, — remain firm, be unshaken**disputātiō, disputātiōnis** *f.* reasoning; argument, dispute**recordor** (1-tr.) recall**L. Brūtus, L. Brūtī** *m.* Lucius (Junius) Brutus**Decius, Deciī** *m.* Decius (name of two self-sacrificing Roman commanders)**voluntārius, -a, -um** willing, voluntary**cursor, cursūs** *m.* course, direction**equus, equī** *m.* horse**incitō** (1-tr.) rouse; hasten**M. Atilius, M. Atilī** *m.* Marcus Atilius (Regulus)**supplicium, supplicī** *n.* punishment**cōservō (con- + servō)** preserve, maintain**Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis** *m.* Scipio (name of many prominent Roman generals and statesmen)**iter, itinēris** *n.* road, path**Poenī, Poenōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians, (the) Carthaginians**vel** (adv.) even**obstruō, obstruere, obstrūxī, obstructus** block, barricade**avus, avī** *m.* grandfather**L. Paulus, L. Paulī** *m.* Lucius Paulus**luō, luere, luī**, — pay for, atone for**collēga, collēgae** *m.* colleague, partner in office**Cannēnsis, Cannēnsē** of Cannae**ignōminia, ignōminiae** *f.* disgrace, dishonor**temeritās, temeritātis** *f.* rashness, foolhardiness,**M. Marcellus, M. Marcellī** *m.* Marcus Marcellus**interitus, interitūs** *m.* death**crūdēlis, crūdēle** cruel**sepultūra, sepultūrae** *f.* burial**Orīginēs, Orīginum** *f. pl.* Beginnings**alacer, alacris, alacre** eager; cheerful**ērēctus, -a, -um** attentive; resolute**adulēscentēs, adulēscentis, -ium** *m.* young man**indoctus, -a, -um** not learned, uneducated, ignorant**rūsticus, -a, -um** rustic, simple, coarse**contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus** despise, disdain, defy**doctus, -a, -um** learned, erudite**senex, senis** *m.* old man**extimēsco, extimēscre, extimūī**, — fear greatly, dread

7. Catullus VIII (choliambic)

The poet has a heart-to-heart talk with himself.

Miser Catulle, dēsīnās ineptīre,
 et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās.
 fulsēre quondam candidī tibi† sōlēs
 cum ventitābās quō puella dūcēbat
 amāta nōbīs† quantum amābitur nūlla. 5
 ibi illa multa cum iocōsa fiēbant,
 quae tū volēbās nec puella nōlēbat,
 fulsēre vērē candidī tibi† sōlēs.
 nunc iam† illa nōn volt: tū quoque inpotēns nōlī,
 nec quae fugit sectāre, nec miser vīve, 10
 sed obstinātā mente perfer, obdūrā.
 valē, puella. iam Catullus obdūrat,
 nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam.
 at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
 scelestā, vae tē, quae tibi† manet vīta? 15
 quis nunc tē adībit? cui vidēberis bella?†
 quem nunc amābis? cuius esse dīcēris?
 quem bāsīābis? cui labella mordēbis?
 at tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīi/dēsīvī, dēsītum stop,
 cease (+ infin.)

ineptiō, ineptīre, —, — be silly, play the fool

fulgēō, fulgēre, fulsī, — shine, gleam

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant

†The final -i of **tibi** here scans *long*.

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

ventitō (1-intr.) come often, keep coming

†**nōbīs**, Dative of Agent

ibi (adv.) there; then

iocōsus, -a, -um full of jokes; laughable, funny

†**nunc iam**, *here*, now, at last

impotēns, impotentis powerless

sector (1-tr.) keep following, chase

obstinātus, -a, -um firmly set, determined,
 resolute

obdūrō (1-tr.) be hardened, hold out, persist,
 endure

requirō (**re-** + **quaerō**), **requirere, requisīi/**
requīsīvī, requisītus seek again

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

at (conj.) but

doleō, dolēre, doluī, — suffer, grieve, feel pain

scelestus, -a, -um criminal, wicked, accursed

vae (interj.) alas! woe!; **vae tē**, woe to you

†The final -i of **tibi** here scans *long*.

adeō (**ad-** + **eō**), **adīre, adīi, adītum** approach

†**bellus, -a, -um** pretty, charming, lovely

bāsīō (1-tr.) kiss

labellum, labellī *n.* (little) lip

mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus bite,
 nibble

dēstinō (1-tr.) determine, resolve

8. Catullus LXXXIV

The poet comments on the pronunciation of a certain Arrius.

“Chommoda” dīcēbat, sī quandō “commoda” vellet†

dīcere, et “īnsidiās” Arrius “hīnsidiās.”

et tum mīrificē spērābat sē esse locūtum,

cum quantum poterat dīxerat “hīnsidiās.”

crēdō, sīc māter, sīc līber avunculus eius,

sīc māternus avus dīxerat atque avia.

hōc missō in Syriam requiērant omnibus aurēs:

audībant† eadem haec lēniter et leviter,

nec sibi postillā metuēbant tālia verba,

cum subitō affertur nuntius horribilis:

Īoniōs flūctūs, postquam illūc Arrius īsset,

iam nōn Īoniōs esse sed Hīoniōs.

quandō (adv.) at any time, ever

commodum, commodī *n.* convenience, advantage

†**vellet**, *iterative subjunctive (indicating repeated action)*, used to want

Arrius, Arrī *m.* Arrius

mīrificē (adv.) wonderfully

avunculus, avunculī *m.* (maternal) uncle

māternus, -a, -um maternal

avus, avī *m.* grandfather

avia, aviae *f.* grandmother

Syria, Syriae *f.* Syria

requiēsco, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētum rest, find relief

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

†**audībant = audiēbant**

lēniter (adv.) gently

postillā (adv.) afterward

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread

subitō (adv.) suddenly

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring toward, bring forth; report; **affertur**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*

nuntius, nuntiī *m.* messenger; message

horribilis, horribile horrible, terrible

Īonius, -a, -um Ionian

flūctus, flūctūs *m.* wave, billow

illūc (adv.) to that place, thither

5

10

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cōtīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisus separate, divide

incolō, incolere, incoluī, — inhabit; dwell, live

Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae

Aquitānī, Aquitānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

Celtae, Celtārum *m. pl.* (the) Celts

Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

īnstitūtum, īnstitūti *n.* custom, institution

Garumna, Garumnae *f.* (the) Garonne (a river in southwestern Gaul)

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

Matrona, Matronae *f.* (the) Marne (a river in north-central Gaul)

Sēquana, Sēquanae *f.* (the) Seine (a river in northern Gaul)

proptereā (adv.) because of this; **proptereā quod,** because

cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; sophistication; luxury

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis *f.* (civilized) humanity; humaneness, kindness

absum (ab- + sum), **abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus** be away from

mercātor, mercātōris *m.* trader, merchant

commeō (1-intr.) go back and forth, travel

effēminō (1-tr.) emasculate, weaken

pertineō (per- + teneō), **pertinēre, pertinūi,**

pertentus be aimed at, pertain; **pertinēre + ad** + acc., to pertain to

importō (1-tr.) carry in, import

proximus, -a, -um nearest

Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans

trāns (prep. + acc.) across

Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in north-eastern Gaul)

continenter (adv.) continuously

Helvētīi, Helvētiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Helvetians

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

praecēdō (prae- + cēdō) (tr.) excel, surpass

ferē (adv.) almost, nearly

cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum struggle, strive

prohibeō (prō- + habeō), **prohibēre, prohibuī,**

prohibitus prevent, keep off, exclude

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1–11

The opening lines of the *Aeneid*

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs

Ītaliā, fātō profugus, Lāvīnaque vēnit

lītora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō

vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram.

multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem

5

īnferretque deōs Latīō; genus unde Latīnum

Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.

Mūsa, mihi† causās memorā, quō nūmine laesō

quidve dolēns rēgīna deum tot volvere cāsūs

īnsignem pietāte virum, tot adīre labōrēs

10

impulerit. tantaene animīs caelestibus irae?

ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast

profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *subst.*, exile; refugee

Lāvīnus, -a, -um Lavinian, of Lavinium (a town in central Italy)

lītus, lītoris *n.* shore, beach

iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment

superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above; **superum** = **superōrum**

memor, memoris mindful, remembering

condō, condere, condidī, conditus found

Latium, Latī *n.* Latium (an area in central Italy)

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin, of Latium

Albānus, -a, -um Alban, of Alba Longa (a town in central Italy)

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.

memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell

nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm; offend

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

doleō, dolēre, doluī, — suffer; grieve (over),

feel pain (at)

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll; undergo

īnsignis, īnsigne distinguished, remarkable

pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

adeō (**ad-** + **eō**), **adīre, adī, aditum** approach; encounter; undertake

impellō (**in-** + **pellō**), **impellere, impulī, impulsus**

strike against, beat; impel, drive

caelestis, caeleste, heavenly, divine

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.3–13

Addressing Dido, queen of Carthage, Aeneas begins his narrative of the fall of Troy.

īnfandum, rēgīna, iubēs renovāre dolōrem,
Troianās ut† opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum
ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī
et quōrum pars magna fuī. quis tālia fandō
Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūrī mīles Ulixī
temperet ā lacrimīs? et iam nox ūmida caelō
praecipitat suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs.
sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs
et breviter Troiae suprēmum audīre labōrem,
quamquam animus meminisse horret lūctūque refūgit,
incipiam. . . .

5

10

īnfandus, -a, -um unspeakable

renovō (1-tr.) restore, renew, refresh, revive

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

Troianus, -a, -um Trojan

†**ut, here** (interrog adv.), how

ops, opis *f.* power; *pl.*, power, resources, wealth

lāmentābilis, lāmentābile lamentable, arousing
lamentation

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus uproot; destroy utterly

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

Myrmidones, Mymidonum *m. pl.* (the) Myrmi-
dons (a people of Thessaly, followers of
Achilles)

Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes (a Greek
people from Thessaly)

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

Ulixēs, Ulixī *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back, refrain

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

ūmidus, -a, -um wet, moist; rainy

praecipitō (1-tr.) throw or hurl headlong; *intr.*,
fall headlong, plunge

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend,
urge, advise

sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

somnus, somnī *m. sing. or pl.*, sleep

suprēmum, -a, -um final, last

horreō, horrēre, horruī, — stand up, bristle;
tremble, shudder

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

refugiō (re- + fugiō) (turn and) flee, run away;
recoil

12. Horace, *Carmina* I.22 (Sapphic strophe)

The poet has special protection from dangers.

Integer vitæ scelerisque purus
 nōn eget Mauris iaculis neque arcū
 nec venenātis gravidā sagittis,
 Fusce, pharetrā,

sive per Syrtis iter aestuosās
 sive facturus per inhospitalem
 Caucasum vel quae loca fabulosus
 lambit Hyaspēs.

namque mē silvā lupus in Sabīnā,
 dum meam cantō Lalagēn et ultrā
 terminum cūris vagor expeditis,
 fūgit inermem,

5

10

integer, integra, integrum untouched, whole;
 sound; blameless, virtuous
pūrus, -a, -um clean, pure, unstained
egeō, egēre, eguī, — lack, want, need (+ abl.)
Maurus, -a, -um Moorish, Moroccan
iaculum, iaculī n. javelin
arcus, arcūs m. bow
venenātus, -a, -um filled with poison, poisonous
gravidus, -a, -um heavy, laden
sagitta, sagittae f. arrow
Fuscus, Fuscī m. Fuscus
pharetra, pharetrae f. quiver
sive (conj.) or if; **sive . . . sive . . .**, whether . . .
 or if . . .
Syrtis, Syrtis, -ium f. sing. or pl., Syrtis (the name
 of a sandbar on the coast between Carthage
 and Cyrene)
iter, itineris n. journey
aestuōsus, -a, -um full of heat, burning, very hot
inhospitālis, inhospitāle inhospitable

Caucasus, Caucasī m. (the) Caucasus mountains
vel (conj.) or
fabulosus, -a, -um full of fables; celebrated in
 fable
lambō, lambere, —, — lick, lap
Hyaspēs, Hyaspis m. (the) Hyaspes (a tribu-
 tary of the Indus River)
silva, silvae f. forest
lupus, lupī m. wolf
Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine (of a territory and people
 northeast of Rome)
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
Lalagē, Lalagēs f. Lalage; **Lalagēn** = *acc. sing.*
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond, past, over, across
terminus, terminī m. boundary line, boundary,
 limit
vagor (1-intr.) wander
expediō, expedire, expediti/expediti, expeditus let
 loose, set free; fetch out, unpack
inermis, inerme unarmed, defenseless

quāle portentum neque militāris
 Dauniās lātīs alit aesculētīs
 nec Iubae tellūs generat, leōnum
 ārida nūtrīx.

15

pōne mē pigrīs ubi nūlla campīs
 arbor aestīvā recreātur aurā,
 quod latus mundī nebulae malusque
 Iuppiter urget,

20

pōne sub currū nimium propinquī
 sōlis, in terrā domibus negātā:
 dulce rīdentem Lalagēn amābō,
 dulce loquentem.

portentum, portentī *n.* sign, omen, portent
militāris, militāre military; warlike
Dauniās *fem. sing. nom. of adj. used substantively,*
 Daunia, Apulia (a province of southeast Italy)
lātus, -a, -um broad, wide
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish, support
aesculētum, aesculētī *n.* oak forest
Iuba, Iubae *m.* Juba (a Numidian king)
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
generō (1-tr.) beget, create, produce
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
āridus, -a, -um dry; parched
nūtrīx, nūtrīcis *f.* nurse
piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, inactive;
 unfruitful
arbor, arboris *f.* tree

aestīvus, -a, -um of summer
recreō (1-tr.) revive, refresh
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog, cloud
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, — weigh down; press
 hard; threaten
currus, currūs *m.* chariot
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
propinquus, -a, -um near, close
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun
negō (1-tr.) deny
dulce (adv.) sweetly, pleasantly
rīdeō, rīdere, risī, risus smile, laugh
Lalagē, *Lalagēs *f.* Lalage; **Lalagēn** = *acc. sing.*

13. Horace, *Ars Poetica* 136–55

The poet gives advice about poetic beginnings to the potential writer.

nec sic incipiēs, ut scrīptor cyclicus ōlim:

“Fortūnam Priamī cantābō et nōbile bellum.”

quid dignum tantō feret hic prōmissor hiātū?

parturient montēs, nāscētur rīdicolus mūs.

quantō rēctius hic, quī nīl mōlītur ineptē:

140

“Dīc mihi, Mūsa, virum, captae post tempora Troiae

quī mōrēs hominum multōrum vīdit et urbēs.”

nōn fūmum ex fulgōre, sed ex fūmō dare† lūcem

cōgitat† ut speciōsa dehinc mīrācula prōmat,

Antiphatēn Scyllamque et cum Cyclōpe Charybdim;

145

nec reditum Diomēdis ab interitū Meleagrī

nec geminō bellum Troiānum ordītur ab ōvō:

semper ad ēventum festīnat et in mediās rēs

nōn secus ac nōtās audītōrem rapit et quae

scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer

cyclicus, -a, -um of the epic cycle of poems,
cyclic

ōlim (adv.) once, formerly

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)

nōbilis, nōbile noble; remarkable; famous

prōmissor, prōmissōris *m.* promiser, guarantor

hiātus, hiātūs *m.* gaping, (wide) opening, chasm

parturiō, parturīre, —, — be pregnant with,
be in labor

rīdicolus, -a, -um laughable, silly, ridiculous

mūs, mūrīs *m.* mouse

rēctē rightly, correctly

mōlior, mōlīrī, mōlītus sum plan, set in motion,
begin

ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

fūmus, fūmī *m.* smoke, fumes

fulgor, fulgōris *m.* brightness, radiance, splendor

†dō, here, bring forward, produce

†cōgitō, here, have in mind, plan (+ infin.)

speciōsus, -a, -um attractive; spectacular,
splendid

dehinc (adv.) after this, later, at a later stage

mīrāculum, mīrāculī *n.* amazing object, marvel,
wonder

prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsi, prōmptus bring
forth, bring into view

Antiphatēs, Antiphatae *m.* Antiphates (king of
the Laestrygonians, who tried to kill Odysseus)

Scylla, Scyllae *f.* Scylla (a sea monster)

Cyclōps, Cyclōpos/Cyclōpis *m.* (the) Cyclops
(Polyphemus)

Charybdis, Charybdis *f.* Charybdis (a whirlpool);

Charybdim = *acc. sing.*

reditus, reditūs *m.* return; homecoming

Diomēdēs, Diomēdis *m.* Diomedes (one of the
Greek heroes at Troy)

interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise

Meleager, Meleagrī *m.* Meleager (whose story is
told by Phoenix in the *Iliad*)

geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan

ordior, ordīrī, orsus sum embark on, begin
(to speak or write of)

ōvum, ōvī *n.* egg

ēventus, ēventūs *m.* outcome, denouement

festīnō (1-intr.) hasten, proceed swiftly

secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; nōn secus ac,
not differently than, exactly as if

audītor, audītōris *m.* hearer, listener

rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off;
snatch up

dēspērat tractāta nitēscere posse relinquit
 atque ita mentitur, sīc vērīs falsa remiscet,
 prīmō nē medium, mediō nē discrepet imum.
 tū, quid ego et populus mēcum dēsīderet audi
 sī plausōris egēs aulaea manentis et ūsque
 sessūrī dōnec cantor “vōs plaudite” dīcat.

150

155

dēspērō (dē- + spērō) (1-tr.) despair (of)

tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; deal with, discuss,
 treat

nitēscō, nitēscere, —, — begin to shine,
 become bright

mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, tell a lie

remisceō, remiscēre, —, **remixtus** mix

discrepō, discrepāre, discrepuī/discrepāvī,
 — be out of harmony (with)

īmus, -a, -um lowest, bottom (of); last, final

dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire

plausor, plausōris *m.* one who applauds

egēō, egēre, eguī, — be needy, lack, need
 (+ gen.)

aulaeum, aulaeī *n.* curtain (of a theater)

ūsque (adv.) continuously

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated

cantor, cantōris *m.* singer (the person playing
 and singing the musical parts of a play)

plaudō, plaudere, plausī, plausus clap the hands,
 applaud

14. Propertius I.1–8

The poet describes how he came to be in love with Cynthia.

Cynthia prīma suīs miserum mē cēpit ocellīs,
 contāctum nūllīs ante cupīdinibus.
 tum mihi cōstantis dēīcīt lūmina fastūs
 et caput impositīs pressit Amor pedibus,
 dōnec mē docuit castās ōdisse puellās
 improbus et nūllō vīvere cōnsiliō.
 ei mihi, iam tōtō furor hic nōn dēficit annō,
 cum tamen adversōs cōgor habēre deōs.

5

ocellus, ocellī *m.* (little) eye

contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus touch

cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire

cōnstāns, cōstantis firm, constant

dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, cast down

fastus, fastūs *m.* pride, haughtiness, arrogance

caput, capitis *n.* head

impōnō (in- + pōnō) place or impose (on)

premō, premere, pressī, pressus press (hard);
 overpower

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach

castus, -a, -um chaste

improbus, -a, -um wicked, shameless; relentless

ei (interj.) alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me

furor, furōris *m.* madness; passion

dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail; subside

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse

cōgō (co- + agō), **cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** drive to-
 gether, force, compel

15. Propertius II.12

The poet ponders the artistic depiction of Love.

Quicumque ille fuit puerum quī pīnxit Amōrem,

nōnne putās mīrās hunc habuisse manūs?

is prīmum vīdit sine sēnsū vīvere amantēs,

et levibus cūrīs magna perīre bona.

īdem nōn frūstrā ventōsās addidit ālās,

fēcit et[†] hūmānō corde volāre deum:

scīlicet alternā quoniam iactāmur in undā,

nostraque nōn ūllīs permanet aura locīs.

et meritō hāmātīs manus est armāta sagittīs,

et pharetra ex umerō Cnōsia utrōque[†] iacet:

ante ferit quoniam tūtī quam cernimus hostem,

nec quisquam ex illō vulnere sānus abit.

in mē tēla manent, manet et puerīlis imāgō:

sed certē pennās perdidit ille suās;

ēvolat heu nostrō quoniam dē pectore nusquam,

assiduusque meō sanguine bella gerit.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

pingō, pingere, pīnxi, pictus paint, represent, depict

mīrus, -a, -um marvelous

frūstrā (adv.) in vain

ventōsus, -a, -um windy, full of wind; light, nimble

addō (ad- + dō) add

āla, ālae *f.* wing

[†]et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.

hūmānus, -a, -um human

cor, cordis *n.* heart

volō (1-intr.) fly

scīlicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously

alternus, -a, -um alternating

iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment

unda, undae *f.* wave

permaneō (per- + maneō) stay, remain; last long, endure

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

meritō (adv.) deservedly, with good reason

hāmātus, -a, -um hooked, barbed

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver

umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

Cnōsius, -a, -um of Cnossos (the ancient capital of Crete); Cretan

[†]utrōque = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each (of two)

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; hang

feriō, ferīre, —, — strike, hit

tūtus, -a, -um safe

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish; perceive

quisquam = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane, sound

puerīlis, puerīle boyish, youthful

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness

penna, pennae *f.* wing

ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out

nusquam (adv.) nowhere; on no occasion

assiduus, -a, -um continually present, busy; diligent, persistent

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

quid tibi iūcundumst siccīs habitāre medullīs?

sī pudor est, aliō† trāice tēla, puer!

intāctōs istō satius temptāre venēnō:

nōn ego, sed tenuis vāpulat umbra mea.

quam sī perdideris, quis erit quī tālia cantet,

(haec mea Mūsa levis glōria magna tuast),

quī caput et digitōs et lūmina nigra puellae

et canat ut† soleant molliter ire pedēs?

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

siccus, -a, -um dry

habitō (1-intr.) dwell, live; stay, remain

medulla, **medullae** *f.* bone marrow; *pl.*, vitals, innards

pudor, **pudōris** *m.* shame, decency, modesty

†**aliō**, *here* (adv.) to another place, elsewhere

trāiciō (*trāns-* + *iaciō*) pierce; shoot

intāctus, -a, -um untouched, uninjured; untried

satius (comparative adj.) more satisfying, better;

satius = *neut. sing. nom.*

temptō (1-tr.) touch; try, test; attack, assail

venēnum, **venēnī** *n.* poison

tenuis, **tenue** thin, meager, slight; poor

vāpulō, **vāpulāre**, **vāpulāvī**, — be beaten, be flogged

cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)

Mūsa, **Mūsae** *f.* Muse

caput, **capitis** *n.* head

digitus, **digitī** *m.* finger

niger, **nigra**, **nigrum** dark, black

†**ut**, *here* (interrog. adv.) how

molliter (adv.) gently, softly, mildly

pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot

16. Propertius II.15.31–40

After a night of passion, the poet declares that he will love Cynthia come what may.

terra prius falsō partū dēlūdet arantīs,
 et citius nigrōs Sōl agitābit equōs,
 flūminaque ad caput incipient revocāre liquōrēs,
 āridus et† siccō gurgite piscis erit,
 quam possim nostrōs aliō† trānsferre dolōrēs:
 huius erō vīvus, mortuus huius erō.
 quod† mihi sī† interdum tālīs concēdere noctēs
 illa velit, vītae longus et annus erit.
 sī dabit et multās, fiam immortalīs in illīs:
 nocte ūnā quīvīs vel deus esse potest.

35

40

partus, partūs *m.* birth; offspring; crop
dēlūdō, dēlūdere, dēlūsī, dēlūsus play false,
 mock, deceive
arō (1-tr.) plough, till
citius (comparative adv.) more quickly
niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black
Sōl, Sōlis *m.* Sun
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; drive
equus, equī *m.* horse
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
caput, capitis *n.* head; source
revocō (1-tr.) call back
liquor, liquōris *m.* fluid, liquid; water
āridus, -a, -um dry; parched
 †**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position
 of **-que**.

siccus, -a, -um dry
gurges, gurgitis *m.* swirling water, eddy,
 whirlpool
piscis, piscis, -ium *m.* fish
 †**aliō, here** (adv.) to another place, elsewhere
trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī,
trānslātus carry across, transfer
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
vīvus, -a, -um living, alive
 †**quod . . . sī** but if
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant
quīvīs = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron., anyone*
 you wish, anyone at all
vel (adv.) even

17. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XIII.361–69

Odysseus boasts to Ajax, his rival for Achilles' armor, about the differences between them.

... tibi dextera bellō
 ūtilis, ingenium est quod eget moderāmine nostrō;
 tū vīrēs sine mente geris, mihi cūra futūrī;
 tū pugnāre potes, pugnandī tempora mēcum
 ēligit Atrīdēs; tū tantum corpore prōdes,
 nōs animō; quantōque ratem quī temperat anteit⁴
 rēmigis officium, quantō dux milite maior,
 tantum ego tē superō. nec nōn[†] in corpore nostrō
 pectora[†] sunt potiōra manū: vigor omnis in illīs.

365

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*,
 right hand; **dextera** = *dextra*

ūtilis, ūtile useful

egeō, egēre, eguī, — need, lack (+ abl.)

moderāmen, moderāminis *n.* control, guidance

ēligō (*ē-* + *legō*), **ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus** select,
 choose

Atrīdēs, Atrīdae *m.* son of Atreus (either
 Agamemnon or Menelaus)

prōsum (*prō-* + *sum*), **prōdesse, prōfuī**,

prōfutūrus be helpful, be of use, be good (for);

prōdes = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*

ratis, ratis, -ium *f.* boat, ship

temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back; control

anteēō (*ante-* + *eō*), **anteīre, anteīi/anteīvi**,
 — go before; be better than, surpass

rēmex, rēmigis *m.* oarsman, rower

officium, officīi *n.* obligation; duty, task

[†]**nec nōn**, *here*, likewise

[†]**pectora**, *here*, intellectual faculties

potior, potius more powerful; more precious

vigor, vigōris *m.* liveliness, activity, vigor

4. The short vowels *-e-* and *-i-* of *anteit* are pronounced as the diphthong *-ei-*.

18. Ovid, *Tristia* III.7.45–52

The poet in exile predicts his own fate.

ēn ego, cum patriā caream vōbīsque† domōque, 45

raptaque sint adimī quae potuēre mihi,

ingeniō tamen ipse meō comitorque fruorque:

Caesar in† hoc potuit iūris habēre nihil.

quīlibet hanc saevō vītam mihi finiat ēnse,

mē tamen extīnctō fāma superstes erit, 50

dumque suīs victrīx septem dē montibus orbem

prōspiciet domitum Martia Rōma, legar.

ēn (interj.) behold! look!

†vōbīs refers to all Ovid's friends and acquaintances in Rome.

rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off
adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēemptus remove, take away

comitō (1-tr.) accompany, attend

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

†in, here, over

quīlibet = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone (it pleases)

finiō, finīre, finiī/finīvī, finītus define; end, finish

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

ex(s)tinguō, ex(s)tinguere, ex(s)tīnxī,

ex(s)tīnctus extinguish; annihilate, kill

superstes, superstis remaining alive, surviving

victrīx, victrīcis *f.* conqueror, victor

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectus

survey, watch over, look out over

domō, domāre, domuī, domitus subdue, tame

Martius, -a, -am of or belonging to Mars,

Martial

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.56.9

The last princes of the Tarquins went to Delphi, the seat of Apollo's oracle, in order to ask a question on behalf of their father. They took with them a lowly Roman, M. Brutus. The historian describes a surprising turn of events.

is[†] tum ab Tarquiniis ductus Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius quam comes, aureum baculum inclūsum corneō cavātō ad id baculō tulisse dōnum Apollinī dīcitur, per ambāgēs effigiem ingeniī suī. quō postquam ventum est, perfectis patris mandātis cupīdō incessit animōs iuvenum scīscitandī ad quem eōrum rēgnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. ex infimō specū vōcem redditam ferunt: imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī vestrum prīmus, ō iuvenēs, ōsculum mātrī tulerit. Tarquiniī, ut Sextus, quī Rōmae relictus fuerat, ignārus respōnsī[†] expersque imperiī esset, rem summā ope tacērī iubent;[†] ipsī inter sē uter prior, cum Rōmam redisset, mātrī ōsculum daret, sortī permittunt.[†] Brūtus aliō[†] ratus spectāre Pŷthicam vōcem, velut sī prōlāpsus cecidisset, terram ōsculō contigit, scīlicet quod ea commūnis māter omnium mortālium esset.

[†]is refers to M. Brutus.

Tarquinius, Tarquiniī *m.* Tarquinius (any male member of the Tarquin family)

Delphī, Delphōrum *m. pl.* Delphi
lūdibrium, lūdibrī *n.* plaything, toy;
laughingstock

comes, comitis *m. or f.* companion, comrade

aureus, -a, -um golden, made of gold

baculum, baculī *n.* staff, walking stick

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose, seal

corneus, -a, -um made of cornel wood

cavō (1-tr.) hollow out, make hollow

ambāgēs, ambāgum *f. pl.* roundabout path

effigiēs, effigiē *f.* representation, statue; symbol

mandātum, mandātī *n.* order, instruction

cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire

incēdō (*in-* + *cēdō*) (tr.) go in, enter; come over

iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man

scīscitor (1-tr.) try to get to know by asking,
inquire

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule

infimus, -a, -um lowest, deepest, lowest part (of),
depths (of)

specus, specūs *m.* cave, grotto, abyss, hollow

reddō (*red-* + *dō*) give back, return

ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss

Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (Tarquinius) (one of the sons of Tarquinius Superbus, last king of Rome)

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, unaware

[†]**respōnsum, respōnsī** *n.* answer, response

expers, expertis having no part (of)

ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep
silent; leave unmentioned

[†]**iubent, permittunt**, *historical use of present tense;*
translate as perfect

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny

permittō (*per-* + *mittō*) entrust, commit

Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M.) Brutus (legendary hero of
early Rome)

[†]**aliō, here** (*adv.*) elsewhere, to another place,
in another direction

reor, rērī, ratus sum believe, think, imagine

spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe; face, point

Pŷthicus, -a, -um of Pytho (the oracle at Delphi),
Pythian, Delphic

velut (*conj.*) even as, just as

prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus sum slide or slip
forward, slip down

contingō, contingere, contigī, contactus touch

scīlicet (*adv.*) of course, no doubt, obviously

commūnis, commūne common, shared; held
in common

20. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* V.23.1

The aftermath of Camillus's great victory over one of Rome's earliest enemies

Rōmam[†] ut nuntiātum est Veiōs captōs, quamquam et prōdigia prōcūrāta fuerant et vātum respōnsa[†] et Pŷthicae sortēs nōtae et, quantum hūmānīs adiuvārī cōnsiliīs potuerat rēs, ducem M. Fūrium maximum imperātōrum omnium lēgerant, tamen, quia tot annīs variē ibi bellātum erat multaeque clādēs acceptae, velut ex īnspērātō inmēnsūm gaudium fuit et, priusquam senātus dēcerneret, plēna omnia templa Rōmānārūm mātrum grātēs dīs agentium erant.

[†]Rōmam = Rōmae

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report

Veiī, Veiōrum *m. pl.* Veii (an ancient town in Etruria)

prōdigium, prōdigii *n.* prophetic sign, omen, portent

prōcūrō (1-tr.) attend to, take care of

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* prophet

[†]respōnsūm, respōnsī *n.* answer, response

Pŷthicus, -a, -um of Pytho (oracle at Delphi), Pythian, Delphic

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* oracular response

hūmānus, -a, -um human

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus help, aid

M. Fūrius, M. Fūriī *m.* Marcus Furius

variē (adv.) in different ways, in various ways

ibi (adv.) there

bellō (1-intr.) wage war

clādēs, clādīs, -ium *f.* disaster, calamity, loss

velut (conj.) just as, as if

īnspērātus, -a, -um unhoped for, unexpected; ex

īnspērātō, unexpectedly

immēnsus, -a, -um vast, boundless

dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus decree

plēnus, -a, -um full

grātēs, *grātum *f. pl.* thanks

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.49.5

In 216 B.C.E. at Cannae in southern Italy, the Romans suffered one of their greatest military defeats in a battle against Hannibal and his Carthaginian army. In a single day most of the fifty thousand Romans who fought were killed. In the following passage Livy describes a meeting between L. Aemilius Paulus, one of the consuls in charge, and Cn. Lentulus, a military tribune. The final vestiges of the Roman army are being routed.

pepulērunt† tamen iam paucōs superantēs† et labōre ac volneribus fessōs. inde dissipātī omnēs sunt, equōsque ad fugam quī poterant repetēbant. Cn. Lentulus tribūnus mīlitum cum praetervehēns equō sedentem in saxō, cruōre opplētum, cōnsulem vīdisset, “L. Aemilī,” inquit, “quem ūnum īnsontem culpae clādīs hodiernae deī respicere dēbent, cape hunc equum, dum et tibi vīrium aliquid superest et comes ego tē tollere possum ac prōtegere. nē fūnestam hanc pugnam morte cōnsulis fēcēris; etiam sine hōc lacrimārum satis lūctūsque est.”

†**pepulērunt**, *subject is the Carthaginians*

†**superō**, *here, survive*; **superantēs**, *supply Rōmānōs*

fessus, -a, -um *wearily, exhausted, worn out*

inde (adv.) *from there; thereupon, then*

dissipō (1-tr.) *disperse, scatter*

equus, **equī** *m. horse*

repetō (re- + petō) *seek again, get back*

Cn. Lentulus, **Cn. Lentulī** *m. Cn. (Cornelius) Lentulus*

tribūnus, **tribūnī** *m. tribune, military commander*

praetervehō, **praetervehere**, **praetervehī**,

praetervectus *travel past, pass by*

sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** *sit, be seated*

saxum, **saxī** *n. rock, stone*

cruor, **cruōris** *m. (fresh) blood, gore*

oppleō, **opplēre**, **opplēvī**, **opplētus** *fill completely, fill up; cover completely*

L. Aemilius, **L. Aemilī** *m. L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders at the battle of Cannae*

īnsōns, **īnsontis** *innocent, not guilty*

culpa, **culpaē** *f. guilt, blame*

clādēs, **clādīs**, -ium *f. disaster, calamity*

hodiernus, -a, -um *of this day, today's*

respicō, **respicere**, **respexī**, **respectus** *look back at; show concern for; regard*

aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron., something*

supersum (super- + sum), **superesse**, **superfuī**,
— *remain, be left, survive*

comes, **comitis** *m. or f. companion, comrade*

tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus** *lift, raise; take away, carry off*

prōtegō, **prōtegere**, **prōtēxī**, **prōtēctus** *cover, protect*

fūnestus, -a, -um *lamentable, grievous; polluted*

pugna, **pugnae** *f. fight, battle*

lacrima, **lacrimae** *f. tear*

lūctus, **lūctūs** *m. mourning*

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXVIII.23.1

In 278 B.C.E. many Gauls had migrated to Asia Minor. Livy reports the terror of the Gauls after the Romans break into their camp during the Macedonian wars in 189.

patentibus iam portis, priusquam irrumperent victōrēs, fuga ē castris Gallōrum in omnēs partēs facta est. ruunt caecī per viās, per invia; nūlla praecipitia saxa, nūllae rūpēs obstant; nihil praeter hostem metuunt; itaque plērīque praecipitēs per vāstam altitudinem prōlāpsī aut dēbilitātī exanimantur. cōsul captis castris direptiōne praedāque abstinet mīlitem; . . .

pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
porta, portae *f.* gate
irrupō, irrumperere, irrūpī, irruptus break in, burst in
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush
invius, -a, -um impassable; **invia**, *supply loca*
praeceps, praecipitis precipitous, steep; rushing forward, headlong
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
rūpēs, rūpis, -ium *f.* cliff, crag
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus stand in the way

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
vāstus, -a, -um immense, vast
altitudō, altitudinis *f.* height; depth
prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus *sum* fall forward
dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken
exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill
direptiō, direptiōnis *f.* plundering, pillaging
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder
abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus hold back, restrain

23. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* LXX.6

Part of the philosopher's profile of the wise man

citius morī aut tardius ad rem nōn pertinet, bene morī aut male ad rem pertinet; bene autem morī est effugere male vīvendī perīculum. itaque effēminātissimam vōcem illius Rhōdiī exīstimō, quī cum in caveam coniectus esset ā tyrannō et tamquam ferum aliquod animal alerētur, suādenti cuidam ut abstinēret cibō, “omnia,” inquit, “hominī, dum vīvit, spēranda sunt.”

citō (adv.) quickly, soon
tardē (adv.) slowly; late
pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus extend; pertain
effugiō (ex- + fugiō), effugere, effūgī, — escape
itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly
effēminātus, -a, -um womanish, effeminate
Rhodiū, -a, -um of (the island of) Rhodes, Rhodian
exīstimō (ex- + aestimō) (1-tr.) reckon, consider, think

cavea, caveae *f.* hollow cavity; cage
coniciō (con + iaciō) throw (together), cast
tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* tyrant
tamquam (adv.) just as, as if
ferus, -a, -um wild
aliquod = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. adj.*, some
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus exhort, urge
abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus hold back, abstain
cibus, cibī *m.* food

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam I* 13–14

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est, extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn oderit. quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inusta vītae tuae est? quod prīvātārum rērum dēdecus nōn haeret in fāmā? quae libīdō ab oculīs, quod facinus ā manibus umquam tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? cui tū adulēscentulō quem corruptēlārum inlecebrīs inrētissēs nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinem facem praetulisti?† quid vērō? nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris novīs nuptiīs domum vacuēfēcissēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibili scelere hoc scelus cumulāvisti? quod ego praetermittō et facile patior silērī nē in hāc cīvitatē tantī facinoris immānitās aut exstitisse aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. praetermittō ruīnās fortunārum tuārum quās omnīs proximīs Idibus tibi impendēre sentiēs; ad illa veniō quae nōn ad prīvātā ignōminiam vitiōrum tuōrum, nōn ad domesticā tuā difficultātem ac turpitūdinem, sed ad summā rem pūblicā atque ad omnium nostrum vītā salūtemque pertinent.

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread
nota, notae *f.* mark, sign
domesticus, -a, -um personal, domestic
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shamefulness
inūrō, inūrere, inussī, inustus burn upon, brand upon (+ dat.)
prīvātus, -a, -um private
dēdecus, dēdecoris *n.* shame, disgrace
haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus cling, stick
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime
flāgitium, flāgitii *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
absum (ab- + sum), **abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus**
 be absent, be distant
adulēscentulus, adulēscentulī *m.* (little) young man
corruptēla, corruptēlae *f.* corruption, seduction
illecebra, illecebrae *f.* attraction, allurement
irrētiō, irrētire, irrētiū/irrētivī, irrētītus trap
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
 †**praefereō, here, means both** “offer” (**ferrum**) and “carry in front” (**facem**)
nūper (adv.) recently

superior, superius upper, higher; previous
uxor, uxōris *f.* wife
nuptiae, nuptiārum *f. pl.* marriage, wedding
vacuēfaciō, vacuēfacere, vacuēfēcī, vacuēfactus
 make empty
incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable
cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap
praetermittō (praeter- + mittō) pass over, omit
sileō, silere, siluī, — be silent; pass over in silence, leave unmentioned
immānitās, immānitātis *f.* enormity
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itī, — exist, arise, appear
vindicō (1-tr.) avenge, punish
ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last, next
Idūs, Iduum *m. pl.* (the) Ides (fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth of every other month)
impendeō, impendēre, —, — hang over, threaten (+ dat.)
ignōminia, ignōminiae *f.* dishonor, disgrace
vitium, vitii *n.* vice, fault
difficultās, difficultātis *f.* difficulty
pertineō (per- + teneō), **pertinēre, pertinū, pertentus** be aimed at, pertain

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 3

pulchrum est bene facere rei publicae, etiam bene dicere haud absurdum est; vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet; et qui fecere et qui facta aliorum scripsere, multi laudantur. ac mihi quidem, tametsi haudquamquam par gloria sequitur scriptorem et auctorem rerum, tamen in primis† arduum videtur res gestas scribere: primum quod facta dictis exaequanda sunt; dein quia plerique quae delicta reprehenderis malevolentia et invidia dicta putant, ubi de magna virtute atque gloria bonorum memorēs, quae sibi quisque† facilia factu† putat, aequo animo accipit, supra ea veluti ficta pro falsis ducit. Sed ego adulescentulus initio, sicuti plerique, studio ad rem publicam latus sum, ibique mihi multa advorsa fuere. nam pro pudore, pro abstinentia, pro virtute audacia, largitio, avaritia vigebant. quae tametsi animus aspernabatur insolens malorum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia inbecilla aetas ambitione corrupta tenebatur; ac me, quom ab relictorum malis moribus dissentirem, nihil minus† honoris cupidō eadem quae ceteros famā atque invidiā vexabat.

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .**, either . . . or . . .
licet, licere, licuit or **licitum est** (impersonal verb) it is permitted
tametsi (conj.) notwithstanding that, although
haudquamquam (adv.) by no means whatever, not at all
par, paris equal
scriptor, scriptoris *m.* writer
auctor, auctoris *m.* source, author, producer
†**in primis**, especially, above all; first
arduus, -a, -um steep; difficult, arduous
exaequo (1-tr.) make equal, equal
dein (adv.) thereupon, then, next
plerique, pleraeque, pleraque very many, most
delictum, delicti *n.* offense, crime
reprehendo, reprehendere, reprehendi, reprehensus seize, catch; blame, censure;
reprehenderit, Potential subjunctive with a generalized second person subject
malevolentia, malevolentiae *f.* ill will, dislike, malevolence
memoro (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell; **memores**, Potential subjunctive with a generalized second person subject
†**quisque** = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, each person
†**factu** = *neut. sing. abl. of verbal noun of facio*, in (respect to) the doing, to do
supra (prep. + acc.) over, above, beyond
veluti (conj.) even as, just as

figo, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine
adulescentulus, adulēcentuli *m.* (little) young man
initium, initii *n.* beginning
sicuti (conj.) just as
ibi (adv.) there; then
adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse
pudor, pudoris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
abstinentia, abstinentiae *f.* abstinence; self-restraint, integrity
largitio, largitionis *f.* generosity, largess; bribery
avaritia, avaritiae *f.* greed, avarice
vigeo, vigere, vigui, — be vigorous, thrive, flourish
aspernor (1-tr.) disdain, reject, despise
insolens, insolentis unaccustomed, unfamiliar with (+ gen.)
vitium, vitii *n.* fault, vice
imbecillus, -a, -um weak, feeble
aetas, aetatis *f.* age, time of life
ambitio, ambitiois *f.* flattery, adulation; desire for power, ambition
corrumpo, corrumpere, corrupi, corruptus corrupt, bribe
relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
dissentio (**dis-** + **sentio**) differ, disagree
†**nihilō minus** or **nihilominus** (adv.) no less, just as much
cupido, cupidinis *f.* desire
vexo (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.518–32

ipsum autem sūmptis Priamum iuvenālibus armīs
 ut vidit, “quae mēns tam dīra, miserrime coniūnx,
 impulit hīs cingī tēlis? aut quō ruis?” inquit. 520

“nōn tālī auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istīs
 tempus eget; nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet Hectōr.
 hūc tandem concēde; haec āra tuēbitur omnīs,
 aut moriēre simul.” sīc ōre effāta recēpit
 ad sēsē et sacrā longaevum in sēde locāvit. 525

ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī dē caede Polītēs,
 ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostīs
 porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat
 saucius. illum ardēns īfestō vulnere Pyrrhus
 īnsequitur, iam iamque† manū tenet et premit hastā. 530
 ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsit et ōra parentum,
 concidit ac multō vītā cum sanguine fūdit.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus take up, seize;
 take on, assume

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

iuvenālis, iuvenāle youthful

dīrus, -a, -um dire, dreadful, frightful

coniūnx, coniugis *m. or f.* spouse; husband; wife

impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
 drive, impel

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird, equip; **cingī,**
 to gird oneself

ruō, ruere, ruī, — rush

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris *m.* defender, protector

egeō, egēre, eguī, — lack, want, need (+ abl.)

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus
 be present

Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector (son of Priam)

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

concēdō (con- + cēdō) concede, grant; withdraw

tueor, tuērī, tuitus/tūtus sum look at; protect

simul (adv.) at the same time

***effor (1-tr.)** utter, say

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back, receive

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

longaevus, -a, -um of great age, ancient

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat

locō (1-tr.) place

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum slip out, steal away,
 escape

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles)
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

Polītēs, Polītis *m.* Polites (a son of Priam)

porticus, porticūs *m.* covered walk, colonnade

vacuus, -a, -um empty

ātrium, ātrii *n.* atrium (the main room of a
 Roman house); *sing. or pl.,* house, palace

lūstrō (1-tr.) roam through, traverse

saucius, -a, -um wounded

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

īfestus, -a, -um hostile

īnsequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue,
 chase

†**iam iamque** now all but

premō, premere, pressī, pressus press hard,
 overpower

hasta, hastae *f.* spear

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus go out; emerge

ōs, ōris *n. sing. or pl.,* mouth; face

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent; **parentum**
 = **parentium**

concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidī, —
 fall down (in dying), fall dead

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth,
 shed

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.490–503

Phoebus amat vīsaēque cupit cōnūbia Daphnēs, 490
 quodque cupit spērat, suaque† illum ōrācula fallunt,
 utque levēs stipulae dēmp̄tis adolentur aristīs,
 ut facibus saepēs ardent, quās forte viātor
 vel nimis admōvit vel iam sub lūce† reliquit,
 sīc deus in flammās abiit, sīc pectore tōtō 495
 ūritur et sterilem spērandō nūtrit amōrem.
 spectat inornātōs collō pendēre capillōs
 et “quid sī cōmantur?” ait. videt igne micantēs
 sīderibus similēs oculōs, videt ōscula, quae nōn
 est vīdisse satis; laudat digitōsque manūsque 500
 bracchiaque et nūdōs mediā plūs parte lacertōs;
 sī qua† latent, meliōra putat. fugit ōcior aurā
 illa levī neque ad† haec revocantis verba resistit:

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
cōnūbium, cōnūbī *n. sing. or pl.,* marriage, marriage rites

Daphnē, Daphnēs *f.* Daphne; **Daphnēs** = *gen. sing.*

†*sua* refers to *illum*, his own

ōrāculum, ōrāculī *n.* divine utterance, oracle

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus deceive, trick; fail

stipula, stipulae *f.* stalk (of a plant)

dēmō, dēmere, dēmp̄sī, dēmp̄tus remove, take way; cut off

adoleō, adolēre, —, adultus burn (ritually); destroy by fire, burn

arista, aristae *f.* beard of barley or corn; ear or spike (of a plant)

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

saepēs, saepis *f.* (planted) hedge

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire

viātor, viātōris *m.* traveler, passerby

vel (conj.) or; vel . . . vel . . ., either . . . or . . .

nimis (adv.) excessively, too

admoveō (ad- + moveō) move near; **admōvit, reliquit**, translate as present

†sub lūce near daylight, near dawn

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn, scorch, inflame, consume

sterilis, sterile producing nothing; futile

nūtriō, nūtrīre, nūtriī/nūtrīvī, nūtrītus feed, nourish; encourage, foster

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

inornātus, -a, -um unadorned, plain

collum, collī *n.* neck

pendeō, pendēre, pependī, — hang, be suspended

capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.,* hair

cōmō, cōmere, cōmp̄sī, cōmp̄tus make beautiful, adorn; do (hair)

aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = 3rd sing. pres. act. *indic.*

micō, micāre, micuī, — dart, flicker, flash

sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss; *pl.,* lips

digitus, digitī *m.* finger

bracchium, bracchiī *n.* (lower) arm

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude

lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm

†*qua* = *neut. nom. pl. of indef. pron.,* any things

lateō, latēre, latuī, — hide, lie hidden, be concealed

ōcior, ōcius more swift

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

†*ad, here,* in response to, at

revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, call back

resistō, resistere, restitī, — halt, stop

§131. Adverbs of Place

Vocabulary

eō (adv.) to that place, thither	illīc (adv.) there, in that place
eōdem (adv.) to the same place	illinc (adv.) from there, thence
hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time	hinc . . . illinc . . . on this side . . .
hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth	on that side . . .
hinc . . . hinc . . . on this side . . .	illūc (adv.) to there, thither
on that side . . .	inde (adv.) from that place, from there,
hūc (adv.) to here, hither	thence; from that time, thereupon
ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then,	
thereupon	

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Certain common adverbs of place appear in these closely related forms:

<i>Demonstrative</i>	<i>Interrogative/Relative</i>
ibi there	
hīc here, in this place	ubi where
illīc there, in that place	
inde from there	
hinc from here, hence	unde from where, whence
illinc from there, thence	
eō to there	
eōdem to the same place	quō to where, whither
hūc to here, hither	
illūc to there, thither	

The adverbs in the column on the left are demonstrative because they point out a place *where*, *from where*, or *to where*, often in the answer to a question. The adverbs in the column on the right may be used either to ask questions (interrogative) or to correlate with corresponding demonstratives (relative) (cf. §125). For example:

Unde vēnistī?

Whence (*From where*) have you come? (interrogative)

Illinc vēnī unde pater quoque vēnit. (demonstrative/relative)

From there I have come *from where* my father also came.

I have come *from where* my father also came.

Ubi mē stāre iubēbis, ibi manēbō. (relative/demonstrative)

Where me to stand you will order *there* I shall remain.

I shall remain *where* you will order me to stand.

OBSERVATION

Idiomatic English translations of sentences containing both a demonstrative and a relative adverb of place often omit the translation of the demonstrative adverb, as in the second translations above.

Short Readings

1. A slave describes the plans of his master.

ille in balineās itūrust, inde hūc veniet posteā. (PLAUTUS, *ASINARIA* 357)

balineae, balineārum *f. pl.* baths

itūrust = itūrus est

posteā (*adv.*) afterward

2. A freed prisoner of war agrees to help his present and former masters.

prō rotā mē ūtī licet:

vel ego hūc vel illūc vortor quō imperābitis. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVI* 369–70)

rota, rotae *f.* wheel

licet, licēre, licuit or **licitum est** it is permitted

vel (*conj.*) or; **vel . . . vel . . .**, either . . . or . . .

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn

3. The poet addresses a collection of bad poetry that he is about to discard.

vōs hinc intereā valēte abīte

illūc unde malum pedem attulistis. (CATULLUS XIV.21–22)

intereā (*adv.*) meanwhile

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

afferō (*ad- + ferō*), **afferre, attulī, allātus** bring, convey

4. After a detour to tend to ships damaged in a storm, Caesar resumes his pursuit of the Britons.

ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur.[†] (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* V.11)

[†]**proficīscitur**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*

5. The poet addresses Rome's founder.

est locus, antiquī Caprae dīxere[†] palūdem;

forte tuīs illīc, Rōmule, iūra dabās. (OVID, *FASTI* II.491–92)

Caprae palūs, Caprae palūdis *f.* the swamp of the She-goat (part of the Campus Martius)

[†]**dīcō**, *here*, call

6. The historian describes the end of a minor skirmish.

multīs hinc atque illinc vulneribus acceptīs cum etiam, ut in proeliō iūstō, aliquot

cecidissent, nox pugnae fīnem fēcit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXXII.10.11)

vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound

iūstus, -a, -um just; complete

aliquot (*indeclinable adj.*) several

pugna, pugnae *f.* fight

7. Darius describes the place of the coming battle between himself and Alexander.

ventum est eō unde pulsīs nē fugae quidem locus est.

(CURTIUS RUFUS, *HISTORIAE ALEXANDRĪ MAGNĪ* IV.14.11)

CHAPTER XIV

Vocabulary

- lūna, lūnae** *f.* moon
- **aetās, aetātis** *f.* age; lifetime; time
- **agmen, agminis** *n.* line (of march), column; multitude, throng
- auctōritās, auctōritātis** *f.* authority; influence
- nōmen, nōminis** *n.* name
- ōs, ōris** *n. sing. or pl.,* mouth; face
- sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun
- aliquis, aliquid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (§132)
- aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** (indef. adj.) some, any (§132)
- quis, quid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (§132)
- quī, qua, quod** (indef. adj.) some, any (§132)
- quisquam, quicquam** (indef. pron.) anyone, anything (§132)
- quisque, quidque (quicque)** (indef. pron.) each or every man or woman, each or every thing (§132)
- quīque, quaeque, quodque** (indef. adj.) each, every (§132)
- spectō** (1-tr.) look (at), observe
- **accidō, accidere, accidī, —** happen
- **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** make; bring about
- metuō, metuere, metuī, —** fear, dread
- **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus** fall, set; die
- **premo, premere, pressī, pressus** press (hard); overpower; check
- **opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus** press on; overwhelm, oppress
- **orior, orīrī, ortus sum** rise, arise
- absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus** be absent, be distant
- adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus** be present, be near
- **cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus** bring together; compare; direct
- **licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est** it is permitted (§137)
- **oportet, oportēre, oportuit** it is proper, it is right (§137)
- **cūctus, -a, -um** all
- **reliquus, -a, -um** remaining, rest (of)
- absēns, absentis** absent
- **vetus, veteris** old
- **necesse** (indecl. adj.) necessary (§137)
- adeō** (adv.) to such an extent, to so great an extent, (so) very
- haud** (adv.) not at all, by no means
- **quodsī** (conj.) but if
- **vel** (conj.) or;
vel . . . vel . . ., either . . . or . . . (adv.) even
- vix** (adv.) scarcely, hardly

Vocabulary Notes

- ▶ **aetās, aetātis** *f.* may mean “age” in the sense of the number of years one has lived or in the sense of the “age” or “period” in which one lives. It may also refer to the “lifetime” of a human being, a particular “time of life” (old age, youth), or “time.”
- ▶ **agmen, agminis** *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **agō**, and its most general meaning is “a thing being driven.” **agmen** may be used of any “mass” of things (water, clouds, etc.) or of a “throng” or “body” of people moving or acting together. It may also carry a more specifically military sense, “(battle-)line” or “column” of troops, both on the march and drawn up for battle.
- ▶ **accidō, accidere, accidī**, — is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **cadō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. **accidō** is often used impersonally and may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference. For its use with Substantive **Ut** clauses see §135.
- ▶ **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ex-** to **faciō**. For its use with Substantive **Ut** clauses see §135.
- ▶ **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **cadō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. While **occidō** may be used of any person or thing that falls, it is commonly used to mean “fall (into grief),” “be ruined,” “die” (when the subject is a person), or “set” or “sink” (when the subject is a heavenly body). The present active participle of **occidō**—**occidēns, occidentis**, “setting”—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the “west” as a direction or as a part of the known world.
- ▶ **premō, premere, pressī, pressus** is used in a wide variety of contexts and may be translated by a number of English equivalents. **premō** may mean “press” in the sense of “exert pressure on” (inanimate objects, parts of the body). It may mean “press (hard)” in the sense of “propel,” “drive,” or “attack” (spears, people). It may also mean “overpower, overwhelm” (enemies, ships) or “overshadow,” “cover” (often used of the sun or moon covered over by clouds or shadows). Finally, it may mean “check,” “suppress,” or “stop” (bodies of water, actions, voices).
- ▶ **opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **premō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. Its meanings and uses are similar to those of the simple verb **premō**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **PREMŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **OPPRIMŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PREMŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- ▶ **orior, orīrī, ortus sum** is a fourth-conjugation, intransitive deponent verb. It may be used of heavenly bodies and mean “rise,” or it may mean more generally “arise” or “come into being.” In the present indicative it is usually conjugated as a *third*-conjugation *i*-stem verb (e.g., **oritur, not orītur**). **orior** has a rare irregular future active participle: **oritūrus, -a, -um** (cf. **moritūrus, -a, -um**). The present active participle of **orior**—**oriēns, orientis**, “rising”—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the “east” as a direction or as a part of the known world. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **ORIOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- ▶ **cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **ferō**. The idiom **sē cōnferre** means “to betake oneself,” “to go.”
- ▶ For the third person singular forms that appear in the principal parts of impersonal verbs, such as **licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est** and **oportet, oportēre, oportuit**, see §137. Many impersonal verbs have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives (§54).
- ▶ The verb **licet** indicates what is legal or permitted. The verb **oportet** indicates what is proper or necessary in accordance with one’s duty. **necesse est** means “it is necessary” in the sense of “it is compulsory.”
- ▶ **cūnctus, -a, -um** is a synonym of **omnis, omne**, but contains more of an idea of “all (joined) together.” **cūnctus, -a, -um** is more commonly found in the plural.
- ▶ The adjective **reliquus, -a, -um** is related to the verb **relinquō**. It often refers to the remaining portion of things or people left over after certain things or people have been mentioned. It may often be translated “rest of.”

Rēgīna reliquam vītam bene ēgit.

The queen conducted the rest of (her) life well.

- ▶ **vetus, veteris** means “old” as opposed to “young,” and “old” or “experienced” as opposed to “new.” Less commonly, **vetus** is synonymous with **antiquus, -a, -um** and means “old” in the sense of “of an earlier or ancient time.” The ablative singular form is usually **vetere**. **vetus** has *no* *i*-stem features in the plural: its neuter nominative/accusative plural form is **vetera**, its genitive plural form is **veterum**, and its masculine/feminine accusative plural is **veterēs**. **vetus** has an irregular superlative form: **veterrimus, -a, -um**. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

- The conjunction **quodsī** (sometimes written as two words, **quod sī**) is formed from the Adverbial Accusative of the relative pronoun **quod** (to the extent of which, as to which) and the conjunction **sī**. It nearly always has adversative force and is best translated “but if.”
- The conjunction **vel** is used to mark an indifferent choice and thus should be distinguished from **aut**, which indicates mutually exclusive propositions.

Vel tēlō vel ferrō pugnābō.

I shall fight either with a spear or with a sword.

	Derivatives	Cognates
accidō	accident	
aetās	age; coetaneous	eternal; aught; ever; aye; longevity; medieval; eon
licet	illicit	
necesse	necessary	
nōmen	nominate; noun; nomenclature	pseudonym; onomatopoeia; patronymic; synonymous
occidō	occident; occasion	
orior	orient; origin; abort	hormone; are; earnest
ōs	oral; oscillate; ostiary; orifice	
premo	reprimand; pressure; print	
sōl	solar; solarium; parasol; solstice	sun; south
spectō	aspect; speculum; spectrum	spy; espionage; telescope; episcopal
vetus	veteran; inveterate; veterinary	etesian

§132. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

In the sentences “Someone is calling you” and “She is saying something new,” “someone” and “something” are indefinite pronouns. An **indefinite pronoun** is a pronoun that does not define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. In the sentences “Some friends will help me” and “Do they have any weapons?” “some” and “any” are indefinite adjectives. An **indefinite adjective** is an adjective that does not define or specify the person or thing that it modifies. There are several indefinite pronouns and adjectives in Latin.

Aliquis, aliquid is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite prefix **ali-** to **quis, quid**. Its declension is identical with that of **quis, quid** except for the neuter plural nominative or accusative (**aliqua**). Its corresponding adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**, whose declension is identical with that of **quī, quae, quod** except for the feminine singular nominative (**aliqua**) and the neuter plural nominative or accusative (**aliqua**).

<i>Aliquem in forō vīdī.</i>	I saw <i>someone</i> in the forum. (indef. pron.)
<i>Dōnō aliquō dōnāberis.</i>	You will be presented with <i>some</i> gift. (indef. adj.)

The use of the indefinite pronoun **quis, quid** is limited to subordinate clauses in which this pronoun follows such conjunctions as **sī, nisi, num, nē, ut, and cum**. Its corresponding adjective is **quī, qua, quod**, whose declension is identical with that of **quī, quae, quod** except for the feminine singular nominative (**qua**) and the neuter plural nominative or accusative (**qua** or, less commonly, **quae**).

<i>Sī quis mē vocet, veniam.</i>	If <i>anyone</i> should call me, I would come. (indef. pron.)
<i>Sī virum quem amās, dīc mihi.</i>	If you love <i>any</i> man, tell me. (indef. adj.)

Quisquam, quicquam is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix **-quam** to **quis, quid**. Its declension is identical with that of **quis, quid** except for the assimilated neuter singular nominative or accusative (**quicquam**). The unassimilated form **quidquam** also appears. The corresponding indefinite adjective for **quisquam, quicquam** is supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**. **Quisquam, quicquam** is used primarily in sentences *containing or implying negation*.

<i>Nōn quicquam tam miserum audīvī.</i>	(indef. pron.)
I have not heard <i>anything</i> so wretched.	
<i>Estne quisquam quī Catilīnae crēdat?</i>	(indef. pron.)
Is there <i>anyone</i> of the sort who trusts Catiline?	

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the use of **quisquam** implies that *no one* trusts Catiline.

Quisque, quidque (quicque) is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix **-que** to **quis, quid**. Its declension is identical with that of **quis, quid** except for the alternate assimilated neuter singular nominative or accusative (**quicque**). Its corresponding adjective is **quīque, quaeque, quodque**, whose declension is identical with that of **quī, quae, quod**. **quisque** is often used with and placed

immediately after the third-person reflexive pronoun —, **suī** or the reflexive-possessive adjective **suus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Sua cuique satis placēbant. *His own things were pleasing enough to each man.*

When **quisque** appears in such sentences, the reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective refers to the indefinite pronoun.

When **quisque** appears in the singular or plural with a superlative adjective, the resulting phrase may be translated into English with the plural and the English word “all.”

optimus quisque	each best man, all the best men (subj.)
antīquissima quaeque	all the oldest things (subj., d.o.)

Summary of Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives			
<i>Pronoun</i>		<i>Adjective</i>	
aliquis, aliquid	someone, something; anyone, anything	aliquī, aliqua, aliquod	some, any
quis, quid	someone, something; anyone, anything	quī, qua, quod	some, any
After sī, nisi, num, nē , all the ali 's drop away (also after ut and cum).			
quisquam, quicquam	anyone, anything	ūllus, -a, -um	any
Used in negative and virtual negative contexts			
quisque, quidque/ quicque	each/every man/woman; each/every thing	quīque, quaeque, quodque	each, every

☛ DRILL 132, PAGE 565, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§133. Result Clauses

In both English and Latin, the result of an action is reported in a subordinate clause called a **Result clause**. A result may be understood as an event *likely* to follow upon the action of the main verb or as an event *actually occurring* or *actually having occurred*. In English, a Result clause is introduced by the conjunction “that.” In Latin, Result clauses are introduced by the conjunction **ut** and have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Tam honestus est ut eī crēdās. (likely result)
 So honorable is he (with the result) that him you would trust.
 He is so honorable (with the result) that you would trust him.
Ita dixerat ut sententiam intellegerem. (actual result)
 In such a way she had spoken that (her) opinion (d.o.) I understood.
 She had spoken in such a way (with the result) that I understood her opinion.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Result clauses began as independent sentences whose verbs were Potential subjunctives. For example:

Eī crēdās. Tam honestus est. You would trust him. He is so honorable.

Such a paratactic arrangement of two thoughts easily became one sentence: **Tam honestus est ut eī crēdās** (He is so honorable that you would trust him). By the classical period, both likely and actual Result clauses had their verbs in the subjunctive mood, a reflection of the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

2. Result clauses are negated by **ut . . . nōn . . .**, **ut . . . nēmō . . .**, **ut . . . numquam . . .**, etc. They are not negated by **nē**.

3. The syntax of, for example, **intellegerem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Result clause, secondary sequence**.

4. For a Result clause that reports a *likely* result, as in the first sentence above, the subjunctive verb is translated with the English word “would.” For a Result clause that reports an *actual* result, as in the second sentence, the subjunctive verb is translated as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

Result clauses are usually signaled by an adverb or adjective of degree in the main clause. Such words include:

adeō (adv.) to such an extent	tālis, tāle
ita	tantus, -a, -um
sīc	tot
tam	

OBSERVATION

Occasionally a demonstrative such as **hic, iste, ille**, or **is** signals a Result clause and should be translated “such (a).” For example:

Hōrum virōrum ea virtūs est ut omnia patī possint.

Of these men such is the courage (with the result) that all things to endure they are able.

The courage of these men is such (with the result) that they are able to endure all things.

When an actual result is reported in past time, a *perfect subjunctive that breaks the rules of sequence* may be used, perhaps to emphasize the actual completion of the action. For example:

Ita dixerat ut sententiam intellēxerim.

She had spoken in such a way that I actually understood her opinion.

§134. Relative Clauses of Result

A blend of the idea of a Result clause with the idea of a Relative Clause of Characteristic (§94) is called a **Relative Clause of Result**, in which *both ideas are present*. For example:

Quis est tam fortis quī sine armīs pugnet?

Who is of so brave a sort who without arms fights?

Who is so brave that he would fight without arms?

Nihil est tam difficile quān intellegī possit.

Nothing is of so difficult a sort that to be understood it is not able.

Nothing is so difficult that it is not able to be understood.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In each sentence the word **tam** signals a Result clause, but the word **quī/quīn** instead of **ut** introduces a Relative Clause of Result. Each relative clause expresses an event that would *potentially or characteristically result* from the main clause.
2. In the second sentence, **quīn** is used to introduce a negative Relative Clause of Result. Compare this use of **quīn** to its use in Relative Clauses of Characteristic (§94).
3. The syntax of, for example, **pugnet** is **present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Result, primary sequence**.
4. The second translations given above, in which the relative pronoun is replaced in English by “that . . . he/it . . .,” are to be preferred for clarity. In addition, the English word “would” may be used in translating the subjunctive verb in a Relative Clause of Result, or the subjunctive verb may be translated as an indicative.

§135. Substantive *Ut* Clauses

A Result clause is an adverbial clause that modifies the action of the main verb as a whole (cf. Purpose clauses). Certain verbs and verb phrases appear with noun clauses called **Substantive *Ut* clauses**, which function as either subjects or direct objects (cf. Indirect Commands). Some common expressions that introduce Substantive *Ut* clauses are:

accidit	it happens . . . (accidō, accidere, accidī, — happen)
fit	it happens . . .
fieri potest	it is able to happen . . . , it is possible . . .
efficere	to bring it about . . . (efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus bring about)
facere	to bring it about . . . , to see to it . . .

OBSERVATION

The first three verbal expressions introduce **subject clauses**. The latter two introduce **object clauses**.

Substantive *Ut* clauses are negated by **ut . . . nōn, ut . . . nēmō**, etc. **Nē** may be used when a command or exhortation is being expressed. For example:

Accidit ut Caesar cōpiās per prōvinciam dūceret.

It happened *that* Caesar (his) troops (d.o.) through the province *was leading*.

It happened *that* Caesar *was leading* his troops through the province.

Efficiam ut cīvēs inter sē nōn pugnent.

I shall bring it about *that* the citizens among themselves *not fight*.

I shall bring it about *that* the citizens *not fight* among themselves.

Facite nē sociōs relinqūātis, ō militēs.

See to it *that* the allies (d.o.) *you not abandon*, o soldiers.

See to it *that you not abandon* the allies, o soldiers.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Substantive *Ut* clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.
2. In the first sentence the clause **ut . . . dūceret** functions as the *subject* of the verb **accidit**. The entire subject clause is *what* “happened.” The English pronoun “it” merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.

3. In the second sentence the clause **ut . . . pugnant** functions as the *direct object* of the verb **efficiam**. The entire object clause is *what* "I shall bring about." The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this object clause.
4. In the third sentence the Substantive **Ut** clause is introduced by **nē** because the clause is the equivalent of an Indirect Command.
5. The syntax of, for example, **dūceret** is **imperfect subjunctive, Substantive Ut clause, secondary sequence**.

A Substantive **Ut** clause may stand in apposition to a noun or pronoun in order to explain it. It may also be the subject of the verb **sum** with predicates such as **mōs**, **opus**, or **reliquum**. Such a clause may be called an **Explanatory Ut clause**. For example:

Illud ipsum habet cōsul ut eī reliquī pāreant.

That very thing (d.o.) the consul has, that him the remaining men obey.

The consul has that very thing, that the remaining men obey him.

Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus esse optimum.

It is the custom of men that they do not want the same man in too many things to be best.

It is the custom of men that they do not want the same man to be best in too many things.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the Explanatory **Ut** clause (**ut . . . pāreant**) is in apposition to and explains the meaning of **illud**.
2. In the second sentence the Explanatory **Ut** clause (**ut . . . optimum**) is the subject of **est** and defines **mōs**, the Predicate Nominative.

☛ DRILL 133–135, PAGE 569, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§136. *Fore ut* Construction

When a future passive verb is to be expressed in Indirect Statement, a periphrasis¹ is commonly used instead of the rare future passive infinitive.² This periphrasis employs the future active infinitive of the verb **sum** (**fore, futūrum esse**) and a Substantive **Ut** clause with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. The same construction is used when a future active verb that lacks a fourth principal part is expressed in Indirect Statement. For example:

Caesar dīcit fore ut bellum mox cōficiātur.

Caesar says *that it will be that* the war soon *be completed*.

Caesar says *that* the war *will be completed* soon.

Spērābāmus futūrum esse ut Caesar bellum mox cōficere posset.

We were hoping *that it would be that* Caesar the war (d.o.) soon to complete *be able*.

We were hoping *that* Caesar *would be able* to complete the war soon.

1. A **periphrasis** (< Greek *periphrazō*, speak around) is a roundabout way of saying something, a circumlocution (< **circumlocutiō**, speaking around).

2. For the formation of the future passive infinitive see §144, n. 4.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The noun clause introduced by **ut** in each sentence functions as the *subject* of the infinitive **fore** or **futūrum esse** in Indirect Statement. The **-um** ending on **futūrum** is neuter singular accusative to agree with the subject clause. The English pronoun “it” merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.
2. Substantive **Ut** clauses following **fore** and **futūrum esse** are negated by **ut . . . nōn, ut . . . nēmō**, etc.
3. The syntax of, for example, **posset** is **imperfect subjunctive, Substantive Ut clause in a fore ut construction, secondary sequence**.
4. The second translations given above are to be preferred because they combine the future tense expressed in the infinitives with the actions expressed in the subjunctive verbs. In primary sequence the word “will” and in secondary sequence the word “would” are used.

☛ DRILL 136, PAGE 573, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§137. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet, necesse est, and oportet*

An **impersonal verb** is a verb that does not have a personal subject (cf. §54). Certain impersonal verbs that express ideas of *permission, necessity, or propriety* have forms in the third person singular, the infinitive, and (less commonly) the perfect passive participle. Three such verbs are:

licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est it is allowed, it is permitted
necesse est it is necessary
oportet, oportēre, oportuit it is proper, it is right

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first and third principal parts of **licet** and **oportet** are given in the *third person singular* because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number only. **licet** has an alternate third principal part, **licitum est**, formed as an impersonal passive.
2. **necesse est** is actually a compound of the indeclinable neuter singular adjective **necesse** (functioning as a predicate adjective) and a form of the verb **sum**. The form of **sum** may be any third person singular form (**necesse erat, necesse sit**, etc.) or an infinitive (**necesse esse**).

These three impersonal verbs frequently appear with a Subject Infinitive (§28), which may have an expressed Subject Accusative (§108). For example:

Licet in urbe manēre. (Subject Infinitive)
 It is permitted *to remain* in the city.
Necesse est eōs in urbe manēre. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
 It is necessary *for them to remain* in the city.
 It is necessary *that they remain* in the city.
Oportēbat eōs in urbe manēre. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
 It was proper *for them to remain* in the city.
 It was proper *that they remain* in the city.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences the syntax of **manēre** is Subject Infinitive. In the second and third sentences the syntax of **eōs** is Subject Accusative.
2. In each translation given above the English word “it” merely anticipates and refers to the Subject Infinitive. The first sentence, for example, may also be translated “To remain in the city is permitted.”

Licet and **nesesse est** may also appear with a Dative of Reference and a Subject Infinitive. For example:

Liceat eīs in urbe manēre.	Let it be permitted <i>to them to remain</i> in the city.
Eīs nesesse erat in urbe manēre.	It was necessary <i>for them to remain</i> in the city.

OBSERVATION

The Dative of Reference that may appear with **licet** or **nesesse est** expresses the *person to whom* an action is permitted or *for whom* an action is necessary. When a Subject Accusative—rather than a Dative of Reference—appears with **licet** and **nesesse est**, it expresses the *subject* of the infinitive.

Licet, **nesesse est**, and **oportet** also frequently appear with a Jussive subjunctive in parataxis.³ For example:

Iūs valeat nesesse est.	<i>Let right be strong</i> it is necessary.
	It is necessary <i>that right be strong</i> .
Nōlī fugere: mēcum moriāris oportet.	Do not flee: with me <i>die</i> it is proper.
	Do not flee: it is proper <i>that you die</i> with me.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences two verbs stand paratactically with no subordination. The second English translations, which include the addition of the English conjunction “that” and make use of the English present subjunctive, are to be preferred for clarity.
2. The syntax of, for example, **moriāris** is present subjunctive, Jussive (in parataxis).

☛ DRILL 137, PAGE 577, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§138. Genitive of Characteristic

The Genitive of Possession is sometimes extended to express the person to whom a certain characteristic belongs. When this occurs, the genitive is called a **Genitive of Characteristic**.⁴ For example:

Sapientis est pācem petere.	<i>Of a wise person</i> it is peace (d.o.) to seek.
	It <i>belongs to a wise person</i> to seek peace.
	To seek peace is <i>characteristic of a wise person</i> .

The syntax of the italicized word (**sapientis**) is **Genitive of Characteristic**.

3. A Substantive Ut clause may rarely appear as the subject of these impersonal verbs.
4. The Genitive of Characteristic is also known as the Predicate Genitive.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Genitive of Characteristic is often well translated with the addition of the word “characteristic” before the “of.”
2. Subject Infinitives frequently appear in combination with Genitives of Characteristic.
3. Because the genitives of personal pronouns can be Partitive or Objective Genitive only, the possessive adjectives (in the neuter singular nominative or accusative) are often used to express an idea similar to a Genitive of Characteristic. For example:

Nōn est fugere *meum*.

To flee is not *my thing*.

To flee is not *characteristic of me*.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the poet Naevius

patī necesse est multa mortālēs mala. (NAEVIUS, *PALLIATAE* FRAG. 106)

2. Pseudolus, a crafty slave, criticizes Ballio, a pimp who worships only money.

deōs quidem, quōs maxumē aequom est metuere, eōs minimī facit.†

(PLAUTUS, *PSEUDOLUS* 269)

†**facit**, *subject is Ballio*

3. A fragment from the poet Ennius

quem metuunt odērunt; quem quisque odit periisse expetit.

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 348)

expetō (**ex-** + **petō**) ask for; desire

4. The character Hegio utters a truism.

quot hominēs tot sententiae: suos quoque mōs. (TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 454)

5. Later writers often cite this fragment spoken by Atreus in a tragedy of the poet Accius. Suetonius reports that Caligula said it about his subjects.

oderint dum metuant. (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 204)

6. A fragment from the satirist

hominī amīcō et familiārī nōn est mentīrī meum. (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE* FRAG. 953)

familiāris, **familiāre** of one's household; of one's family

mentior, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum** lie, tell a lie

7. A witticism from Varro

postrēmō nēmō aegrōtus quicquam somniat tam infandum quod nōn aliquis† dicat

philosophus. (VARRO, *MENIPPEAE* FRAG. 122)

postrēmō (adv.) finally

aegrōtus, **-a**, **-um** sick, diseased

somniō (1-tr.) dream (of)

infandus, **-a**, **-um** unspeakable

†**aliquis**, *here, indef. pron. used adjectivally*, some

philosophus, **philosophī** *m.* philosopher

8. An example of an effective use of hyperbole

tantus erat in armīs splendor ut sōlis fulgor obscūrius vidērētur.

(*RHETORICA AD HERENNIUM* IV.44.28)

splendor, **splendōris** *m.* brilliance, brightness

fulgor, **fulgōris** *m.* gleam, brightness, splendor

obscurus, **-a**, **-um** dim, dark, obscure

9. The twenty-five-year-old Cicero explains why he believes he will win his case.

nōn enim, quem ad modum putātis, omnia sunt in ēloquentiā; est quaedam tamen ita perspicua vērītās ut eam infirmāre nūlla rēs possit.

(CICERO, *PRŌ QUINCTIŌ* 80)

ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence; rhetoric
perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident
vērītās, vērītātis *f.* truth
infirmō (1-tr.) weaken; lessen; refute

10. Cicero reflects on why men turn to crime.

L. Cassius ille, quem populus Rōmānus vērissimum et sapientissimum iūdicem putābat, identidem in causīs quaerere solēbat cui bonō fuisset.† sīc vīta hominum est ut ad maleficium nēmō cōnētur sine spē atque ēmolumentō accēdere.

(CICERO, *PRŌ S. ROSCIŌ AMERINŌ* 84)

L. Cassius, L. Cassiī *m.* L. Cassius
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
identidem (adv.) again and again, repeatedly
†**fuisset**, subject is “it” (any particular crime)

maleficium, maleficiī *n.* misdeed, crime
ēmolumentum, ēmolumentī *n.* benefit, advantage

11. The orator expresses his confidence to the jury.

sī ūtar ad dīcendum meō lēgitimō tempore, meī lābōris industriae dīligentiaeque capiam frūctum, et hāc accūsātiōne perficiam† ut nēmō umquam post hominum memoriā† parātor, vigilantior, compositor ad iūdicium vēnisse videātur.

(CICERO, *IN VERREM I* 1.31)

lēgitimus, -a, -um legal, legitimate
industria, industriae *f.* assiduity, industry
frūctus, frūctūs *m.* profit, return, reward
accūsātiō, accūsātiōnis *f.* accusation, indictment

†**perficiō**, here, bring about
†**post . . . memoriā**, since the memory
vigilāns, vigilantis careful, watchful, vigilant
compositus, -a, -um prepared, ready
iūdicium, iūdicī *n.* judgment; court

12. After describing another incident in which Verres degraded the local nobility of Sicily, Cicero asks Verres a rhetorical question.

quis tam fuit illō tempore ferreus, quis tam inhūmānus praeter ūnum tē, quī nōn illōrum aetāte, nōbilitāte, miseriā commovērētur? (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 5.121)

ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted, unfeeling
inhūmānus, -a, -um inhumane
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis *f.* renown, nobility, excellence
miseria, miseriae *f.* misery
commoveō (con- + moveō) move

13. After lamenting the dearth of great military leaders, the orator finds consolation.

nunc vērō cum sit ūnus Cn. Pompeius quī nōn modo eōrum hominum quī nunc sunt glōriam sed etiam antīquitātis memoriam virtūte superārit, quae rēs est quae cuiusquam animum in hāc causā dubium facere possit? ego enim sic existimō in summō imperātōre quattuor hās rēs inesse oportere: scientiam reī mīlītāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlicitātem. quis igitur hōc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse dēbuit? (CICERO, *PRŌ LEGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 27–28)

antīquitās, antīquitātis *f.* antiquity

existimō (*ex-* + *aestimō*) (1-tr.) reckon, consider, think

īsum (*īn-* + *sum*) be (in)

scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge

mīlītāris, mīlītāre military; **rēs mīlītāris**, military practice

fēlicitās, fēlicitātis *f.* good fortune

14. Addressing the Roman people, Cicero summarizes the effects of the *Lēx Gabīnia* (67 B.C.E.), which gave Pompey plenary powers to wipe out piracy in the Mediterranean sea.

itaque ūna lēx, ūnus vir, ūnus annus nōn modo vōs illā miserīā ac turpitudīne liberāvit sed etiam effēcit ut aliquandō vērē vidērēminī omnibus gentibus ac nātiōnibus terrā marīque imperāre. (CICERO, *PRŌ LEGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 56)

itaque (*conj.*) and so, accordingly

miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

turpitudō, turpitudinis *f.* ugliness; shameful, baseness

aliquandō (*adv.*) sometimes, occasionally; at long last

nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation

15. Cicero pays Q. Catulus a great compliment—before proceeding to disagree with him strongly.

etenim tālis est vir ut nūlla rēs tanta sit ac tam difficilis quam ille nōn et cōnsiliō regere et integritāte tuērī et virtūte cōnferre possit. (CICERO, *PRŌ LEGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 59)

integritās, integritātis *f.* moral uprightness, integrity

tueor, tuērī, tuitus/tūtus sum look at; protect, attend to

16. Cicero recalls an older, sterner morality.

fuit, fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs ut virī fortēs ācriōribus suppliciīs cīvem perniciosum quam acerbissimum hostem coērcērent.

(CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM* I 3)

quondam (*adv.*) at one time, once, formerly

supplicium, supplicīi *n.* punishment

perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive

coērcēō, coērcēre, coērcuī, coērcitus restrain, check, suppress

17. Cicero characterizes Catiline derisively.

neque enim is es, Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor umquam ā turpitūdine aut metus ā periculō aut ratiō ā furōre revocārit. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 22)

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shameful, baseness

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; rationality

furor, furōris *m.* madness

revocō (1-tr.) call back

18. At the very time of the Catilinarian conspiracy, Cicero pleads directly to Cato, one of the most important men behind the accusation of election fraud against Murena.

hīs tantīs in rēbus tantisque in periculīs est tuum, M. Catō, quī mihi nōn tibi, sed patriae nātus esse vidēris, vidēre quid agātur, retinēre adiūtōrem, dēfēnsōrem, socium in rē pūblicā, cōnsulem nōn cupidum, cōnsulem—quod maximē tempus hoc postulat—fortūnā cōstitutum ad amplexandum ōtium, scientiā ad bellum gerendum, animō et ūsū ad quod velis negōtium sustinendum. (CICERO, *PRŌ MURENĀ* 83)

retineō (re- + teneō), **retinēre, retinuī, retentus**
keep hold of, retain; uphold, preserve

adiūtōr, adiūtōris *m.* helper, supporter

dēfēnsōr, dēfēnsōris *m.* protector, defender

postulō (1-tr.) demand

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus set
up, establish; prepare

amplexor (1-tr.) embrace; value, esteem

ōtium, ōtīi *n.* leisure; peace

scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge

ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience

negōtium, negōtīi *n.* business

sustineō (sub- + teneō), **sustinēre, sustinuī,**
— withstand; support, sustain

19. Cicero makes a clever observation to bolster his point about the importance of praise.

trahimur omnēs studiō laudis, et optimus quisque maximē glōriā dūcitur. ipsī illī philosophī etiam in eīs libellis quōs dē contemnendā glōriā scribunt nōmen suum īnscrībunt . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ ARCHIĀ* 26)

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag

laus, laudis *f.* praise

philosophus, philosophī *m.* philosopher

libellus, libelli *m.* (little) book

contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus
regard with contempt, scorn, disregard

īnscrībō (in- + scrībō) inscribe

20. In the opening of his defense of Sestius, Cicero expresses to the jury his outrage at his opponents' strategy.

. . . per vōs nōbīs, per optimōs virōs optimīs cīvibus periculum īnferre cōnantur, et quōs lapidibus, quōs ferrō, quōs facibus, quōs vī, manū, cōpiīs dēlēre nōn potuerunt, hōs vestrā auctōritāte, vestrā religiōne, vestrīs sententiīs sē oppressūrōs arbitrantur. (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 2)

lapis, lapidis *m.* stone

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

religiō, religiōnis *f.* religious constraint or fear; religious observance; sanctity, scruple

21. Cicero praises Milo's belief that life and freedom must be defended—even with arms.

hoc[†] sentire prūdentiae est, facere fortitūdinis; et sentire vērō et facere perfectae[†]
cumulātaeque virtūtis. (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 86)

[†]hoc, refers to Milo's belief

prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

[†]perfectus, -a, -um perfect

cumulātus, -a, -um heaped up; vast, abundant

22. Cicero distinguishes between what is proper and what is permitted.

est enim aliquid quod nōn oporteat etiam sī licet; quicquid vērō nōn licet certē nōn
oportet. (CICERO, *PRŌ BALBŌ* 8)

quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

23. Marcus and Quintus conclude an exchange about the importance of law.

Marcus. Lēge autem carēns cīvitas estne ob id ipsum habenda nūllō locō?

Quintus. Dīcī aliter nōn potest.

Marcus. Necesse est igitur lēgem habērī in rēbus optimīs.

Quintus. Prorsus adsentior. (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGIBUS* II.12)

prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect, altogether

adsentior, adsentīrī, adsēnsus sum agree

24. Cicero praises the power of rhetoric.

sed nihil est tam incrēdibile quod nōn dīcendō fiat probābile, nihil tam horridum,
tam incultum, quod nōn splendēscat ōrātiōne et tamquam excolātur.

(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* PREFACE 3)

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable

probābilis, probābile acceptable, plausible,
credible

horridus, -a, -um rough; rude, uncouth

incultus, -a, -um not cultivated, unadorned,
lacking in refinement

splendēscō, splendēscere, —, — become
bright, begin to shine

tamquam (conj.) as it were, so to speak

excolō, excolere, excoluī, excultus cultivate,
improve, develop, decorate

25. Cicero defines some important moral terms.

quicquid nōn oportet scelus esse, quicquid nōn licet nefās putāre dēbēmus.

(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* 3.25)

quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

26. The philosopher imagines the consequences of only believing one's eyes.

quae[†] sunt tantae animī angustiae ut, sī Serīphī nātus essēs nec umquam ēgressus ex insulā, in quā lepusculōs vulpēculāsque saepe vīdissēs, nōn crēderēs leōnēs et panthērās esse cum tibi quālēs essent dīcerētur; sī vērō dē elephantō quis dīceret, etiam rīdērī tē putārēs. (CICERO, *DE NATŪRĀ DEŌRUM* I.88)

[†]quae, connective relative (refers to examples of narrow-mindedness)

angustiae, angustiarum *f. pl.* narrowness

Serīphus, Serīphī *m.* Seriphos (modern Serfo, a small, rocky island in the Cyclades)

lepusculus, lepusculī *m.* little hare

vulpēcula, vulpēculae *f.* little fox

leō, leōnis *m.* lion

panthēra, panthērae *f.* panther

elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus laugh at, ridicule, mock

27. What makes a man great?

nēmō[†] igitur vir magnus sine aliquō adflātū dīvīnō umquam fuit.

(CICERO, *DE NATŪRĀ DEŌRUM* II.167)

[†]nēmō = nūllus

afflātus, afflātūs *m.* breath; inspiration

28. Having observed the nearly universal belief in the art of divination, Cicero's brother asks whether there will ever be an end to doubt on the subject.

an[†] dum bestiae loquantur exspectāmus, hominum cōsentiente auctōritāte contentī nōn sumus? (CICERO, *DE DĪVINĀTIŌNE* I.84)

[†]an, here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that . . .

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal

cōsentiō (con- + sentiō) be in agreement, concur

contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied

29. The character Cato insists that the length of life is unimportant.

breve enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vīvendum.

(CICERO, *DE SENECTŪTE* 70)

30. A reflection on the human soul

atque etiam cum hominis nātūra morte dissolvitur, cēterārum rērum perspicuum est quō quaeque discēdat; abeunt enim illūc omnia unde orta sunt, animus autem sōlus nec cum adest nec cum discessit appāret. iam vērō vidētis nihil esse mortī tam simile quam somnum. (CICERO, *DE SENECTŪTE* 80)

dissolvō, dissolvere, dissolvī, dissolūtus undo, dissolve; set free

perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritūrus become visible, be seen

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

31. What value does Cicero place on farming?

omnium autem rērum ex quibus aliquid adquiretur nihil est agrī culturā melius,
nihil ūberius, nihil dulcius, nihil homine, nihil liberō dignius.

(CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I.151)

adquirō (ad- + quaerō), **adquirere**, **adquīsī**/adquīsīvī, **adquīsītus** add to one's possessions, acquire
culturā, **culturāe** *f.* cultivation; **agrī culturā**, farming

ūber, **ūberis** rich, fertile

dulcis, **dulce** sweet, pleasant

32. In the first of his *Philippics* Cicero declares his resolve to speak his mind no matter the danger.

quid? dē reliquīs reī pūblicae malīs licetne dīcere? mihi vērō licet et semper licēbit
dignitātem tuērī, mortem contemnere. potestās modo veniendī in hunc locum† sit,
dīcendī perīculum nōn recūsō. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* I 14)

dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* rank, status, dignity

tueor, **tuērī**, **tuitus**/tūtus *sum* look at; protect

contemnō, **contemnere**, **contempsī**, **contemptus**

regard with contempt; pay no heed to, disregard

potestās, **potestātis** *f.* (legitimate) power

†**hunc locum**, i.e., the senate house

recūsō (1-tr.) decline, reject, refuse to accept

33. Cicero speaks after a scheduled embassy to Antony has been canceled. In an imagined debate, Cicero explains why he approves of the decision to cancel it.

cuiusvis hominis est errāre; nulliūs nisi insipientis persevērāre in errore; posteriōrēs
enim cōgitātiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* XII 5)

quīvis, **quaevis**, **quodvis** (indef. adj.) any . . . you
wish, any . . . at all

īnsipiēns, **īnsipientis** unwise, foolish

persevērō (1-intr.) persist, persevere

error, **errōris** *m.* mistake, error

posterior, **posterius** later

cōgitātiō, **cōgitātiōnis** *f.* thought

aiō (defective verb) say; **aiunt** = 3rd pl. pres. act.
indic.

34. In the context of thinking about pernicious citizens and civil war, Cicero poses a theoretical question.

sed hoc primum videndum est, patrēs cōnscriptī, cum omnibusne pāx esse possit
an sit aliquod bellum inexpiābile, in quō pactiō pācis lēx sit servitūtis.

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* XIII 2)

inexpiābilis, **inexpiābile** that cannot be atoned for, that cannot be appeased

pactiō, **pactiōnis** *f.* agreement, arrangement

35. Cicero describes to Atticus his sense of alienation and despair once Pompey has fled to the East.

alia rēs nunc tōta est, alia mēns mea. sōl, ut est in tuā quādam epistulā, excidisse mihi ē mundō vidētur. ut aegrōtō, dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur, sīc ego, quoad Pompeius in Italiā fuit, spērāre nōn dēstitī. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IX.10.3)

epistula, epistulae *f.* letter

excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, — fall (out)

mundus, mundi *m.* world; sky

aegrōtus, -a, -um ill, sick

quoad (conj.) as long as, while

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, — cease

36. Cicero informs his friend M. Marcellus about the limits on speech and action in the present state of the republic.

at tibi ipsī dīcendum erit aliquid quod nōn sentiās aut faciendum quod nōn probēs. prīmum temporī[†] cēdere, id est necessitatī pārēre, semper sapientis est habitum.

(CICERO, *AD FAMILIARES* IV.9.2)

at (conj.) but

probō (1-tr.) approve of

[†]**tempus, here,** occasion, circumstance

necessitās, necessitātis *f.* necessity

37. The poet begins a reflection on the purpose and power of philosophy.

Suāve marī magnō turbantibus aequora ventīs
ē terrā magnum alterius[†] spectāre labōrem,
nōn quia vexārī quemquamst iūcunda voluptās,
sed quibus ipse malīs careās quia cernere suāvest.

(LUCRETIVS, *DE RERUM NATURĀ* II.1–4)

suāvis, suāve sweet, pleasant

turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

[†]The **-ī-** of **alterius** here scans *short*.

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, determine; perceive, observe

38. The poet describes man's superstitious fear and its only medicine.

nam vel utī puerī trepidant atque omnia caecīs
 in tenebrīs metuunt, sic nōs in lūce timēmus
 interdum nihilō quae sunt metuenda magis quam
 quae puerī in tenebrīs pavitant finguntque futūra.
 hunc igitur terrōrem animī tenebrāsque necessesit
 nōn radii sōlis neque lūcida tēla diēi
 discutiant, sed nātūrae speciēs ratiōque. (LUCRETIUS, *DE RERUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.55–61)

utī = ut

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally

pavitō (1-tr.) be in dread of, tremble at

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make;
 imagine

terror, terrōris *m.* (extreme) fear, terror

radius, radii *m.* ray (of light)

lūcidus, -a, -um shining, bright, clear

discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter;
 dissipate, dispel

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning;
 rationale

39. The poet describes how the earth, like all living things, is subject to decay and diminution of her powers.

iamque adeō frācta est aetās effētaque tellūs
 vix animālia parva creat, quae cūncta creāvit
 saecula deditque ferārum ingentia corpora partū.
 (LUCRETIUS, *DE RERUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.1150–52)

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break, break
 down

effētus, -a, -um worn out

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth

creō (1-tr.) create

saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal

partus, partūs *m.* birth

40. The poet reports an inner conflict.

Hūc est mēns dēducta tuā mea, Lesbia, culpā,
 atque ita sē officiō perdidit ipsa suō,
 ut iam nec bene velle queat tibi sī optima fiās,
 nec dēsistere amāre omnia sī faciās. (CATULLUS LXXXV)

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring down

culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault

officium, officiū *n.* obligation; sense of duty

queō, quīre, quīi/quīvī, — be able

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, — cease, stop

41. The poet responds to his beloved's declaration.

Iūcundum, mea vīta, mihi prōpōnis amōrem
 hunc nostrum inter nōs perpetuumque fore.
 dī magnī, facite ut vērē prōmittere possit,
 atque id sincērē dīcat et ex animō,
 ut liceat nōbīs tōtā perdūcere vītā
 aeternum hoc sānctae foedus amīcitiae. (CATULLUS CIX)

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) put forward; declare
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous; everlasting
prōmittō (prō- + mittō) promise
sincērē (adv.) faithfully, truly

perdūcō (per- + dūcō) extend, prolong
aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting
sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
foedus, foederis n. agreement, treaty, pact

42. Having just described various geographical constraints (mountains, lakes, rivers), Caesar reports their effects on the actions and feelings of the Helvetians.

hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īferre
 possent; quā ex parte† hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur.
 (CAESAR, DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ I.2)

lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
vagor (1-intr.) wander
finimus, -a, -um neighboring, nearby; *subst.*,
 neighbor

†**quā ex parte** and on this account
bellō (1-intr.) wage war, fight
dolor, dolōris m. grief, sorrow, pain
afficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, stir, afflict

43. Caesar reports how a powerful German king began a response to Caesar's demands.

ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem-
 admodum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad† alterius prae-
 scriptum, sed ad† suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse.
 (CAESAR, DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ I.36)

Ariovistus, Ariovistī m. Ariovistus
item (adv.) likewise, in like manner
 †**ad, here,** according to
praescriptum, praescriptī n. order, rule

arbitrium, arbitriī n. judgment; authority
cōsuēscō, cōsuēscere, cōsuēvī, cōsuētum
 become accustomed

44. Caesar explains why the Veneti gave up the war against Caesar after a particular battle.
 nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōsiliī
 aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat ūnum in locum
 coēgerant. quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quemadmodum
 oppida dēfenderent habēbant. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* III.16)

iuventūs, iuventūtis *f.* (the collective) youth
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* worthiness, merit
conveniō (con- + veniō) come together
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
ubīque (adv.) everywhere
cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, cōgē, coāctus gather
 together

āmittō (ā- + mittō) lose
recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; **sē recipere,**
 to withdraw
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēsus defend

45. Caesar explains his decision to cross the Rhine.

Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānse-
 undum. quārum illa fuit iūstissima: quod cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī
 ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs[†] quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et
 posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* IV.16)

Germānicus, -a, -um German
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand;
 decide
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in
 northeastern Gaul)
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsire, trānsī/trānsīvī,
trānsitus go across, cross

iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
 push against; persuade
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
[†]suīs refers to eōs.

46. Caesar comments on a confused moment caused by a surprise attack of Germans.

nēmō est tam fortis quān reī novitāte perturbētur. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.39)

novitās, novitātis *f.* newness, novelty; unfamiliarity, unexpectedness
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into confusion, upset, confound

47. The historian explains why the consul Metellus proceeded cautiously through Numidia
 despite no outward signs of resistance.

nam in Iugurthā tantus dolus tantaque perītia locōrum et mīlitiae erat ut absēns
 an praesēns, pācem an bellum gerēns, perniciosior esset in incertō habērētur.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 46)

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha (king of
 Numidia)
dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning
perītia, perītia *f.* knowledge (acquired through
 experience)

mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service
praesēns, praesentis present
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, deadly

52. The poet states his theme.

Sī quis in hōc artem populō nōn nōvit amandī,
hoc legat et lēctō carmine doctus amet.

arte citae vëlōque ratēs rēmōque moventur,

arte levēs currūs, arte regendus amor. (OVID, *ARS AMĀTŌRIA* I.1–4)

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach

citus, -a, -um quick, swift

ratis, ratis, -ium *f.* ship

rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar

currus, currūs *m.* chariot

53. Exiled to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet comments on the locale and the native population.

sīve locum spectō, locus est inamābilis, et quō

esse nihil tōtō trīstius orbe potest,

sīve hominēs, vix sunt hominēs hōc nōmine dignī,

quamque lupī saevae plūs feritātis habent.

nōn metuunt lēgēs, sed cēdit vīribus aequum,

victaque pugnācī iūra sub ēnse iacent. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.7b.43–48)

sīve (conj.) or if; **sīve . . . sīve . . .**, if . . . or if . . .

inamābilis, inamābile unlovable, disagreeable,
unattractive

trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

lupus, lupī *m.* wolf

feritās, feritātis *f.* wildness, fierceness; savagery,
brutality

pugnāx, pugnācis fond of fighting, combative,
warlike

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie

54. The poet describes the length of his banishment in epic terms.

at mihi iam videor patriā procul esse tot annīs,[†]

Dardana quot Graiō Troia sub hoste fuit.

stāre[†] putēs, adeō prōcēdunt tempora tardē . . . (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.10.3–5)

at (conj.) but

procul (adv.) at a distance, far

[†]**tot annīs**, *here*, for as many years

Dardanus, -a, -um Dardanian, Trojan

Graius, -a, -um Greek

[†]**stō**, *here*, stand still

prōcēdō (**prō-** + **cēdō**) go forward, progress

tardē (adv.) slowly

55. The historian reports that after the Romans retook certain towns in southern Italy from the Carthaginians, they distinguished themselves in a disgraceful way.

. . . tantum Pleminius Hamilcarem praesidiū praefectum,[†] tantum praesidiārīi mīlitēs Rōmānī Poenōs scelere atque avāritiā superāvērunt ut nōn armīs sed vitiīs vidērētur certārī. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXIX.8.7)

Pleminius, Pleminiū *m.* (Q.) Pleminius (Roman military officer)

Hamilcar, Hamilcaris *m.* Hamilcar (Carthaginian commander)

praesidium, praesidiū *n.* guard, garrison

[†]**praefectus, praefectī** *m.* commander, officer

praesidiārīus, -a, -um forming a guard or garrison

Poenī, Poenōrum *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians, (the) Carthaginians

avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice

vitium, vitiū *n.* vice, fault

certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

56. Seneca quotes the second-century B.C.E. philosopher Posidonius, who explains why he objects to the inclusion of explanations and introductions in Plato's *Laws*.

lēgem enim brevem esse oportet quō facilius ab inperītīs teneātur.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* XCIV.38)

imperītus, -a, -um inexperienced, unacquainted

57. Seneca quotes a line that is said to have made the audience look at Caesar. It was uttered by the writer and actor Decimus Laberius at the time of the civil war.

necesse est multōs timeat quem multī timent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* IV.11.3)

58. Seneca reports how the Stoic philosopher Diogenes responded to being spit upon by one of his students during class.

tulit hoc ille lēniter et sapienter: “nōn quidem” inquit “īrāscor, sed dubitō[†] tamen an oporteat īrāscī.” (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* V.38.1)

lēniter (adv.) gently, mildly

sapienter (adv.) wisely

īrāscor, īrāscī, —, become angry

[†]**dubitō**, *here*, wonder

59. A definition and contemplation of death

mors dolōrum omnium exsolūtiō est et finis ultrā quem mala nostra nōn exeunt, quae nōs in illam tranquillitātem in quā antequam nāscerēmur iacuimus repōnit. sī mortuōrum aliquis miserētur, et nōn nātōrum misereātur. mors nec bonum nec malum est; id enim potest aut bonum aut malum esse quod aliquid est; quod vērō ipsum nihil est et omnia in nihilum redigit, nūllī nōs fortūnae trādit.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VI.19.5)

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

exsolūtiō, exsolūtiōnis *f.* dissolution

ultrā (*prep.* + *acc.*) beyond

exeō (*ex-* + *eō*), **exīre, exī/exīvī, exitum** go out, exit

tranquillitās, tranquillitātis *f.* calm, tranquility

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

repōnō (*re-* + *pōnō*) put or place back

misereror, miserērī, miseritus sum pity, take pity on (+ *gen.*)

redigō (*red-* + *agō*), **redigere, redēgī, redāctus** drive back; restore, convert

60. A character in a Senecan dialogue expresses his opinion on the nature of human life.

nihil est tam fallāx quam vīta hūmāna, nihil tam insidiōsum: nōn meherculēs quisquam illam accēpisset nisi darētur ignōrantibus.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VI.22.3)

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous

hūmānus, -a, -um human

insidiōsus, -a, -um treacherous, deceitful

ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware (of), be ignorant (of)

61. The poet vividly characterizes Julius Caesar.

. . . sed Caesar in omnia praeceps,

nīl āctum crēdēs cum quid superesset agendum, . . .

(LUCAN, *BELLUM CĪVILE* II.656–57)

praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong

supersum (*super-* + *sum*), **superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus** remain, be left

62. Pliny reassures the senators about the emperor Trajan's concern for them.

vōs ille† praesentēs, vōs etiam absentēs in cōnsiliō habet.

(PLINY THE YOUNGER, *PANĒGYRICUS* 62)

†**ille** refers to Trajan.

praesēns, praesentis present

63. The historian reports an eclipse that stops a nascent mutiny of Roman troops prone to superstition.

noctem minācem et in scelus ēruptūram fors lēnīvit; nam lūna clārō repente caelō
vīsa languēscere. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* I.28)

mināx, minācis menacing, threatening
ērupō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth
lēniō, lēnīre, lēnī/lēnīvī, lēnītus moderate, calm, mitigate
repente (adv.) suddenly, without warning
languēscō, languēscere, languī, — grow weak; fail; wane

64. A group of Roman soldiers battling the Britons meets with a reversal.

ubi ventum ad aggerem, dum missilibus certābātur, plūs vulnerum in nōs et
plēraeque caedēs oriēbantur. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* XII.35)

agger, aggeris *m.* earthwork; fortification, rampart
missile, missilis, -ium *n.* projectile
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
plērique, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

65. The biographer describes the changes made by Augustus to Rome.

urbem neque prō[†] maiestāte imperiī ornātam et inundātiōnibus incendiisque ob-
noxiam excoluit adeō ut iūre sit glōriātus marmoream sē relinquere quam laterīciam
accēpisset. (SUETONIUS, *VITA AUGUSTI* 28)

†prō , <i>here</i> , in accordance with	excolō, excolere, excolūi, excultus cultivate, improve, develop, decorate
maiestās, maiestātis <i>f.</i> dignity, majesty	glōrior (1-tr.) boast
ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate	marmoreus, -a, -um made of marble, marble
inundātiō, inundātiōnis <i>f.</i> flood	laterīcius, -a, -um made of brick
incendium, incendiū <i>n.</i> fire	
obnoxius, -a, -um exposed, vulnerable	

66. Macrobius comments on an aspect of Vergilian style.

vīs audīre illum tantā brevitatē dīcentem ut artārī magis et contrahī brevītās ipsa nōn
possit? “Et campōs ubi Troia fuit.” ecce paucissimīs verbīs maximam cīvītātem
hausit et absorpsit, nōn reliquit illī nec[†] ruīnam. (MACROBIUS, *SATURNĀLIA* V.1.8)

brevītās, brevītātis <i>f.</i> brevity	absorbeō, absorbēre, absorpsī, absorptus engulf, devour
artō (1-tr.) restrict; reduce, compress	†nec , <i>here</i> , not even; the redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.
contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus contract, reduce	ruīna, ruīnae <i>f.</i> ruin(s)
hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus drain, empty out, consume	

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *In Verrem II* 2.162

Cicero paints a dramatic portrait of one of Verres' victims, who was barbarously and illegally punished.

caedēbātur virgīs in mediō forō Messānae cīvis Rōmānus, iūdicēs, cum intereā nūllus gemitus, nūlla vōx alia illīus miserī inter dolōrem crepitumque plāgārum audiēbātur nisi haec: “Cīvis Rōmānus sum.” hāc sē commemorātiōne cīvitātis omnia verbera dēpulsūrum cruciātumque ā corpore dēiectūrum arbitrābātur; is nōn modo hoc nōn perfēcit, ut virgārum vim dēprecārētur, sed cum implōrāret saepius ūsurpāretque nōmen cīvitātis, crux—crux, inquam—īnfēlicī et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem vīderat, comparābātur.

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus beat, strike
virga, virgae *f.* twig, shoot; rod, stick
Messāna, Messānae *f.* Messana (a town in Italy)
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
intereā (*adv.*) meanwhile
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
dolōr, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
crepitus, crepitūs *m.* sharp sound, crashing, cracking
plāga, plāgae *f.* blow, stroke
commemorātiō, commemorātiōnis *f.* memory; reminder
verbera, verberum *n. pl.* instrument for flogging, switch; blows, floggings, lashes

dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus
drive away
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, topple over; avert, divert
dēprecor (1-tr.) ward off by prayer
implōrō (1-tr.) ask for; entreat
ūsurpō (1-tr.) take possession of; utter or invoke (repeatedly)
crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross
aerumnōsus, -a, -um wretched, suffering
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; set up

In 70 B.C.E. Cicero had his first great legal success with his prosecution of C. Verres, who was found guilty of governing Sicily badly and corruptly. Cicero had been quaestor in Sicily some years earlier, and **clientēs** (dependents) acquired at the time asked Cicero to take the case. Cicero's preparation was so thorough and the evidence against Verres so damning that Cicero had delivered only the first of several speeches (*Actiō Prima in Verrem*, First Action Against Verres) when Verres admitted defeat. Cicero later published his remaining argument, the *Actiō Secunda in Verrem*, which is divided into five books. The refined style of these speeches is evidence of the great rhetorical skill that Cicero had already achieved by the age of thirty-six.

2. Cicero, *In Verrem II* 2.163

Cicero attacks Verres directly for his barbarous treatment of a Roman citizen.

cum ignēs ardentēsq̄ue lāminae cēterīque cruciātūs admovēbantur, sī tē illiūs† acerba implōrātiō et vōx miserābilis nōn inhibēbat, nē cīvium quidem Rōmānōrum quī tum aderant flētū et gemitū maximō commovēbāre? in crucem tū agere ausus es quemquam quī sē cīvem Rōmānum esse dīceret?

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire
lāmina, lāminae *f.* thin sheet of metal, blade
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* (instrument of) torture
admoveō (**ad-** + **moveō**) move toward; apply, inflict
 †**illiūs** refers to one of Verres's victims.
implōrātiō, implōrātiōnis *f.* appeal, entreaty

miserābilis, miserābile miserable, wretched
inhibeō (**in-** + **habeō**), **inhibere, inhibuī, inhibitus** hold back, restrain, check
flētus, flētūs *m.* weeping, tears
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
commoveō (**con-** + **moveō**) disturb, trouble
crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross

3. Cicero, *Prō Lēge Māniliā* 14–16

Cicero explains how even the threat of war affects the provinces, particularly Asia, one of the wealthiest.

itaque haec vōbīs prōvincia, Quirītēs, sī et bellī ūtilitātem et pācis dignitātem retinēre vultis, nōn modo ā calamitāte sed etiam ā metū calamitātis est dēfendenda. nam in cēterīs rēbus cum vēnit calamitās, tum dētrīmentum accipitur; at in vectīgālibus nōn solum adventus malī sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem. nam cum hostium cōpia nōn longē absunt, etiam sī inruptiō nūlla facta est, tamen pecua relinquuntur, agrī cultūra dēseritur, mercātōrum nāvīgātiō conquiēscit. ita neque ex portū neque ex decumīs† neque ex scrīptūrā vectīgāl cōservārī potest; quārē saepe tōtīus annī frūctus ūnō rūmōre perīculī atque ūnō bellī terrōre āmittitur.

itaque (conj.) and so, and therefore
Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
ūtilitās, ūtilitātis *f.* usefulness, advantage
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* rank, status, dignity
retineō (**re-** + **teneō**), **retinēre, retinuī, retentus** keep hold of, retain
calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend
dētrīmentum, dētrīmentī *n.* harm
at (conj.) but
vectīgāl, vectīgālis, -ium *n.* (tax) revenue
adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival
afferō (**ad-** + **ferō**), **afferre, attulī, allātus** bring toward, bring forth
irruptiō, irruptiōnis *f.* assault, incursion

pecua, pecuum *n. pl.* farm animals
cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon, desert, forsake
mercātor, mercātōris *m.* merchant, trader
nāvīgātiō, nāvīgātiōnis *f.* sailing, voyaging
conquiēscō, conquiēscere, conquiēvī, — rest; cease
portus, portūs *m.* harbor, port
 †**decumus, here, subst.,** tenth; tax on grain production
scrīptūra, scrīptūrae *f.* writing; tax on renting grazing land
cōservō (**con-** + **servō**) (1-tr.) preserve thoroughly, maintain
frūctus, frūctūs *m.* profit, benefit; revenue
terror, terrōris *m.* fear, terror
āmittō (**ā-** + **mittō**) send away; lose

In 66 B.C.E. Cicero delivered the *Prō Lēge Māniliā* endorsing a bill that was meant to strengthen Pompey's hand in dealing with Rome's enemies in the East.

4. Cicero, *Prō Lēge Māniliā* 24–25

The orator cites Mithridates, king of Pontus and longtime enemy of Rome in the East, as an example of the resilience of defeated kings.

itaque tantum victus efficere potuit† quantum incolumis numquam est ausus optāre. nam cum sē in rēgnum suum recēpisset, nōn fuit eō contentus quod eī praeter spem acciderat, ut illam posteā quam pulsus erat terram umquam attingeret, sed in exercitum nostrum clārum atque victōrem impetum fēcit. sinite hōc locō, Quirītēs, sicut poētae solent quī rēs Rōmānās scribunt, praeterīre mē nostram calamitātem, quae tanta fuit ut eam ad aurīs imperātōris nōn ex proeliō nuntius sed ex sermōne rūmor adferret.

itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly

†**potuit**, *subject is Mithridates*

incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe, sound

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

recipiō (*re-* + *capiō*) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw

contentus, -a, -um content

posteā quam (conj.) after

atingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus touch

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror

impetus, impetūs *m.* assault, attack

sinō, sinere, siī/sīvī, situm allow, permit

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)

sicut (conj.) just as

praetereō (*praeter-* + *eō*), **praeterīre, praeterīi/praeterīvī, praeteritus** pass by; leave unmentioned

calamitās, calamitātis *f.* misfortune; disaster

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

nuntius, nuntii *m.* announcement; reporter

sermō, sermōnis *m.* conversation; common talk

afferō (*ad-* + *ferō*), **afferre, attulī, allātus** bring toward, report, announce

5. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 1–2

Cicero opens his first speech against Catiline with a barrage of hostile questions directed at Catiline himself, who was present.

Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs ēlūdet? quem ad finem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra voltūque mōvērunt? patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsilī cēperis quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? ō tempora, ō mōrēs! senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit? immō vērō etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsignat oculīs ad caedem unum quemque nostrum.

ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way (to);
quō ūsque, (up) to what point, how far
abūtor (ab- + ūtor) abuse (+ abl.)
patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, patience
furor, furōris *m.* madness
ēlūdō, ēlūdere, ēlūsī, ēlūsus mock
effrēnātus, -a, -um unbridled, unrestrained
iactō (1-tr.) throw, hurl
nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
Palātium, Palātī *n.* (the) Palatine (hill)
vigilia, vigiliae *f.* watch (divided into four segments to cover a night)
concurus, concursūs *m.* gathering
mūnītus, -a, -um well fortified, well defended
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression; face

pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
cōnstringō, cōnstringere, cōnstrīnxī, cōnstrictus
 restrain
scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last
superior, superius (comparative adj.) upper; previous, earlier
convocō (con- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon *or* call together
ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware of, fail to recognize
immō vērō (adv.) no, even
particeps, participis *m.* participant, sharer
notō (1-tr.) mark
dēsignō (1-tr.) point out
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

6. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.34

Cicero reflects on the qualities of a truly free person.

quis igitur vivit ut volt nisi quī rēctē vivit? quī gaudet officiō, cui[†] vivendī via cōnsiderāta atque prōvīsa est, quī nē lēgibus quidem propter metum pāret, sed eās sequitur et colit quia id salūtāre esse maximē iūdicat, quī nihil dīcit, nihil facit, nihil cōgitat dēnique nisi libenter ac liberē, cuius omnia cōnsilia rēsque omnēs quās gerit ab ipsō proficiscuntur eōdemque referuntur, nec est ūlla rēs quae plūs apud eum polleat quam ipsius voluntās atque iūdicium; cui quidem etiam, quae vim habēre maximam dīcitur, Fortūna ipsa cēdit, sī, ut sapiēns poēta dīxit, “suīs ea cuique fingitur mōribus.”

rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in),
be glad, be pleased

officium, officiū *n.* obligation; duty, service
[†]**cui**, *here*, Dative of Agent

cōnsiderō (1-tr.) examine, contemplate

prōvideō (**prō-** + **videō**) foresee; provide for

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend, cherish
salūtāris, salūtāre that promotes health, salutary

iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

libenter (adv.) willingly, with pleasure

polleō, pollēre, —, — exert power, have
importance

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, choice

iūdicium, iūdicī *n.* judgment

fingō, fingere, fīxī, fictus form, fashion, make

7. Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* VII.1.3

Cicero writes to his friend Marius about the barbarity of the **vēnātiōnēs**, the hunting portion of Roman games.

sed quae potest hominī esse politō dēlectātiō cum aut homō imbēcillus ā valentissimā bestiā laniātur aut praeclāra bestia vēnābulō trānsverberātur? quae tamen, sī videnda sunt, saepe vīdistī, neque nōs quī haec spectāvimus quicquam novī vīdimus. extrēmum elephantōrum diēs fuit. in quō admīrātiō magna vulgī atque turbae, dēlectātiō nūlla exstitit; quīn etiam† misericordia quaedam cōsecūta est atque opīniō eius modī: esse quandam illī bēluae cum genere hūmānō societātem.

politus, -a, -um polished; refined	vulgus, vulgī <i>n.</i> common people, (the) multitude
dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis <i>f.</i> (source of) delight, amusement	turba, turbae <i>f.</i> crowd
imbēcillus, -a, -um weak, feeble	ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itī, — appear, emerge
bestia, bestiae <i>f.</i> beast, animal, creature	† quīn etiam, <i>introduces a correction of something just said, no, even</i>
laniō (1-tr.) tear savagely, mutilate	misericordia, misericordiae <i>f.</i> pity
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; splendid, magnificent	cōsequor (con- + sequor) follow (as a consequence)
vēnābulum, vēnābulī <i>n.</i> hunting spear	opīniō, opīniōnis <i>f.</i> opinion, belief
trānsverberō (1-tr.) strike so as to pierce through, transfix	bēlua, bēluae <i>f.</i> beast
extrēmus, -a, -um last	hūmānus, -a, -um human
elephantus, elephantī <i>m.</i> elephant	societās, societātis <i>f.</i> fellowship, society; (close) relationship, connection
admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis <i>f.</i> wonder, astonishment	

Cicero's letters *Ad Familiārēs* in sixteen books are addressed to a wide variety of friends and acquaintances and treat of many subjects. Also included in the collection are replies from many of the addressees. The *Ad Familiārēs* may have been edited for publication by Cicero's freedman and secretary, Tiro.

8. Catullus XII (hendecasyllable)

The poet addresses an acquaintance with an annoying habit.

Marrūcīne Asinī, manū sinistrā
nōn bellē ūteris: in iocō atque vīnō
tollis lintea neglegentiōrum.

hoc salsum esse putās? fugit tē,† inepte;
quamvīs sordida rēs et invenustast. 5

nōn crēdis mihi? crēde Polliōnī
frātrī, quī tua furta vel talentō
mūtārī velit; est enim lepōrum
differtus puer ac facētiārum.

quārē aut hendecasyllabōs trecentōs 10
exspectā, aut mihi linteum remitte,
quod mē nōn movet aestimātiōne,
vērumst mnēmosynum meī sodālis.

nam sūdāria Saetaba ex Hibērīs
mīsērunt mihi mūnerī Fabullus 15
et Vērānius: haec amem necessest
ut Vērāniolum meum et Fabullum.

Marrūcīnus Asinius, Marrūcīnī Asinī *m.*
Marrucinus Asinius
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left
bellē (adv.) prettily, neatly, becomingly
iocus, iocī *m.* jest, joke
vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take
away, carry off
linteum, linteī *n.* linen cloth, napkin
neglegēns, neglegentis careless, heedless
salsus, -a, -um salty; witty
†**fugit tē, supply ratiō, ratiōnis** *f.* reason
ineptus, -a, -um silly, inept, foolish
quamvīs (adv.) as you will, ever so
sordidus, -a, -um dirty; mean, vulgar
invenustus, -a, -um ungraceful, inelegant
Polliō, Polliōnis *m.* Pollio
furtum, furtī *n.* theft, robbery
talentum, talentī *n.* talent (a sum of money)

lepor, lepōris *m.* pleasantness, charm
differtus, -a, -um stuffed, filled full (+ gen.)
facētia, facētiārum *f. pl.* wit, drollery, humor
hendecasyllabī, hendecasyllabōrum *m. pl.*
hendecasyllables
remittō (re- + mittō) send back, return
aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value, (monetary)
worth
mnēmosynum, mnēmosynī *n.* remembrance,
token
sodālis, sodālis, -ium *m.* comrade, companion
sūdārium, sūdāriī *n.* cloth; napkin
Saetabus, -a, -um of Saetabis (a town in Spain);
Spanish
Hibērī, Hibērōrum *m. pl.* Iberians, Spaniards
Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus
Vērānius, Vērāniī *m.* Veranius
Vērāniolum, Vērāniolī *m.* (dear) little Veranius

9. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.199–207

The poet summarizes one of the most important principles of nature.

dēnique cūr hominēs tantōs nātūra parāre†
 nōn potuit, pedibus quī pontum per vada possent 200
 trānsire et magnōs manibus dīvellere montīs
 multaue vīvendō vītālia vincere saecula,
 sī nōn māteriēs quia rēbus reddita certast
 gignundīs, ē quā cōnstat quid possit orīrī?
 nīl igitur fierī dē nīlō posse fatendumst, 205
 sēmine quandō opus est rēbus, quō quaeque creātae
 āeris in tenerās possint prōferrier aurās.

dēnique (adv.) finally

†**parō**, *here*, produce

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

pontus, pontī *m.* sea

vadum, vadī *n.* shallow, shoal

trānseō (trāns- + eō), **trānsire**, **trānsīi**/trānsīvī,
 trānsitus go across, cross

dīvellō, dīvellere, dīvellī, dīvulsus tear apart,
 tear up

vītālis, vītāle living, vital; life-giving

saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation

māteriēs, māteriēi *f.* matter, material, primal
 substance

reddō (red- + dō) give back; render

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus beget, produce;

gignundīs = *archaic form of gignendīs*

cōnstō (con- + stō), **cōnstāre, cōnstīti**,
cōnstātūrus stand still; be composed (of),
 consist (in); be fixed

sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed

quandō (conj.) since

creō (1-tr.) create, conceive

āēr, āeris *m.* air

tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate

prōferō (prō- + ferō), **prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus**
 bring forth; *passive*, come forth, emerge;

prōferrier = *archaic form of prōferri*

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.39

The effect on Caesar's men of rumors about the Germans

dum paucōs diēs ad† Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur,† ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitudine corporum Germānōs, incredibīlī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant—saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse—tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. hic primum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs† reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiāe causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant. quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī ut timōris suspīciōnem vitārent remanēbant. hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre† poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne perīculum miserābantur. vulgō tōtis castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam īī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātūī praerant, perturbābantur.

†ad, here, at, near

Vesontiō, Vesontiōnis *f.* Vesontio (the chief town of the Sequani, a Gallic tribe)

frūmentārius, -a, -um of grain;

rēs frūmentāria, grain supply

commeātus, commeātūs *m.* cargo; provisions

†**morātur**, subject is Caesar

percontātiō, percontātiōnis *f.* interrogation

Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

mercātor, mercātōris *m.* merchant, trader

magnitūdō, magnitūdīnis *f.* magnitude, size

Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans

incredibīlis, incredibīle unbelievable

exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis *f.* training, exercise; skill, proficiency

praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare

numerus, numerī *m.* number; **saepe numerō**, often (in respect to number)

congregior (**con-** + **gradior**) approach; join battle

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

subitō (adv.) suddenly

occupō (1-tr.) seize

mediocriter (adv.) to a moderate degree

perturbō (1-tr.) upset, disturb, agitate

tribūnus, tribūnī *m.* tribune, military commander

†**praefectus, praefectī** *m.* commander, officer

mīlitāris, mīlitāre military; **rēs mīlitāris**, military affairs, military practice

ūsus, ūsus *m.* use, experience

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will; willingness, approval

nōnnūllī, -ae, -a a number, not a few, some

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

addūcō (**ad-** + **dūcō**) lead (toward); induce, influence

suspīciō, suspīciōnis *f.* suspicion; trace

vītō (1-tr.) avoid

remaneō (**re-** + **maneō**) remain

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion; make (up), simulate; compose

interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

†**teneō**, here, hold back

abditus, -a, -um hidden

tabernāculum, tabernāculī *n.* tent

queror, querī, questus sum complain, protest; lament

familiāris, familiāre belonging to one's household; well known, familiar; *subst.*, friend, intimate

commūnis, commūne common, shared

miseror (1-tr.) pity

vulgō (adv.) commonly; all together

testāmentum, testāmentī *n.* will

obsignō (1-tr.) affix a seal to, seal

paulātim (adv.) little by little

centuriō, centuriōnis *m.* centurion (an officer commanding a century)

equitātus, equitātūs *m.* cavalry

11. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.1

A profile of the Suebi, a German tribe

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā suīs ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. hī rursus invicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus[†] bellī intermittitur. sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus. quae rēs et cibī genere et cōtīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs[†] nullō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgīdissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

Suēbī, Suēbōrum *m. pl.* (the) Suebi (a German tribe)
bellicōsus, -a, -um warlike, fond of war
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
pāgus, pāgī *m.* district
quotannīs (adv.) yearly, every year
singulī, -ae, -a individual
armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier
bellō (1-intr.) wage war
ēdūcō (ē- + dūcō) lead out
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish
rursus (adv.) again
 —, **vīcis** *f.* turn; succession; **invicem**, in turn
remanēō (re- + manēō) remain
cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; method, way
[†]**ūsus, ūsus** *m.* use, experience, practice
intermittō (inter- + mittō) interrupt
prīvātus, -a, -um private
sēparātus, -a, -um separate
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; farm
frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain
lac, lactis *n.* milk
pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock

vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis *f.* hunting (activity)
cibus, cibī *m.* food
cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily
exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis *f.* physical exercise, practice
[†]**ā puerīs, here**, from boyhood
officiū, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training
assuēfaciō, assuēfacere, assuēfēcī, assuēfactus
 make accustomed, accustom
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice
immānis, immāne enormous, tremendous
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* size, magnitude
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* practice, custom, habit
addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead (toward)
frīgīdus, -a, -um cold, icy
vestītus, vestītūs *m.* clothes, clothing
pellis, pellis, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide
exiguitās, exiguitātis *f.* smallness, scantiness
apertus, -a, -um open; exposed, uncovered
lavō, lavāre/lavere, lavī, lautus/lōtus wash;
passive, wash oneself
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

12. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.44

Caesar reports on a rivalry between two of his centurions.

erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī centuriōnēs quī iam prīmīs ordinibus adpropinquārent, Tītus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō[†] summīs simultātibus contendēbant. ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad[†] mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, “quid dubitās,” inquit,[†] “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis expectās? hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.” haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit[†] extrā mūnitiōnēs quāque[†] hostium pars cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit. nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vallō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs inmittit atque ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit. quō percussō exanimātōque hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt. succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī

centuriō, centuriōnis *m.* centurion

ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank

appropinquō (1-intr.) approach; be close (to)
(+ dat.)

Tītus Pullō, Tīti Pullōnis *m.* Titus Pullo

Lūcius Vorēnus, Lūci Vorēni *m.* Lucius Vorenus

perpetuus, -a, -um continual

contrōversia, contrōversiae *f.* dispute

anteferō (ante- + ferō), **anteferre, antetuli,**

antelātus place or rank above, prefer

[†]**locus, here,** rank

simultās, simultātis *f.* quarrel, feud

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus
struggle

[†]**ad, here,** at, near

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis *f.* fortification

[†]**inquit, prōcēdit, historical present tense, used here**
and in several subsequent verbs to add vividness;
may be translated as present or past

probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate

iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine

prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) proceed, advance

extrā (prep. + acc.) outside

[†]**quā, here** (adv.), where

cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together

irrupō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptus break in,
burst into

vallum, vallī *n.* palisade (of stakes), fortification

contineō (con- + teneō), **continēre, continuī,**
contentus hold in, contain

vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, show respect to; dread, fear

exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis *f.* opinion, judgment

subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow close behind

mediocris, mediocre moderate, fairly small

spatium, spatī *n.* space, interval

pīlum, pīlī *n.* spear, javelin

immittō (in- + mittō) send in, send against

multitudō, multitudinis *f.* multitude

prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prō(cu)currī, prōcursum
run forward, run out in front

trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix

percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike

exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill

scūtum, scūtī *n.* shield

prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus protect,
defend

ūniversus, -a, -um all together

coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast

prōgredior (prō- + gradior) go forward, advance
facultās, facultātis *f.* ability, power; opportunity,
possibility

trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus pierce
through

verūtum, verūtī *n.* (short) throwing spear

balteus, baltei *m.* shoulder band, sword belt

dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfixī, dēfixus embed, bury, stick

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus turn (something)
away

vāgīna, vāgīnae *f.* sheath

ēdūcō (ē- + dūcō) lead forth; draw

dexter, dextra, dextrum right

impediō, impedire, impediī/impedivī, impeditus
obstruct, hinder, impede

circumsistō, circumsistere, —, — surround

succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum run to
aid, assist, help

subvenit. ad hunc sē cōfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitudō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus gerit atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum īferiōrem dēiectus concidit. huic rursus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā cum laude intrā mūnitiōnēs sē recipiunt. sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque† versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salutīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

subveniō (**sub-** + **veniō**) come to the aid (of), assist

cōfestim (adv.) immediately

Pullō, Pullōnis *m.* Titus Pullo

multitudō, multitudinis *f.* multitude

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus reverse; change; **sē convertere**, to direct oneself

verūtum, verūtī *n.* (short) throwing spear

trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus pierce through

Vorēnus, Vorēnī *m.* Vorenus

comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand

prōpellō (**prō-** + **pellō**), **prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus** push forward, repel

īnstō (**in-** + **stō**), **īnstāre, īnstītī, īnstātūrus** press (hostilely), press on, pursue

īferior, īferius lower

dēiciō (**dē-** + **iaciō**) throw or push down

concidō (**con-** + **cadō**), **concidere, concidī, —** fall down, collapse

rursus (adv.) again

circumveniō (**circum-** + **veniō**) (tr.) surround

subsidium, subsidiī *n.* aid, help

ambō, ambae, ambō (pl. adj. and pron.) both; **ambō** = *masc. pl. nom.*

incolumis, incolume unharmed; safe

complūrēs, complūra/complūria several, very many

laus, laudis *f.* praise

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis *f.* fortification

recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw

contentiō, contentiōnis *f.* effort; rivalry; conflict

certāmen, certāminis *n.* contest; fight, battle

†**uterque, utraque, utrumque** (indef. pron.) each (of two)

versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning round

dīiūdicō (1-tr.) settle, decide

anteferō (**ante-** + **ferō**), **anteferre, antetulī,**

antelātus place or rank above, prefer

13. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.18

Part of Caesar's Gallic anthropology

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēsum et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequatur. in reliquīs vitae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod[†] suōs liberōs,[†] nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur filiumque puerilī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dīcunt.

Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
prōgnātus, -a, -um born, descended
praedicō (1-tr.) declare, proclaim
druidēs, druidum *m. pl.* (the) druids (Gallic priests)
prōdō (prō- + dō) put forth; report
spatium, spatī *n.* space, period (of time)
numerus, numerī *m.* number
finīo, finīre, finīi/finīvī, finītus limit; determine, fix
nātālis, nātāle of or belonging to one's birth; **diēs nātālis**, birthday
mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *m.* month
initium, initī *n.* beginning
observō (1-tr.) observe, regard

subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow after, succeed
īnstitūtum, īnstitūti *n.* practice, institution
ferē (adv.) nearly, almost
[†]**quod, here** (conj.) the fact that
[†]**liberōs, here**, children
adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī, adultum grow up, reach maturity
mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service
sustineō (sub- + teneō) undergo, bear
palam (adv.) openly
adeō (ad- + eō) approach
puerilis, puerile of or belonging to a boy
cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* sight, view
assistō, assistere, astitī, — stand (near)
turpis, turpe base, shameful

14. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 8

The historian identifies an important difference between the Athenians and the Romans.

sed profectō fortūna in omnī rē dominātur; ea rēs cūnctās ex lubīdine magis quam ex vērō celebrat obscūratque. Athēniēnsium rēs gestae, sicutī ego aestumō, satis amplae magnificaeque fuēre, vērūm aliquantō minōrēs tamen quam fāmā feruntur. sed quia prōvērē ibi scrīptōrum magna ingenia, per terrārum orbem Athēniēnsium facta prō maxumīs celebrantur. ita eōrum quī fēcēre virtūs tanta habētur quantum eam verbīs potuēre extollere praeclāra ingenia. at populō Rōmānō numquam ea cōpia fuit, quia prūdentissimus quisque maxumē negōtiōsus erat, ingenium nēmō sine corpore exercēbat, optumus quisque facere quam dīcere, sua ab aliīs bene facta laudārī quam ipse aliōrum nārrāre mālēbat.

profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
dominor (1-intr.) be master, hold sway, rule
libidō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
celebrō (1-tr.) make famous, celebrate
obscurō (1-tr.) make obscure, cover up
Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēnsium *m. pl.* Athenians
sicutī (conj.) just as
amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished
magnificus, -a, -um magnificent, splendid
aliquantō (adv.) somewhat, not a little
prōveniō (*prō- + veniō*) come forth, appear
scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands, world
extollō, extollere, —, — raise up, elevate; praise
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous
at (conj.) but
prūdēs, prūdentis wise, sensible, clever
negōtiōsus, -a, -um busy, occupied, devoted to business
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of)

15. Vergil, *Eclogues* II.63–68

The lovesick shepherd Corydon speaks to his unattainable beloved, Alexis.

torva leaena lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam,
flōrentem cytisum sequitur lascīva capella,
tē Corydōn, o† Alexi: trahit sua quemque voluptās.
aspice, arātra iugō referunt suspēnsa iuvenċi,
et sōl crēscētis dēcēdēns duplicat umbrās:
mē tamen ūrit amor; quis† enim modus adsit amōrī?

65

torvus, -a, -um fierce
leaena, leaenae *f.* lioness
lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, — bloom, blossom
cytisus, cytisī *m.* or *f.* clover
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
Corydōn, Corydōnis *m.* Corydon
†ō here scans *short* and is in hiatus (not elided)
Alexis, Alexis *m.* Alexis; **Alexi** = *voc. sing.*
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; attract
voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look (toward), behold
arātrum, arātrī *n.* plough
iugum, iugī *n.* yoke
suspendō, suspendere, suspendī, suspēnsus
hang up, suspend
iuvenċus, iuvenċī *m.* bull; ox
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase
dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down
duplicō (1-tr.) double
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn; inflame; consume
†**quis, interrog. pron. used adjectivally**

16. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.18–25

The poet addresses a child whose birth will initiate a new golden age on earth.

at tibi prīma, puer, nūllō mūnuscula cultū
errantīs hederās passim cum baccare tellūs
mixtaque rīdentī colocāsia fundet acanthō.
ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae
ūbera, nec magnōs metuent armenta leōnēs;
ipsa tibi blandōs fundent cūnābula flōrēs.
occidet et serpēns, et fallāx herba venēnī
occidet; Assyrium vulgō nāscētur amōmum.

20

25

at (conj.) but
mūnusculum, mūnusculī *n.* small gift
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation
hedera, hederæ *f.* ivy
passim (adv.) everywhere
baccar, baccaris *n.* *baccar*, (the plant) cyclamen
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix
rīdeō, rīdere, rīsī, rīsus smile
colocāsium, colocāsī *n.* Egyptian bean
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
acanthus, acanthī *m.* bear's-foot, acanthus
lac, lactis *n.* milk
distentus, -a, -um swollen, distended

capella, capellae *f.* she-goat
ūber, ūberis *n.* udder
armentum, armentī *n.* herd (of cattle)
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
blandus, -a, -um charming, soothing
cūnābula, cūnābulōrum *n. pl.* cradle
flōs, flōris *m.* flower
serpēns, serpentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* serpent, snake
fallāx, fallācis deceitful, treacherous
herba, herbae *f.* grass; plant; herb
venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison
Assyrius, -a, -um Assyrian
vulgō (adv.) commonly
amōmum, amōmī *n.* balsam

17. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.657–63

Aeneas reports what he said in response to his father's refusal to join the family in fleeing from Troy.

mēne efferre pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō
 spērāstī tantumque nefās patriō excidit ōre?
 sī nihil ex tantā superīs placet urbe relinqui,
 et sedet hoc† animō peritūraeque addere Troiae
 tēque tuōsque iuvat, patet istī iānua lētō,
 iamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,
 nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obtruncat ad† ārās.

660

efferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extulī, ēlātus

bear forth

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

genitor, genitoris *m.* father

patrius, -a, -um of a father, paternal

excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, —
 fall (from)

superī, superōrum *m. pl.* (the) gods above
sedeō, sedere, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated;
 be fixed

†**hoc**, *here*, scans as if it were spelled **hocc**

addō (ad- + dō) add

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist; please

pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open

iānua, iānuae *f.* door; doorway, entrance

lētum, lētī *n.* death, destruction

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles)

obtruncō (1-tr.) slay, slaughter, butcher

†**ad**, *here*, at, near

18. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.382–87

Enraged Dido concludes her speech to Aeneas after he has claimed that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

spērō equidem mediīs, sī quid pia nūmina possunt,
 supplicia hausūrum scopulīs et nōmine Dīdō
 saepe vocātūrum. sequar ātrīs ignibus absēns
 et, cum frīgida mors animā sēdūxerit artūs,
 omnibus umbra locīs aderō. dabis, improbe, poenās.
 audiam et haec Mānīs veniet mihi fāma sub īmōs.

385

nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine
 spirit, numen

supplicium, supplicī *n.* punishment

hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus/*hausus drink
 (in), absorb; **hausūrum**, *supply* tē

scopulus, scopulī *m.* projecting rock, boulder,
 crag

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

frīgīdus, -a, -um cold, icy

sēdūcō (sē- + dūcō) lead away, separate

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb

improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless

Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes (spirits of the
 dead); the underworld

īmus, -a, -um lowest, deepest

19. Horace, *Carmina* III.9 (Asclepiadean)

A dialogue between former lovers

Dōnec grātus eram tibi
 nec quisquam† potior bracchia candidae
 cervīcī iuvenis dabat,
 Persārum viguī rēge beātor.

“dōnec nōn aliā magis
 arstitī neque erat Lȳdia post Chloēn,
 multī Lȳdia nōminis
 Rōmānā viguī clārior Īliā.”

mē nunc Thrēssa Chloē regit,
 dulcīs docta modōs† et citharae sciēns,
 prō quā nōn metuam morī,
 sī parcent animae fāta superstitī.

“mē torret face mūtuā
 Thūrīnī Calais filius Ornytī,
 prō quō bis patiar morī,
 sī parcent puerō fāta superstitī.”

†**quisquam**, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*
potior, **potius** more powerful; preferable
bracchium, **bracchiū** *n.* (lower) arm
candidus, **-a**, **-um** white, clear, bright, radiant
cervix, **cervīcis** *f.* neck
iuvenis, **iuvenis** *m.* young man
Persae, **Persārum** *f. pl.* (the) Persians
vigēō, **vigēre**, **viguī**, — be vigorous, thrive,
 flourish, live
beātus, **-a**, **-um** happy, blessed, fortunate
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire
Lȳdia, **Lȳdiae** *f.* Lydia
Chloē, **Chloēs** *f.* Chloe; **Chloēn** = *acc. sing.*
Īlia, **Īliae** *f.* Ilia (mother of Romulus and Remus)
Thrēssa, **Thrēssae** *f.* (a) Thracian woman
dulcis, **dulce** sweet, pleasant
doctus, **-a**, **-um** learned, skilled, clever

†**modōs**, *here, Accusative of Respect*, in (respect to)
 measures or verses
cithara, **citharae** *f.* cithara; lute
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful,
 be sparing (+ *dat.*)
superstes, **superstitis** standing by, present;
 surviving
torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus** parch, roast, scorch,
 burn
fax, **facis** *f.* firebrand, torch
mūtuus, **-a**, **-um** shared, reciprocal, mutual
Thūrīnus, **-a**, **-um** of Thurii (a city in southern
 Italy)
Calais, **Calais** *m.* Calais
Ornytus, **Ornytī** *m.* Ornytus
bis (*adv.*) two times, twice

5

10

15

quid sī prīscā redit Venus
 dīductōsque iugō cōgit aēneō,
 sī flāva excutitur Chloē
 reiectaeque patet iānua Lȳdiae?

20

“quamquam sīdere pulchrīor
 ille est, tū levior cortice et inprobō
 irācundior Hadriā,
 tēcum vīvere amem, tēcum obeam lubēns.”

prīscus, -a, -um of former times, old, ancient
dīdūcō (dis- + dūcō) draw apart, separate
iugum, iugī n. yoke
cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coactus drive together, force, compel
aēneus, -a, -um of bronze, bronze
flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus shake off, cast out
Chloē, Chloēs f. Chloe
reiciō (re- + iaciō) throw back, reject

pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
iānua, iānuae f. door
Lȳdia, Lȳdiae f. Lydia
sīdus, sīderis n. star
cortex, corticis m. or f. cork
improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless; relentless
irācundus, -a, -um irascible, angry, moody
Hadria, Hadriae m. or f. Adriatic sea
obeō (ob- + eō), obīre, obī/obīvī, obitus go to meet; fall, perish, die
libēns, libentis willing, glad

20. Propertius II.19.1–8

The poet imagines that a stay in the country will keep Cynthia safe from romantic entanglements.

Etsī mē invītō discēdis, Cynthia, Rōmā,
 laetor quod sine mē dēvia rūra colēs.
 nūllus erit castīs iuvenis corruptor in agrīs,
 quī tē blanditiīs nōn sinat esse probam;
 nūlla neque† ante tuās oriētur rixa fenestrās,
 nec† tibi clāmātae somnus amārus erit.
 sōla eris et sōlōs spectābis, Cynthia, montēs
 et pecus et finēs pauperis agricolae.

5

invītus, -a, -um unwilling
Cynthia, Cynthiae f. Cynthia
laetor (1-intr.) rejoice, be glad, be delighted
dēvius, -a, -um out of the way, remote, secluded
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; inhabit
castus, -a, -um free from vice, moral, chaste
iuvenis, iuvenis young
corruptor, corruptōris m. corrupter, seducer
blanditia, blanditiāe f. ingratiating speech, blandishment; charm
sinō, sinere, sīi/sīvī, situm allow, permit

probus, -a, -um excellent, upright, virtuous
 †The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.
rixa, rixae f. altercation, brawl
fenestra, fenestrae f. window
clāmō (1-tr.) shout for, call by name
somnus, somnī m. sleep
amārus, -a, -um bitter, harsh
pecus, pecoris n. herd animal; livestock
pauper, pauperis poor

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* II.46.3–7

The historian describes a battle between the Romans and the Etruscans, particularly those from the city of Veii. Three members of the Fabii give evidence of Roman bravery.

vix explicandī ordinis spatium Etruscīs fuit cum, pīlis inter prīmam trepidātiōnem abiectīs temere magis quam ēmissīs, pugna iam in manūs, iam ad gladiōs, ubi Mars est atrōcissimus, vēnerat. inter prīmōrēs genus Fabium insigne spectāculō exemplōque cīvibus erat. ex hīs Q. Fabium—tertiō hic annō ante cōsul fuerat—prīncipem in cōnfertōs Veientēs euntem ferōx vīribus et armōrum arte Tuscus, incautum inter multās versantem hostium manūs, gladiō per pectus trānsfigit; tēlō extractō praeceps Fabius in volnus abiit.† sēnsit utraque† aciēs ūnīus virī cāsum, cēdēbatque inde Rōmānus† cum M. Fabius cōsul trānsiluit iacentis corpus obiectaque parmā, “hoc iūrāstis” inquit, “militēs, fugientēs vōs in castra reditūrōs? adeō ignāvissimōs hostēs magis timētis quam Iovem Martemque per† quōs iūrāstis? at ego iniūrātus aut victor revertar aut prope tē hīc, Q. Fabī, dīmīcāns cadam.” cōsulī tum Caesō Fabius, priōris annī cōsul: “verbīsne istīs, frāter, ut pugnent, tē

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, unfurl; spread out, extend
ordō, ordinis *m.* order; row, line, arrangement;
 (battle) order
spatium, spatī *n.* space; (space of) time, interval
Etruscī, Etruscōrum *m. pl.* (the) Etruscans
pīlum, pīlī *n.* (heavy) javelin
trepidātiō, trepidātiōnis *f.* alarm, agitation, confusion, consternation
abiciō (ab- + iaciō) cast away, throw away, cast down
temere (adv.) by chance, at random; rashly
ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send forth, hurl, cast
pugna, pugnae *f.* battle
atrōx, atrōcis dark, gloomy; cruel, fierce
prīmōrēs, prīmōrum *m. pl.* leading men, front ranks
Fabius, -a, -um of the Fabii, Fabian
īnsignis, īnsigne prominent, eminent, distinguished
spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle
exemplum, exemplī *n.* example
Q. Fabius, Q. Fabī *m.* Q. Fabius
prīnceps, prīncipis first, in front
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together
Veientēs, Veientium *m. pl.* the people of Veii, (the) Veians
ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
Tuscus, -a, -um Tuscan, Etruscan

incautus, -a, -um heedless, unaware
versō (1-intr.) turn, twist, whirl about
trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus pierce
extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī, extractus draw out, extract
praeceps, praecipitis headlong, head first
†abeō, here, fall over
†uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. adj.) each (of two)
†Rōmānus, here, collective singular, the Romans
M. Fabius, M. Fabī *m.* M. Fabius
trānsiliō, trānsilire, trānsilūī, — leap across, jump over
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie; lie dead
obiciō (ob- + iaciō) put in the way, interpose
parma, parmae *f.* (small, round) shield (carried by infantry)
iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear
ignāvus, -a, -um lazy; cowardly, spiritless; ignoble
†per, here (in oaths), by
at (conj.) but
iniūrātus, -a, -um not having taken an oath, unsworn
victor, victōris *m.* victor, conqueror
revertor, revertī, reversus sum turn back; return
prope (prep. + acc.) near
dīmīcō (1-intr.) contend, fight
Caesō Fabius, Caesōnis Fabī *m.* Caeso Fabius

impetrātūrum crēdis? dī impetrābunt per† quōs iūrāvēre; et nōs, ut decet procerēs, ut Fabiō nōmine est dignum, pugnandō potius quam adhortandō accendāmus mīlitum animōs.” sic in primum† infēnsis hastis prōvolant duo Fabiī, tōtamque mōvērunt sēcum aciem.

impetrō (1-tr.) obtain by entreaty; persuade

†**per**, *here* (in oaths), by

iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear

decet, **decēre**, **deciuit** (impersonal verb) it becomes, it befits

procerēs, **procerum** *m. pl.* leading men, leaders

Fabius, **-a**, **-um** of the Fabiī, Fabian

potius (comparative adv.) rather

adhortor (1-tr.) encourage, urge on

accendō, **accendere**, **accendī**, **accēnsus** set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse

†**primum**, **prīmī** *n.* front line

infēnsus, **-a**, **-um** hostile, threatening

hasta, **hastae** *f.* spear

prōvolō (1-intr.) fly out, fly forth; rush forward

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* VIII.7.2–8

After leading his men (against orders) far out in front of the main Roman armies and near the line of the opposing Latin forces from Tusculum, a young Titus Manlius encounters the enemy.

ibi Tusculānī erant equitēs; praeerat Geminus Maecius, vir cum genere inter suōs tum factis clārus. is, ubi Rōmānōs equitēs insignemque inter eōs praecēdentem cōnsulis filium—nam omnēs inter sē, utique illustrēs virī, nōtī erant—cognōvit, “ūnāne,” ait, “turmā Rōmānī cum Latīnīs sociisque bellum gestūrī estis? quid intereā cōsulēs, quid duo exercitūs cōsulārēs agent?” “aderunt in tempore,” Manlius inquit, “et cum illis aderit Iuppiter ipse, foederum ā vōbīs violātōrum testis, quī plūs potest polletque. sī ad† Rēgillum lacum ad satietātem vestram pugnāvimus, hīc quoque efficiēmus profectō nē nimis aciēs vōbīs et conlāta signa nōbīscum cordī sint.” ad ea Geminus paulum ab suīs equō prōvectus: “vīsne igitur, dum diēs ista venit quā magnō cōnātū exercitūs moveātis, intereā tū ipse congregī mēcum ut nostrō duōrum† iam hinc ēventū cernātur quantum eques Latīnus Rōmānō praestet?” movet ferōcem animum iuvenis seu īra seu dētractandī certāminis pudor seu inxsuperābilis vīs fātī.

Tusculānus, -a, -um of Tusculum, Tusculan
eques, equitis *m.* horseman, cavalryman
Geminus Maecius, Geminī Maeciī *m.* Geminus Maecius
insignis, insigne distinguished, outstanding
praecēdō (prae- + cēdō) go before, lead the way
utique (adv.) particularly, especially
illustris, illustre distinguished, respectable
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.
turma, turmae *f.* squadron
Latīnī, Latīnōrum *m. pl.* inhabitants of Latium, Latins
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
cōsulāris, cōsulāre consular
Manlius, Manliū *m.* Manlius
foedus, foederis *n.* pact, treaty
violō (1-tr.) violate
testis, testis, -ium *m.* witness
polleō, pollēre, —, — be strong, be powerful
†**ad, here, near**
Rēgillus lacus, Rēgillī lacūs *m.* Lake Regillus (site of an earlier Roman victory over the Latins)
satietās, satietātis *f.* satiety; loathing, disgust

profectō (adv.) in fact, assuredly
nimis (adv.) too much, excessively
cor, cordis *n.* heart; **cordī esse**, to be pleasing, to be agreeable
equus, equī *m.* horse
prōvehō, prōvehere, prōvexī, prōvectus carry forward; *passive*, proceed, advance
cōnātus, cōnātūs *m.* effort, struggle, endeavor
congregior (con- + gradior) meet, fight, contend
†**nostrō duōrum**, of us two
ēventus, ēventūs *m.* fortune, fate, lot
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus discern, observe
Latīnus, -a, -um Latin
praestō (prae- + stō), praestāre, praestitī, praestātūrus stand before, be superior
ferōx, ferōcis headstrong, fierce
iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man
seu (conj.) (or) if; **seu . . . seu . . . seu . . .**, if . . . or if . . . or if . . .
dētractō (1-tr.) decline, refuse
certāmen, certāminis *n.* contest, battle
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame; disgrace
inxsuperābilis, inxsuperābile that cannot be overcome, insurmountable

23. Lucan, *Bellum Civile* IX.961–69

The poet describes Caesar visiting the ruins of Troy.

Sīgēasque petit† fāmae mīrātor harēnās
 et Simoēntis aquās et Graiō nōbile bustō
 Rhoetion et multum dēbentis vātibus umbrās.
 circumit exustae nōmen memorābile Troiae
 magnaue Phoebēi quaerit vestīgia mūrī.
 iam silvae sterilēs et putrēs rōbore truncī
 Assaracī pressēre domōs et templa deōrum
 iam lassā rādīce tenent, ac tōta teguntur
 Pergama dūmētīs: etiam periēre ruīnae.

965

Sīgēus, -a, -um of or belonging to Sigeum
 (a town near Troy); Trojan

†**petit**, *subject is Caesar*

mīrātor, mīrātōris *m.* admirer

harēna, harēnae *f.* sand

Simoīs, Simoēntis *m.* (the river) Simois (near
 Troy)

aqua, aquae *f.* water

Graius, -a, -um Greek

nōbilis, nōbile noble; renowned, famous

bustum, bustī *n.* funeral pyre; grave mound,
 tomb

Rhoetion, Rhoetiū *n.* Rhoetion (a town near Troy)

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m. or f.* prophet; bard, poet

circumeō (circum- + eō), circumīre, circumī,
circumitus go around, encircle

exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus destroy by fire,
 burn completely

memorābilis, memorābile memorable

Phoebēus, -a, -um of or associated with Phoebus
 (Apollo)

vestigium, vestigiū *n.* trace, remnant, vestige

silva, silvae *f.* forest

sterilis, sterile barren, sterile

putris, putre decomposed, rotten, putrid

rōbur, rōboris *n.* oak tree; timber; strength,
 firmness

truncus, truncī *m.* (tree) trunk

Assaracus, Assaracī *m.* Assaracus (king of Troy)

lassus, -a, -um exhausted, weary, tired

rādīx, rādīcis, -ium *f.* root

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover

Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel
 of Troy)

dūmēta, dūmētōrum *n. pl.* thorns, thickets,
 bushes

ruīna, ruīnae *f.* ruin

Marcus Annaeus Lucānus (39–65 C.E.) was the nephew of Seneca the Younger and served as a quaestor under Nero. Discovered in a plot to kill the emperor, he was forced to take his own life. Lucan's epic style is marked by vivid and rapid narration, elegant and sometimes artificial language, and a pessimistic tone strongly in contrast to Vergil's *Aeneid*.

The *Pharsālia* or *Bellum Civile* is an epic poem in ten books, which begins with Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon and recounts the closing episodes of Rome's civil wars. Many books are devoted to the exploits of Caesar and Pompey, their final rift, and Pompey's murder in Egypt.

24. Petronius, *Satyricon* 37

A first-time guest at a wealthy man's dinner party has asked the identity of a woman scurrying about the dining room. A veteran guest offers a description of the host's wife and of the host, Trimalchio.

“uxor,” inquit, “Trimalchiōnis, Fortūnāta appellātur, quae nummōs modiō mētītur. et modo modo quid fuit? ignōscet mihi genius tuus, nōluissēs† dē manū illīus pānem accipere. nunc, nec quid nec quārē, in caelum abiit et Trimalchiōnis topanta est. ad summam,† merō merīdiē sī dixerit illī tenebrās esse, crēdet. ipse nescit quid habeat, adeō saplūtus est; sed haec lupātria prōvidet omnia, est ubi nōn putēs. est sicca, sōbria, bonōrum cōnsiliōrum—tantum aurī vidēs—est tamen malae linguae, pīca pulvīnāris. quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat. ipse† fundōs habet, quā† mīlvī volant, nummōrum nummōs. argentum in ostiārī illīus cellā plūs iacet quam quisquam in fortūnīs habet. familia vērō babae babae, nōn meherculēs putō decumam partem esse quae dominum suum nōverit.

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

Trimalchiō, Trimalchiōnis *m.* Trimalchio

Fortūnāta, Fortūnātae *f.* Fortunata

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

nummus, nummī *m.* *nummus* (a Roman coin)

modius, modī *m.* *modius* (a Roman grain measure); peck

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum measure; mete (out)

ignōscō (in- + nōscō), **ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus** forgive, pardon (+ dat.)

genius, geniī *m.* *genius* (tutelary deity of a person or place); divine nature; spiritual part

†**nōluissēs**, *verb* in apodosis of Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence (*protasis* is omitted)

pānis, pānis, -ium *m.* bread

topanta (indeclinable noun) everything
(< Greek *ta panta* transliterated into Latin)

†**ad summam**, *here*, in short, to sum up

merō merīdiē (adv.) right at noon, at noon exactly

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

saplūtus, -a, -um very rich (< Greek *zaploutos* transliterated into Latin)

lupātria, lupātriae *f.* *lupatria* (abusive term for a woman), whore

prōvideō (prō- + videō) see to, attend to

siccus, -a, -um dry

sōbrius, -a, -um sensible, sober; cautious

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

pīca, pīcae *f.* magpie

pulvīnāris, pulvīnāre of or pertaining to a cushion or pillow; resting on a couch;

pīca pulvīnāris, *apparently* a gossipy bird

†**ipse** refers to Trimalchio.

fundus, fundī *m.* (piece of) land; farm, estate

†**quā**, *here* (adv.) where

mīlvus, mīlvī *m.* kite (bird of prey)

volō (1-intr.) fly

argentum, argentī *n.* silver; silver plate

ostiārius, ostiārī *m.* doorkeeper, porter

cella, cellae *f.* small room; storeroom

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie (open); be at hand

familia, familiae *f.* household; family slaves

babae babae (interj.) *exclamation* indicating surprise and admiration babae! babae!

(< Greek *babai! babai!* transliterated into Latin)

As identified by the historian Tacitus in his *Annālēs*, **Petronius** lived during the reign of Nero in the first century C.E. In the course of describing Petronius's protracted suicide—compelled by his loss of favor with Nero—the historian gives to Petronius the title **arbiter ēlegantiae** (minister of culture) and thereby suggests what role Petronius may have played in Neronian society. It is likely that this Petronius was the author of the work entitled the *Satyricon*.

From the surviving fragments the *Satyricon* appears to have been a long work of prose fiction recounting the Odyssean and surreal adventures of three young men. The fragments are written in a mixed literary style that includes many allusions to and parodies of other works of Latin and Greek literature. Since many of the characters are drawn from the common life of the Greek settlements in southern Italy, the *Satyricon's* fragments are a valuable source of information about colloquial Latin, the **sermō cottidiānus** (daily speech), of the first century C.E. The largest fragment, usually referred to as the *Cēna Trimalchiōnis* (Banquet of Trimalchio), contains vivid speeches in character by many of the dinner guests, for the most part successful businessmen of the upper middle class.

25. Pliny the Younger, *Epistulae* I.6

Pliny writes to Tacitus and describes his version of hunting.

Rīdēbis et licet rīdeās. ego, ille quem nōstī, aprōs trēs et quidem pulcherrimōs cēpī. “ipse?” inquis. ipse; nōn tamen ut omnīnō ab inertīā meā et quiēte discēderem. ad† rētia sedēbam: erat in proximō nōn vēnābulum aut lancea, sed stilus et pugillārēs: meditābar aliquid ēnotābamque ut, sī manūs vacuās, plēnās tamen cērās reportārem. nōn est quod† contemnās hoc studendī genus. mīrum est ut animus agitātiōne mōtūque corporis excitetur. iam undique silvae et sōlitūdō ipsumque illud silentium quod vēnātiōnī datur magna cōgitātiōnis incitāmenta sunt. proinde cum vēnābere, licēbit, auctōre mē, ut pānārium et lagunculam, sic etiam pugillārēs ferās. experiēris nōn Diānam magis montibus quam Minervam inerrāre. valē.

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus laugh (at), mock
 aper, aprī *m.* wild boar
 inertia, inertiae *f.* inactivity, laziness
 quiēs, quiētis *f.* quiet, rest
 †ad, here, near
 rēte, rētis, -ium *n.* net, snare
 sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum sit
 proximū, proximī *n.* neighborhood, vicinity;
 in proximō, nearby
 vēnābulum, vēnābulī *n.* (hunting) spear
 lancea, lanceae *f.* light spear, lance
 stilus, stilī *m.* stylus (pen for writing on wax
 tablets)
 pugillārēs, pugillārium *m. pl.* writing tablets
 meditor (1-tr.) reflect upon, muse over
 ēnotō (1-tr.) note down
 vacuus, -a, -um empty
 cēra, cērae *f.* wax; wax tablet
 reportō (1-tr.) carry back
 †nōn est quod, there is not (a reason) why

contemnō, contemnere, contempsi, contemptus
 despise, disdain, value little
 studeō, studēre, studuī, — be diligent, study
 mīrus, -a, -um astonishing, wonderful
 agitātiō, agitātiōnis *f.* motion, movement; activity
 excitō (1-tr.) excite, stimulate
 undique (adv.) on all sides, everywhere
 silva, silvae *f. sing. or pl.*, forest
 sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis *f.* solitude
 silentium, silentiū *n.* silence
 vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis *f.* hunting
 cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* thinking
 incitāmentum, incitāmentī *n.* inducement,
 incentive
 proinde (adv.) accordingly
 vēnor (1-tr.) hunt
 auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
 pānārium, pānārīī *n.* bread basket
 laguncula, lagunculae *f.* little flask, small bottle
 inerrō (in- + errō) wander about in

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam I* 15–16

potestne tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut huius caelī spīritus esse iūcundus, cum sciās esse hōrum nēminem quī nesciat tē prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās Lepidō et Tullō cōsulibus stetisse in Comitīō cum tēlō, manum cōnsulum et prīncipum cīvītātis interficiendōrum causā parāvisse, scelerī ac furōrī tuō nōn mentem aliquam aut timōrem tuum sed fortūnam populī Rōmānī obstitisse? ac iam illa omittō—neque enim† sunt aut obscūra aut nōn multa commissa postea—quotiēns tū mē dēsignātum, quotiēns vērō cōnsulem interficere cōnātus es! quot ego tuās petitiōnēs ita coniectās ut vītārī posse nōn vidērentur parvā quādam dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore effūgi! nihil agis, nihil adsequeris, neque tamen† cōnārī ac velle dēsistis. quotiēns iam tibi extorta est ista sīca dē manibus, quotiēns excidit cāsū aliquō et ēlāpsa est! quae quidem quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta sit nesciō, quod eam necesse putās esse in cōsulis corpore dēfigere.

spīritus, spīritūs *m.* breath, breeze
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
prīdiē (prep. + acc.) on the day before
Kalendae, Kalendārum *f. pl.* (the) Kalends (the first day of a month)
Iānuārius, -a, -um of January
Lepidus, Lepidī *m.* Lepidus
Tullus, Tullī *m.* Tullus
Comitium, Comitī *n.* (the) Comitium (place where the assembly met)
prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief; *subst.*, leading man
furor, furōris *m.* madness
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus stand in the way; hinder, block
omittō (ob- + mittō) disregard, pass over
†**neque enim** for . . . not . . .
obscūrus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure; uncertain
commissum, commissī *n.* offense, crime
postea (adv.) after, afterward
quotiēns (adv.) how many times
dēsignātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet installed); **dēsignātum, supply cōnsulem**

petitiō, petitiōnis *f.* attack, thrust
coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast, bring
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
dēclīnātiō, dēclīnātiōnis *f.* swerving, swerve
aiō (defective verb) say; **aiunt** = 3rd pl. pres. act. *indic.*
effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape
assequor (ad- + sequor) gain, reach, attain
†**neque tamen** and yet . . . not . . .
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, — cease, leave off
extorqueō, extorquēre, extorsī, extortus twist out
sīca, sīcae *f.* dagger
excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, — fall or slip (from)
ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum slip out
abs = ab
initiō (1-tr.) consecrate
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred; *neut. subst. pl.*, sacred rites
dēvoveō, dēvovēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus dedicate
dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfixī, dēfixus fix, plant

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 4

igitur ubi animus ex multis miseriis atque periculis requiēvit et mihi relicuam aetātem ā rē publicā procul habendam dēcrēvī, nōn fuit cōnsilium socordiā atque dēsidiā bonum ōtium conterere, neque vērō agrum colundō aut vēnandō, servilibus officiis, intentum aetātem agere; sed ā quō inceptō[†] studiōque mē ambitiō mala dētinerat, eōdem regressus statuī rēs gestās populī Rōmānī carptim, ut quaeque memoriā digna vidēbantur, perscribere, eō magis quod mihi ā spē, metū, partibus rei publicae animus liber erat. igitur dē Catilinae coniūrātiōne quam vērissimē poterō[†] paucis[†] absolvam; nam id facinus in prīmīs[†] ego memorābile existimō sceleris atque periculi novitāte. dē quouis hominis mōribus pauca prius explānanda sunt quam initium nār-randī faciam.

miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, requiētum
(take a) rest; desist

relicuam = *archaic form of reliquam*

procul (adv.) at a distance, far

dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus determine,
decide, decree

socordia, socordiae *f.* laziness, indolence,
inactivity

dēsidia, dēsidiāe *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth

ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure, idleness

conterō, conterere, contrīvī, contrītus grind, wear
out; consume, spend

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; **colundō**
= *archaic form of colendō*

vēnor (1-intr.) hunt

servilis, servīle of or belonging to a slave, servile

officium, officiū *n.* obligation; duty, task

intentus, -a, -um stretched, attentive, intent

[†]**inceptum, inceptī, n.,** beginning, undertaking

ambitiō, ambitiōnis *f.* flattery, adulation; desire
for power, ambition

dētineō (dē- + teneō), dētinerē, dētīnuī, dētentus
hold back, detain; hinder, prevent

regredior (re- + gradior) go back, return

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand,
set up, establish; decide

carptim (adv.) in parts, separately

perscribō (per- + scribō) write a detailed or full
account of

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy

[†]**quam vērissimē poterō = quam vērissimē**

[†]**paucis, supply verbis**

absolvō, absolvere, absolvī, absolūtus finish,
complete; sum up, describe briefly

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

[†]**in prīmīs, here, especially, above all; first**

memorābilis, memorābile worthy of being
remembered, remarkable

existimō (ex- + aestimō) (1-tr.) reckon, suppose,
estimate

novitās, novitātis *f.* newness, strangeness

explānō (1-tr.) make plain, make clear, explain

initium, initī *n.* beginning

nārō (1-tr.) narrate

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.533–46

hīc Priamus, quamquam in mediā iam morte tenētur,

nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī iraeque pepercit:

“at tibi prō scelere,” exclāmat, “prō tālibus ausīs†

535

dī, sī qua est caelō pietās quae tālia cūret,

persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia reddant

dēbita, quī nātī cōram mē cernere lētum

fēcistī et patriōs foedāstī fūnere vultūs.

at nōn ille, satum quō tē mentīris, Achillēs

540

tālis in† hoste fuit Priamō; sed iūra fidemque

supplicis ērubuit corpusque exsanguie sepulcrō

reddidit Hectoreum mēque in mea rēgna remīsīt.”

sīc fātus senior tēlumque imbelle sine ictū

coniēcīt, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum,

545

et summō clipeī nēquīquam umbōne pependit.

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

abstineō (*abs-* + *teneō*), **abstinēre**, **abstinuī**,

abstentus hold back

parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful,

be sparing (+ *dat.*)

at (*conj.*) but

exclāmō (*1-intr.*) cry out

†**ausum**, **ausī** *n.* bold deed, exploit; crime,

outrage

pietās, **pietātis** *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

cūrō (*1-tr.*) watch over, look after

persolvō, **persolvere**, **persolvī**, **persolūtus** pay in

full; render

grātēs, **grātium** *f. pl.* thanks

praemium, **praemiū** *n.* reward, prize

reddō (*red-* + *dō*) give back, return; hand over,

deliver

cōram (*adv.*) face to face, in person

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** distinguish, deter-

mine, perceive; see

lētum, **lētī** *n.* death, destruction

patrius, **-a**, **-um** of or belonging to a father,

paternal

foedō (*1-tr.*) befoul, defile

fūnus, **fūneris** *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral (procession);

death

vultus, **vultūs** *m.* expression, countenance;

pl., face

serō, **serere**, **sēvī**, **satus** sow; engender, beget

mentior, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum** lie, tell a lie

Achillēs, **Achillis** *m.* Achilles

†**in**, *here*, in the case of

supplex, **supplicis** suppliant

ērubescō, **ērubescere**, **ērubuī**, — blush

(for shame); feel shame in the presence of

exsanguis, **exsanguie** bloodless

sepulcrum, **sepulcrī** *n.* tomb, grave

Hectoreus, **-a**, **-um** of Hector, Hector's

rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm

remittō (*re-* + *mittō*) send back

for (*1-tr.*) speak, utter

senex, **senis** old

imbellis, **imbelle** not suited to warfare, unwarlike

ictus, **ictūs** *m.* thrust, blow

coniciō (*con-* + *iaciō*) throw (together), cast

raucus, **-a**, **-um** harsh-sounding, noisy, raucous

prōtinus (*adv.*) immediately, straightway

aes, **aeris** *n.* copper, bronze

repellō (*re-* + *pellō*), **repellere**, **reppulī**, **repulsus**

push back, repel

clipeus, **clipeī** *m.* shield

nēquīquam (*adv.*) to no avail, in vain

umbō, **umbōnis** *m.* boss (of a shield)

pendeō, **pendēre**, **pendī**, — hang, be sus-

pending

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.504–39

“nymphā, precor, Pēnēi, manē! nōn īnsequor hostis;
 nymphā, manē! sīc agna lupum, sīc cerva leōnem, 505
 sīc aquilam pennā fugiunt trepidante columbae,
 hostēs quaeque suōs: amor est mihi causa sequendī!
 mē miserum! nē prōna cadās indignave laedī
 crūra notent sentēs et sim tibi causa dolōris!
 aspera, quā† properās, loca sunt: moderātius, ōrō, 510
 curre fugamque inhibē, moderātius īnsequar ipse.
 cui placeās inquīre tamen: nōn incolā montis,
 nōn ego sum pāstor, nōn hīc armenta gregēsque
 horridus observō. nescīs, temerāria, nescīs
 quem fugiās, ideōque fugis: mihi Delphica tellūs 515

nymphā, nymphae *f.* nymph (a semidivine spirit)
precor (1-tr.) pray

Pēnēis, Pēnēidos descended from (the river god)
 Peneus; **Pēnēi** = *fem. sing. voc.*

īnsequor (**in-** + **sequor**) follow closely, pursue
agna, agnae *f.* lamb

lupus, lupī *m.* wolf

cerva, cervae *f.* deer; doe

leō, leōnis *m.* lion

aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle

penna, pennaē *f.* wing

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble

columba, columbae *f.* dove

prōnus, -a, -um (leaning) forward, headlong

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm

crūs, crūris *n.* leg

notō (1-tr.) mark; scar

sentis, sentis, -ium *m.* briar, bramble

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce; rough
 †**quā, here** (*adv.*) where

properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush

moderātē (*adv.*) moderately, temperately

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum run, rush

inhibeō (**in-** + **habeō**), **inhibēre, inhibuī,**

inhibitus hold back, check, restrain

inquīrō (**in-** + **quaerō**), **inquīrere, inquīsīi/**

inquīsīvī, inquīsītus inquire into, investigate

pāstor, pāstōris *m.* shepherd

armentum, armentī *n.* herd

grex, gregis *m. or f.* flock

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible

observō (**ob-** + **servō**) (1-tr.) watch over, guard,
 observe

temerārius, -a, -um rash

ideō (*adv.*) for this reason; therefore

Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic, of Delphi (a Greek
 town and seat of Apollo's oracle)

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

et Claros et Tenedos Patarēaque rēgia servit;
 Iuppiter est genitor; per mē quod eritque fuitque
 estque patet; per mē concordant carmina nervīs.
 certa quidem nostra est, nostrā tamen ūna sagitta
 certior, in vacuō quae vulnera pectore fēcit!
 inventum[†] medicīna meum est, opiferque per orbem
 dīcor,[†] et herbārum subiecta potentia nōbīs.
 ei mihi, quod nūllis amor est sānābilis herbīs
 nec prōsunt dominō, quae prōsunt omnibus, artēs!”
 plūra locūtūrum timidō Pēnēia cursū
 fūgit cumque ipsō verba imperfecta reliquit,
 tum quoque vīsa decēns; nūdābant corpora[†] ventī,

520

525

Claros, Clarī *f.* Claros (a town in Ionia)
Tenedos, Tenedī *f.* Tenedos (an island off Troy)
Patarēus, -a, -um of Patara (a city in Asia Minor)
rēgia, rēgiae *f.* palace; royal seat, capital
serviō, servīre, serviī/servivī, servitum be a slave,
 serve (+ dat.)
genitor, genitōris *m.* father
pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open; be revealed
concordō (1-intr.) be in harmony
nervus, nervī *m.* sinew; (bow-)string; string
 (of an instrument)
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle; free, available; care-
 free, disengaged
[†]**inventum, inventī** *n.* discovery, invention
medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine
opifer, opifera, opiferum aid-bringing
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

[†]**dīcō, here, call**
herba, herbae *f.* grass; plant; herb
subiciō (sub- + iaciō) place below; make subject
potentia, potentiae *f.* power, influence
ei (interj.) *expression of anguish, o! alas!; ei mihi,*
 woe is me!
sānābilis, sānābile able to be healed, curable
prōsum (prō- + sum), prōdesse, prōfuī, prō-
futūrus be an aid, benefit
timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid
Pēnēius, -a, -um of Peneus (a river god)
cursus, cursūs *m.* running, run
imperfectus, -a, -um unfinished, incomplete
decēns, decentis becoming, graceful
nūdō (1-tr.) make naked, bare, lay bare
[†]**corpora, here, limbs**
ventus, ventī *m.* wind

obviaque adversās vibrābant flāmina vestēs,
 et levis impulsōs retrō dabat aura capillōs,
 auctaque forma fugā est. sed enim nōn sustinet ultrā 530
 perdere† blanditiās iuvenis deus, utque monēbat
 ipse Amor, admissō sequitur vestigia passū.
 ut canis in vacuō leporem cum Gallicus arvō
 vīdit et hic praedam pedibus petit, ille salūtem,
 alter inhaesūrō similis iam iamque† tenēre 535
 spērat et extentō stringit vestigia rostrō,
 alter in ambiguō est an sit conprēnsus, et ipsīs
 morsibus ēripitur tangentiaque ōra relinquit;
 sīc deus et virgō est, hic spē celer, illa timōre.

obvius, -a, -um in the way; moving against,
 opposed in direction
adversus, -a, -um opposite, opposing
vibrō (1-tr.) (cause to) move to and fro or flap
flāmen, flāminis n. blast, gust (of wind); breeze
vestis, vestis, -ium f. clothing, garment
impellō (in + pellō), **impellere, impulī, impulsus**
 push against; press upon
retrō (adv.) toward the rear, backward
aura, aurae f. breeze
capillus, capillī m. sing. or pl., hair
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow, increase
forma, formae f. shape, form; beauty
sustineō (sub- + teneō), **sustinēre, sustinūī, —**
 withstand, endure
ultrā (adv.) beyond; further, more; *in negative*
clauses, any more, any longer
 †**perdō, here,** waste
blanditia, blanditiae f. ingratiating speech, blan-
 dishment; charm
iuvenis, iuvene young
admittō (ad- + mittō) admit; let go, release
vestigium, vestigiī n. footprint, track, trace
passus, passūs m. pace, step, stride
canis, canis m. or f. dog

vacuus, -a, -um empty
lepus, leporis m. hare
Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic
arvum, arvī n. (ploughed) field
praeda, praedae f. booty, plunder; prey
pēs, pedis m. foot
inhaereō, inhaerere, inhaesī, inhaesūrus hold on
 tightly, stick, cling
 †**iam iamque,** now all but
extendō, extendere, extendī, extensus/extēnsus
 make taut, stretch out
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus graze, skim,
 touch lightly
rostrum, rostrī n. snout, muzzle
ambiguū, ambiguī n. ambiguity; **in ambiguō,**
 in an ambiguous state, in doubt
comprendō, comprehendere, comprehendī,
comprēnsus take hold of, seize, catch
morsus, morsūs m. bite; *pl.,* teeth, jaws
ēripīō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch
 away
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch; reach
virgō, virginis f. maiden, virgin
celer, celeris, celere swift, fast

CHAPTER XV

Vocabulary

- **caput, capitis** *n.* head
- **nūmen, nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen
- **orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* ring, circle
 - **orbis terrārum**, world
- **vultus, vultūs** *m. sing. or pl.*, expression; face
- **circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus** place round; surround
- **for** (1-tr.) speak, say
- **obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (§140)
- **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** forbid (§140)
- **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus** deter, prevent (§140)
- **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid (§140)
- **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** be in awe of, respect; dread, fear (§139)
- **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround; gird (on oneself)
- **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus** set up, establish; decide
- **rapio, rapere, rapuī, raptus** seize, tear away, carry (off)
 - **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
- **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** loosen; free, release; dissolve
- impediō, impedire, impediī/impedivī, impedītus** hinder, impede (§140)
- interest, interesse, interfuit** it is important, it concerns (§141)
- **miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (§141)
- paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit** it causes (one) to repent or regret (§141)
- piget, pigēre, piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (§141)
- **puDET, pudēre, puduit or puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed (§141)
- rēfert, rēferre, rētulit** it is important, it concerns (§141)
- **taedet, taedēre, taesum est** it makes (one) tired or sick (§141)
- celer, celeris, celere** swift
- dulcis, dulce** sweet, pleasant
- turpis, turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful
- nē** (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause, that* (§139)
- quīn** (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause, from* (§140)
- **quod** (conj.) the fact that
- **quōminus** (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause, from* (§140)
- ut** (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause, that . . . not* (§139)

Vocabulary Notes

- In addition to meaning “head,” **caput, capitis** *n.* may mean the “life” of a man, particularly in oaths and when representing the price paid for an offense. **caput** is also used, with affection or contempt, to refer to the entire “person.”
- **nūmen, nūminis** *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb ***nuō, nuere, nuī, nūtus**, “nod.”¹ **nūmen** may mean the “divine will” that approves of or lies behind events or actions, or it may mean more generally the “divine power,” “divinity,” or “(divine) spirit” that each god possesses.
- **orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* may indicate many circular shapes (ring, circle, sphere, ball, disk). The idiom **orbis terrārum** (occasionally **orbis terrae**) is so common that sometimes **orbis** unmodified by a genitive form of **terra** may also mean “world.”
- **vultus, vultūs** *m.* may refer to a particular facial “expression” or more generally to a person’s “countenance” or “appearance” (with an emphasis on the appearance of the face). In both the singular and the plural it may indicate a person’s “face.” When **vultus** is used in combination with **ōs**, **vultus** refers to the upper portion of the face, and **ōs** to the lower.
- **circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **circum-** to **dō**. It may appear with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (§146). **circumdō** may also mean “place” something (Accusative, Direct Object) “around” something (Dative with a Compound Verb).
- **for, fārī, fātus sum** is cognate with **fāma**. **for** is far more common in poetry than in prose. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object or introduce a direct quotation. It does not introduce Indirect Statement. **for** is often used of the utterances of gods and occasionally of humans when they are speaking prophetically. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **FOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstāturus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **stō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third principal part. **obstō** may take a Dative with a Compound Verb and may introduce a Prevention clause (§140).
- **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** is an irregular first-conjugation verb. For constructions with **vetō** see §140.
- **dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterrītus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **dē-** to **terreō**. **dēterreō** may introduce a Prevention clause (§140).
- **prohibeō, prohibere, prohibuī, prohibītus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prō-** to **habeō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. For constructions with **prohibeō** see §140.
- **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** may introduce a Fear clause (§139), and while it may mean “fear” or “dread,” it often means “respect” or “be in awe of” those who are greater in rank or being (gods, parents, kings). It has a broader meaning than **timeō**, a verb that reports fear but not awe or reverence. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **VEREOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīncītus** often appears with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (§146). It may also be used to mean “surround” or “encircle” something (Accusative, Direct Object) with something (Ablative of Means). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **CINGŌ** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus** has a broad range of meanings, which include “station” or “draw up” (soldiers, troops); “establish” or “build” (towers, altars); “make” or “create” (the human race, laws, peace); and “fix,” “appoint,” or “agree upon” (a price, a specific day, boundaries). When **cōstituō** means “decide,” it is followed by an Object Infinitive.
- **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** describes the violent action of seizing and carrying off things or people. It is also used to mean “(sexually) violate” or “rape.”
- **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **rapiō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. Although **ēripiō** is a synonym of **rapiō**, it is also used to mean “snatch” or “rescue” (from danger, death). THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **RAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒRIPIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **RAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- The basic meaning of **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** is “loosen” or “untie” (bonds, ropes). Its extended meanings include “free,” “release,” or “relax” (persons, souls, limbs). Finally, **solvō** is used to mean “resolve,”

1. While the simple verb ***nuō** does not occur in the Latin that survives, several compounds (e.g., **abnuō, adnuō, innuō**, and **renuō**) are common.

“acquit,” or “discharge” (problems, debts, vows, legal charges). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **SOLVŌ** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **SOLVŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

- **miseret, miserēre, miseruit** or **miseritum est** has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. Both are rare in the Latin that survives.
- **pu-det, pudēre, pudit** or **puditum est** has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. **puditum est** is rare.
- The third principal part of **taedet, taedēre, taesum est** appears only once in the Latin that survives. Slightly more frequent is the compound form **pertaesum est**.
- When **quod** means “the fact that,” it introduces a noun clause with a verb in the indicative mood. Such a clause may be used with the impersonal verbs **paenitet, piget, and pudet** (§141), but **quod**-the-fact-that clauses also appear frequently with other verbs or in apposition to a variety of nouns or pronouns.

Eius factum fortissimum meminerimus, quod vulnere acceptō vītam cōsulis servāvit.

We shall remember his very brave deed: the fact that, with a wound received, he saved the consul's life.

- **quōminus** is a compound conjunction made up of the relative pronoun **quō** (by which degree) and the comparative adverb **minus** (less). It is often written as two separate words (**quō minus**). The use of **quōminus** to introduce Prevention clauses (§140) reflects their origins as Purpose clauses.

	Derivatives	Cognates
caput	capital; capitulate; captain; chapter; head; chief; decapitate	
cingō	cinch; succinct	
orbis	orb; orbit	
paenitet	penitent	
rapiō	rape; rapt; ravish; raven; rapid	
solvō	dissolve; solute	forlorn; -less; loose; lose; analysis
taedet	tedium	
vereor	revere	wary; aware; steward; guard

§139. Fear Clauses

A verb or other expression of fearing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the thing feared. Such a clause, called a **Fear clause**, is introduced by the conjunction **ut** (that . . . not) or **nē** (that) and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Magnopere metuit nē filius in bellō moriātur.

Greatly he fears *that* (his) son in war *will die*.

He greatly fears *that* his son *will die* in war.

Pater timēbat ut filius ē bellō redisset.

The father was fearing *that* (his) son (out) from the war *had not returned*.

The father was fearing *that* his son *had not returned* from the war.

Ūna cūra sociōs movēbat: nē Rōmānī auxilium nōn mitterent.

One concern the allies (d.o.) was stirring up: *that* the Romans aid (d.o.) *were not sending/would not send*.

One concern was stirring up the allies: *that* the Romans *were not sending/would not send* aid.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Fear clause was originally an independent sentence whose verb was an Optative subjunctive expressing a wish in relation to a feeling of fear:

Magnopere metuit. Nē filius in bellō moriātur.

He greatly fears. *If only* his son *would not die* in war.

Such a paratactic arrangement easily became one sentence:

Magnopere metuit nē filius in bellō moriātur.

He greatly fears *that* his son *will die* in war.

The apparent reversal of the English translations of **ut** and **nē** can be accounted for in this way:

What one *wishes would* happen one *fears will not* happen (**ut**).

What one *wishes would not* happen one *fears will* happen (**nē**).

2. In the third sentence above **nē . . . nōn** (that . . . not) is used to introduce a negative Fear clause. In early Latin the conjunction **ut** introducing such a clause is much more common than **nē . . . nōn**. By the classical period **nē . . . nōn** is much more common than the simple **ut**, and it is regularly used when the expression of fearing is negated. For example:

Nōn metuō nē domum post bellum filius nōn redeat.

I do not fear that my son *will not return* home after the war.

3. The subjunctive verbs in Fear clauses follow the rules of sequence. Thus the syntax of, for example, **moriātur** is **present subjunctive, Fear clause, primary sequence**. In this sentence the present tense of the subjunctive indicates an action that is subsequent to the action of the main verb.² Such a fear for the future may be expressed more emphatically with an active periphrastic:

Magnopere metuit nē filius in bellō moritūrus sit.

He greatly fears *that* his son *is going to/will die* in war.

2. Although the present subjunctive may also indicate an action that is simultaneous with the main verb, sense makes this less likely in this sentence.

4. In the second sentence above the subjunctive **redisset** is pluperfect to indicate an action that is *prior* to the action of the main verb. In the third sentence **mitterent** is imperfect to indicate an action that is either simultaneous with or subsequent to the action of the main verb. The tense of the English translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☛ DRILL 139, PAGE 593, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§140. Prevention Clauses

A verb of hindering or preventing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the action hindered or prevented. Such a clause, called a **Prevention clause**, is introduced by the conjunction **quōminus**, **nē**, or **quīn** and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Quid tibi obstat nē Rōmā discēdās? (obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus stand in the way; hinder, block)

What hinders you *in order that* from Rome you may not depart?

What hinders you *from departing* from Rome?

Timor mē dēterruit quōminus in senātū bene dīcerem. (dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus deter, prevent)

Fear deterred me *by which the less* in the senate I might speak well.

Fear deterred me *from speaking* well in the senate.

Bellum nōn dēterrēbit quīn agricolae in agrīs labōrent.

War will not prevent *that the farmers* in the fields not work.

War will not prevent *the farmers from working* in the fields.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Prevention clauses closely resemble Purpose clauses.
2. When the main clause is negated, or when negation is implied, the Prevention clause is introduced by the conjunction **quīn** (as in the third sentence) or, less frequently, by **quōminus**. When the main clause is not negated, the Prevention clause is introduced by **quōminus** or **nē**.
3. The English words "from _____ing" (employing the English gerund) are used in translating Prevention clauses. Sometimes the subject of a Prevention clause is better translated as the direct object of the verb of preventing, as in the third sentence.

Certain verbs of prohibiting or forbidding are not followed by a Prevention clause but regularly take an Object Infinitive with a Subject Accusative. For example:

Caesar suōs prohibuit castra relinquare. (prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid)

Caesar prohibited *his own men to abandon* the camp.

Caesar prohibited *his own men from abandoning* the camp.

Tē vetō dē his loquī. (vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid)

I forbid *you to speak* about these things.

OBSERVATION

Object Infinitives that follow verbs such as **prohibeō** and **vetō** may be translated with the English words “from _____ing” or “to _____” according to correct English usage.

☛ DRILL 140, PAGE 597, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§141. Impersonal Constructions II: *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*, *rēfert*, *interest*

Two groups of impersonal verbs, those expressing emotions and those expressing concern or interest, have a variety of words and constructions that may function as their *subjects*.

Verbs Expressing Emotion

miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est it moves (one) to pity
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit it causes (one) to repent or regret
piget, pigēre, piguit it disgusts (one), it irks (one)
pudet, pudēre, pudit or puditum est it makes (one) ashamed
taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired or sick

OBSERVATION

The first and third principal parts of these verbs are given in the third person singular because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number only. **Miseret** and **pudet** have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives. The third principal part of **taedet** is also an impersonal passive.

The *person affected* by an emotion is expressed by an Accusative, Direct Object, and the *cause* or *object* of the emotion is regularly expressed in the *genitive* case. For example:

Illārum mē miseret.	<i>Those women move me to pity.</i>
	<i>I pity those women.</i>
Num Catilinam scelerum paenituit?	<i>(His) crimes did not cause Catiline to</i>
	<i>repent, did they?</i>
	<i>Catiline did not repent his crimes, did he?</i>

OBSERVATION

Because the syntax of Latin sentences using these verbs is so different from the way English would express similar ideas, literal translations should be avoided. Translations such as the second ones given above are to be preferred.

With the verbs **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, and **taedet** the genitive that expresses the cause or object of the emotion may be replaced by a Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative). In addition, with the verbs **paenitet**, **piget**, and **pudet** the genitive may be replaced by a subject clause introduced by the conjunction **quod**, “the fact that.”

For example:

Tē pudeat haec dicere. (Subject Infinitive)
 Let saying these things make you ashamed.
 Let it shame you to say these things.
Eum paenitēbat quod nōs reliquerat. (subject clause introduced by **quod**)
 The fact that he had abandoned us was causing him to regret.
 He was regretting the fact that he had abandoned us.

Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest

rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns
interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns

The person to whom something is important or of concern is regularly expressed by the feminine singular ablative of a possessive adjective: **meā, nostrā, tuā, or vestrā.**³ The person concerned may also be expressed in the genitive case. The cause or object of concern may be expressed by any of these:

1. Neuter pronoun in the nominative case
2. Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative)
3. Substantive **Ut** clause (subject clause); negative = **nē**
4. Indirect Question

For example:

Tuāne hoc rēfert? (neuter pronoun)
 Is this thing important to you?
Meā rēfert audire tuam sententiam. (Subject Infinitive)
 To hear your opinion is important to me.
Meā maximē interest ut quam primum discēdās. (Substantive **Ut** clause)
 It concerns me very greatly that you depart as soon as possible.
Omnium intererat quid cōsili cōsulēs caperent. (Indirect Question)
 It was important to all people what (of) plan the consuls were forming.
 What plan the consuls were forming was important to all people.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Rēfert** is a compound verb formed by the addition of **rē** (feminine singular ablative of **rēs**) to the verb **ferō**. The feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective in each of the first two sentences agrees with this prefixed **rē**: “it bears in respect to my situation (your situation).”
2. In the third sentence the feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective (**meā**) is used with **interest** by analogy with the usage with **rēfert**.
3. Literal English translations of sentences with **rēfert** and **interest** should be avoided. Translations such as those given above are to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 141, PAGE 601, MAY NOW BE DONE.

3. The reflexive-possessive adjective **suā** is used rarely with **rēfert** or **interest** in Indirect Statement. In such situations, **suā** refers to the subject of the verb that introduces the Indirect Statement.

§142. Direct and Indirect Reflexives

Reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives have been said to refer to the subjects of the clauses or sentences in which they appear. A reflexive so used may be called a **direct reflexive**. When a reflexive word in a subordinate clause points outside its own clause to the subject of the main verb, it is called an **indirect reflexive**.

When the subject of an infinitive in Indirect Statement is different from the subject of the main verb, a reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective appearing within the Indirect Statement may be either a direct or an indirect reflexive. For example:

Rēx sēnsit cīvēs suam urbem regere nōn posse. (direct reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens were not able to rule *their own* city.
Rēx sēnsit cīvēs sē ōdisse. (indirect reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens hated *him*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **suum** is a direct reflexive because it refers to **cīvēs**, the subject of the clause in which **suum** appears. In the second sentence **sē** is an indirect reflexive because it refers to **rēx**, the subject of the main clause.
2. Context usually makes clear whether a reflexive is direct or indirect. Sometimes the intensive adjective **ipse** modifies a reflexive pronoun and identifies it as direct or indirect. For example:

Rēx sēnsit cīvēs sē ipsōs ōdisse. (direct reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens hated *their very selves*.

In subordinate clauses such as Purpose clauses, Indirect Commands, and Indirect Questions, reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives are often indirect reflexives. That is, they refer to the subjects of the main clauses rather than to the subjects of the subordinate clauses in which they appear. For example:

Imperātor militēs hortātus est ut glōriam sibi caperent.
The commander urged the soldiers that they win glory *for him*.
Caesar nescit cūr socii suīs verbis pārere nōlint.
Caesar does not know why the allies are unwilling to obey *his* words.

Sometimes reflexives are freely used to refer to grammatical elements that are not the subject of any clause, and in certain authors, direct and indirect reflexives are found within the same clause. For example:

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse.
(perniciēs, perniciē *f.* ruin; contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus contend)
Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had contended with *him* without *his own* ruin.
(Caesar, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* I.36)

OBSERVATION

In this sentence **sē** is an indirect reflexive referring to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb. **Suā** is a direct reflexive referring to **nēminem**, the subject of the Indirect Statement.

§143. Subjunctive by Attraction

It has been observed that subordinate clauses in Indirect Statement regularly have their verbs in the subjunctive to indicate that the clause is part of the original direct statement (§109). Sometimes the subjunctive mood is also used in clauses that are subordinate to infinitives not in Indirect Statement or to other clauses with verbs in the subjunctive. A subjunctive verb so used is called a **Subjunctive by Attraction** and follows the rules of sequence. For example:

Sapientis est fugere ubi periculum sentiat.

It is characteristic of a wise man to flee when *he perceives* danger.

Scīsne quid pater, priusquam mortuus sit, dixerit?

Do you know what the father said before *he died*?

Hortābātur ut eadem quae dixisset dicerem.

She was urging that I say the same things that *she had said*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The information in a subordinate clause with a Subjunctive by Attraction is essential to the thought of the clause or infinitive on which it depends. For example, the clause **ubi periculum sentiat** in the first sentence indicates the essential circumstance under which a wise man would flee. An indicative verb in such a clause would indicate nonessential information.
2. The syntax of, for example, **dixisset** is **pluperfect subjunctive, Subjunctive by Attraction, secondary sequence (prior time)**.

§144. Supine

In addition to the infinitive and the gerund, there is a third verbal noun in Latin called the **supine**, which appears in only two forms, the accusative singular and the ablative singular. The stem for the supine of all verbs may be obtained by dropping the ending from the fourth principal part. To this stem the endings **-um** (accusative) and **-ū** (ablative) are added. For example:

4th Principal Part	Stem	Accusative Supine	Ablative Supine
lēctus	lēct-	lēctum	lēctū
vīsus	vīs-	vīsū	vīsū

OBSERVATION

The endings of the supine have been borrowed from the fourth declension masculine/feminine endings.

Each case of the supine has only one syntactic function. The accusative supine expresses purpose with a verb of motion (or a verb implying motion). The ablative supine is an Ablative of Respect. For example:

Hostēs oppugnātum patriam nostram veniunt.

The enemies are coming *for the purpose of attacking/to attack* our country.

Deōs superat—sī hoc fās est dictū.

He surpasses the gods—if this thing is right *in respect to saying/to say*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The accusative supine in the first sentence appears with a verb that expresses motion, **veniunt**. It takes a direct object, **patriam**. The accusative supine is translated “for the purpose of _____ing” or “to _____.”⁴
2. The ablative supine may be translated literally, “in respect to _____ing,” but an adverbial use of the English infinitive, “to _____,” will often be more idiomatic.

§145. Accusative of Respect

Many Roman poets (and a few prose writers as well) chose to imitate Greek syntax in Latin for two distinct uses of the accusative case, each of which is sometimes called the **Greek Accusative**.

When a noun in the accusative case is used to qualify or limit an adjective (often a perfect passive participle), it is called an **Accusative of Respect**. For example:

*Aenēās . . . ōs umerōsque deō similis . . . (umerus, umerī m. shoulder)
Aeneas . . . similar to a god in (respect to) (his) face and shoulders . . .
(Vergil, Aeneid I.589)*

*hōc concussa metū mentem . . . (concutiō, concutere, concussī, concussus strike)
(She) having been struck in respect to (her) mind by this fear . . .
(Vergil, Aeneid XII.468)*

The syntax of each italicized word (**ōs**, **umerōs**, **mentem**) is **Accusative of Respect**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Accusative of Respect developed from the idea of extent inherent in the accusative case. Thus, for example, **ōs umerōsque deō similis** means “similar to a god to the extent of (his) face and shoulders,” “similar to a god as far as his face and shoulders.”
2. The Accusative of Respect is similar in sense to the more common Ablative of Respect.
3. Sometimes the noun in the Accusative of Respect is an adjective used as a substantive. For example: **omnia sapiēns**, “wise in (respect to) all things.”

§146. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb

In addition to the active and passive voices, ancient Greek has a *middle* voice, whose forms are most often identical to those of the passive. The middle voice in Greek, which frequently takes a direct object, is often used for actions that benefit or physically affect the subject.⁵ Certain *passive* verb forms in Latin are used to represent Greek *middle* voice verbs and so may take an Accusative, Direct Object. For example:

4. The rare future passive infinitive is made with the accusative supine and the impersonal passive infinitive of **eō**. For example: **Putō eum captum iri** (I think that there is a going to capture him, I think that he is going to be captured).

5. The existence of the middle voice in Greek is a remnant of the system of voice in IE, which had active and middle voices only. Many deponent verbs in Latin—verbs with passive forms that take direct objects—were in origin middle voice verbs.

Ferrum cingitur. (*cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīctus* surround; gird [oneself])

He girds *a sword* on himself. (Vergil, *Aeneid* II.511)

... *cīctus* [est] *honōre caput.* (*caput, capitis n.* head)

(He) surrounded (his) *head* with honor. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* III.392)

The syntax of each italicized word (**ferrum, caput**) is **Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb**.

OBSERVATION

Although **cingitur** and **cīctus** (est) are *passive* in form, they should be considered *middle*: the subject of each *performs* the action of the verb, and each verb takes an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb. Verbs that mean “put on” or “take off” (clothing, armor) may take such an accusative.

§147. Historical Infinitive

In vivid narration the present infinitive may appear in place of a finite verb in the imperfect or perfect tense (simple past). An infinitive so used, usually with a *subject* in the *nominative* case, is called a **Historical Infinitive**.⁶ For example:

Rōmānī ex omnibus partibus, signō datō, *oppugnāre*.

The *Romans* from all parts, with the signal having been given, *attacked*.

Catīlīna in primā aciē *stāre, sociōs hortārī*.

Catiline was standing in the first battle line; he was encouraging his allies.

Augustō mortuō, in urbe *timēre, in prōvinciīs bellum expectāre*.

With Augustus having died, in the city *people were afraid*, in the provinces *people were expecting* war.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active infinitive **oppugnāre** stands for a perfect active indicative verb, *past* time, *simple* aspect. In the second sentence **stāre** and **hortārī** stand for imperfect active indicative verbs, *past* time, *progressive* aspect. Context usually makes clear which past tense a historical infinitive represents.
2. The subjects of the Historical Infinitives in the first two sentences are nominative. The nominative subject of a Historical Infinitive is an exception to the general rule that subjects of infinitives are in the accusative case.
3. In the third sentence the Historical Infinitives **timēre** and **expectāre** appear without subjects. Such a usage emphasizes the verbal action alone. However, when a Historical Infinitive appears without a subject, a subject must be supplied (e.g., people, men, soldiers, they).
4. Several Historical Infinitives often appear together when a scene of intense activity is reported. Historical Infinitives may also appear in combination with finite verbs.

☛ DRILL 143–147, PAGE 613, MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. The Historical Infinitive may look back to the earliest stage of the verb's development, in which a verbal noun (the infinitive) with no endings to indicate person and number was placed with a noun subject simply to name the action being performed.

Short Readings

1. Sosia, Amphitruo's slave, remains firm in the face of his master's threats to cut out his tongue.

tamen quīn loquar haec utī facta sunt hīc,

numquam ūllō modō mē potes dēterrēre. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUO* 559–60)

utī = ut

2. Megadorus describes his uncomfortable relationship with his would-be father-in-law, Euclio.

. . . fastīdit mē

quia videt mē suam amīcitiā velle: mōre hominum facit;

nam sī opulentus it petītum pauperiōris grātiam,

pauper metuit congregīrī, per metum male rem gerit.

īdem, quandō occāsiō illaec periit, post sērō cupit. (PLAUTUS, *AULULARIA* 245–49)

fastīdiō, fastīdire, fastīdīi/fastīdīvī, fastīdītus

be scornful (of), disdain (+ gen.); *subject*
is Euclio

opulentus, -a, -um rich

pauper, pauperis poor

congregior (con- + gradior) go near, approach;

congregīrī = *archaic form of congregī*

quandō (conj.) when

occāsiō, occāsiōnis *f.* opportunity, chance

illaec = *archaic form of illa*

sērō (adv.) late; **post sērō**, too late

3. Lyconides admits to his beloved's mean father, Euclio, that he has already begun an affair with his daughter, who is betrothed to another.

Lyconides. id adeō tē ōrātum adveniō, ut animō aequō ignōscās mihi.

Euclio. cūr id ausu's facere? ut id quod nōn tuom esset tangerēs?

Lyc. quid vīs fierī? factum est illud: fierī infectum nōn potest.

deōs crēdō voluisse; nam nī vellent, nōn fieret, sciō.

(PLAUTUS, *AULULARIA* 739–42)

adveniō (ad- + veniō) come (to)

ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvī,

ignōtum forgive, pardon (+ dat.)

ausu's = ausus es

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch

īnfectus, -a, -um undone

nī = nisi

4. After doing all the talking, the slave Olympio won't let Chalinus answer.

abeō intrō. taedet tuī sermōnis. (PLAUTUS, *CASINA* 142)

intrō (adv.) within, inside

sermō, sermōnis *m.* speech, talk, conversation

5. After explaining his plan of having one girl pretend to be two, Palaestrio lists possible excuses to avoid any request to see both girls at the same time.

facilest: trēcentae possunt causae conligī:

“nōn domīst, abiit ambulātum, dormit, ornātur, lavat,

prandet, potat: . . .” (PLAUTUS, *MILES GLORIOSUS* 250–52)

colligō (con- + legō), colligere , collēgī , collēctus collect, amass	lavō , lavāre/lavere , lāvī , lautus/lōtus wash (oneself)
dormiō , dormīre , dormiī/dormivī , dormītum sleep, be asleep	prandeō , prandēre , prandī , prānsus eat breakfast; eat lunch
ornō (1-tr.) prepare, arrange; dress, beautify	potō (1-tr.) drink

6. Antipho’s daughter Panegyris explains to her father why neither she nor her two sisters are willing to be remarried. (The three sisters are waiting for their long-lost husbands.)

Panegyris. Stultitias, pater, vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs.

hostis est uxor, invīta quae virō nuptum datur.

Antipho. Certumne est neutram vostrārum[†] persequī imperium patris?

Pan. Persequimur, nam quō[†] dedisti[†] nuptum, abire nolumus.

(PLAUTUS, *STICHUS* 139–42)

stultitia , stultitiae <i>f.</i> foolishness, stupidity	[†] vostrārum , <i>supply</i> sorōrum
vēnor (1-intr.) go hunting, hunt	persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, conform to
invītus , -a, -um unwilling	[†] quō = ab eō cui
canis , canis <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> dog	[†] dedisti , <i>supply</i> nōs as <i>direct object</i>
uxor , uxōris <i>f.</i> wife	
nūbō , nūbere , nūpsī , nuptus marry (of a woman)	

7. A fragment from a lost Ennian tragedy, *Erechtheus*

lapideō sunt corde multī quōs nōn miseret nēminis.[†]

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 140)

lapideus, -a, -um (made of) stone

cor, **cordis** *n.* heart

[†]The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.

8. The poet employs alliteration to describe a gory death in battle.

ōscitat in campīs caput ā cervīce revolsūm

sēmianimēsque micant oculī lūcemque requīrunt. (ENNIUS, *SED. INC. FRAG.* 483–84)

ōscitō (1-intr.) gape

cervīx, **cervīcis** *f.* neck

revellō, **revellere**, **revellī**, **revulsus** tear, tear away

sēmianimis, **sēmianime** half-alive; the first -i- of

sēmianimēs is consonantal.

micō, **micāre**, **micuī**, — quiver, dart, flicker

requīrō (**re-** + **quaerō**), **requīrere**, **requīsīi/**

requīsīvī, **requīsītus** try to find, look for

9. Micio discusses with his brother Demea the delinquent behavior of Demea's son Aeschinus.

Micio. Quid fēcit? *Demea.* Quid ille fēcerit?† quem neque pudet
quicquam neque metuit quemquam neque lēgem putat
tenēre sē ūllam . . . (TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 84–86)

†fēcerit, perfect subjunc. in implied Indirect Question; supply rogāsne

10. Parmenio describes Philumena's behavior toward her mother-in-law, Sostrata, since being forced to move into her mother-in-law's house.

Sī quandō ad eam† accesserat†
cōnfābulātum, fugere ē cōnspectū ilicō,
vidēre nōlle . . . (TERENCE, *HECYRA* 181–83)

quandō (adv.) at any time, ever; sī quandō . . . accesserat = cum . . . accesserat, subject is Sostrata
†eam refers to Philumena.

cōnfābulor (1-intr.) converse, have a talk
cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* (range of) sight, view
ilicō (adv.) at once, immediately

11. In love with a prostitute, the young and poor Phaedria tries to get the pimp Dorio to listen to his excuses one more time.

Phaedria. Audī quod dīcam. *Dorio.* At enim taedet iam audire eadem mīliēns.

Ph. At nunc dīcam quod lubenter audiās. *Do.* Loquere, audiō.

(TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 487–88)

at (conj.) but

mīliēns (adv.) a thousand times

libenter (adv.) gladly

12. Varro discusses the precise meaning of the verb *for*.

fātur is quī primum homō significābilem ōre mittit vōcem. ab eō, antequam ita fa-
ciant, puerī dīcuntur īfantēs; cum id faciunt, iam fārī.

(VARRO, *DE LINGUĀ LATĪNĀ* VI.52)

significābilis, significābile capable of conveying meaning, meaningful
īfāns, īfantis not speaking; *subst.*, infant

13. A Roman proverb

Nōn rēfert quis, sed quid dīcat. ([VARRO], *SENTENTIAE* 22)

14. While advocating that Pompey be given command in the East, Cicero explains and decries the attitude of many nations toward Rome.

difficile est dictū, Quiritēs, quantō in odiō sīmus apud exterās nātiōnēs propter eōrum quōs ad eās per hōs annōs cum imperiō mīsimus libidinēs et iniūriās.

(CICERO, *PRŌ LEGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 65)

Quiritēs, Quiritium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
exter, externa, exterum external, foreign
nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

15. Cicero imagines what the populace would say to the prosecutor M. Juventus Laterensis if it were able to speak with one voice. Juventus was quaestor in Cyrene in 63 B.C.E., the year of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

“Dēsiderārunt tē,” inquit, “oculī meī, cum tū essēs Cyrēnīs; mē enim quam sociōs tuā fruī virtūte mālēbam, et quō plūs intererat, eō plūs aberat ā mē, cum tē nōn vidēbam.” (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIO* 13)

dēsiderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
Cyrēnae, Cyrēnārum *f. pl.* Cyrene (a town in northwest Libya)
fruo, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

16. Cicero pauses in a speech to comment on the value of his own friendship.

etenim ego dē mē tantum audeō dīcere amīcitiā meā voluptātī plūribus quam praesidiō fuisse, mēque vehementer vītāe meae paenitēret sī in meā familiāritāte lōcus esset nēminī nisi litigiōsō aut nocentī. (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIO* 82)

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard; defense, protection
vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly
familiāritās, familiāritātis *f.* close friendship
litigiōsus, -a, -um fond of going to law, litigious
nocēns, nocentis harmful, guilty

17. After he speaks about appropriate embellishment in oratory, Crassus notes that much depends on the makeup of the audience and other factors.

rēfert etiam quī audiant, senātus an populus an iūdicēs: frequentēs an paucī an singulī, et quālēs: ipsīque ōrātōrēs quā sint aetāte, honōre, auctōritāte, dēbet vidērī; tempus, pācis an bellī, festīnātiōnis an ōtī. (CICERO, *DE ŌRĀTŌRE* III.211)

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
frequēns, frequentis crowded; present in crowds
singulī, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time
festīnātiō, festīnātiōnis *f.* haste, hurry
ōtium, ōtīi *n.* leisure

18. Scipio, a character in Cicero's dialogue, recalls a story about the newborns Romulus and Remus.

is[†] igitur, ut nātus sit, cum Remō frātre dīcitur ab Amūliō, rēge Albānō, ob labefac-
tandī rēgnī timōrem ad[†] Tiberim expōnī iussus esse . . . (CICERO, *DE RE PŪBLICĀ* II.4)

[†]is refers to Romulus.

Amūlius, Amūliī *m.* Amulius (legendary king of
Alba Longa)

Albānus, -a, -um of or belonging to Alba Longa
(a Latin city predating Rome); Alban

labefactō (1-tr.) weaken, undermine

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule

[†]ad, here, at, near

Tiberis, Tiberis *m.* (the) Tiber (a river that flows
through Rome); **Tiberim** = *acc. sing.*

expōnō (ex- + pōnō) place out; expose, abandon

19. Cicero recalls an outstanding trait of the orator Hortensius.

prīmum memoria[†] tanta—quantam in nullō cognōvisse mē arbitror—ut quae
sēcum commentātus esset, ea sine scrīptō[†] verbīs eīsdem redderet quibus cōgi-
tāvisset. (CICERO, *BRŪTUS* 301)

[†]memoria, supply of Hortensius

commentor (1-tr.) prepare beforehand, practice

[†]scrīptum, scrīptī *n.* writing; script

reddō (red- + dō) give back; reproduce, repeat

20. Cicero explains why an orator must have a thorough knowledge of history.

nescīre autem quid antequam nātus sīs acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. quid
enim est aetās hominis nisi ea memoriā rērum veterum cum superiōrum aetāte
contextitur? (CICERO, *ORĀTOR* 120)

superior, superius upper; previous, earlier

contextō, contexere, contextuī, contextus weave together, connect, link

21. Referring to the long, fortunate life of the Persian king Cyrus, Cato speaks about the pur-
suits of old age.

hāc igitur fortunā fruī licet senibus nec aetās impedit quō minus et cēterārum rērum
et in prīmīs[†] agrī colendī studia teneāmus ūsque ad ultimum tempus senectūtis.

(CICERO, *DE SENECTŪTE* 60)

fruo, fruī, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

senex, senis old; *subst.*, old man

[†]in prīmīs, here, especially, above all

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend

ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way

ultimus, -a, -um farthest; last, final

senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age

22. One of the most important laws of friendship

haec igitur lēx in amīcitiā sancīatur, ut neque rogēmus rēs turpēs nec faciāmus rogātī. turpis enim excūsātiō est et minimē accipiēda cum in cēterīs peccātīs, tum sī quis contrā rem pūblicam sē amīcī causā fēcisse fateātur.†

(CICERO, *DĒ AMĪCITIĀ* 40)

sancīō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus ratify, confirm
excūsātiō, excūsātiōnis *f.* excuse, justification
peccātum, peccātī *n.* error, mistake; offense
 †**fateor**, *here*, claim

23. With a series of rhetorical questions Cicero expresses his exasperation at Antony's actions.

omniane bonīs virīs quae facere possunt faciēda sunt, etiamne† sī turpia, sī pernīcīōsa erunt, sī facere omnīnō nōn licēbit? quid autem turpius aut foedius aut quod minus deceat quam contrā senātum, contrā civīs, contrā patriam exercitum dūcere? quid vērō magis vituperandum quam id facere quod nōn liceat? licet autem nēmīnī contrā patriam dūcere exercitum . . . (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS XIII* 14)

†**-ne** implies that the preceding question must be repeated.

pernīcīōsus, -a, -um destructive
foedus, -a, -um foul, loathsome, atrocious
deceat, decēre, decuit, it is becoming, it is proper
vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

24. A paragraph from a letter to Atticus on the unsavory state of affairs in the Roman Republic

dē rē pūblicā nihil habeō ad tē scribere† nisi summum odium omnium hominum in eōs quī tenent omnia. mūtātiōnis tamen spēs nūlla. sed, quod facile sentiās, taedet ipsum Pompeium eumque vehementer paenitet. nōn prōvideō satis quem exitum futūrum putem; sed certē videntur haec aliquō† ēruptūra.

(CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* II.22.6)

†**scribere**, *here*, infinitive expressing purpose
mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis *f.* change
vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly
prōvideō (**prō-** + **videō**) foresee

exitus, exitūs *m.* outcome
 †**aliquō** (adv.) in some direction
ērupō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth

25. A passage from a letter of Caesar to Cicero quoted in a letter of Cicero to his friend Atticus

neque illud mē movet: quod īī quī ā mē dīmissī sunt discessisse dīcuntur ut mihi rursus bellum īferrent; nihil enim mālō quam et mē meī similem esse et illōs suī.

(CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IX.16.2)

dīmittō (**dis-** + **mittō**) send away, let go
rursus (adv.) again

26. After admonishing Cicero not to let his grief over the death of his daughter keep him from actively participating in political life at a time of crisis, Sulpicius finally shows a little restraint.

plūra mē ad tē dē hāc rē scribere pudet nē videar prūdentiae tuae diffidere.

(CICERO, *AD FAMILIARES* IV.5.6)

prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence

diffidō, diffidere, —, **diffisum** lack confidence in, have no faith in (+ dat.)

27. Cicero writes to Tiro, his freedman, secretary, and friend.

sic habētō,† mī Tīrō, nēminem esse quī mē amet quīn idem tē amet; et cum tuā et meā maximē interest tē valēre, tum multīs est cūrae. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIARES* XVI.4.4)

†**habētō** = 2nd sing. fut. act. imper., consider

Tīrō, Tīrōnis *m.* Tiro

28. Caesar reports an early contact between himself and the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.

Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs† dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt† rogātum auxilium . . . (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* I.11)

Aeduī, Aeduōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aedui (a Gallic tribe)

†**iīs** refers to the Helvetians (a Gallic tribe).

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend

†**mittunt**, historical use of present tense; translate as perfect

29. When explaining his reasons for crossing the Rhine and pursuing war against certain German tribes, Caesar mentions a plea of one tribe allied to him.

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* IV.16)

Ubiī, Ubiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Ubii (a German tribe)

Trānsrhēnānī, Trānsrhēnānōrum *m. pl.* those living across the Rhine

obses, obsidis *m. or f.* hostage

Suēbī, Suēbōrum *m. pl.* (the) Suebi (a group of German tribes)

30. While on the march, the legions of Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta are ambushed by the Eburones, a Belgic tribe led by Ambiorix. Several lieutenants are seriously injured.

hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit† rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALICŌ* V.36)

permōveō (per- + moveō) thoroughly move, disturb

Q. Titurius, Q. Titurii *m.* Q. Titurius

procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance

Ambiorix, Ambiorigis *m.* Ambiorix

cohortor (co- + hortor) (1-tr.) exhort, encourage

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus
perceive, observe

interpres, interpretis *m. or f.* go-between, agent; interpreter

Cn. Pompeius, Cn. Pompeii *m.* Gn. Pompey

†**mittit**, *historical use of present tense; here introduces both secondary (cōspexisset) and primary (parcat) sequence, the latter to emphasize the Indirect Command*

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

31. Caesar summarizes the military situation after he has pursued and hemmed in the troops led by Afranius and Petreius, two of Pompey's generals.

sī proelium committerētur, propinquitās castrōrum celerem superātis ex fugā receptum dabat.† hāc dē causā cōstituerat signa īferentibus resistere, prior proeliō nōn lacessere. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ CIVILI* I.82)

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in
propinquitās, propinquitātis *f.* nearness, proximity

receptus, receptūs *m.* withdrawal, retreat

†**dabat**, *imperf. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence*

resistō, resistere, restitī, — halt; make a stand against, resist (+ dat.)

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīi/lacessivī, lacessītus
challenge; provoke, rouse

32. A description of a valiant legion fighting a rearguard action

quae† tamen fortiter vincentium impetum sustinuit magnīs cōpiis hostium circumdata; praesentissimō animō pugnāns in orbem sē recēpit ad rādīcēs montium.

([CAESAR], *DE BELLŌ ALEXANDRINŌ* 40)

†**quae**, *connective relative; antecedent is the 26th legion*

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault

sustineō (sub- + teneō), **sustinēre, sustinūi, sustentus** withstand

praesēns, praesentis present; resolute

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; **sē recipere**, to draw back, to retreat

rādīx, rādīcis, -ium *f.* root; *sing. or pl.*, lower part, foot

33. The historian describes the virtue of the citizen of the early Roman Republic.

sē quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, cōspicī dum tāle facinus faceret properābat. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 7)

feriō, ferīre, —, — strike, hit

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsus climb up, ascend, scale

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus perceive, observe

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed

properō (1-tr.) hasten, rush; be eager

34. After the historian describes the moral decline in Roman society, he comments on how Catiline made use of the situation.

in tantā tamque conruptā civitāte Catilīna, id quod factū facillumum erat, omnium flāgitiōrum atque facinorum circum sē tamquam stīpātōrum catervās habēbat.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 14)

corruptus, -a, -um corrupt

flāgitium, flāgitī *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

circum (prep. + acc.) around

tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if

stīpātōr, stīpātōris *m.* bodyguard, attendant

caterva, catervae *f.* throng, crowd, troop

35. Speaking in the senate in the debate about punishment for the Catilinarian conspirators, a young Julius Caesar credits the ancestors with good judgment.

maiōrēs nostrī, patrēs cōscriptī, neque cōsili neque audāciae umquam eguēre; neque illīs superbia obstābat quō minus aliēna īstitutā, sī modo proba erant, imitārentur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 51)

egeō, egēre, eguī, — lack, want, need (+ gen.)

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; arrogance, haughtiness

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien, foreign

īstitutum, īstitutī *n.* practice, custom, usage

probus, -a, -um excellent; upright, virtuous

imitor (1-tr.) copy, follow, imitate

36. Adherbal gives the Roman senate a reason why it should help him against his cousin Jugurtha.

. . . erat maiestātis populī Rōmānī prohibēre iniūriam neque patī quouisquam rēgnum per scelus crēscere. (SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 14)

maiestās, maiestātis *f.* greatness, grandeur, excellence

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injustice, injury

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* royal power

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus increase, grow

37. The historian describes the scene after Marius and the Roman forces win a bloody battle against Jugurtha, a Numidian king.

tum spectāculum horribile in campīs patentibus: sequī, fugere, occīdī, capī; equī atque virī adflictī, ac multī volneribus acceptīs neque fugere posse neque quiētem patī, nīti modo ac statim concidere . . . (SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 101)

spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter
equus, equī *m.* horse
affligō, affligere, afflixī, afflictus dash, strike, cast down; injure, shatter

quiēs, quiētis *f.* rest, repose; inaction
nītor, nīti, nīxus/nīsus sum rest upon, rely upon; make an effort, strive
statim (*adv.*) immediately
concidō (con- + cadō) fall down, collapse; fall dead

38. Queen Dido graciously welcomes a band of surviving Trojans.

tum breviter Dīdō vultum dēmissa profātur:

“solvite corde metum, Teucrī, sēclūdite cūrās.” (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.561–62)

dēmittō (dē- + mittō) let down, drop

profor (prō- + for) speak out

cor, cordis *n.* heart; mind

Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans

sēclūdō, sēclūdere, sēclūsī, sēclūsus separate; put away

39. Aeneas describes the dreadful appearance of Hector’s ghost.

ei mihi, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō

Hectore quī redit exuviās indūtus Achillī

vel Danaum Phrygiōs iaculātus puppibus ignīs! (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.274–76)

ei (*interj.*) *expression of anguish*, o! alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me!

Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector (son of Priam)

exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor

induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on

Achillēs, Achillī *m.* Achilles

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks;
Danaum = *gen. pl.*

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan

iaculor (1-tr.) strike, throw, hurl

puppis, puppis, -ium *f.* stern (of a boat); ship

40. Aeneas describes the effects of hearing the ghostly voice of a former Trojan comrade, Polydorus.

tum vērō ancipitī mentem formīdine pressus

obstipūī steteruntque† comae et vōx faucibus haesit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* III.47–48)

anceps, ancipitis two-headed, double; wavering, doubtful

formīdō, formīdinis *f.* fear, terror

obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipūī, — be stupefied, be dumbstruck

†**steterunt** = *archaic form of steterunt*

coma, comae *f. sing. or pl.*, hair

faucēs, faucium *f. pl.* jaws, gullet, throat

haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus stick, cling, hold fast (+ *dat.*)

41. The poet describes Aeneas's perplexity after he has been commanded by Mercury to leave Carthage.

heu quid agat? quō nunc rēgīnam ambīre furentem
 audeat adfātū? quae p̄ma exordia sūmat?
 atque animum nunc hūc celerem nunc dīvidit illūc

in partīsq̄ue rapit variās perque omnia versat. (VERGIL, AENEID IV.283–86)

ambiō (ambi- + eō), ambīre , ambīi/ambīvi , ambitus go around	sūmō , sūmere , sūmpsi , sūmptus take up, seize
furō , furere , —, — rage, rave	dīvidō , dīvidere , dīvīsi , dīvīsus separate, divide
affātus , affātus <i>m.</i> address, utterance	varius , -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting
exordium , exordiū <i>n.</i> starting point, beginning	versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning

42. The poet describes Mercury as he appears to Aeneas in a dream.

huic sē forma deī vultū redeuntis eōdem
 obtulit in somnīs rursusque ita vīsa monēre est,
 omnia Mercuriō similis, vōcemque colōremque

et crīnis flāvōs et membra decōra iuventā: . . . (VERGIL, AENEID IV.556–59)

forma , formae <i>f.</i> shape, form	crīnis , crīnis , -ium <i>m.</i> <i>sing. or pl.</i> , hair
offerō (ob- + ferō), offerre , obtuli , oblātus put in (one's) path; offer, present, reveal	flāvus , -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
somnus , somnī <i>m.</i> sleep; dream	membrum , membrī <i>n.</i> limb
rursus (adv.) again	decōrus , -a, -um becoming; honorable, seemly
color , colōris <i>m.</i> color; colōremque elides into the next line.	iuventa , iuventae <i>f.</i> youth(fulness)

43. Pallas, son of King Evander, greets Aeneas and his companions, who have come to Evander's pastoral kingdom seeking aid for the war in Italy.

. . . “iuvenēs, quae causa subēgit

ignōtās temptāre vīās? quō tenditis?” inquit.

“quī genus? unde domō? pācemne hūc fertis an arma?” (VERGIL, AENEID VIII.112–14)

iuvenis , iuvenis <i>m.</i> young man
subigō (sub- + agō), subigere , subēgī , subāctus incite, impel
ignōtus , -a, -um unknown
temptō (1-tr.) try, test, attempt
tendō , tendere , tetendī , tentus/tēnsus stretch out, extend; aim, head

44. Abandoned by Theseus on the island of Naxos, Ariadne ponders her situation.

quid faciam? quō sōla ferar? vacat īnsula cultū.

nōn hominum videō, nōn ego facta boum.

omne latus terrae cingit mare; nāvita nusquam,

nūlla per ambiguās puppis itūra viās. (OVID, *HERŌIDES* X.59–62)

vacō (1-intr.) be empty, be without (+ abl.)

cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; civilization

bōs, bovis *m. or f.* bull; cow; *pl.*, cattle;

boum = *gen. pl.*

latus, lateris *n.* side

nāvita = **nauta**

nusquam (*adv.*) nowhere

ambiguus, -a, -um wavering, doubtful;
untrustworthy, treacherous

puppis, puppis, -ium *f.* stern (of a boat); ship

45. The poet reveals why women go to public games and why men may wish to go there, too.

spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. (OVID, *ARS AMATŌRIA* I.99)

46. Could the poet write prose?

saepe pater dixit, “studium quid inūtile temptās?

Maeonidēs nūllās ipse reliquit opēs.”

mōtus eram dictīs, tōtōque Helicōne relictō

scrībere temptābam verba solūta modīs.

sponte suā carmen numerōs veniēbat ad aptōs,

et quod temptābam scrībere versus erat. (OVID, *TRISTIA* IV.10.21–26)

inūtilis, inūtile useless

temptō (1-tr.) test; try, attempt

Maeonidēs, Maeonidae *m.* (a) Maeonian or

Lydian man; Homer

***ops, opis** *f.* power; *pl.*, resources, wealth

Helicōn, Helicōnis *m.* Mount Helicon (in

Boeotia) (sacred to Apollo and the Muses)

***spōns, *spontis** *f.* will, volition

numerus, numerī *m.* number; rhythm, meter

aptus, -a, -um composed, fitted together; ready,
fitting

versus, versūs *m.* verse, line (of poetry)

47. The exiled poet addresses his wife.

barbara mē tellūs orbisque novissima† magnī

sustinet et saevō cīnctus ab hoste locus.

hinc ego trāicerer—neque enim mea culpa cruenta est—

esset, quae dēbet, sī tibi cūra meī. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.2.31–34)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign, strange; barbarous,
uncivilized

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

†**novissima**, *here*, most remote, extreme

sustineō (**sub-** + **teneō**), **sustinēre, sustinui**,

— support, sustain

trāiciō (**trāns-** + **iaciō**) transport, transfer

culpa, culpaē *f.* guilt, blame; fault, offense

cruentus, -a, -um bloody

48. The exiled poet resorts to prayer.

adloquor ēn absēns absentia nūmina supplex,
sī fās est hominī cum Iove posse loquī. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.2.45–46)

alloquor (ad- + loquor) address

ēn (interj.) behold! look!

supplex, supplicis suppliant, humble

49. The poem informs a friend in Rome how the poet in exile feels about him.

nec patriam magis ille† suam dēsīderat et quae
plūrima cum patriā sentit abesse sibi,
quam vultūs oculōsque tuōs, ō dulcior illō
melle quod in cērīs Attica pōnit apis. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.4.27–30)

†ille refers to the poet.

dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire

mel, mellis *n.* honey

cēra, cērae *f.* beeswax; wax cell; *pl.*, honeycomb

Atticus, -a, -um Attic, Athenian

apis, apis, -ium *f.* bee

50. A plan of Tarquinius Priscus, fifth of the legendary kings of Rome, and an event that disrupted it

mūrō quoque lapideō circumdare urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum coeptīs† in-
tervēnit. adeōque ea subita rēs fuit ut prius Aniēnem trānsīrent hostēs quam obviam
īre ac prohibēre exercitus Rōmānus posset. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* I.36.1)

lapideus, -a, -um (made of) stone

Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine (of a territory and people
northeast of Rome)

†**coeptum, coeptī** *n.* undertaking, enterprise,
scheme

intervenīō (inter- + veniō) interrupt

subitus, -a, -um sudden

Aniēn, Aniēnis *m.* (the) Anio (a river in northern
Latium)

trānseō (trāns- + eō), **trānsīre, trānsīi/trānsīvī,**
trānsitus go across, cross

obviam (adv.) in the way of, so as to meet;

obviam īre, to go to meet

51. The historian describes the consul Volumnius's experience in fighting the Sallentini, a Samnian people living in the heel of Italy.

Volumnium prōvinciae† haud paenituit. multa secunda proelia fēcit; aliquot urbēs
hostium vī cēpit. praedae erat largītor et benignitātem per sē grātam comitāte adiu-
vābat mīlitemque† hīs artibus fēcerat et perīculī et labōris avidum.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* IX.42.5)

Volumnius, Volumnī *m.* Volumnius

†**prōvincia, here**, task, assignment

secundus, -a, -um favorable

aliquot (indecl. adj.) several

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder

largītor, largītōris *m.* bestower, giver

benignitās, benignitātis *f.* kindness, benevolence,
generosity

comitās, comitātis *f.* friendliness, charm

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī, adiūtus help, assist;
augment, enhance

†**mīles, here, collective singular**, soldiery, soldiers

avidus, -a, -um greedy; eager (for), hungry (for)
(+ gen.)

52. When Hannibal was crossing the Appenines near the end of winter, he and his troops were overwhelmed by a violent storm.

tum vērō ingentī sonō caelum strepere et inter horrendōs fragōrēs micāre ignēs;
captī auribus et oculīs metū omnēs torpēre; . . . (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXI.58.5)

sonus, sonī *m.* sound, noise

strepō, strepere, strepuī, strepitum make a loud
noise, crash

horrendus, -a, -um terrible, tremendous

fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar

micō, micāre, micuī, — dart, flicker, flash

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

torpeō, torpēre, —, — be struck numb, be
paralyzed

53. After describing a tremendous Roman victory over the Carthaginians in 207 B.C.E., the historian recounts a horrific moment in the Roman camp.

C. Claudius cōsul cum in castra redisset, caput Hasdrubalis, quod servātum cum
cūrā attulerat, prōici ante hostium statiōnēs, captīvōsque Āfrōs vīnctōs ut erant os-
tendī, duōs etiam ex iīs solūtōs ire ad Hannibalem et exprōmere quae ācta essent
iussit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXVII.51.11)

C. Claudius, C. Claudī *m.* C. Claudius (consul
207 B.C.E.)

Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis *m.* Hasdrubal
(Carthaginian general and brother of Hannibal)

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring
with one

prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) throw forward, fling

statiō, statiōnis *f.* guard post

captīvus, captīvī *m.* prisoner of war, captive

Āfer, Āfra, Āfrum African

vīnciō, vīncire, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, join, fetter

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ostēnsus
present, show

exprōmō, exprōmere, exprōmpsi, exprōmptus
bring forth, disclose, reveal

54. After a furious attack fails to deter the Carthaginians, the praetor Quinctilius Varus addresses the proconsul in charge, Marcus Cornelius Cethegus.

“lentior, ut vidēs, fit pugna, et indūrātur praeter spem* resistendō hostium timor, ac
nē vertat in audāciam perīculum est.” (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXX.18.3)

lentus, -a, -um slow; tough

pugna, pugnae *f.* fight

indūrō (1-tr.) make hard, harden; steel

spēs, here, expectation

resistō, resistere, restitī, — resist, withstand

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn

55. The leader of the Achaeans, allies of Rome involved in a dispute with the Spartans, concludes an appeal.

verēmur quidem vōs, Rōmānī, et sī ita vultis, etiam timēmus: sed plūs et verēmur et
timēmus deōs immōrtālēs. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXXIX.37.17)

56. About to assume the governorship of Nearer Spain, Ti. Sempronius describes the nature of the people in that province and the challenges that lie ahead for him.

dictū quam rē facilius est prōvinciam ingeniō ferōcem, rebellātricem cōnfēcisse.†
 paucae cīvitātēs, ut quidem ego audiō, quās vīcīna maximē hiberna premēbant, in
 iūs diciōnemque vēnērunt; ulteriōrēs in armīs sunt. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XL.35.13)

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
rebellātrīx, rebellātrīcis rebellious
 †**cōnfēcīō**, here, subdue, pacify
vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring

hiberna, hibernōrum *n. pl.* winter quarters,
 winter (military) camp
diciō, diciōnis *f.* sovereignty, sway, power
ulterior, ulterius farther, more distant

57. M. Servilius addresses the soldiers who are preventing the triumph of their general, L. Aemilius Paulus, after his victory in Macedonia. A jealous rival had roused the soldiers' resentment against Paulus, who had refused to let his troops indiscriminately seize booty after the victory.

aliquis est Rōmae, praeter Perseā, quī triumphārī dē Macedonibus nōlit; et eum nōn
 isdem manibus discerpitis quibus Macedonas vīcistis? vincere vōs prohibuisset sī
 potuisset, quī triumphantis urbem inīre prohibet. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XLV.38.2)

Perseus, Perseī *m.* Perseus (last king of Macedonia); **Perseā** = *acc. sing.*
triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph
Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians (a people of northern Greece); **Macedonas** = *acc. pl.*

discerpō, discerpere, discerpsī, discerptus tear to pieces
inēō (in + eō), inīre, inīī/inīvī, initus enter

58. Seneca concludes a letter to Lucilius, in which he has argued about the advantage of what many fear most.

negā nunc magnum beneficium esse nātūrae quod necesse est morī.
 (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLES* CI.14)

negō (1-tr.) deny
beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

59. Creon explains why he does not want to tell Oedipus what he knows.

ubi turpis est medicīna, sānārī piget. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *OEDIPUS* 515)

medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine
sānō (1-tr.) heal, cure

60. While consoling his friend Polybius, whose brother has recently died, Seneca reminds him of a parallel from history.

quid tibi referam Scīpiōnem Āfricānum, cui mors frātris in exiliō nuntiāta est?
 is frāter, quī ēripuit frātre carcerī, nōn potuit ēripere fātō.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* XI.14.4)

Scīpiō Āfricānus, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī *m.* (P. Cornelius) Scipio Africanus (consul 205 B.C.E.)
nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report
carcer, carceris *m.* prison

61. Quintilian recalls an opinion of Socrates.

. . . Sōcratēs inhonestam sibi crēdidit ōrātiōnem quam eī Lysiās reō composuerat . . .

(QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* II.15.30)

Sōcratēs, Sōcratis *m.* Socrates

inhonestus, -a, -um dishonorable, disgraceful

Lysiās, Lysiae *m.* Lysias (an Athenian orator and contemporary of Socrates)

reus, reī *m.* defendant

compōnō (com- + pōnō) put together; compose

62. The poet boldly addresses a goddess.

nūllum nūmen habēs sī sit prūdentia: nōs tē,

nōs facimus, Fortūna, deam caelōque locāmus. (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* X.365–66)

prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, prudence

locō (1-tr.) place

63. The satirist urges more care in the raising of a son than in preparing for a guest.

grātum est quod patriae cīvem populōque dedisti,

sī facis ut patriae sit idōneus, ūtilis agrīs,

ūtilis et bellōrum et pācis rēbus agendīs.

plūrimum enim intererit quibus artibus et quibus hunc tū

mōribus ĩnstituās . . . (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* XIV.70–74)

idōneus, -a, -um suitable, apt, capable

ūtilis, ūtile useful

ĩnstituō, ĩnstituere, ĩnstituī, ĩnstituētus instruct, train, educate

64. The beginning of a speech by Agricola to his troops before battle

septimus annus est, commilitōnēs, ex quō virtūte et auspiciīs imperiī Rōmānī,
fidē atque operā vestrā Britanniam vīcistis. tot expeditiōnibus, tot proeliīs, seu forti-
tūdine adversus hostis seu patientiā ac labōre paene adversus ipsam rērum nā-
tūram opus fuit, neque mē militum neque vōs ducis paenituit.

(TACITUS, *DE VĪTĀ AGRICOLAE* 33)

commilitō, commilitōnis *m.* fellow soldier

auspiciū, auspiciū *n.* augury, omen

opera, operae *f.* effort, work

Britannia, Britanniae *f.* Britain

expeditiō, expeditiōnis *f.* military operation,
expedition

seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu . . .**,
whether . . . or (if) . . .

fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against,
in the face of

patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, hardiness

paene (adv.) nearly, almost

65. After recording the differing traditions about the emperor Galba's last words, the historian appends a tart remark.

nōn interfuit occīdentium quid dīceret.† (TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* I.41)

occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter

†**dīceret**, *subject is Galba*

66. The historian describes a battle between Roman forces and the Cherusci, a German tribe led by the fierce Arminius, whose first attempt to break through the line of Roman archers had been rebuffed.

nīsū tamen corporis et impetū equī pervāsīt, oblitus faciem suō cruōre nē nōscerētur. quīdam adgnitum ā Chaucīs inter auxilia Rōmāna agentibus† ēmissumque trādidērunt. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* II.17)

nīsus, *nīsūs *m.* exertion, effort

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack; onset, rush; vigor, force

equus, equī *m.* horse

pervādō, pervādere, pervāsī, pervāsus pass through, penetrate, prevail; **pervāsīt**, *subject is Arminius*

oblinō, oblinere, oblēvī, oblitus smear, coat, cover

faciēs, faciēi *f.* face; appearance

cruor, cruōris *m.* blood, gore

agnōscō (ad- + nōscō), agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus recognize, identify

Chaucī, Chaucōrum *m. pl.* (the) Chauci (a German tribe)

†**agō**, *here*, do service

ēmittō (ē- + mittō) set free, release

67. The historian recounts an old story indicating the extent of the emperor Tiberius's frustration with the senate.

memoriae prōditur Tiberium, quotiēs cūriā ēgrederētur, Graecīs verbīs in hunc modum ēloquī solitum, "ō hominēs ad servitūtem parātōs!" scīlicet etiam illum quī libertātem pūblicam nōllet tam prōiectae servientium patientiae taedēbat.

(TACITUS, *ANNĀLES* III.65)

prōdō (prō- + dō) hand down, transmit

quotiē(n)s (rel. adv.) as often as, whenever

cūria, cūriae *f.* the Curia, the senate house

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

ēloquor (ē- + loquor) utter, say

scīlicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course

prōiectus, -a, -um prominent; abject, groveling

serviō, servīre, servīi/servīvī, servītum be a slave, be enslaved

patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, patience; submissiveness

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō S. Rosciō Amerinō* 56–57

Cicero likens prosecutors to the geese and dogs maintained at public expense in order to guard the Capitoline hill.

ānseribus cibāria pūblicē locantur et canēs aluntur in Capitōliō ut significant sī† fūrēs vēnerint. at fūrēs internōscere nōn possunt, significant tamen sī† quī noctū in Capitōlium vēnerint et, quia id est suspiciōsum, tametsī bestiae sunt, tamen in eam partem† potius peccant quae est cautior. quod sī lūce quoque canēs latrent cum deōs salūtātum aliquī vēnerint, opīnor, eīs crūra suffringantur quod ācrēs sint etiam tum cum suspiciō nūlla sit. simillima est accūsātōrum ratiō. aliī vestrum ānserēs sunt quī tantum modo† clāmant, nocēre nōn possunt, aliī canēs quī et latrāre et mordēre possunt. cibāria vōbīs praebēri vidēmus; vōs autem maximē dēbētis in eōs impetum facere quī merentur. hoc populō grātissimum est. deinde, sī volētis, etiam tum cum vērī simile erit aliquem commisisse, in suspiciōne latrātōte; id quoque concēdi potest. sīn autem sīc agētis ut arguātis aliquem patrem occīdisse neque dīcere

ānser, ānseris *m. or f.* goose

cibāria, cibāriōrum *n. pl.* ration or allowance (of food provided to animals); provisions

locō (1-tr.) place

canis, canis *m. or f.* dog

alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish

Capitōlium, Capitōliū *n.* (the) Capitoline hill

significō (1-tr.) indicate, signify

†**sī**, here, introduces *Indirect Question*

fūr, fūris, -ium *m.* thief, robber

at (conj.) but

internōscō (inter- + nōscō), internōscere,

internōvī, internōtus distinguish; pick out (from others)

noctū = nocte

suspiciōsus, -a, -um suspicious

tametsī (conj.) even though

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal

†**in eam partem . . . quae . . .** to that side that . . .

potius (adv.) rather

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake, err

cautus, -a, -um cautious

latrō (1-intr.) bark; make a noise; **latrātōte =**
2nd pl. fut. act. imper., bark

salūtō (1-tr.) say hello; call upon, pay one's respects (to)

opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think

crūs, crūris *n.* leg

suffringō, suffringere, —, — break the lower part of

suspiciō, suspiciōnis *f.* suspicion; reason for suspicion

accūsātor, accūsātōris *m.* prosecutor

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way, method

†**tantum modo** only, merely

clāmō (1-intr.) shout, make a noise

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus be harmful, harm, do harm

mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus bite, wound (with the teeth)

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus furnish, provide

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault

mereor, merērī, meritus sum deserve

deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next

committō (con- + mittō) commit (an offense); break a law, offend

concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

sīn (conj.) but if

arguō, arguere, arguī, argūtus charge, allege

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus kill

possitis aut quā rē aut quō modō, ac tantum modo† sine suspiciōne latrābitis, crūra quidem vōbīs nēmō suffringet, sed, sī ego hōs† bene nōvī, litteram illam† cui vōs ūsque eō inimīcī estis ut etiam Kal. omnīs ōderitis ita vehementer ad caput adfigent ut postea nēminem alium nisi fortunās vestrās accūsāre possitis.

†**tantum modo**, only, merely

suspiciō, suspiciōnis *f.* suspicion; reason for suspicion

latrō (1-intr.) bark; make a noise

crūs, crūris *n.* leg

suffringō, suffringere, —, — break the lower part of

†**hōs** refers to the judges.

†**litteram illam** that infamous letter (K, for **kalumniātor**, false accuser; a prosecutor could be so branded if he was found guilty of bringing false charges)

ūsque (adv.) continuously; all the way (to);

ūsque eō, to such an extent, so

Kalendae, Kalendārum *f. pl.* the Kalends (the first day of a month); **Kal.** = **Kalendās**

vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly

affigō, affigere, affixī, affixus fix, fasten, attach

postea (adv.) after, afterward

accūsō (1-tr.) blame, find fault with; charge, accuse

While Sulla ruled Rome as a dictator in 80 B.C.E., young Cicero defended S. Roscius Amerinus against charges of murdering his own father. Roscius had been framed by those who had arranged the murder, two of his father's relatives conspiring with a freedman of Sulla to acquire the property of the dead man. The *Prō S. Rosciō Amerinō* shows Cicero's rhetorical style in the making amid a complex political situation.

2. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.9

In the hope that a discussion about death may be presented more suitably, Cicero offers an imitation of a Socratic dialogue.

Audītor. Malum mihi vidētur esse mors.

Magister. Iisne, quī mortuī sunt, an iīs, quibus moriendum est?

A. Utrīsque.[†]

M. Est miserum, igitur, quoniam malum.

A. Certē.

M. Ergō et iī quibus ēvēnit iam ut morentur et iī quibus ēventūrum est miserī.

A. Mihi ita vidētur.

M. Nēmō ergō nōn miser.

A. Prorsus nēmō.

M. Et quidem, sī tibi cōnstāre vīs, omnēs, quīcumque nātī sunt eruntve, nōn solum miserī, sed etiam semper miserī. nam sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum quī vīverent exciperēs (moriendum est enim omnibus), esset tamen miseriae fīnis in morte. quoniam autem etiam mortuī miserī sunt, in miseriam nāscimur sempiternam. necesse est enim miserōs esse eōs quī centum mīlibus annōrum ante occidērunt, vel potius omnīs, quīcumque nātī sunt.

audītor, audītōris *m.* listener

magister, magistrī *m.* teacher

†uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each (of two), both

ergō (adv.) therefore

ēveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, turn out

prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect, altogether

cōnstō (con- + stō), **cōnstāre, cōnstītī,**

cōnstātūrus stand still; be consistent with (+ dat.)

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

-ve (enclitic adv.) or

excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out, exclude

miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

sempiternus, -a, -um everlasting, perpetual

potius (adv.) rather

3. Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* V.15

Cicero responds to a letter from his friend L. Lucceius, praetor (67 B.C.E.), politician, lawyer, historian, and an ally of Cicero during the Catilinarian conspiracy. Beset by ill health, Lucceius wrote to Cicero in order both to console him in his grief over the recent death of his daughter Tullia and to encourage him to attend to the business of the crumbling Roman Republic.

M. CICERO S. D. L. LUCCEIO Q. F.†

Omnis amor tuus ex omnibus partibus sē ostendit in iīs litterīs quās ā tē proximē accēpī, nōn ille quidem mihi ignōtus sed tamen grātus et optātus; dīcerem “iūcundus” nisi id verbum in† omne tempus perdidissem, neque ob eam ūnam causam quam tū suspicāris et in quā mē lēnissimīs et amantissimīs verbīs ūtēns rē graviter accūsās, sed quod illiūs tantī vulneris quae remedia esse dēbēbant ea nūlla sunt. quid enim? ad amīcōsne cōnfugiam? quam multī sunt? habuimus enim ferē commūnis; quōrum aliī occidērunt, aliī nescio quō† pactō obdūruērunt. tēcum vīvere possem equidem et maximē vellem. vetustās, amor, cōnsuētūdō, studia paria—quod vinclum, quaesō, dēest nostrae coniūctiōnī? possumusne igitur esse ūnā?† nec mehercule intellegō quid impediāt; sed certē adhūc nōn fuimus cum essēmus vīcīnī in Tusculānō, in Puteolānō. nam quid dīcam in urbe, in quā, cum forum commūne sit, vīcīnitās nōn requīritur?

L. Lucceius, L. Lucceiī *m.* L. Lucceius

†Q. F. = Quinti filio

ostendō, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus/

ostēnsus present, show; offer

proximē (adv.) most recently

ignōtus, -a, -um unknown

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

†in, here, expressing expected duration, for

suspīcor (1-tr.) imagine; suspect

lēnis, lēne mild, gentle

accūsō (1-tr.) find fault with, censure

remediūm, remediū *n.* remedy, cure

cōnfugiō (con- + fugiō) flee for refuge or safety

ferē (adv.) almost, nearly

commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common

†nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.)

sometimes written as two words,

some . . . or other

pactum, pacti *n.* means, manner, method, way

obdūrēscō, obdūrēscere, obdūruī, — become hard(ened), become callous

vetustās, vetustātis *f.* (old) age, antiquity

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage

pār, parīs equal; similar

vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī *n.* bond, chain, link

quaesō, *quaesere, —, — seek, pray for;

1st sing. pres. act. indic., I ask you, please

dēsum (dē- + sum), dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus

be absent, be lacking, be missing

coniūctiō, coniūctiōnis *f.* union, bond

†ūnā (adv.) together

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still

vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring; *subst.*, neighbor

Tusculānum, Tusculānī *n.* Tusculanum (an

estate [particularly Cicero's estate] at or near

Tusculum, a town in Latium)

Puteolānum, Puteolānī *n.* Puteolanum (an estate

at or near Puteoli, a town near Naples)

vīcīnitās, vīcīnitātis *f.* proximity, nearness

requīrō (re- + quaerō), requirere, requīsī/

requīsīvī, requīsītus seek again; call for, need

sed cāsū nescio quō[†] in ea tempora nostra aetās incidit ut, cum maximē flōrēre nōs oportēret, tum vīvere etiam pudēret. quod enim esse poterat mihi perfugium spoliātō et domesticīs et forēnsibus ornāmentīs atque sōlāciīs[?] litterae, crēdō, quibus ūtor assiduē; quid enim aliud facere possum[?] sed nescio quō[†] modō ipsae illae excludere mē ā portū et perfugiō videntur et quasi exprobrāre quod in eā vitā maneam in quā nihil insit nisi propāgātiō miserrimī temporis.

Hīc tū mē abesse urbe mīrāris, in quā domus nihil dēlectāre possit, summum sit odium temporum, hominum, forī, cūriāe[?] itaque sīc litterīs ūtor, in quibus cōnsūmō omne tempus, nōn ut ab iīs medicīnam perpetuam sed ut exiguam oblīviōnem dolōris petam. quod sī id ēgissēmus ego atque tū quod nē in mentem quidem nōbīs veniēbat propter cottidiānōs metūs et omne tempus ūnā[†] fuissēmus, neque mē valētūdō tua offenderet neque tē maeror meus. quod, quantum fierī poterit, cōsequāmur. quid enim est utrīque[†] nostrum aptius[?] propediem tē igitur vidēbō.

[†]nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.)
sometimes written as two words,
some . . . or other

incidō (in- + cadō), incidere, incidī, incāsūrus
fall into, pass; slip

flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, — blossom; prosper;
be at the height of one's power

perfugium, perfugiū *n.* place of refuge, shelter,
sanctuary

spoliō (1-tr.) strip, rob

domesticus, -a, -um personal, domestic

forēnsis, forēnse of or belonging to the forum,
forensic; public

ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embel-
lishment; distinction, honor

sōlācium, sōlāciū *n.* comfort, solace, relief

assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly

excludō, excludere, exclūsī, exclūsus keep out,
exclude, debar

portus, portūs *m.* harbor; refuge, haven

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

exprobrō (1-tr.) bring up as a reproach

īnsum (in- + sum), īnesse, īnfuī, — be in;
be present, be contained

propāgātiō, propāgātiōnis *f.* continuation, prolon-
gation

mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at, be astonished

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

cūria, cūriāe *f.* the Curia, the senate house

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptus
wear away, consume; spend, pass

medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine; treatment, cure

perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without interrup-
tion; perpetual, everlasting

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

oblīviō, oblīviōnis *f.* (state of) forgetfulness,
oblivion

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

cottidiānus, -a, -um daily

[†]ūnā (adv.) together

valētūdō, valētūdinis *f.* health; illness, indispo-
sition

offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus trouble,
upset, give offense to, annoy

maeror, maerōris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning

cōsequor (con- + sequor) follow after, pursue

[†]uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each
(of two)

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit(ting), appropriate

propediem (adv.) before long, any day now, very
soon

4. Catullus III (hendecasyllable)

A mock-tragic dirge

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
et quantumst hominum venustiōrum:

passer mortuus est meae puellae,

passer, dēliciae meae puellae,

quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat; 5

nam mellītus erat suamque nōrat

ipsam† tam bene quam puella mātrem,

nec sēsē ā gremiō illius† movēbat,

sed circumsiliēns modo hūc modo illūc

ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat. 10

quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum

illūc, unde negant redīre quemquam.

at vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae

Orcī, quae omnia bella† dēvorātis:

tam bellum† mihi passerem abstulistis. 15

ō factum male, ō miselle passer!

tuā nunc operā meae puellae

flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn (for); grieve,
lament

venustus, -a, -um charming, pleasing

passer, passeris *m.* sparrow

dēliciae, dēliciārum *f. pl.* delight, darling, beloved

mellītus, -a, -um honey-sweet

†**ipsa, here,** mistress

gremium, gremiī *n.* bosom; lap

†The second **-ī-** of **illius** here scans *short*.

circumsiliō, circumsilīre, —, — leap about,
hop around

domina, dominae *f.* mistress

ūsque (adv.) continuously

pīpiō (1-intr.) chirp, cheep, peep

iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route

tenebricōsus, -a, -um full of shadows, gloomy

negō (1-tr.) deny, say . . . not

at (conj.) but

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

†**bellus, -a, -um** pretty, charming, lovely

dēvorō (1-tr.) swallow up, gulp down, devour

misellus, -a, -um wretched (little), pitiable

opera, operae *f.* effort, work; *abl.*, fault

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

turgidulus, -a, -um swollen (little)

rubeō, rubēre, —, — be red

ocellus, ocellī *m.* (little) eye

5. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.44

Caesar reports the German king Ariovistus's response to a series of Caesar's demands.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiīs domum propinquosque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō ā sē proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse.

Ariovistus, Ariovistī *m.* Ariovistus (a German king)
postulātum, postulātī *n.* demand
praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare
trānseō (trāns- + eō), **trānsire, trānsiī/trānsivī, trānsitus** go across, cross
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in north-eastern Gaul)
***spōns, *spontis** *f.* (one's own) will
arcessō, arcessere, arcessiī/arcessivī, arcessitus send for, summon; invite
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
praemium, praemiū *n.* reward, prize

propinquus, -a, -um near, close; *subst.*, relative
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant
obses, obsidis *m. or f.* hostage
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice
stīpendium, stīpendiī *n.* tax, tribute
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
impōnō (in- + pōnō) place on, impose on
cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus accustomed, habituate; *perfect active and passive*, be accustomed; **cōnsuērint**, *perf. subjunc. as if in primary sequence*

6. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.14

Caesar reports on practices of the Celtic tribes that he observed in Britain.

ex his[†] omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis.[†] sed sī quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur liberī,[†] quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

[†]his refers to the tribes of Britain.

hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, civilized
Cantium, **Cantiī** *n.* Cantium (a town in Britain)
incolō, **incolere**, **incoluī**, — inhabit
regiō, **regiōnis** *f.* region, locality
maritimus, -a, -um of or belonging to the sea;
 situated near the sea, coastal
Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic
cōnsuētūdō, **cōnsuētūdinis** *f.* custom, usage
interior, **interius** situated farther from the coast,
 more remote
plērīque, **plēraeque**, **plēraque** very many, most
frūmentum, **frūmentī** *n.* grain
serō, **serere**, **sēvī**, **satus** plant, sow
lac, **lactis** *n.* milk
carō, **carnis** *f.* flesh, meat
pellis, **pellis**, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide
vestiō, **vestire**, **vestīi/vestivī**, **vestītus** clothe,
 dress
Britannī, **Britannōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Britons
 (inhabitants of Britain)
vitrum, **vitrī** *n.* woad (a plant from which a blue
 dye is made); blue dye

inficiō (in- + faciō) dye
caeruleus, -a, -um (sky) blue
color, **colōris** *m.* color
horribilis, **horribile** terrifying, dreadful
pugna, **pugnae** *f.* fight, battle
aspiciō, **aspicere**, **aspexī**, **aspectus** look at, look
 upon; behold
capillus, **capillī** *m.* hair
prōmittō (prō- + mittō) send forth; (let) grow
 long
rādō, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsus** scrape; shave
labrum, **labrī** *n.* lip
superior, **superius** upper
uxor, **uxōris** *f.* wife
dēnī, **dēnae**, **dēna** ten together
duodēnī, **duodēnae**, **duodēna** twelve together
commūnis, **commūne** common, shared; held in
 common
parēs, **parentis**, -ium *m. or f.* parent
[†]**liberī**, *here*, children
virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin
dēducō (dē- + dūcō) lead away; bring home
 (as one's bride)

7. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 36

The historian reflects on the terrible power of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

eā tempestāte mihi imperium populī Rōmānī multō maxumē miserābile vīsum est. quoi quom ad occāsū ab ortū sōlis omnia domita armīs pārērent, domī ōtium atque dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant, adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs quī sēque remque pūblicam obstinātis animīs perditum īrent. namque duōbus senātī dēcrētīs ex tantā multītūdine neque praemiō inductus coniūrātiōnem patefēcerat neque ex castrīs Catilīnae quisquam omnium discesserat: tanta vīs morbī atque utī tābēs plērōsque cīvium animōs invāserat.

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm; time
miserābilis, miserābile pitiable, wretched
occāsus, occāsūs *m.* falling, setting
ortus, ortūs *m.* rising
domō, domāre, domuī, domitus subdue, conquer
ōtium, ōtī *n.* leisure; peace
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches
affluō, affluere, affluxī, affluxus flow toward, flow in; abound
obstinātus, -a, -um determined, resolute, inflexible
dēcrētum, dēcrētī *n.* decree

multītūdō, multītūdinis *f.* multitude
praemium, praemiī *n.* reward
indūcō (in- + dūcō) lead in; persuade, induce
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus lay open, disclose, expose
morbis, morbī *m.* sickness, disease
utī = ut, as if, as it were
tābēs, tābis *f.* wasting away, decay; plague
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely); invade, attack

8. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 60–61

With frequent use of the historical present, the historian vividly describes the final battle between Catiline's forces and those loyal to Rome. He then concludes his monograph with a description of the battle's aftermath.

sed ubi omnibus rēbus explōrātīs Petreius tubā signum dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. postquam eō ventum est unde ā ferentāriīs proelium conmittī posset, maxumō clāmōre cum īnfestīs signīs concurrunt; pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur. veterānī, pristinae virtūtīs memorēs, comminus ācritēr īnstāre, illī haud timidī resistunt: maxumā vī certātur. intereā Catilīna cum expeditīs in primā aciē vorsārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcessere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exequēbātur. Petreius, ubi videt Catilīnam contrā ac† ratus

explōrō (1-tr.) examine, investigate

Petreius, Petreī *m.* (M.) Petreius (leader of the Roman troops who defeated Catiline at Pistoria)

tuba, tubae *f.* horn, (war) trumpet

cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company of soldiers, division of an army, cohort

paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually

incēdō (in- + cēdō) go in, enter; advance

ferentārius, ferentāriī *m.* light-armed troop

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in; enter upon, commence

clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting; noise

īnfestus, -a, -um hostile, harmful

concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursum rush together, charge

pīlum, pīlī *n.* heavy javelin (of the Roman infantry)

omittō (ob- + mittō) let loose, let go, let fall

veterānus, -a, -um old, veteran; *subst.*, veteran (soldier)

pristinus, -a, -um ancient; former; original

memor, memoris mindful, remembering (+ gen.)

comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand

īnstō (in- + stō), **īnstāre, īnstītī, īnstātūrus** press (hostilely), press on, pursue

timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid

resistō, resistere, restītī, ——— oppose, resist

certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

intereā (adv.) meanwhile

expeditus, expeditī *m.* light-armed soldier

versor (1-intr.) remain, stay

succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum run to aid, assist, help (+ dat.)

integer, integra, integrum untouched; unhurt; fresh, vigorous

saucius, -a, -um wounded

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīi/arcessīvī, arcessītus send for, summon

prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee; provide for, see to

feriō, ferīre, ———, ——— strike, hit

strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic

officium, officīi *n.* obligation; duty, task; function

simul (adv.) at the same time

ex(s)equor (ex- + sequor) perform, execute, accomplish

† **contrā ac** different from, otherwise than

reor, rērī, ratus sum believe, think, imagine

erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostīs indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resistantīs interficit. deinde utrimque ex lateribus ceterōs adgreditur. Manlius et Faesulānus in primīs pignantēs cadunt. Catilīna postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs relicuom videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae dignitātis in cōnfertissimōs hostīs incurrit ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur.

sed cōnfectō proeliō, tum vērō cernerēs quanta audācia quantaque animī vīs fuisset in exercitū Catilīnae. nam ferē quem quisque vīvos pugnandō locum cēperat, eum āmissā animā corpore tegēbat. paucī autem, quōs mediōs cohors praetōria disiēcerat, paulō dīvorsius, sed omnēs tamen advorsīs volneribus conciderant. Catilīna vērō

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus stretch out, extend; strain, exert oneself, contend
cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company of soldiers, division of an army, cohort
praetōrius, -a, -um of or belonging to the praetor, praetorian
indūcō (in- + dūcō) bring (in), lead (in)
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into disorder, confuse, disturb
alibī (adv.) elsewhere, in another place
resistō, resistere, restitī, — oppose, resist
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
utrimque (adv.) from both sides, on both sides
latus, lateris *n.* side, flank
aggredior (ad- + gradior) assault, attack
Manlius, Manliū *m.* (C.) Manlius (centurion under Sulla, leader of Catiline's army)
Faesulānus, -a, -um of or belonging to Faesulae (a city in Etruria); *masc. subst.*, the Faesulan (referring to a commander of part of Catiline's troops)
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth; rout, disperse; slay
relicuom = archaic form of reliquum

memor, memoris mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
pristinus, -a, -um ancient; former; original
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together
incurrō (in- + currō), incurrere, incurrī, incursum rush (into), attack
cōnfodiō, cōnfodire, cōnfōdī, cōnfossus dig thoroughly; pierce, transfix
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish; perceive, see
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly; for the most part
vīvus, -a, -um living, alive
āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
disiciō (dis- + iaciō) break, rout, disperse
dīversē (adv.) scattered, in different directions;
paulō dīvorsius, supply conciderant, had fallen a little more spread out
advorsus, -a, -um turned toward; received in front
concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidī, — fall down, collapse; fall lifeless, die

longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est, paululum etiam spīrāns ferō-
ciamque animī quam habuerat vīvos, in voltū retinēns. postrēmō ex omnī cōpiā†
neque in proeliō neque in fugā quisquam† cīvis ingenuos captus est: ita cūnctī suae
hostiumque vītāe iuxtā pepercerant. neque tamen exercitus populī Rōmānī laetam
aut incruentam victōriam adeptus erat. nam strēnuissimus quisque aut occiderat in
proeliō aut graviter volnerātus discesserat. multī autem, quī ē castrīs vīsundī aut spo-
liandī grātiā prōcesserant, volventēs hostilia cadāvera amīcum aliī, pars hospitem aut
cognātum reperiēbant; fuēre item quī inimicōs suōs cognōscerent. ita variē per
omnem exercitum laetitia, maeror, lūctus, atque gaudia agitābantur.

cadāver, **cadāveris** *n.* corpse

reperiō, **reperīre**, **repperī**, **repertus** find, discover

paululum (adv.) a little

spīrō (1-tr.) breathe

ferōcia, **ferōciae** *f.* fierceness, savagery

vīvus, **-a**, **-um** living, alive

retineō (**re-** + **teneō**), **retinēre**, **retinuī**, **retentus**

keep hold of, retain, grasp

postrēmō (adv.) finally

†**cōpia**, *here*, number; body of men

†**quisquam**, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*

ingenuus, **-a**, **-um** natural, freeborn

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally

parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful,

be sparing (+ dat.)

incruentus, **-a**, **-um** bloodless

victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory

adipīscor, **adipīscī**, **adeptus sum** reach, obtain,
get

strēnuus, **-a**, **-um** active, vigorous, energetic

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

vīsō, **vīsere**, **vīsī**, **vīsus** go to see, visit; view;

vīsundī = *archaic form of vīsendī*

spoliō (1-tr.) strip; plunder, pillage

prōcēdō (**prō-** + **cēdō**) go forward, advance

volvō, **volvere**, **volvī**, **volūtus** turn, turn over

hostilis, **hostile** of or belonging to an enemy,
hostile

hospes, **hospitis** *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host

cognātus, **cognātī** *m.* kinsman, relative

item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise

variē (adv.) variously, differently, in different
ways

laetitia, **laetitiae** *f.* happiness

maeror, **maerōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning

lūctus, **lūctūs** *m.* mourning

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, arouse

9. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 12

The historian describes how Jugurtha's soldiers murdered King Hiempsal in his house.

quī† postquam in aedīs inrūpēre, dīvorsī rēgem quaerere, dormientīs aliōs, aliōs occursantīs interficere, scrūtārī loca abdita, clausa effringere, strepitū et tumultū omnia miscēre, quom interim Hiempsal reperītur occultāns sē tuguriō mulieris ancillae, quō initiō pavidus et ignārus locī perfūgerat. Numidae caput eius, utī iussī erant, ad Iugurtham referunt.

†**quī**, connective relative referring to Jugurtha's soldiers

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house, abode

irrupō, irrupere, irrūpī, irruptus break (in), burst (into)

dīversus, -a, -um different, separate

dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormītum sleep, be asleep

occursō (1-tr.) run to meet, rush against, oppose

scrūtor (1-tr.) ransack, search, investigate

abdō (**ab-** + **dō**) hide, conceal, keep secret

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus close, shut, close up

effringō, effringere, effrēgī, effractus break off, break open

strepitus, strepitūs *m.* noise

tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, tumult, panic

miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix; throw into confusion

interim (adv.) meanwhile

Hiempsal, Hiempsalis *m.* Hiempsal (an African king and cousin of Jugurtha)

reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus find, discover; **reperītur, referunt**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*

occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal

tugurium, tuguriī *n.* hut, cottage, small dwelling

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

ancilla, ancillae *f.* maidservant

initium, initii *n.* beginning

pavidus, -a, -um fearful

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)

perfugiō (**per-** + **fugiō**) flee (for refuge)

Numidae, Numidārum *m. pl.* (the) Numidians

utī = ut

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha (a Numidian king)

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* XI.816–31

The poet describes the death of Camilla, leader of a band of Volscian warrior-maidens fighting on the side of Turnus. The Trojan Arruns has wounded her with his spear.

illa manū moriēns tēlum trahit, ossa sed inter
 ferreus ad† costās altō stat vulnere mucrō.
 lābitur exsanguis, lābuntur frīgida lētō
 lūmina, purpureus quondam color ōra reliquit.
 tum sīc expīrāns Accam ex aequālibus ūnam 820
 adloquitur, fida ante aliās quae sōla Camillae,
 quīcum partīrī cūrās, atque haec ita fātur:
 “hāctenus, Acca soror, potuī: nunc vulnus acerbum
 cōnficit, et tenebrīs nigrēscunt omnia circum.
 effuge et haec Turnō mandāta novissima† perfer: 825
 succēdat pugnae Troiānōsque arceat urbe.
 iamque valē.” simul hīs dictīs linquēbat habēnās
 ad terram nōn sponte fluēns. tum frīgida tōtō
 paulātīm exsolvit sē corpore, lentaque colla
 et captum lētō posuit caput, arma relinquēns, 830
 vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; draw out, pull out

os, ossis *n.* bone; **ossa . . . inter = inter ossa**

ferreus, -a, -um (made of) iron

†**ad, here, at, near**

costa, costae *f.* rib

mucrō, mucrōnis *m.* sharp point

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum slip; slide, glide, fall

exsanguis, exsanguis bloodless; lifeless

frīgīdus, -a, -um cold

lētum, lētī *n.* death

purpureus, -a, -um dark red, rosy, ruddy

quondam (adv.) once, formerly

color, colōris *m.* color

expīrō (1-intr.) breathe out, exhale, expire

Acca, Accae *f.* Acca (sister of Camilla)

aequālis, aequāle equal, like; *subst.*, contemporary, fellow

alloquor (ad- + loquor) address

fidus, -a, -um trustworthy, faithful

Camilla, Camillae *f.* Camilla

quīcum = quācum

partior, partīrī, partītus sum divide, distribute, share; **partīrī, Historical Infinitive**

hāctenus (adv.) as far as this, thus far

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
nigrēscō, nigrēscere, —, — become black, grow dark

circum (adv.) all round, round about

effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee away

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)

mandātum, mandātī *n.* charge, command, order

†**novissima, here, last**

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) draw near

pugna, pugnae *f.* battle, fight

Troiānī, Troiānōrum *m. pl.* Trojans

arceō, arcēre, arcuī, — keep away, hold out

simul (adv.) at the same time

linquō, linquere, liquī, — forsake, give up, relinquish

habēna, habēnae *f.* rein

***spōns, *spontis** *f.* (one's own) will

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow, stream; fall

paulātīm (adv.) little by little, gradually

exsolvo (ex- + solvo) set loose, release

lentus, -a, -um pliant, supple, yielding

collum, collī *n. sing. or pl.*, neck

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

indignātus, -a, -um angered; reluctant

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.938–52

The end of the *Aeneid*: after Turnus begs for his life, Aeneas hesitates.

. . . stetit ācer in armīs

Aenēās volvēns oculōs dextramque repressit;

et iam iamque† magis cūnctantem flectere sermō

940

coeperat, infēlix umerō cum appāruit altō

balteus et nōtīs fulsērunt cingula bullīs

Pallantis puerī, victum quem vulnere Turnus

strāverat atque umerīs inimīcum īnsigne gerēbat.

ille, oculīs postquam saevī monimenta dolōris

945

exuviāsque hausit, furiīs accēnsus et irā

terribilis: “tūne hinc spoliīs indūte meōrum

ēripiāre mihi?† Pallās tē hōc vulnere, Pallās

immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit.”

hoc dīcēns ferrum adversō sub pectore condit

950

fervidus; ast illī solvuntur frīgore membra

vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over, roll
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

reprimō (re- + premō) push back, repress; check, hold back

†**iam iamque**, now almost

cūnctor (1-intr.) hesitate, delay; **cūnctantem**, *supply Aenēān*

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence

sermō, sermōnis *m.* speech

umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritūrus be visible, be clear; appear, become evident

balteus, balteī *m.* shoulder band, sword belt

fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, — shine, gleam

cingulum, cingulī *n.* band

bullā, bullae *f.* boss or raised ornament, knob, stud

Pallās, Pallantis *m.* Pallas (son of Evander and comrade of Aeneas)

Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)

sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill

īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium *n.* emblem, decoration

monimentum, monimentī *n.* token, reminder

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor, spoils
hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus drink (in), absorb
furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy

accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsus inflame, burn

terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening

spolium, spoliī *n.* booty, spoil

induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe, dress

†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.

immolō (1-tr.) offer (someone) in sacrifice, kill (someone) in the manner of a sacrifice

scelerātus, -a, -um wicked, criminal

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; exact

adversus, -a -um turned toward, opposite; opposing

condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build; bury

fervidus, -a, -um seething, burning; passionate, furious

ast (conj.) but

frīgus, frīgoris *n.* cold, chill

membrum, membrī *n.* limb

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

indignātus, -a, -um angered; reluctant

12. Horace, *Carmina* I.37 (Alcaic strophe)

On the death of Cleopatra

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede liberō
 pulsanda tellūs, nunc Saliāribus
 ornāre pulvīnar deōrum
 tempus erat dapibus, sodālēs.

antehāc⁷ nefās dēprōmere Caecubum
 cellīs avītīs, dum Capitōliō
 rēgīna dēmentīs ruīnās
 fūnus et† imperiō parābat

5

contāminātō cum grege turpium
 morbō virōrum, quidlibet inpotēns
 spērāre fortunāque dulcī
 ēbria. sed minuit furōrem

10

bibō, bibere, bibī, — drink**pēs, pedis** *m.* foot**pulsō** (1-tr.) strike, beat**tellūs, tellūris** *f.* earth, land**Saliāris, Saliāre** Salian, of the **Saliī** (a college of priests of Mars noted for their sumptuous processions through the city every March)**ornō** (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate**pulvīnar, pulvīnāris** *n.* couch (for a statue of a god)**daps, dapis** *f.* feast, banquet**sodālis, sodālis, -ium** *m.* comrade, companion**antehāc** (adv.) before this time, previously**dēprōmō, dēprōmere, dēprōmpsī, dēprōmptus**
bring out, draw forth**Caecubum, Caecubī** *n.* Caecuban wine (from the plain of Caecubum in Latium)**cella, cellae** *f.* storeroom**avītus, -a, -um** of a grandfather, ancestral**Capitōlium, Capitōliī** *n.* (the) Capitoline hill**dēmēns, dēmentis** insane, (raving) mad**ruīna, ruīnae** *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction**fūnus, fūneris** *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral (procession);
ruin, destruction; death†**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position
of **-que**.**contāminō** (1-tr.) defile, pollute**grex, gregis** *m.* flock, herd; swarm, crowd**morbis, morbī** *m.* sickness, disease**quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet** (indef. pron.) any-
one or anything it pleases; anyone, anything**impotēns, impotentis** powerless, helpless; unre-
strained, unbridled**ēbrius, -a, -um** drunk, intoxicated**minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus** reduce,
diminish**furor, furōris** *m.* madness

7. The vowels **-e-** and **-ā-** of **antehāc** here elide into a single sound **-ā-**. This internal elision is called **synizesis** (< Greek *synizesis*, collapse).

vix ūna sospes nāvis ab ignibus
mentemque lymphātam Mareōticō
redēgit in vērōs timōrēs

15

Caesar ab Italiā volantem

rēmīs adurgēns, accipiter velut
mollis columbās aut leporem citus
vēnātor in campīs nīvālis

Haemoniae, daret ut catēnīs

20

fātāle mōnstrum: quae generōsius
perīre quaerēns nec muliebriter
expāvit ēnsem nec latentis

classe citā reparāvit ōrās,

sospes, sospitis safe, unharmed, spared
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
lymphātus, -a, -um frenzied, deranged
Mareōticum, Mareōticī *n.* Mareotic wine (from
Mareotis in Egypt)
redigō (red- + agō), redigere, redēgī, redāctus
bring back (down), force, subdue
volō (1-intr.) fly
rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
adurgeō, adurgēre, —, — press on, pursue
closely
accipiter, accipitris *m.* bird of prey, hawk
velut (conj.) even as, just as
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
columba, columbae *f.* dove
lepus, leporis *m.* hare
citus, -a, -um swift, fast

vēnātor, vēnātōris *m.* hunter
nīvālis, nīvāle snowy
Haemonia, Haemoniae *f.* Haemonia (old name
of Thessaly)
catēna, catēnae *f.* chain
fātālis, fātāle destined, fated; deadly, dangerous
mōnstrum, mōnstrī *n.* omen, portent; monster
generōsē (adv.) nobly
muliebriter (adv.) like a woman
expavēscō, expavēscere, expāvī, — become
frightened of, take fright at
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
lateō, latēre, latuī, — hide, lie hidden, be con-
cealed
classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet
reparō (1-tr.) recover; take in exchange
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast

ausa et iacentem vīsere rēgiam 25
 voltū serēnō, fortis et asperās
 tractāre serpentēs ut ātrum
 corpore combiberet venēnum,

dēliberātā morte ferōcior:
 saevīs Liburnīs scīlicet invidēns 30
 prīvāta dēdūcī superbō
 nōn humilis mulier triumphō.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie in ruins
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view
rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal residence, palace
serēnus, -a, -um calm, serene
asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless
tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; touch, handle
serpēs, serpentis, -ium *m. or f.* serpent
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark
combibō, combibere, combibī, — drink
 (deeply)
venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison
dēliberō (1-tr.) weigh, consider; resolve, deter-
 mine

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
Liburna, Liburnae *f.* (a) Liburnian galley
scīlicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course
invidēō (**in-** + **videō**) envy, be jealous; begrudge,
 refuse
prīvātus, -a, -um private; *subst.*, ordinary citizen
dēdūcō (**dē-** + **dūcō**) lead down; lead (in a public
 procession)
superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
triumphus, triumphī *m.* (a) triumph (the proces-
 sion through Rome of a victorious general)

13. Horace, *Carmina* III.30 (Asclepiadean)

The poet reflects on his achievements.

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius
 rēgālīque sitū p̄ramidum altius,
 quod nōn imber edāx, nōn Aquilō impotēns
 possit dīruere aut innumerābilis
 annōrum seriēs et fuga temporum.
 nōn omnis moriar multaue pars meī
 vītābit Libitīnam: ūsque ego posterā
 crēscam laude recēns dum Capitōlium
 scandet cum tacitā virgine pontifex.

5

exigō (ex- + agō), **exigere**, **exēgī**, **exāctus** drive out; finish, complete

monumentum, **monumentī** *n.* monument

aes, **aeris** *n.* copper, bronze; money

perennis, **perenne** everlasting, perpetual, perennial

rēgālīs, **rēgāle** royal, kingly

situs, **sitūs** *m.* position, structure; neglect, decay

p̄ramis, **p̄ramidis** *f.* pyramid

imber, **imbris** *m.* rain; water

edāx, **edācis** corrosive

Aquilō, **Aquilōnis** *m.* Aquilo (the north wind)

impotēns, **impotentis** powerless, helpless; unrestrained, unbridled

dīruō, **dīruere**, **dīruī**, **dīrutus** demolish, destroy

innumerābilis, **innumerābile** innumerable

seriēs, **seriēi** *f.* series, chain

vītō (1-tr.) avoid

Libitīna, **Libitīnae** *f.* Libitina (goddess of corpses, at whose temple the registers of deaths were kept)

ūsque (adv.) continuously

posterus, **-a**, **-um** later, following, future

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** grow, increase

laus, **laudis** *f.* praise

recēns, **recentis** recent, fresh, new

Capitōlium, **Capitōlii** *n.* (the) Capitoline hill
scandō, **scandere**, —, — climb, mount, ascend

tacitus, **-a**, **-um** silent

virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin

pontifex, **pontificis** *m.* priest; pontifex

dīcar, quā[†] violēns obstrepit Aufidus 10
 et quā[†] pauper aquae Daunus agrestium
 rēgnāvit populōrum, ex humilī potēns
 prīnceps Aeolium carmen ad Ītalōs
 dēdūxisse modōs. sūme superbiam
 quaesītam meritīs et mihi Delphicā
 laurō cinge volēns, Melpomenē, comam. 15

[†]quā, *here* (adv.) where

violēns, violentis violent, forceful

obstrepō, obstrepere, obstrepuī, obstrepitus roar

Aufidus, Aufidī *m.* (the) Aufidus (river)
 (in Apulia)

pauper, pauperis poor

aqua, aquae *f.* water

Daunus, Daunī *m.* Daunus (legendary king of
 Apulia [Horace's home district])

agrestis, agreste rustic

rēgnō (1-tr.) rule, rule over (+ gen.)

potēns, potentis powerful

prīnceps, prīncipis first

Aeolius, -a, -um Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia
 (a region in northwest Asia Minor, supposed
 birthplace of Greek lyric poetry)

Ītalus, -a, -um Italian

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; introduce;
 transfer

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take (up), adopt
 as suitable

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; haughtiness, arro-
 gance

meritum, meritī *n.* merit; service

Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic, of Delphi

laurus, laurī *f.* laurel

Melpomenē, Melpomenēs *f.* Melpomene
 (a Muse)

coma, comae *f.* hair

14. Propertius II.29A

The poet receives an unusual escort back to his beloved.

Hesternā, mea lūx, cum pōtus nocte vagārer,
 nec mē servōrum dūceret ūlla manus,
 obvia, nescio quot[†] puerī, mihi turba, minūtī,
 vēnerat[†] (hōs vetuit mē numerāre timor);
 quōrum aliī faculās, aliī retinēre sagittās,
 pars etiam vīsast vincla parāre mihi.
 sed nūdī fuerant.[†] quōrum lascīvior ūnus

5

“arripite hunc,” inquit, “nam bene nōstis eum.
 hic[†] erat, hunc mulier nōbīs irāta locāvit.”
 dīxit, et in collō iam mihi nōdus erat.

10

hīc alter iubet in medium prōpellere, at alter
 “intereat quī nōs nōn putat esse deōs!

hesternus, -a, -um of or belonging to yesterday;
hesterna nox, last night
pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtātus/pōtus drink intoxicating drinks; *perf. pass. part. with active meaning*, having drunk, being drunk
vagor (1-intr.) wander
obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving against, to meet (+ dat.)
[†]**nescio quot** (indeclinable indef. adj.) some (number of)
turba, turbae f. crowd
minūtus, -a, -um small, tiny, minute
[†]**vēnerat, fuerant**, *pluperfects used to express a sudden action; translate as perfects*
numerō (1-tr.) number, count
facula, faculae f. (little) torch
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp

sagitta, sagittae f. arrow
vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī n. bond, chain
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
arripō (ad- + rapiō) grasp, take hold of, seize; arrest
[†]**hic**, here, scans as if it were spelled **hicc**
mulier, mulieris f. woman
irātus, -a, -um angry, irate
locō (1-tr.) place; assign
collum, collī n. neck
nōdus, nōdī m. knot; (knotted) rope
prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpuli, prōpulsus push forward, propel; compel to go at (conj.) but
intereō (inter- + eō), interire, interī, interitūrus perish, die

haec tē nōn meritum tōtās exspectat in† hōrās:

at tū nescio quam† quaeris, inepte, forīs.

quae cum Sīdoniae nocturna ligāmina mitrae

15

solverit atque oculōs mōverit illa gravīs,

afflābunt tibi nōn Arabum dē grāmine odōrēs,

sed quōs ipse suīs fēcit Amor manibus.

parcite iam, frātrēs, iam certōs spondet amōrēs;

et iam ad mandātam vēnimus ecce domum.”

20

atque ita mī iniectō dīxērunt rursus amictū:

“ī nunc et noctēs disce manēre domī.”

mereor, merēri, meritus sum deserve, earn

†**in**, here, expressing duration, for

hōra, hōrae f. hour

at (conj.) but

†**nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod** (indef. adj.)

sometimes written as two words,
some . . . or other

ineptus, -a, -um having no sense of what is fitting, foolish

forīs (adv.) out of doors, outside; abroad

Sīdonius, -a, -um of Sidon (a Phoenician city
famed for its export of purple dye)

nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal

ligāmen, ligāminis n. fastening, string

mitra, mitrae f. (eastern) headdress

afflō (1-intr.) blow, breathe (upon) (+ dat.)

Arabēs, Arabum m. pl. Arabians, Arabs

grāmen, grāminis n. grass; herb

odor, odōris m. odor, scent

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be
sparing (+ dat.)

spondeō, spondēre, sponpondī, spōnsus pledge

mandō (1-tr.) entrust, commit; assign, order

mī = mihi

iniciō (in- + iaciō) throw upon

rursus (adv.) again

amictus, amictūs m. mantle, cloak

discō, discere, didicī, — learn (how) (+ infin.)

15. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.253–73

When mortal men reached the Iron Age of greed and crime, Jupiter decided to destroy the human race and begin again.

iamque erat in tōtās sparsūrus fulmina terrās;
 sed timuit nē forte sacer tot ab ignibus aethēr
 conciperet flammās longusque ardēsceret axis: 255
 esse quoque in fātīs reminiscitur adfore tempus
 quō mare, quō tellūs correptaque rēgia caelī
 ardeat et mundī mōlēs obsessa labōret.
 tēla repōnuntur manibus fabricāta Cyclōpum;
 poena placet dīversa, genus mortāle sub undīs 260
 perdere et ex omnī nimbōs dēmittere caelō.
 prōtinus Aeoliīs Aquilōnem claudit in antris

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter, sprinkle; shower; cast
fulmen, fulminis *n.* lightning bolt; thunderbolt
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
aethēr, aetheris *m.* *aether* or ether (the upper region of the sky); heaven
concipiō (con- + capiō) take on, absorb, catch
flamma, flammae *f.* flame
ardēscō, ardēscere, —, — become inflamed, begin to burn
axis, axis, -ium *m.* (celestial) axis, pole
reminīscor, reminīscī, — recall, recollect
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
corripiō (con- + rapiō) snatch up, seize; ignite
rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal house, palace
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* (huge) mass

obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus besiege, beset, assail
repōnō (re- + pōnō) put back, put down, put away
fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, forge
Cyclōpēs, Cyclōpum *m. pl.* (the) Cyclopes (the fabulous giants of Sicily)
dīversus, -a, -um different
unda, undae *f.* wave
nimbus, nimbī *m.* rain cloud
dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down
prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
Aeolius, -a, -um of Aeolus (ruler of the winds); Aeolian
Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo (the north wind)
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus close, shut; confine, enclose
antrum, antrī *n.* cave, cavern

et quaecumque fugant inductās flāmina nūbēs
 ēmittitque Notum. madidīs Notus ēvolat ālīs,
 terribilem piceā tēctus cāligine vultum;
 barba gravis nimbīs, cānīs fluit unda capillīs;
 fronte sedent nebulae, rōrant pennaēque sinūsque.
 utque manū lātē pendentia nūbila pressit,
 fit fragor: hinc dēnsī funduntur ab aethere nimbī.
 nuntia Iūnōnis, variōs indūta colōrēs,
 concipit Īris aquās alimentaēque nūbibus adfert.
 sternuntur segetēs et dēplōrāta colōnī
 vōta iacent, longīque perit labor inritus annī.

265

270

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. adj.) whatever

fugō (1-tr.) put to flight, rout

indūcō (in- + dūcō) bring in; draw over, spread over

flāmen, flāminis *n.* blast, gust (of wind)

nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud

ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out, release

Notus, Notī *m.* Notus (the south wind)

madidus, -a, -um wet, drenched, dripping

ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out

āla, ālae *f.* wing

terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening

piceus, -a, -um pitch black

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover

cāligō, cāliginis *f.* darkness; mist, fog

barba, barbae *f.* beard

nimbus, nimbī *m.* rain cloud

cānus, -a, -um white; gray

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow, run

unda, undae *f.* wave

capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.,* hair

frōns, frontis, -ium *f.* forehead, brow

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit

nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog; cloud

rōrō (1-intr.) shed moisture, drip

penna, pennaē *f.* feather; wing

sinus, sinūs *m.* curve; fold

lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide

pendeō, pendēre, pependī, — hang, be suspended

nūbila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* (rain) clouds

fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar, din

dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth

aethēr, aetheris *m.* *aether* or ether (the upper region of the sky); heaven

nuntia, nuntiae *f.* (female) messenger

varius, -a, -um various, different

induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe, dress

color, colōris *m.* color

concipiō (con- + capiō) catch, take up

Īris, Īridis *f.* Iris (female messenger goddess [of the rainbow])

aqua, aquae *f.* water

alimentum, alimentī *n.* nourishment

afferō (ad- + ferō), **afferre, attulī, allātus** bring, add

sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew, spread out, scatter

seges, segetis *f.* field; crop

dēplōrō (1-tr.) weep, lament, cry over

colōnus, colōnī *m.* settler; farmer

vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire, hope; pledge

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie in ruins

irritus, -a, -um useless, vain

16. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.13.1–5

In need of wives for his male citizens, Romulus had arranged for the capture and forced marriage of many women from the nearby Sabines. When the Sabines later attacked Rome, these women became the peacemakers.

tum Sabīnae mulierēs, quārum ex iniūriā bellum ortum erat, crīnibus passīs† scis-sāque veste, victō malīs muliebrī pavōre, ausae sē inter tēla volantia īnferre, ex trāns-versō impetū factō dirimere īnfestās aciēs, dīrimere īrās, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs nē sanguine sē nefandō socerī generīque respergerent, nē parricīdiō maculārent partūs suōs, nepōtum illī, hī līberum† prōgeniem. “Sī adfinitātis inter vōs, sī cōnūbiū piget, in nōs vertite īrās; nōs causa bellī, nōs volnerum ac caedium virīs ac parentibus sumus; melius perībimus quam sine alterīs vestrum viduae aut orbae vīvēmus.” movet rēs cum multītūdinem tum ducēs; silentium et repentinā fit quiēs; inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt. nec pācem modo sed cīvitatē ūnam ex duābus faciunt. rēgnum cōnsociant: imperium omne cōferunt Rōmam. ita geminātā urbe, ut Sabīnīs tamen aliquid darētur Quirītēs ā Curibus appellātī.

Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine; *subst. pl.*, (the) Sabines
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice
crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
† **passīs, here, pandō, pandere, pandī, passus**
 spread, extend; dishevel
scindō, scindere, scīdī, scissus rend, tear
vestis, vestis, -ium *f.* clothing, garment
muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly
pavor, pavōris *m.* trembling; fear, dread
volō (1-intr.) fly
trānsversus, -a, -um crosswise, transverse;
 ex trānsversō, from the flank
impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault, onrush
dirimō, dirimere, dirēmī, dirēptus break apart,
 separate, divide
īnfestus, -a, -um hostile; dangerous
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
nefandus, -a, -um unspeakable; abominable
socer, socerī *m.* father-in-law
gener, generī *m.* son-in-law
respergō, respergere, respersī, respersus
 besprinkle; defile
parricīdium, parricīdī *n.* murder (of parents or
 kinsmen), parricide
maculō (1-tr.) stain, defile, pollute
partus, partūs *m.* birth; offspring

nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson
† **līberī, here, children; liberum = līberōrum**
prōgeniēs, *prōgeniē *f.* offspring, progeny
affinitās, affinitātis *f.* relationship by marriage
cōnūbium, cōnūbiū *n.* marriage
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter, killing
parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent
viduus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved; spouseless,
 widowed
orbis, -a, -um bereft, bereaved; childless,
 orphaned
multītūdō, multītūdinis *f.* multitude; populace
silentium, silentiū *n.* silence
repentinus, -a, -um sudden
quiēs, quiētis *f.* quiet
foedus, foederis *n.* pact, treaty
prōdeō (prō- + eō), prōdīre, prōdī, prōditūrus
 go or come forward
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* realm, kingdom; rule, kingship
cōnsociō (1-tr.) unite
geminō (1-tr.) double
Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for
 Roman citizens in their public capacity)
Curēs, Curium *m. pl.* Cures (a Sabine town)
appellō (1-tr.) name, call

17. Petronius, *Satyricon* 45

A dinner guest tires of hearing the complaints of another guest and decides to interrupt.

“ōrō tē,” inquit Echīōn centōnārius, “melius loquere. ‘modo sīc, modo sīc,’ inquit rūsticus; varium porcum perdiderat. quod hodiē nōn est, crās erit: sīc vīta trūdītur. nōn meherculēs patria melior dīcī potest† sī hominēs habēret. sed labōrat hōc tempore, nec haec sōla. nōn dēbēmus dēlicātī esse, ubique† medius caelus† est. tū sī aliubi fueris, dīcēs hīc porcōs coctōs ambulāre. et ecce habitūrī sumus mūnus† excellentē in trīduō diē fēstā; familia nōn lanistīcia, sed plūrimī libertī. et Tītus noster magnum animum habet et est caldicerebrius: aut hoc aut illud, erit quid† utique. nam illī domesticus sum, nōn est mixcix. ferrum optimum datūrus est, sine fugā, carnārium in mediō, ut amphitheāter videat.

Echīōn, Echīonis *m.* Echion

centōnārius, centōnārīi *m.* maker of patchwork, rag seller; man who uses mats to extinguish fires

rūsticus, rūsticī *m.* country man, peasant, rustic
varius, -a, -um varied; multicolored, mottled; spotted

porcus, porcī *m.* pig

hodiē (adv.) today

crās (adv.) tomorrow

trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsus shove, push; drive on

†**potest**, *pres. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence*

dēlicātus, -a, -um self-indulgent; hard to please; fastidious

†**ubique** (adv.) everywhere

†**caelus = caelum**

aliubi (adv.) in another place, in other places, elsewhere

coquō, coquere, coxī, coctus cook, bake, boil, roast

†**mūnus** *here*, public show, spectacle, entertainment

excellēns, excellentis superior, excellent;
excellente = *neut. sing. acc.*

trīduum, trīduī *n.* period of three days

fēstus, -a, -um festal; **diēs fēsta** festival day, holiday

familia, familiae *f.* household; troop, group
lanistīcius, -a, -um belonging to a **lanista** (a trainer of gladiators); gladiatorial

libertus, libertī *m.* freedman

caldicerebrius, -a, -um hot headed, impetuous

†**quid = aliquid**

utique (adv.) in any case, at any rate, at least, certainly

domesticus, -a, -um belonging to the family; familiar

mixcix (unknown) given to half-measures (?)

carnārium, carnārīi *n.* meat rack; slaughterhouse; carnage, butchery

amphitheāter, amphitheātrī *m.* oval theater, amphitheater

18. Tacitus, *Dē Vitā Agricolae* 46

The reverent conclusion of the biography of the historian's father-in-law

sī quis† piōrum mānibus locus, sī, ut sapientibus placet, nōn cum corpore extinguntur magnae animae, placidē quiēscās, nōsque domum tuam ab infirmō dēsideriō et muliebribus lāmentis ad contemplatiōnem virtūtum tuārum vocēs, quās neque lūgērī neque plangī fās est. admirātiōne tē potius et immortalibus laudibus et, sī nātūra suppeditet, similitūdine colāmus: is vērus honōs, ea coniūctissimī cuiusque pietās. id filiae quoque uxōrique praecēperim, sīc patris, sīc marītī memoriam venerārī, ut omnia facta dictaque eius sēcum revolvant, formamque ac figuram animī magis quam corporis complectantur, nōn quia intercēdendum putem† imāginibus quae marmore aut aere finguntur, sed, ut vultūs hominum, ita simulācra vultūs imbēcilla ac mortālia sunt, forma mentis aeterna, quam tenēre et exprimere nōn per aliēnam māteriam et artem, sed tuīs ipse mōribus possis. quidquid

†quis, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*

mānēs, mānium *m. pl.* Manes (spirits of the dead); shade (of a particular person)

ex(s)tinguō, ex(s)tinguere, ex(s)tīnxī, ex(s)tīnctus
extinguish; annihilate

placidē (adv.) calmly, quietly

quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum be asleep;
rest; quiēscās, *addressee is the deceased Agricola*

infirmus, -a, -um weak, feeble; ineffectual

dēsiderium, dēsideriū *n.* desire; regret; longing

muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly

lāmenta, lāmentōrum *n. pl.* wailing, weeping

contemplatiō, contemplatiōnis *f.* contemplation,
consideration

lūgēō, lūgēre, lūxī, lūctus mourn (for); grieve,
lament

plangō, plangere, plānxī, plānctus beat (the breast),
mourn (for), bewail

admirātiō, admirātiōnis *f.* wonder; admiration,
veneration

potius (comparative adv.) rather

laus, laudis *f.* praise

suppeditō (1-tr.) support; supply; be available,
be adequate

similitūdō, similitūdinis *f.* similarity, resemblance,
likeness

colō, colere, coluī, cultus inhabit; cultivate;
adorn; cherish

coniūctus, -a, -um linked together; closely associated,
related

pietās, pietātis *f.* dutifulness; loyalty

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

praecipio (prae- + capiō) advise, instruct

marītus, marītī *m.* husband

veneror (1-tr.) revere, venerate

revolvō, revolvere, revolvī, revolūtus go back
over; review, recall

forma, formae *f.* form, appearance; state, kind

figūra, figurae *f.* form, composition; appearance

complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace,
cling to; comprehend; remember

intercēdō (inter- + cēdō) intervene, interfere;
obstruct, oppose

†putem, *subjunctive in a clause of rejected reason;*
translate as indicative

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness; bust

marmor, marmoris *n.* marble

aes, aeris *n.* bronze

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus form, fashion, make

simulācrum, simulācrī *n.* likeness, image;

statue

imbēcillus, -a, -um weak, feeble; fragile

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

exprimō (ex- + premō) express

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; foreign

māteria, māteriae *f.* material, matter

quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.)
whoever, whatever

ex Agricolā amāvimus, quidquid mīrātī sumus, manet mānsūrumque est in animīs hominum in aeternitāte temporum, fāmā rērum; nam multōs veterum velut inglōriōs et ignōbilis obliviō obruit: Agricola posteritātī nārrātus et trāditus superstes erit.

Agricola, Agricolae *m.* Agricola
quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.)
 whoever, whatever
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at
aeternitās, aeternitātis *f.* eternity
velut (conj.) even as, just as; as if
inglōrius, -a, -um lacking renown, obscure
ignōbilis, ignōbile unknown, undistinguished

obliviō, obliviōnis *f.* act or state of forgetting or being forgotten, oblivion
obruō, obruere, obruī, obrutus cover up, bury
posteritās, posteritātis *f.* later generations, posterity
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of); describe
superstes, superstitis surviving, lasting

19. Tacitus, *Dialogus dē Ōrātōribus* 25

In a discussion of contemporary oratory's enormous debt to the great speakers of past ages, one participant grants the vigor and variety of the old orators but insists that for both the Greeks and the Romans one greatest period can be identified.

sed quō modō† inter Atticōs ōrātōrēs prīmae† Dēmostenē tribuuntur, proximum locum Aeschinēs et Hyperidēs et Lysiās et Lycurgus obtinent, omnium autem concessū haec ōrātōrum aetās maximē probātur, sīc apud nōs Cicerō quidem cēterōs eōrundem temporum disertōs antecessit, Calvus autem et Asinius et Caesar et Caelius et Brūtus iūre et priōribus et sequentibus antepōnuntur. nec rēfert quod inter sē speciē differunt, cum genere cōsentiant. adstrictior Calvus, numerōsior Asinius, splendidior Caesar, amārior Caelius, gravior Brūtus, vehementior et plēnior et

†**quō modō**, here, correlative with **sīc**, in the way in which

Atticus, -a, -um Attic, Athenian

†**prīmae**, supply **partēs**, first place

Dēmostenēs, Dēmostenis *m.* Demosthenes (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow, assign

proximus, -a, -um nearest, next

Aeschinēs, Aeschinis *m.* Aeschines (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)

Hyperidēs, Hyperidis *m.* Hyperides (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)

Lysiās, Lysiae *m.* Lysias (Athenian orator of the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.)

Lycurgus, Lycurgī *m.* Lycurgus (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)

obtineō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus have a hold on

concessus, concessūs *m.* permission, leave; agreement, concession

probō (1-tr.) approve of, commend, esteem

disertus, -a, -um skilled in speaking, eloquent

antecēdō (ante- + cēdō) (tr.) go before, precede; surpass, excel

Calvus, Calvī *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus (Roman orator and poet of the first century B.C.E.)

Asinius, Asiniū *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio) (Roman writer and orator of the first century B.C.E.)

Caelius, Caeliū *m.* (M.) Caelius (Rufus) (Roman orator and advocate of the first century B.C.E.)

Brūtus, Brūti *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus (Roman orator and politician of the first century B.C.E.)

antepōnō (ante- + pōnō) place before, rank ahead of

cōsentiō (con- + sentiō) be in agreement; be similar

adstrictus, -a, -um constricted; restrained, terse

numerōsus, -a, -um plentiful, abundant; harmonious, rhythmical

splendidus, -a, -um bright, shining, vivid

amārus, -a, -um bitter; acrimonious; biting, caustic

vehemēns, vehementis energetic, vigorous, forceful

plēnus, -a, -um full, abundant; sonorous; covering the whole range

valentior Cicerō: omnēs tamen eandem sānitātem ēloquentiae prae sē ferunt, ut, sī omnium pariter librōs in manum sūmpseris, sciās, quamvīs in dīversis ingeniīs, esse quandam iūdicīi ac voluntātis similitūdinem et cognātiōnem. nam quod invicem sē† obtrectāvērunt et sunt aliqua epistulīs eōrum īserta, ex quibus mūtua malignitās dētegitur, nōn est ōrātōrum vitium, sed hominum. nam et Calvum et Asinium et ipsum Cicerōnem crēdō solitōs et invidēre et livēre et cēteris hūmānae īfirmitātis vitiīs adfici: solum inter hōs arbitror Brūtum nōn malignitāte nec invidiā, sed simpliciter et ingenuē iūdicium animī suī dētēxisse. an† ille Cicerōnī invidēret, quī mihi vidētur nē Caesarī quidem invīdisse?

sānitās, sānitātis *f.* healthiness, soundness
ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence; rhetoric
prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; **prae sē ferre**, to exhibit, to display
pariter (adv.) equally; together, side by side
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus take (up), seize
quamvīs (conj.) although
dīversus, -a, -um different
iūdicium, iūdicīi *n.* judgment, opinion
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice
similitūdō, similitūdinis *f.* similarity
cognātiō, cognātiōnis *f.* kinship, affinity
 —, **vicis** *f.* turn; succession; **invicem**, in turn; against one another
 †**sē**, here, with reciprocal force, each other
obtrectō (1-tr.) criticize maliciously, disparage, belittle
epistula, epistulae *f.* letter
īserō, īserere, īseruī, īsertus put in, insert, include

mūtuis, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual
malignitās, malignitātis *f.* ill-will, spite, malice
dētegō, dētegere, dētēxi, dētēctus uncover, disclose, reveal
vitium, vitīi *n.* vice, fault
Calvus, Calvī *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus
Asinius, Asiniī *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio)
invidēō (in- + vidēō) envy, be jealous (of)
livēō, livēre, —, — be livid, be envious or jealous
hūmānus, -a, -um human
īfirmitās, īfirmitātis *f.* weakness, sickness
afficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, influence
Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus
simpliciter (adv.) simply
ingenuē (adv.) in a manner befitting a freeborn person; honorably, generously
 †**an**, here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that . . .

The *Dialogus de Ōratoribus* (Dialogue About Orators), which may date from around 100 c.e., is modeled on Ciceronian philosophical dialogues and is written in a Ciceronian style that contrasts dramatically with the elliptical, unbalanced style of Tacitus's other surviving works. The interlocutors in the *Dialogus* discuss rhetoric generally and treat in particular the interesting question of the relation between flourishing oratory and political turmoil.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 16–17

nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? sic enim iam tēcum loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō dēbeō, sed ut misericordiā, quae tibi nūlla dēbētur. vēnistī paulō ante in senātum. quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā, tot ex tuīs amicīs ac necessariīs salūtāvit? sī hoc post[†] hominum memoriam contingit nēminī, vōcis exspectās contumēliam, cum sīs gravissimō iūdicīō taciturnitātis oppressus? quid, quod[†] adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod omnēs cōsulārēs quī tibi[†] persaepe ad caedem cōstitutū fuērunt, simul atque adsēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdā atque inānem reliquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi ferendum putās? servī mehercule meī sī mē istō pactō metuerent ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum meam relinquendam

permovere (**per-** + **moveō**) thoroughly move
miseriordia, misericordiae *f.* pity
frequentia, frequentiae *f.* crowd
necessarius, -a, -um necessary; *subst.*, relative; friend, client, patron
salūtō (1-tr.) greet, hail, salute
[†]**post**, *here*, since
contingō, contingere, contigī, contactus happen, befall (+ dat.)
contumēlia, contumēliae *f.* abuse, insult
iūdicium, iūdicīi *n.* judgment, opinion
taciturnitās, taciturnitātis *f.* silence
[†]**quid, quod**, what about the fact that

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival
subsellium, subselliū *n.* bench, seat
vacuēfaciō, vacuēfacere, vacuēfēcī, vacuēfactus (make) empty
cōsulāris, cōsulāris, -ium *m.* ex-consul
[†]**tibi**, *here*, Dative of Agent
persaepe (adv.) very often
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
simul atque (conj.) as soon as
assidō, assidere, assēdī, — sit down
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted
inānis, ināne empty
pactum, pactī *n.* stipulation; way, manner

putārem; tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? et sī mē meīs cīvibus iniūriā suspectum tam graviter atque offēnsū vidērem, carēre mē aspectū cīvium quam infestis omnium oculis cōspicī māllem; tū, cum cōscientiā scelerum tuōrum agnōscās odium omnium iūstum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās quōrum mentis sēnsūsque volnerās, eōrum aspectum praesentiamque vitāre? sī tē parentēs timērent atque odissent tui neque eōs ratiōne ūllā plācāre possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculis aliquō† concēderēs. nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricīdiō suō cōgitāre; huius tū neque auctōritātem verēbere nec iūdicium sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs?

iniūria, iniūriae <i>f.</i> injury, injustice; iniūriā (adv.) unjustifiably, unjustly	vītō (1-tr.) avoid
suspectus, -a, -um viewed with suspicion, suspect	parēns, parentis, -ium <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> parent
offēnsus, -a, -um offensive	ratiō, ratiōnis <i>f.</i> account, reason; way, method
aspectus, aspectūs <i>m.</i> sight	plācō (1-tr.) appease, calm
infestus, -a, -um hostile	opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think
cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus catch sight of, perceive, observe	† aliquō, here (adv.) to some place
cōscientia, cōscientiae <i>f.</i> awareness	concēdō (con- + cēdō) concede; go away
agnōscō (ad- + nōscō), agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus recognize	commūnis, commūne common, shared
iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right	iūdicō (1-tr.) judge
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound	parricīdium, parricīdiū <i>n.</i> murder
praesentia, praesentiae <i>f.</i> presence	iūdicium, iūdicī <i>n.</i> judgment, opinion
	pertimēscō, pertimēscere, pertimūī, — become very afraid, take fright; thoroughly fear

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 5

L. Catilina, nōbili genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō malō prāvōque. huic ab adulēscientiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvīlis grāta fuēre, ibique iuventūtem suam exercuit. corpus patiēns inediae, algōris, vigiliae, suprā quam quoiquam crēdibile est. animus audāx, subdolus, varius, quoius rei lubet† simulātor ac dissimulātor, aliēnī adpetēns, suī profūsus, ardēns in cupiditātibus; satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum. vāstus animus inmoderāta, incrēdibilia, nimis alta semper cupiēbat. hunc post dominātiōnem L. Sullae lubīdō maxima invāserat rei pūblicae capiundae;† neque id quibus modīs adsequerētur, dum sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat. agitābātur magis magisque in dies† animus ferōx inopiā rei familiāris et cōnscentiā scelerum, quae utraque† iīs

nōbilis, nōbile noble

prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse

adulēscientia, adulēscientiae *f.* youth, adolescence

intestīnus, -a, -um internal

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

rapīna, rapīnae *f.* plundering, pillaging

discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, conflict

cīvīlis, cīvīle of or connected with citizens, civil

iuventūs, iuventūtis *f.* youth, early manhood

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; exercise, train

inedia, inediae *f.* lack of food

algor, algōris *m.* cold

vigilia, vigiliae *f.* wakefulness

suprā (adv.) above, beyond; further, more

crēdibilis, crēdibile believable, credible

subdolus, -a, -um somewhat crafty, cunning

varius, -a, -um varying, changeable

†quī . . . libet, quae . . . libet, quod . . . libet (indef. adj.) any . . . it pleases

simulātor, simulātōris *m.* feigner, pretender

dissimulātor, dissimulātōris *m.* dissembler, concealer

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another

appetēns, appetentis desirous (of), greedy (for) (+ gen.)

profūsus, -a, -um generous, lavish

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence

vāstus, -a, -um desolate; vast, immense; ravaged

immoderātus, -a, -um without measure, unrestrained, excessive

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable

nimis (adv.) excessively, too

dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute rule, tyranny

libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely); take hold of

†capiundae = archaic form of capiendae

assequor (ad- + sequor) gain, reach, attain

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule

pēnsūm, pēnsī *n.* weight; importance

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

†in dies, day by day

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant

inopia, inopiae *f.* lack of resources, poverty; lack

familiāris, familiāre of or belonging to the household; rēs familiāris, (one's) private property, estate, patrimony

cōnscentia, cōnscentiae *f.* consciousness, awareness

†uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each (of two); both

artibus auxerat, quās sup̄rā memorāvī. incitābant praetereā conruptī cīvitātis mōrēs, quōs pessuma ac dīvorsa inter sē mala, luxuria atque avāritia, vexābant. rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus cīvitātis tempus admonuit, sup̄rā repetere ac paucīs† īnstitūta maiōrum domī mīlitiaeque, quō modō rem pūblicam habuerint quantamque relīquerint, ut† paulātim inmūtāta ex pulcherrumā <atque optumā> pessuma ac flāgitiōsissima facta sit, disserere.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow, increase
sup̄rā (adv.) above; further
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell
incitō (1-tr.) rouse, excite, urge forward
praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition
corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus
 corrupt
dīversus, -a, -um opposite, separate, different
luxuria, luxuriae *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury
avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass
admoneō (ad- + moneō) bring to mind, remind, suggest

repetō (re- + petō) seek again, seek back
 †**paucīs**, *supply verbīs*
īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī *n.* custom, institution
mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service; **mīlitiae** = *loc.*
 †**ut, here** (interrog. adv.) how
paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually
immūtō (in- + mūtō) (1-tr.) change, alter, transform
flāgitiōsus, -a, -um shameful, disgraceful, infamous
disserō, disserere, disseruī, dissertus examine, discuss, treat

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.547–58

cui Pyrrhus: “referēs ergō haec et nuntius ībis
 Pēlīdae genitōrī. illī mea trīstia facta
 dēgeneremque Neoptoleum nārrāre mementō.
 nunc morere.” hoc dīcēns altāria ad ipsa trementem
 trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,
 implicuitque comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum
 extulit ac laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.
 haec finis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum
 sorte tulit† Troiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa videntem
 Pergama, tot quondam populīs terrīsque superbum
 rēgnātōrem Asiae. iacet ingēns lītore truncus,
 āvulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus.

550

555

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles)
 (= Neoptolemus)

ergō (adv.) therefore

nuntius, nuntiī *m.* messenger

Pēlīdēs, Pēlīdae *m.* son of Peleus (= Achilles)

genitor, genitōris *m.* father

trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

dēgener, dēgeneris low-born; degenerate

Neoptolemus, Neoptolemī *m.* Neoptolemus
 (son of Achilles) (= Pyrrhus)

nārrō (1-tr.) tell, say; describe

altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)
tremō, tremere, tremuī, — tremble, quiver,
 quake

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag

lāpsō (1-intr.) slip

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

implicō, implicāre, implicāvī/implicuī,
implicātus/implicitus entwine, enfold; take
 hold of

coma, comae *f.* hair

laevus, -a, -um left; *fem. subst.*, left hand

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right
 hand

coruscus, -a, -um quivering; glittering, gleaming,
 flashing

effērō (ex- + ferō), **efferre, extulī, ēlātus** carry out;
 raise

latus, lateris *n.* side, flank

capulus, capulī *m.* sword handle, hilt

tenus (prep. + preceding abl.) (right) up to,
 as far as

abdō (ab- + dō) hide, put away; plunge, bury

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

exitus, exitūs *m.* departure; end, conclusion

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny

†**ferō, here**, carry away

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire,
 (cause to) burn

prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus sum slip forward;
 give way, collapse

Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel
 of Troy)

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

rēgnātor, rēgnātōris *m.* ruler, king, lord

Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia (a Roman province [Asia
 Minor])

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest; lie dead

lītus, lītōris *n.* shore, beach

truncus, truncī *m.* trunk, torso

āvellō, āvellere, āvellī/āvolsī, āvulsus tear away
umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.540–67

quī tamen īnsequitur pennīs adiūtus amōris,	540
ōcior est requiemque negat tergōque fugācis	
inminet et crīnem sparsum cervīcibus adflat.	
vīribus absūmptīs expalluit illa citaeque	
victa labōre fugae spectāns Pēnēidas undās	
“fer, pater,” inquit “opem! sī flūmina nūmen habētis,	545
quā nimium placuī, mūtandō perde figūram!”	547 ⁸
vix prece finītā torpor gravis occupat artūs,	
mollia cinguntur tenuī praecordia librō,†	
in frondem crīnēs, in rāmōs bracchia crēscunt,	550
pēs modo tam vėlōx pigrīs rādīcibus haeret,	
ōra cacūmen habet: remanet nitor ūnus in illā.	
hanc quoque Phoebus amat positāque in stīpite dextrā	
sentit adhūc trepidāre novō sub cortice pectus	

īnsequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue, chase

penna, pennae *f.* wing

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī, adiūtus aid, assist; strengthen

ōcior, ōcius swifter

requiēs, requiētis *f.* rest, respite; **requiem** = *acc. sing.*

negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse

tergum, tergī *n.* back

fugāx, fugācis fugitive, fleeing, running away

immineō, imminēre, —, — hang over, threaten (+ dat.)

crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.,* hair

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus scatter, distribute

cervīx, cervīcis *f. sing. or pl.,* neck

afflō (1-tr.) breathe upon

absūmō, absūmere, absūmpsī, absūmptus use up, spend; exhaust

expallēscō, expallēscere, expalluī, — turn pale

citus, -a, -um swift

Pēnēis, Pēnēidos of or belonging to (the river god) Peneus; **Pēnēidas** = *fem. pl. acc.*

unda, undae *f.* wave

ops, opis *f.* aid, help

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

nimum (adv.) too much, excessively

figūra, figūrae *f.* form, shape, appearance

***prex, *precis** *f.* prayer

finiō, finīre, finīi/finīvi, finītus end, complete, conclude

torpor, torpōris *m.* loss of power, numbness

occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

tenuis, tenue thin, slight, slender

praecordia, praecordiōrum *n. pl.* (lower) chest, breast

†**liber, here,** (inner) bark (of a tree)

frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, leafy bough

rāmus, rāmī *m.* branch

bracchium, bracchiū *n.* (lower) arm

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

vėlōx, vėlōcis rapid, swift, speedy

piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, inactive, slow

rādīx, rādīcis *f.* root

haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesūrus cling, stick (+ dat.)

cacūmen, cacūminis *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

remaneō (re- + maneō) remain

nitor, nitōris *m.* brightness, splendor

Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

stīpes, stīpitis *m.* trunk (of a tree)

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.,* right hand

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble

cortex, corticis *m. or f.* outer covering of a tree, bark

8. A line is missing because of textual corruption.

complexusque suis rāmōs ut membra lacertis 555
 ōscula dat lignō; refugit tamen ōscula lignum.
 cui deus “at quoniam coniūnx mea nōn potes esse,
 arbor eris certē” dīxit “mea! semper habēbunt
 tē coma, tē citharae, tē nostrae, laure, pharetrae;
 tū ducibus Latiis aderis, cum laeta triumphum 560
 vōx canet et vīsēt longās Capitōlia pompās;
 postibus augustis eadem fidissima custōs
 ante forēs stābis mediamque† tuēbere quercum,
 utque meum intōnsis caput est iuvenāle capillis,
 tū quoque perpetuōs semper gere frondis honōrēs!” 565
 finierat Paeān: factis modo laurea rāmīs
 adnuit utque caput vīsa est agitāsse cacūmen.

complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace
rāmus, rāmī *m.* branch
membrum, membrī *n.* limb
lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm
ōsculum, ōsculī *n.* kiss
lignum, lignī *n.* wood
refugiō (re- + fugiō) flee, shun
 at (conj.) but
coniūnx, coniugis *m. or f.* spouse; husband; wife
arbor, arboris *f.* tree
coma, comae *f.* hair
cithara, citharae *f.* cithara; lute
laurus, laurī *f.* laurel tree; sprig or branch of laurel
pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver
Latius, -a, -um of Latium, Latin, Roman
triumphus, triumphī *m.* (a) triumph (the procession through Rome of a victorious general; a ritual cry that accompanies a triumph)
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see; view, behold
Capitōlia, Capitōliōrum *n. pl.* (the) Capitoline hill (site of the Temple of Jupiter Optimus Maximus and the end point of a triumph)
pompa, pompae *f.* (ceremonial) procession, parade
postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

augustus, -a, -um solemn, venerable; majestic, august
fidus, -a, -um trustworthy
custōs, custōdis *m. or f.* guardian, protector, sentry
foris, foris, -ium *f.* door; *pl.*, double doors
 †**medius, here, in the middle**
tueor, tuērī, tuitus/tūtus sum look at; protect
quercus, quercūs *f.* oak tree; oak wreath
intōnsus, -a, -um uncut, unshorn
iuvenālis, iuvenāle of or belonging to a young man, youthful, young
capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without interruption; perpetual, everlasting
frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, leafy bough
finiō, finīre, finīī/finīvī, finītus end, complete, conclude
Paeān, Paeānis *m.* Paeon (a Greek god) (= Apollo)
laurea, laureae *f.* laurel tree
adnuō, adnuere, adnuī, — nod (in agreement), assent
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, shake
cacūmen, cacūminis *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

AUTHORS AND PASSAGES

This index lists the authors and passages appearing in *Learn to Read Latin*. The citations are by chapter and page number (e.g., 14.658 next to a reading indicates that the reading is to be found in Chapter 14 on page 658). A page number in boldface indicates that a reading is in a Longer Readings section, and a page number in italics indicates that a reading is in a Continuous Readings section. An **A** next to a page number indicates that a biography of the author appears with a passage, and a **W** indicates that a description of a work appears with a passage. (Biographies and descriptions of works appear only in the Longer and Continuous Readings.)

<p>Accius</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Tragoediae</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 204 14.474</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 214 10.256</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 296 8.180</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 667 7.152</p> <p>L. Afranius</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Togatae</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 153 4.79</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 289–99 9.215</p> <p>Augustus</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Res Gestae Divi Augusti</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Proem, 1–2 10.283 (W)</p> <p>Aulus Gellius</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Noctes Atticae</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">IX.2.4 2.44</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">X.3.17 8.186</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">XII.11.7 11.318</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">XII.13.16 12.374</p>	<p>Caecilius Statius</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Palliatae</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">frag. 163 8.179</p> <p>Caesar</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>De Bello Civili</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.82 15.539</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">II.27 12.370</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>De Bello Gallico</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.1 9.224 (A/W)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.1 13.440</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.2 14.483</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.11 15.538</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.24–25 10.271</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.32–33 11.325</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.36 14.483</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.39 14.498</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.44 15.555</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I.52 9.217</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">II.3 11.326</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">II.11 13.424</p>
---	--

II.142	13.422	<i>In Catilinam I</i>	
<i>De Finibus</i>		1–2	14.493
II.105	6.121	3	14.476
IV.34	9.216	6	11.309
<i>De Haruspicum Responsis</i>		6	12.367
62	6.121	9	12.367
<i>De Inventione</i>		11	11.342 (W)
I.80	12.367	12–13	12.397
<i>De Legibus</i>		13–14	13.456
I.18	10.257	13	10.256
II.5	12.368	15–16	14.514
II.12	14.478	16–17	15.578
III.2	12.369	18	9.215
III.2	13.420	20	10.256
<i>De Natura Deorum</i>		22	14.477
I.29	13.436	27	11.321
I.88	14.479	<i>In Catilinam II</i>	
I.91	13.421	1	10.266 (W)
II.140	10.267 (W)	15	13.420
II.167	4.80	17	12.367
II.167	14.479	27	12.367
II.168	13.422	<i>In Catilinam IV</i>	
<i>De Officiis</i>		17	11.309
I.35	10.258	<i>In Verrem I</i>	
I.43	9.216	1.31	14.475
I.115–16	9.216	<i>In Verrem II</i>	
I.151	14.480	1.16	13.419
II.43	13.422	2.46	13.419
III.114	10.258	2.162	14.490 (W)
<i>De Oratore</i>		2.163	14.491
I.127	11.310	4.5	11.308
I.264	11.310	4.14	9.215
II.24	12.376	5.121	14.475
II.174	11.310	<i>Orator</i>	
II.178	11.322 (W)	120	15.536
III.127	11.322	<i>Paradoxa Stoicorum</i>	
III.211	15.535	Preface 3	14.478
<i>De Re Publica</i>		3.25	14.478
II.4	15.536	4.30	6.128 (A/W)
frag. 2	10.256	5.33	11.310
<i>De Senectute</i>		5.34	14.494
11	7.153	5.36	10.267
37	10.268 (W)	<i>Philippics I</i>	
60	15.536	14	14.480
70	14.479	<i>Philippics IV</i>	
74–75	13.437	9	6.121
80	14.479	<i>Philippics V</i>	
<i>Divinatio in Caeciliam</i>		24–25	10.258
19	9.222 (W)	50	11.311

- Philippics VI*
7 9.216
19 12.369
- Philippics VII*
4 9.217
- Philippics VIII*
9 11.312
- Philippics XII*
5 14.480
- Philippics XIII*
2 14.480
14 15.537
- Post Reditum Ad Populum*
2 11.309
16 13.435 (W)
17 13.420
- Pro Archia*
13 13.432
14 13.433
18–19 13.434
19 12.376
26 14.477
- Pro Balbo*
8 14.478
- Pro Caelio*
58 8.180
77 10.256
- Pro Cluentio*
84 11.309
- Pro Lege Manilia*
14–16 14.491 (W)
24–25 14.492
27–28 14.476
56 14.476
59 14.476
65 15.535
- Pro Ligario*
37–38 13.420
- Pro Marcello*
25 11.310
- Pro Milone*
11 6.121
- Pro Murena*
30 11.321 (W)
36 11.309
76 5.100
83 14.477
- Pro Plancio*
13 15.535
82 15.535
- Pro Quinctio*
80 14.475
95 11.320
98 9.222 (W)
- Pro Rege Deiotaro*
32 10.257
- Pro S. Roscio Amerino*
56–57 15.549 (W)
70 13.419
84 14.475
- Pro Roscio Comoedo*
2 10.256
- Pro Scauro*
4 12.377 (W)
- Pro Sestio*
2 14.477
73 12.368
86 14.478
- Timaeus*
21 12.369
- Tusculanae Disputationes*
I.1 11.311
I.9 15.551
I.14 12.368
I.18 11.311
I.18 12.368
I.28 4.80
I.34 8.180
I.43 10.257
I.94 11.311
I.101 13.421
II.5 5.101
II.65 10.258
III.56 3.61
IV.44 13.421
V.109 13.421
- CIL*
I.1499 4.81
III.3576 6.126
V.2893 5.103
V.3415 5.103
VI.7595 5.103
VI.16169 13.431
VI.26003 6.126
IX.5785 6.126
X.7658 5.103
- Cornelius Nepos*
Vita Alcibiadis
7 11.313

- Vita Attici*
6 12.371
- Vita Hannibalis*
7 6.122
- Ennius
Annales
I.1 8.179
I.3 6.121
I.37–42 6.127 (A/W)
I.104 5.100
V.156 10.255
VI.202 10.255
VII.19 6.121
VIII.248–51 10.255
IX.309 9.214
- Sed. Inc.*
frag. 21 8.179
frag. 451 9.214
frag. 483–84 15.533
frag. 513 8.179
frag. 560 7.152
- Tragoediae*
frag. 140 15.533
frag. 351 9.214
- Epicedion Drusi*
359–60 9.219
- Florus
Epitoma Bellorum Omnium
I.31 11.341 (A/W)
- Horace
Ars Poetica
31 6.124
70–72 13.427
136–55 13.445
323–26 11.334 (W)
361–65 12.391
385 10.262
389–90 14.485
- Carmina*
I.5 11.331
I.11 12.388
I.22 13.443
I.23 10.279
I.37 15.564
II.9 11.332
III.9 14.506
III.30 15.567
IV.7 12.389
- Epistulae*
I.4.12–14 11.314
I.8.17 5.101
I.10.24 4.80
I.11.25–30 8.191 (W)
I.16.51–52 7.155
II.1.156–57 12.372
- Epodes*
15.1–2 14.485
- Sermones*
I.3.33–34 8.182
I.6.62–64 10.261
I.9.57–60 8.190 (A/W)
II.7.28–29 8.182
II.7.117 9.218
- Justinian
Digesta
2.12.8 10.264
- Juvenal
Saturae
I.30 6.126
III.41 12.374
VIII.83 12.374
VIII.244 6.126
X.283–88 10.285 (A/W)
X.356 12.374
X.365–66 15.547
XIII.159–60 12.374
XIV.70–74 15.547
- Livius Andronicus
Odyssey
frag. 1 4.79
- Livy
Ab Urbe Condita
I.13.1–5 15.573
I.36.1 15.544
I.56.9 13.452
II.40.8 8.183
II.46.3–7 14.508
III.11.13 13.428
III.15.6 7.156
III.25.9 10.262
V.23.1 13.453
V.49.3 3.62
V.49.6 11.337
VIII.7.2–8 14.510
IX.42.5 15.544
XXI.15.1 6.125

- XXI.39.7 10.262
 XXI.58.5 15.545
 XXII.39.11 9.231 (A/W)
 XXII.49.5 13.454
 XXII.49.10 11.338
 XXII.50.3 10.262
 XXII.50.6 12.392
 XXII.51.4 11.316
 XXIV.25.8 11.316
 XXIV.38.5 8.183
 XXVII.16.1 6.125
 XXVII.51.11 15.545
 XXVIII.5.15–16 10.280
 XXIX.8.7 14.487
 XXX.18.3 15.545
 XXX.18.7 10.281
 XXX.30.18 11.339
 XXXII.10.11 461
 XXXV.19.6 7.156
 XXXVI.19.6 10.263
 XXXVIII.23.1 13.455
 XXXIX.37.17 15.545
 XXXIX.51.9 7.156
 XL.35.13 15.546
 XLI.4.6 11.316
 XLIV.39.2 11.316
 XLV.38.2 15.546
- Lucan
Bellum Civile
 I.128 10.263
 II.656–57 14.488
 III.39 11.318
 IX.236–39 8.185
 IX.961–69 14.511 (A/W)
- Lucilius
Saturae
 frag. 9 13.419
 frag. 620 10.255
 frag. 953 14.474
- Lucretius
De Rerum Natura
 I.1–9 10.269
 I.14–16 13.423
 I.199–207 14.497
 II.1–4 14.481
 II.55–61 14.482
 II.75–79 9.223 (A/W)
 II.1150–52 14.482
- III.830–31 7.153
 III.970–71 9.217
- Macrobius
Saturnalia
 V.1.8 14.489
- Martial
 I.32 4.81
 I.38 13.430
 II.80 9.221
 IV.10.3–4 8.186
 VII.3 9.221
 VII.85.4–5 6.126
 VIII.27 8.186
 VIII.73.5–8 7.159 (A/W)
 XII.46 8.186
- Naevius
Palliatae
 frag. 9–10 13.418
 frag. 106 14.474
Tragoediae
 frag. 37 6.121
alia carmina epica
 frag. 64.1–4 12.375 (A/W)
- Ovid
Amores
 I.1–4 11.315
 I.9.1–8 8.192 (W)
 II.5.9–10 8.183
 III.9.1–6 8.193
 III.9.37–42 10.281
 III.11.35 5.101
 III.11.39–40 6.124
- Ars Amatoria*
 I.1–4 14.486
 I.7 12.372
 I.61–66 11.334
 I.99 15.543
 I.113–24 10.282 (W)
 I.475–78 11.315
 II.201 5.101
 II.271–76 13.428
 II.493 5.101
 II.519–20 13.428
 III.263 11.316
- Fasti*
 II.491–92 461
 V.583–88 7.159 (W)

<i>Heroides</i>		<i>Phaedrus</i>	
VII.51	7.155	<i>Fabulae Aesopiae</i>	
X.59–62	15.543	V.10.9	8.184
XIII.17	2.44	<i>Plautus</i>	
XIV.92	7.155	<i>Amphitruo</i>	
XIV.101–2	6.124	358	7.152
XV.123–26	11.315	551–54	13.418
XVII.253–54	11.315	559–60	15.532
<i>Metamorphoses</i>		835	12.366
I.1–9	9.230	<i>Asinaria</i>	
I.253–73	15.571	357	461
I.428–29	9.219	<i>Aulularia</i>	
I.452–62	10.287	88	8.179
I.463–77	11.346	103	5.100
I.478–89	12.401	170	8.179
I.490–503	13.459	245–49	15.532
I.504–39	14.517	739–42	15.532
I.540–67	15.583	<i>Bacchides</i>	
IV.428	12.372	628	7.152
VI.190–94	12.391	816–17	13.418
VII.17–23	11.335	1059	5.100
XI.141–43	6.130 (A/W)	<i>Boeotia</i>	
XIII.34–41	6.124	frag. 1–9	11.319
XIII.361–69	13.450	<i>Captivi</i>	
XIV.437	3.61	142–43	12.366
<i>Remedia Amoris</i>		369–70	461
648	8.183	461–63	11.308
<i>Tristia</i>		617	12.366
I.1.1	6.124	741	10.255
II.41–30	11.336 (W)	750	8.179
II.557–58	7.155	862–64	9.214
III.7.43–44	10.262	<i>Casina</i>	
III.7.45–52	13.451	3–6	11.308
IV.4B.21–22	9.219	142	15.532
IV.9.11–12	6.125	690–91	2.44
IV.10.21–26	15.543	<i>Cistellaria</i>	
IV.10.81–84	13.428	312	3.61
V.2.31–34	15.543	<i>Menaechmi</i>	
V.2.45–46	15.544	487–89	13.418
V.4.27–30	15.544	<i>Mercator</i>	
V.7b.43–48	14.486	320	3.61
V.10.3–5	14.486	<i>Miles Gloriosus</i>	
V.12.37–38	6.125	33–35	10.265 (A/W)
<i>Petronius</i>		42–46	10.265
<i>Satyricon</i>		250–52	15.533
37	14.512 (A/W)	<i>Mostellaria</i>	
45	15.574	51–52	12.366
57.7	5.103	<i>Persa</i>	
127	8.185	729	10.255

- 762 11.308
763–64 4.79
831 7.152
Pseudolus
269 14.474
Stichus
139–42 15.533
731 4.79
Trinummus
55–56 10.255
65 5.121
Truculentus
489–90 13.418
- Pliny the Elder
Natural History
X.42 6.125
- Pliny the Younger
Epistulae
I.6 14.513
VI.16.13 11.318
VIII.14.10 13.430
Panegyricus
62 14.488
74 9.221
- Propertius
I.1–8 13.446
I.8A.1–4 14.485
I.8A.5–12 7.158 (A/W)
I.8B.39–40 8.183
I.11.23–26 9.219
I.12.11–14 13.427
II.1.3–4 8.183
II.5.16 8.183
II.8.1–12;17–20 9.229
II.12 13.447
II.15.23–24 13.427
II.15.29–30 10.262
II.15.31–40 13.449
II.15.50 6.124
II.16.1–2 7.155
II.19.1–8 14.507
II.29A 15.569
II.34.65–66 11.314
- Publilius Syrus
Sententiae
A14 5.101
A16 7.154
A22 4.80
- A36 4.80
A42 10.260
B5 13.426
B21 8.181
B36 13.426
D2 6.122
E10 8.181
E15 10.260
E17 6.122
H8 8.181
I36 6.122
I52 3.62
L4 8.181
M3 7.154
M9 12.371
N7 4.80
N43 6.122
O6 12.371
P7 3.62
P15 6.122
S29 12.371
S44 4.80
V29 7.154
- Quintilian
Institutio Oratoria
I.4.22 7.156
II.15.30 15.547
IV.5.13 5.103
IX.3.85 9.220
X.1.93 12.373
X.7.21 12.373
- [Quintilian]
Declamationes Maiores
10.8 8.186
- Curtius Rufus
Historiae Alexandri Magni
IV.14.11 461
VI.1.3 9.220
VIII.1.50 13.429
- Rhetorica ad Herennium*
II.35.15 11.308
IV.13.19 7.153
IV.44.28 14.474
IV.52.22 12.367
- Sallust
Bellum Catilinae
1 11.343
1–2 12.398

3	9.217	507–11	10.285
3	13.457	517–18	8.185
4	14.515	698–709	9.232 (W)
5	10.259	722	5.102
5	15.580	<i>De Beneficiis</i>	
6	10.259	I.2.4	12.372
7	15.540	III.14.3	12.372
8	14.503	IV.5.1	2.44
14	15.540	<i>Dialogi</i>	
20	9.224 (A/W)	III.18.1	12.373
20	12.370	IV.11.3	14.487
29	9.218	IV.31.4	11.340 (W)
36	15.558	V.38.1	14.487
51	15.541	VI.19.5	14.488
52	13.425	VI.22.3	14.488
53	3.61	VII.2.3	5.102
53	10.260	VII.22.5	4.81
54	9.218	VII.26.6	12.396
54	13.425	VIII.6.5	11.318
54	13.426	IX.3.8	11.318
58	11.313	IX.17.10	9.220
60–61	15.559	XI.6.5	6.125
<i>Bellum Iugurthae</i>		XI.14.4	15.546
2	10.273 (W)	<i>Epistulae Morales</i>	
12	15.557	II.6	11.317
14	11.313	V.7	11.317
14	15.540	IX.6	12.372
46	14.484	XXXV.1	2.44
60	7.154	XXXV.3	11.317
101	15.540	LXX.6	13.455
110	12.384	LXXXIX.8	8.184
[Sallust]		XCI.15	8.184
<i>In M. Tullium Ciceronem</i>		XCI.17	12.393
5	13.426	XCI.20	8.184
Seneca the Elder		XCIV.38	14.487
<i>Controversiae</i>		CI.14	15.546
praef. 17	7.156	CIV.26	8.184
I.1.14	11.317	CVII.8	12.394
II.2.2	12.372	CVII.9	13.429
Seneca the Younger		CVII.11–12	12.373
<i>Agamemnon</i>		<i>Hercules Furens</i>	
73	4.81	1–4	9.220
116	5.102	181–85	6.131 (A/W)
152	8.185	<i>Hercules Oetaeus</i>	
169–70	13.429	111	8.185
259	5.102	<i>Naturales Quaestiones</i>	
302	5.102	III.16.4	7.156
466–76	12.395	<i>Oedipus</i>	
		515	15.546
		980; 993–94	5.102

- Phaedra*
607 11.317
978–80 9.220
- Thyestes*
190–91 13.429
- Silius Italicus
Punica
XI.3–4 10.263
- Suetonius
De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus
22 7.157
Vita Augusti
28 14.489
Vita Caligulae
30 7.157
Vita Claudii
21 10.264
Vita Iulii
32 7.157
37 7.157
42 13.431
Vita Neronis
49 13.431
Vita Tiberii
21 13.431
- Tacitus
Annales
I.1 9.234 (W)
I.28 14.489
II.17 15.548
III.65 15.548
VI.6 13.430
VI.22 13.430
XII.35 14.489
XV.67 7.157
De Vita Agricolae
1 9.233 (A/W)
2 13.430
33 15.547
42 10.263
46 15.575
Dialogus de Oratoribus
25 15.576 (W)
Germania
3.1 11.318
9.2 12.374
Historiae
I.41 15.548
- IV.26 12.374
V.11 7.157
- Terence
Adelphoe
84–86 15.534
304 13.419
725–27 4.79
Andria
194 2.44
Eunuchus
41 10.255
732 7.152
Hecyra
181–83 15.534
Heauton Timoroumenos
77 11.308
Phormio
138 12.366
454 14.474
487–88 15.534
- Terentianus Maurus
De Syllabis
1286 5.103
- Tibullus
Elegiae
II.1.35–37 6.124
- Varro
De Lingua Latina
VI.52 15.534
VI.77 4.79
Menippeae
frag. 122 14.474
Res Rustica
I.1.4–5 8.187 (A/W)
III.1 7.152
- [Varro]
Sententiae
22 15.534
86 5.100
88 12.366
95 12.366
- Valerius Maximus
Facta et Dicta Memorabilia
III.2.20 11.317
- Velleius Paterculus
Historiae

II.17.1	10.263	IV.651–58	9.228
II.18.1–3	10.284 (A/W)	IV.659–60	8.182
Vergil		VI.126–29	9.228
<i>Aeneid</i>		VI.391	12.371
I.1	4.80	VI.847–53	12.385
I.1–4	10.261	VII.44–45	11.314
I.1–11	13.441	VIII.51–57	8.189
I.12–13	6.123	VIII.112–14	15.542
I.33	13.426	IX.37–39	6.129 (A/W)
I.133–34	8.182	IX.641	7.154
I.198–99	11.313	X.284	10.261
I.200–203	9.225	X.466–72	10.277
I.483–84	13.427	X.501–2	10.261
I.544–45	11.314	X.743–44	8.182
I.561–62	15.541	X.803	11.314
II.3–13	13.442	XI.640–42	6.123
II.26–34	9.226	XI.816–31	15.562
II.40–56	11.328	XII.92–102	10.278
II.65–74	9.227	XII.146	7.155
II.274–76	15.541	XII.435–36	10.261
II.289	10.261	XII.653–57	11.330
II.290–94	8.188	XII.657–71	12.386
II.324–27	9.218	XII.894–95	6.123
II.354	9.218	XII.938–52	15.563
II.479–90	10.286	<i>Eclogues</i>	
II.491–505	11.344	I.19–25	11.327
II.506–17	12.400	I.35	8.181
II.518–32	13.458	I.83	12.371
II.533–46	14.516	II.63–68	14.504
II.547–58	15.582	III.64–65	7.154
II.657–63	14.505	IV.4–7	10.274 (W)
III.47–48	15.541	IV.18–25	14.504
III.374–80	11.330	V.4	11.313
III.528–30	6.123	VIII.68–70	13.426
IV.80–83	14.485	IX.32–36	12.384
IV.283–86	15.542	X.69	7.154
IV.360–61	8.182	<i>Georgics</i>	
IV.368–70	13.427	I.505–14	10.275 (W)
IV.376–81	8.186	II.401–2	6.123
IV.382–87	14.505	II.490–99	10.276
IV.556–59	15.542	III.242–44	10.260
IV.593–94	5.101	IV.525–27	10.260

MORPHOLOGY APPENDIX

Note: Forms in brackets are not introduced in the textbook.

Nouns

First Declension

puella, puellae f.

Singular

Nom.	<i>puella</i>
Gen.	<i>puellae</i>
Dat.	<i>puellae</i>
Acc.	<i>puellam</i>
Abl.	<i>puellā</i>
Voc.	<i>puella</i>

Plural

Nom./Voc.	<i>puellae</i>
Gen.	<i>puellārum</i>
Dat.	<i>puellis</i>
Acc.	<i>puellās</i>
Abl.	<i>puellis</i>

Second Declension

servus, servī m.
filius, filiī m.
puer, puerī m.

M./F.

Singular

Nom.	<i>servus</i>	<i>filius</i>	<i>puer</i>
Gen.	<i>servī</i>	<i>filiī/filī</i>	<i>puerī</i>
Dat.	<i>servō</i>	<i>filiō</i>	<i>puerō</i>
Acc.	<i>servum</i>	<i>filiū</i>	<i>puerum</i>
Abl.	<i>servō</i>	<i>filiō</i>	<i>puerō</i>
Voc.	<i>serve</i>	<i>filī</i>	<i>puer</i>

Plural

Nom./Voc.	<i>servī</i>	<i>filiī</i>	<i>puerī</i>
Gen.	<i>servōrum</i>	<i>filiōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>servīs</i>	<i>filiīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>
Acc.	<i>servōs</i>	<i>filiōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>
Abl.	<i>servīs</i>	<i>filiīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>

periculum, periculī n.
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī n.

N.

<i>periculum</i>	<i>cōnsilium</i>
<i>periculī</i>	<i>cōnsiliī/cōnsili</i>
<i>periculō</i>	<i>cōnsiliō</i>
<i>periculum</i>	<i>cōnsilium</i>
<i>periculō</i>	<i>cōnsiliō</i>
<i>periculum</i>	<i>cōnsilium</i>

<i>pericula</i>	<i>cōnsilia</i>
<i>periculōrum</i>	<i>cōnsiliōrum</i>
<i>periculīs</i>	<i>cōnsiliīs</i>
<i>pericula</i>	<i>cōnsilia</i>
<i>periculīs</i>	<i>cōnsiliīs</i>

Third Declension

mīles, mīlitis m. urbs, urbis, -ium f.			corpus, corporis n. animal, animālis, -ium n.	
	M./F.	M./F. i-stem	N.	N. i-stem
<i>Singular</i>				
Nom./Voc.	mīles	urbs	corpus	animal
Gen.	mīlitis	urbis	corporis	animālis
Dat.	mīlitī	urbī	corporī	animālī
Acc.	mīlitem	urbem	corpus	animal
Abl.	mīlite	urbe	corpore	animālī
<i>Plural</i>				
Nom./Voc.	mīlitēs	urbēs	corpora	animālia
Gen.	mīlitum	urbium	corporum	animālium
Dat.	mīlitibus	urbibus	corporibus	animālibus
Acc.	mīlitēs	urbēs/urbīs	corpora	animālia
Abl.	mīlitibus	urbibus	corporibus	animālibus

Fourth Declension

mōtus, mōtūs *m.*
cornū, cornūs *n.*

	M./F.	[N.]
<i>Singular</i>		
Nom./Voc.	mōtus	cornū
Gen.	mōtūs	cornūs
Dat.	mōtuī/mōtū	cornū
Acc.	mōtum	cornū
Abl.	mōtū	cornū
<i>Plural</i>		
Nom./Voc.	mōtūs	cornua
Gen.	mōtuum	cornuum
Dat.	mōtibus	cornibus
Acc.	mōtūs	cornua
Abl.	mōtibus	cornibus]

Fifth Declension

rēs, reī *f.*
aciēs, aciēī *f.*

Stem ends in <i>consonant</i>	Stem ends in <i>vowel</i>
rēs	aciēs
reī	aciēī
reī	aciēī
rem	aciem
rē	aciē
<i>Plural</i>	
rēs	aciēs
rērum	aciērum
rēbus	aciēbus
rēs	aciēs
rēbus	aciēbus

Adjectives and Pronouns

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

bonus, bona, bonum
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom./Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

Third-Declension Adjectives

With three nominative singular forms:			ācer, ācris, ācre			
With two nominative singular forms:			fortis, forte			
<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	fortis	forte
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis	fortis
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	fortem	fortem	forte
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom./Voc.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	ācium	ācium	ācium	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	ācrēs/ācrīs	ācrēs/ācrīs	ācria	fortēs/fortīs	fortēs/fortīs	fortia
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

With one nominative singular form:			ingēns, ingentis vocāns, vocantis			
<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	ingēns	ingēns	ingēns	vocāns	vocāns	vocāns
Gen.	ingentis	ingentis	ingentis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantis
Dat.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantī
Acc.	ingentem	ingentem	ingēns	vocantem	vocantem	vocāns
Abl.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentī	vocantī/ vocante	vocantī/ vocante	vocantī/ vocante
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom./Voc.	ingentēs	ingentēs	ingentia	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
Gen.	ingentium	ingentium	ingentium	vocantium	vocantium	vocantium
Dat.	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
Acc.	ingentēs/ ingentīs	ingentēs/ ingentīs	ingentia	vocantēs/ vocantīs	vocantēs/ vocantīs	vocantia
Abl.	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus

Comparative Adjectives

		<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	pulchrior	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōra
Gen.	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum
Dat.	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus
Acc.	pulchriōrem	pulchriōrem	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs	pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs	pulchriōra
Abl.	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

is, ea, id

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī/īī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs

iste, ista, istud

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Personal Pronouns

First Person **ego, meī**
nōs, nostrum/nostrī

Second Person **tū, tuī**
vōs, vestrum/vestrī

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum/nostrī	tuī	vestrum/vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Third Person is, ea, id

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī/iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs

Reflexive Pronouns

First Person	—, meī
	—, nostrum/nostrī
Second Person	—, tuī
	—, vestrum/vestrī
Third Person	—, suī

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Sing./Pl.</i>
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	meī	nostrum/nostrī	tuī	vestrum/vestrī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē/sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē/sēsē

Intensive Adjective

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Relative Pronoun

quī, quae, quod

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

quis, quid

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M./F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid		quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid		quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus

quī, quae, quod

	<i>Singular</i>				<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod		quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod		quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

aliquis, aliquid (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M./F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid		aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius		aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui		aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid		aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā		aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (adj.)

	<i>Singular</i>				<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod		aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius		aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui		aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod		aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō		aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

quis, quid (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M./F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid		quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid		quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus

quī, qua, quod (adj.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	qua	quod	quī	quae	qua/quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	qua/quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

quisquam, quicquam (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>		
	M./F.	N.	
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)	Does not occur in the plural
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam	
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam	
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)	
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam	

quisque, quidque (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quidque (quicque)	quīque	quaeque	quaeque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	quōrumque	quārumque	quōrumque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Acc.	quemque	quidque (quicque)	quōsque	quāsque	quaeque
Abl.	quōque	quōque	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

quīque, quaeque, quodque (adj.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīque	quaeque	quodque	quīque	quaeque	quaeque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	quōrumque	quārumque	quōrumque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quodque	quōsque	quāsque	quaeque
Abl.	quōque	quāque	quōque	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quemdam	quandam	quiddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Irregular Adjectives

First-Second-Declension Adjectives Irregular in the Singular Only

alius, alia, aliud

alter, altera, alterum

neuter, neutra, neutrum

nūllus, -a, -um

sōlus, -a, -um

tōtus, -a, -um

ūllus, -a, -um

ūnus, -a, -um

uter, utra, utrum

<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

īdem, eadem, idem

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem/eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īdem/ eīsdem	īdem/ eīsdem	īdem/ eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īdem/ eīsdem	īdem/ eīsdem	īdem/ eīsdem

Adverbs

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from First-Second-Declension Adjectives

acerbē < acerbus, -a, -um

pulchrē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from Third-Declension Adjectives

fortiter < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Comparative Degree

acerbius < acerbus, -a, -um

pulchrius < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

fortius < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Superlative Degree

acerbissimē < acerbus, -a, -um

pulcherrimē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

fortissimē < fortis, forte

simillimē < similis, simile

Verbs

First Conjugation

Principal Parts: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

		Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	vocō	vocor		1 vocem	vocer
2	vocās	vocāris/vocāre		2 vocēs	vocēris/vocēre
3	vocat	vocātur		3 vocet	vocētur
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	vocāmus	vocāmur		1 vocēmus	vocēmur
2	vocātis	vocāminī		2 vocētis	vocēminī
3	vocant	vocantur		3 vocent	vocentur
<i>Imperfect</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	vocābam	vocābar		1 vocārem	vocārer
2	vocābās	vocābāris/vocābāre		2 vocārēs	vocārēris/vocārēre
3	vocābat	vocābātur		3 vocāret	vocārētur
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	vocābāmus	vocābāmur		1 vocārēmus	vocārēmur
2	vocābātis	vocābāminī		2 vocārētis	vocārēminī
3	vocābant	vocābantur		3 vocārent	vocārentur

		Indicative	Subjunctive	
<i>Future</i>				
Active		Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>			
1	vocābō	vocābor		
2	vocābis	vocāberis/vocābere		
3	vocābit	vocābitur		
	<i>Plural</i>			
1	vocābimus	vocābimur		
2	vocābitis	vocābimini		
3	vocābunt	vocābuntur		
<hr/>				
<i>Perfect</i>				
Active		Passive	Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	vocāvī	vocātus, -a, -um sum	1 vocāverim	vocātus, -a, -um sim
2	vocāvisti	vocātus, -a, -um es	2 vocāveris	vocātus, -a, -um sis
3	vocāvit	vocātus, -a, -um est	3 vocāverit	vocātus, -a, -um sit
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	vocāvimus	vocātī, -ae, -a sumus	1 vocāverimus	vocātī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	vocāvistis	vocātī, -ae, -a estis	2 vocāveritis	vocātī, -ae, -a sītis
3	vocāvērunt/vocāvēre	vocātī, -ae, -a sunt	3 vocāverint	vocātī, -ae, -a sint
<hr/>				
<i>Pluperfect</i>				
Active		Passive	Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	vocāveram	vocātus, -a, -um eram	1 vocāvissem	vocātus, -a, -um essem
2	vocāverās	vocātus, -a, -um erās	2 vocāvissēs	vocātus, -a, -um essēs
3	vocāverat	vocātus, -a, -um erat	3 vocāvisset	vocātus, -a, -um esset
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	vocāverāmus	vocātī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 vocāvissēmus	vocātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2	vocāverātis	vocātī, -ae, -a erātis	2 vocāvissētis	vocātī, -ae, -a essētis
3	vocāverant	vocātī, -ae, -a erant	3 vocāvissent	vocātī, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>				
<i>Future Perfect</i>				
Active		Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>			
1	vocāverō	vocātus, -a, -um erō		
2	vocāveris	vocātus, -a, -um eris		
3	vocāverit	vocātus, -a, -um erit		
	<i>Plural</i>			
1	vocāverimus	vocātī, -ae, -a erimus		
2	vocāveritis	vocātī, -ae, -a eritis		
3	vocāverint	vocātī, -ae, -a erunt		
<hr/>				
Participle				
		Active	Passive	
Present		vocāns, vocantis		
Perfect			vocātus, -a, -um	
Future		vocātūrus, -a, -um	vocandus, -a, -um	

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	vocāre	vocārī
Perfect	vocāvīsse	vocātus, -a, -um esse
Future	vocātūrus, -a, -um esse	[vocātum īrī]

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>	2 vocā	vocāre
<i>Plural</i>	2 vocāte	vocāminī
[Future	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>	2 vocātō	vocātor
	3 vocātō	vocātor
<i>Plural</i>	2 vocātōte	
	3 vocantō	vocantor]

Second Conjugation

Principal Parts: **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus**

		Indicative	Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	moveō	moveor	1 moveam	movear
2	movēs	movēris/movēre	2 moveās	moveāris/moveāre
3	movet	movētur	3 moveat	moveātur
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	movēmus	movēmur	1 moveāmus	moveāmur
2	movētis	movēminī	2 moveātis	moveāminī
3	movent	moventur	3 moveant	moveantur
<i>Imperfect</i>				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	movēbam	movēbar	1 movērem	movērer
2	movēbās	movēbāris/movēbāre	2 movērēs	movērēris/movērēre
3	movēbat	movēbātur	3 movēret	movērētur
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	movēbāmus	movēbāmur	1 movērēmus	movērēmur
2	movēbātis	movēbāminī	2 movērētis	movērēminī
3	movēbant	movēbantur	3 movērent	movērentur
<i>Future</i>				
	Active	Passive		
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	movēbō	movēbor		
2	movēbis	movēberis/movēbere		
3	movēbit	movēbitur		
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	movēbimus	movēbimur		
2	movēbitis	movēbiminī		
3	movēbunt	movēbuntur		

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Perfect</i>			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 mōvī	mōtus, -a, -um sum	1 mōverim	mōtus, -a, -um sim
2 mōvistī	mōtus, -a, -um es	2 mōveris	mōtus, -a, -um sis
3 mōvit	mōtus, -a, -um est	3 mōverit	mōtus, -a, -um sit
<i>Plural</i>			
1 mōvimus	mōtī, -ae, -a sumus	1 mōverimus	mōtī, -ae, -a sīmus
2 mōvistis	mōtī, -ae, -a estis	2 mōveritis	mōtī, -ae, -a sītis
3 mōvērunt/mōvēre	mōtī, -ae, -a sunt	3 mōverint	mōtī, -ae, -a sint
<hr/>			
<i>Pluperfect</i>			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 mōveram	mōtus, -a, -um eram	1 mōvissem	mōtus, -a, -um essem
2 mōverās	mōtus, -a, -um erās	2 mōvissēs	mōtus, -a, -um essēs
3 mōverat	mōtus, -a, -um erat	3 mōvisset	mōtus, -a, -um esset
<i>Plural</i>			
1 mōverāmus	mōtī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 mōvissēmus	mōtī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 mōverātis	mōtī, -ae, -a erātis	2 mōvissētis	mōtī, -ae, -a essētis
3 mōverant	mōtī, -ae, -a erant	3 mōvisissent	mōtī, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>			
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 mōverō	mōtus, -a, -um erō		
2 mōveris	mōtus, -a, -um eris		
3 mōverit	mōtus, -a, -um erit		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 mōverimus	mōtī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 mōveritis	mōtī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 mōverint	mōtī, -ae, -a erunt		
<hr/>			
Participle			
	Active	Passive	
Present	movēns, moventis		
Perfect		mōtus, -a, -um	
Future	mōtūrus, -a, -um	movendus, -a, -um	
<hr/>			
Infinitive			
	Active	Passive	
Present	movēre	movērī	
Perfect	mōvisse	mōtus, -a, -um esse	
Future	mōtūrus, -a, -um esse	[mōtum īrī]	
<hr/>			
Imperative			
Present	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>	2 movē	movēre	
<i>Plural</i>	2 movēte	movēminī	
[Future	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>	2 movētō	movētor	
	3 movētō	movētor	
<i>Plural</i>	2 movētōte		
	3 moventō	moventor]	

Third Conjugation

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

		Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>					
Active		Passive		Active	
				Passive	
				<i>Singular</i>	
1	regō	regor		1	regam
2	regis	regeris/regere		2	regās
3	regit	regitur		3	regat
				<i>Plural</i>	
1	regimus	regimur		1	regāmus
2	regitis	regimini		2	regātis
3	regunt	reguntur		3	regant
<hr/>					
<i>Imperfect</i>					
Active		Passive		Active	
				Passive	
				<i>Singular</i>	
1	regēbam	regēbar		1	regerem
2	regēbās	regēbāris/regēbare		2	regerēs
3	regēbat	regēbātur		3	regeret
				<i>Plural</i>	
1	regēbāmus	regēbāmur		1	regerēmus
2	regēbātis	regēbāmini		2	regerētis
3	regēbant	regēbantur		3	regerent
<hr/>					
<i>Future</i>					
Active		Passive			
				<i>Singular</i>	
1	regam	regar			
2	regēs	regēris/regēre			
3	reget	regētur			
				<i>Plural</i>	
1	regēmus	regēmur			
2	regētis	regēmini			
3	regent	regentur			
<hr/>					
<i>Perfect</i>					
Active		Passive		Active	
				Passive	
				<i>Singular</i>	
1	rēxī	rēctus, -a, -um sum		1	rēxerim
2	rēxistī	rēctus, -a, -um es		2	rēxeris
3	rēxit	rēctus, -a, -um est		3	rēxerit
				<i>Plural</i>	
1	rēximus	rēctī, -ae, -a sumus		1	rēxerimus
2	rēxistis	rēctī, -ae, -a estis		2	rēxeritis
3	rēxerunt/rēxere	rēctī, -ae, -a sunt		3	rēxerint

Third i-stem Conjugation

Principal Parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

		Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	capiō	capior		1 capiam	capiar
2	capis	caperis/capere		2 capiās	capiāris/capiāre
3	capit	capitur		3 capiat	capiatūr
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	capimus	capimur		1 capiāmus	capiāmur
2	capitis	capiminī		2 capiātis	capiāminī
3	capiunt	capiantur		3 capiant	capiantur
<hr/>					
<i>Imperfect</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	capiebam	capiebar		1 caperem	caperer
2	capiebās	capiebāris/capiebāre		2 caperēs	caperēris/caperēre
3	capiebat	capiebātur		3 caperet	caperētūr
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	capiebāmus	capiebāmur		1 caperēmus	caperēmur
2	capiebātis	capiebāminī		2 caperētis	caperēminī
3	capiebant	capiebantur		3 caperent	caperentur
<hr/>					
<i>Future</i>					
	Active	Passive			
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	capiam	capiar			
2	capies	capieris/capiere			
3	capiet	capietur			
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	capiemus	capiemur			
2	capietis	capiemini			
3	capient	capientur			
<hr/>					
<i>Perfect</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	cēpī	captus, -a, -um sum		1 cēperim	captus, -a, -um sim
2	cēpistī	captus, -a, -um es		2 cēperis	captus, -a, -um sīs
3	cēpit	captus, -a, -um est		3 cēperit	captus, -a, -um sit
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	cēpimus	captī, -ae, -a sumus		1 cēperimus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	cēpistis	captī, -ae, -a estis		2 cēperitis	captī, -ae, -a sītis
3	cēperunt/cēpēre	captī, -ae, -a sunt		3 cēperint	captī, -ae, -a sint

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Pluperfect</i>			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 cēperam	captus, -a, -um eram	1 cēpissem	captus, -a, -um essem
2 cēperās	captus, -a, -um erās	2 cēpissēs	captus, -a, -um essēs
3 cēperat	captus, -a, -um erat	3 cēpisset	captus, -a, -um esset
<i>Plural</i>			
1 cēperāmus	captī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 cēpissēmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 cēperātis	captī, -ae, -a erātis	2 cēpissētis	captī, -ae, -a essētis
3 cēperant	captī, -ae, -a erant	3 cēpissent	captī, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>			
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 cēperō	captus, -a, -um erō		
2 cēperis	captus, -a, -um eris		
3 cēperit	captus, -a, -um erit		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 cēperimus	captī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 cēperitis	captī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 cēperint	captī, -ae, -a erunt		
<hr/>			
Participle			
	Active	Passive	
Present	capiēns, capientis		
Perfect		captus, -a, -um	
Future	captūrus, -a, -um	capientus, -a, -um	
Infinitive			
	Active	Passive	
Present	capere	capī	
Perfect	cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse	
Future	captūrus, -a, -um esse	[captum irī]	
Imperative			
Present	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>	2 cape	capere	
<i>Plural</i>	2 capite	capimini	
[Future	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>	2 capitō	capitor	
	3 capitō	capitor	
<i>Plural</i>	2 capitōte		
	3 capiuntō	capiantor]	

Fourth Conjugation

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

		Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	audiō	audior		1 audiam	audiar
2	audīs	audīris/audīre		2 audiās	audiāris/audiāre
3	audīt	audītur		3 audiat	audiātur
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	audīmus	audīmur		1 audiāmus	audiāmur
2	audītis	audīmini		2 audiātis	audiāmini
3	audiunt	audiuntur		3 audiant	audiantur
<i>Imperfect</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	audiēbam	audiēbar		1 audiērem	audiērer
2	audiēbās	audiēbāris/audiēbāre		2 audiērēs	audiērēris/audiērēre
3	audiēbat	audiēbātur		3 audiēret	audiēretur
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur		1 audiērēmus	audiērēmur
2	audiēbātis	audiēbāmini		2 audiērētis	audiērēmini
3	audiēbant	audiēbantur		3 audiērent	audiērentur
<i>Future</i>					
	Active	Passive			
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	audiam	audiar			
2	audiēs	audiēris/audiēre			
3	audiet	audiētur			
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	audiēmus	audiēmur			
2	audiētis	audiēmini			
3	audient	audientur			
<i>Perfect</i>					
	Active	Passive		Active	Passive
			<i>Singular</i>		
1	audīvī	audītus, -a, -um sum		1 audīverim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2	audīvistī	audītus, -a, -um es		2 audīveris	audītus, -a, -um sīs
3	audīvit	audītus, -a, -um est		3 audīverit	audītus, -a, -um sit
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	audīvimus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus		1 audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	audīvistis	audītī, -ae, -a estis		2 audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3	audīverunt/audīvēre	audītī, -ae, -a sunt		3 audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Pluperfect</i>			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 audīveram	audītus, -a, -um eram	1 audīvissem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2 audīverās	audītus, -a, -um erās	2 audīvisse	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3 audīverat	audītus, -a, -um erat	3 audīvisset	audītus, -a, -um esset
<i>Plural</i>			
1 audīverāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 audīvissemus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 audīverātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis	2 audīvissetis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3 audīverant	audītī, -ae, -a erant	3 audīvisissent	audītī, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>			
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 audīverō	audītus, -a, -um erō		
2 audīveris	audītus, -a, -um eris		
3 audīverit	audītus, -a, -um erit		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a erunt		
<hr/>			
Participle			
	Active	Passive	
Present	audiēns, audientis		
Perfect		audītus, -a, -um	
Future	audītūrus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um	
<hr/>			
Infinitive			
	Active	Passive	
Present	audīre	audīrī	
Perfect	audīvisse	audītus, -a, -um esse	
Future	audītūrus, -a, -um esse	[audītum īrī]	
<hr/>			
Imperative			
Present	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>	2 audī	audīre	
<i>Plural</i>	2 audīte	audīminī	
[Future	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>	2 audītō	audītor	
	3 audītō	audītor	
<i>Plural</i>	2 audītōte		
	3 audiuntō	audiuntor]	

Irregular Verbs

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	
					<i>Singular</i>
1 sum	eram	erō	sim	essem	
2 es	erās	eris	sīs	essēs	
3 est	erat	erit	sit	esset	
					<i>Plural</i>
1 sumus	erāmus	erimus	sīmus	essēmus	
2 estis	erātis	eritis	sītis	essētis	
3 sunt	erant	erunt	sint	essent	
					<i>Perfect</i>
					<i>Pluperfect</i>
					<i>Singular</i>
1 fuī	fueram	fuerō	fuerim	fuissem	
2 fuiſtī	fuerās	fueris	fueris	fuiſſēs	
3 fuit	fuerat	fuerit	fuerit	fuiſſet	
					<i>Plural</i>
1 fuiſmus	fuerāmus	fuerimus	fuerimus	fuiſſēmus	
2 fuiſtis	fuerātis	fueritis	fueritis	fuiſſētis	
3 fuiſerunt/fuiſere	fuerant	fuerint	fuerint	fuiſſent	
Participle					
	Active				
Future	futūrus, -a, -um				
Infinitive					
	Active				
Present	esse				
Perfect	fuiſſe				
Future	futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore				
[Imperative					
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Present Active</i>	<i>Future Active</i>			
	2 es	2 estō	3 estō		
<i>Plural</i>	2 este	2 estōte	3 suntō		

Morphology Appendix

Principal Parts: *possum, posse, potuī, —*

Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	
					<i>Singular</i>
1 <i>possum</i>	<i>poteram</i>	<i>poterō</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possem</i>	
2 <i>potes</i>	<i>poterās</i>	<i>poteris</i>	<i>possīs</i>	<i>possēs</i>	
3 <i>potest</i>	<i>poterat</i>	<i>poterit</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>posset</i>	
					<i>Plural</i>
1 <i>possumus</i>	<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>poterimus</i>	<i>possīmus</i>	<i>possēmus</i>	
2 <i>potestis</i>	<i>poterātis</i>	<i>poteritis</i>	<i>possītis</i>	<i>possētis</i>	
3 <i>possunt</i>	<i>poterant</i>	<i>poterunt</i>	<i>possint</i>	<i>possent</i>	
					<i>Perfect</i>
					<i>Pluperfect</i>
					<i>Future Perfect</i>
					<i>Singular</i>
1 <i>potuī</i>	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuerō</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuissem</i>	
2 <i>potuistī</i>	<i>potuerās</i>	<i>potueris</i>	<i>potueris</i>	<i>potuissēs</i>	
3 <i>potuit</i>	<i>potuerat</i>	<i>potuerit</i>	<i>potuerit</i>	<i>potuisset</i>	
					<i>Plural</i>
1 <i>potuimus</i>	<i>potuerāmus</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>	<i>potuerimus</i>	<i>potuissēmus</i>	
2 <i>potuistis</i>	<i>potuerātis</i>	<i>potueritis</i>	<i>potueritis</i>	<i>potuissētis</i>	
3 <i>potuērunt/ potuēre</i>	<i>potuerant</i>	<i>potuerint</i>	<i>potuerint</i>	<i>potuissent</i>	

Infinitive:

	Active
Present	<i>posse</i>
Perfect	<i>potuisse</i>

Principal Parts: *eō, ire, iī/ivī, itum*

Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	
					<i>Singular</i>
1 <i>eō</i>	<i>ībam</i>	<i>ībō</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>īrem</i>	
2 <i>īs</i>	<i>ībās</i>	<i>ībīs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>īrēs</i>	
3 <i>it</i>	<i>ībat</i>	<i>ībit</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>īret</i>	
					<i>Plural</i>
1 <i>īmus</i>	<i>ībāmus</i>	<i>ībimus</i>	<i>eāmus</i>	<i>īrēmus</i>	
2 <i>ītis</i>	<i>ībātis</i>	<i>ībītis</i>	<i>eātis</i>	<i>īrētis</i>	
3 <i>eunt</i>	<i>ībant</i>	<i>ībunt</i>	<i>eant</i>	<i>īrent</i>	
					<i>Perfect</i>
					<i>Pluperfect</i>
					<i>Future Perfect</i>
					<i>Singular</i>
1 <i>iī/ivī</i>	<i>ieram/īveram</i>	<i>ierō/īverō</i>	<i>ierim/īverim</i>	<i>īssēm/īvissem</i>	
2 <i>istī/ivistī</i>	<i>ierās/īverās</i>	<i>ieris/īveris</i>	<i>ieris/īveris</i>	<i>īssēs/īvissēs</i>	
3 <i>īit/īvit</i>	<i>ierat/īverat</i>	<i>ierit/īverit</i>	<i>ierit/īverit</i>	<i>īssēt/īvissēt</i>	
					<i>Plural</i>
1 <i>iimus/īmus/ ivimus</i>	<i>ierāmus/īverāmus</i>	<i>ierimus/īverimus</i>	<i>ierimus/īverimus</i>	<i>īssēmus/īvissēmus</i>	
2 <i>istis/ivistis</i>	<i>ierātis/īverātis</i>	<i>ieritis/īveritis</i>	<i>ieritis/īveritis</i>	<i>īssētis/īvissētis</i>	
3 <i>iērunt/iēre/ ivērunt/ivēre</i>	<i>ierant/īverant</i>	<i>ierint/īverint</i>	<i>ierint/īverint</i>	<i>īssent/īvissent</i>	

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	iēns, euntis	
Perfect		itum
Future	itūrus, -a, -um	eundum

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	īre	[īrī]
Perfect	isse/īvisse	itum esse
Future	itūrus, -a, -um esse	

Imperative

	<i>Present Active</i>	<i>[Future Active</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	2 ī	2 ītō	3 ītō
<i>Plural</i>	2 īte	2 ītōte	3 euntō]

Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

Indicative			Subjunctive		
<i>Present</i>					
Active	Passive		Active	Passive	
		<i>Singular</i>			
1 ferō	feror		1 feram	ferar	
2 fers	ferris/ferre		2 ferās	ferāris/ferāre	
3 fert	fertur		3 ferat	ferātur	
		<i>Plural</i>			
1 ferimus	ferimur		1 ferāmus	ferāmur	
2 fertis	feriminī		2 ferātis	ferāminī	
3 ferunt	feruntur		3 ferant	ferantur	
<i>Imperfect</i>					
Active	Passive		Active	Passive	
		<i>Singular</i>			
1 ferēbam	ferēbar		1 ferrem	ferrer	
2 ferēbās	ferēbāris/ferēbāre		2 ferrēs	ferrēris/ferrēre	
3 ferēbat	ferēbātur		3 ferret	ferrētur	
		<i>Plural</i>			
1 ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur		1 ferrēmus	ferrēmur	
2 ferēbātis	ferēbāminī		2 ferrētis	ferrēminī	
3 ferēbant	ferēbantur		3 ferrent	ferrentur	
<i>Future</i>					
Active	Passive				
		<i>Singular</i>			
1 feram	ferar				
2 ferēs	ferēris/ferēre				
3 feret	ferētur				
		<i>Plural</i>			
1 ferēmus	ferēmur				
2 ferētis	ferēminī				
3 ferent	ferentur				

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Perfect</i>			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 tulī	lātus, -a, -um sum	1 tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sim
2 tulistī	lātus, -a, -um es	2 tuleris	lātus, -a, -um sis
3 tulit	lātus, -a, -um est	3 tulerit	lātus, -a, -um sit
<i>Plural</i>			
1 tulimus	lātī, -ae, -a sumus	1 tulerimus	lātī, -ae, -a simus
2 tulistis	lātī, -ae, -a estis	2 tuleritis	lātī, -ae, -a sitis
3 tulērunt/tulēre	lātī, -ae, -a sunt	3 tulerint	lātī, -ae, -a sint
<hr/>			
<i>Pluperfect</i>			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 tuleram	lātus, -a, -um eram	1 tulisse	lātus, -a, -um essem
2 tulerās	lātus, -a, -um erās	2 tulissēs	lātus, -a, -um essēs
3 tulerat	lātus, -a, -um erat	3 tulisset	lātus, -a, -um esset
<i>Plural</i>			
1 tulerāmus	lātī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 tulissēmus	lātī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 tulerātis	lātī, -ae, -a erātis	2 tulissētis	lātī, -ae, -a essētis
3 tulerant	lātī, -ae, -a erant	3 tulissent	lātī, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>			
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 tulerō	lātus, -a, -um erō		
2 tuleris	lātus, -a, -um eris		
3 tulerit	lātus, -a, -um erit		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 tulerimus	lātī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 tuleritis	lātī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 tulerint	lātī, -ae, -a erunt		
<hr/>			
Participle			
	Active	Passive	
Present	ferēns, ferentis		
Perfect		lātus, -a, -um	
Future	lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um	
Infinitive			
	Active	Passive	
Present	ferre	ferrī	
Perfect	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse	
Future	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	[lātum irī]	
Imperative			
Present	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>			
	2 fer	ferre	
<i>Plural</i>			
	2 ferite	ferimini	
[Future	Active	Passive	
<i>Singular</i>			
	2 fertō	fertor	
	3 fertō	fertor	
<i>Plural</i>			
	2 fertōte		
	3 feruntō	feruntur]	

Principal Parts: volō, velle, voluī, —
 nōlō, nolle, nōluī, —
 mālō, malle, māluī, —

Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active		
<i>Present</i>					
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
2 vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3 vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2 vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3 volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint
<hr/>					
<i>Imperfect</i>					
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2 volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3 volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	vellet	nōllet	māllet
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2 volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3 volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	vellent	nōllent	māllent
<hr/>					
<i>Future</i>					
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 volam	*nōlam	*mālam			
2 volēs	nōlēs	mālēs			
3 volet	nōlet	mālet			
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus			
2 volētis	nōlētis	mālētis			
3 volent	nōlent	mālent			
<hr/>					
<i>Perfect</i>					
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 voluī	nōluī	māluī	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2 voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3 voluit	nōluit	māluit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2 voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3 voluērunt/ voluēre	nōluērunt/ nōluēre	māluērunt/ māluēre	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint
<hr/>					
<i>Pluperfect</i>					
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2 voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3 voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2 voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3 voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

Indicative Active

Future Perfect

<i>Singular</i>		
1 voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
2 volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3 voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
<i>Plural</i>		
1 voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2 volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3 voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

Participle Present Active: volēns, volentis; nōlēns, nōlentis

Infinitive Present Active: velle, nōlle, mälle
Perfect Active: voluisse, nōluisse, māluisse

Imperative Present Active: nōlī (2nd sing.), nōlīte (2nd pl.)

Principal Parts: fīō, fierī, factus sum

Indicative Active

Subjunctive Active

Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active		
<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 fīō	fīēbam	fīam		fīam	fīerem
2 fīs	fīebās	fīēs		fīās	fīerēs
3 fīt	fīebat	fīet		fīat	fīeret
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 fīmus	fīebāmus	fīēmus		fīāmus	fīerēmus
2 fītis	fīebātis	fīētis		fīātis	fīerētis
3 fīunt	fīebant	fīent		fīant	fīerent

Infinitive Present Active: fierī

Imperative Present Active: fī (2nd sing.), fīte (2nd pl.)

LATIN TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

This Latin to English Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

- ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from (1); (prep. + abl.) by (3)
A. = Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus (§16)
abeō, abire, abī, abitum go away (5)
absēns, absentis absent (14)
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be absent, be distant (14)
ac or atque (conj.) and (also) (3)
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum go to, come to, approach (5)
accidō, accidere, accidī, — happen (14)
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of) (5)
ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce (6)
acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh (7)
aciēs, aciēī *f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line (9)
ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to (1); (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (13)
adeō (adv.) to such an extent, to so great an extent, (so) very (14)
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present, be near (14)
Aenēās, Aenēae *m.* Aeneas; **Aenēān** = *acc. sing.*; **Aenēā** = *voc. sing.* (§16)
aequus, -a, -um level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil (10)
aestimō (1-tr.) estimate, value (13)
aetās, aetātis *f.* age; lifetime; time (14)
ager, agrī *m.* field (1)
agmen, agminis *n.* line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng (14)
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus drive; do; spend, conduct (4)
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)
age, agite, used to strengthen other commands, come on! (4)
agricola, agricolae *m.* farmer (1)
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)
aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
aliter (adv.) otherwise, in another way (9)
alius, alia, aliud other, another (9)
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (9)
altum, altī *n.* deep sea; height (4)
altus, -a, -um tall, high; deep (4)
ambulō (1-intr.) walk (2)
amīcītia, amīcītiaē *f.* friendship (5)
amīcus, -a, -um friendly (+ dat.) (3)
amīcus, amīcī *m.* friend (3)
amō (1-tr.) love (2)
amor, amōris *m.* love; *pl.*, feelings of love (6)
Amor, Amōris *m.* Love, Amor (§63)
an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question, or; introduces an indirect question, whether* (12)
— . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
anima, animae *f.* life force; soul (1)
animal, animālis, -ium *n.* animal (6)
animus, animī *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings (2)
annus, annī *m.* year (9)
ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously; (prep. + acc.) before; in front of (7)
antequam (conj.) before (13)
antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient (7)
M. Antōnius, M. Antōnī *m.* Marcus Antonius, Marc Antony (§16)

- Apollō, Apollinis** *m.* Apollo (§63)
App. = **Appius, Appiī** *m.* Appius (§16)
Appius, Appiī *m.* Appius (§16)
apud (prep. + acc.) at the house of, in the presence of, among (10)
āra, ārae *f.* altar (7)
arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think (11)
arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons (2)
ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile; trick (7)
Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* Athens (6)
atque or **ac** (conj.) and (also) (3)
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority; influence (14)
audācia, audāciae *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity (11)
audacter or **audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly (8)
audāx, audācis daring, bold; reckless (8)
audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare (8)
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus hear, listen (to) (4)
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove (7)
Augustus, Augustī *m.* Augustus (§63)
Aulus, Aulī *m.* Aulus (§16)
aurum, aurī *n.* gold (1)
aut (conj.) or; **aut . . . aut . . .** either . . . or . . . (7)
autem (postpositive conj.) however; moreover (6)
auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* auxiliary troops (4)
auxilium, auxiliū *n.* aid, help (4)
- Bacchus, Bacchī** *m.* Bacchus (§63)
bellum, bellī *n.* war (1)
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
bene (adv.) well (5)
bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
bonus, -a, -um good (3)
brevis, breve short, brief (11)
- C.** = **Gaius, Gaiī** *m.* Gaius (§16)
cadō, cadere, cecidī, casūrus fall; die (10)
caecus, -a, -um blind; hidden, secret, dark (8)
caelum, caelī *n.* sky, heaven (4)
Caesar, Caesaris *m.* Caesar (§63)
campus, campī *m.* (flat) plain (11)
canō, canere, cecinī, cantus sing (of) (4)
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus take (up), capture; win (4)
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
caput, capitis *n.* head (15)
careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.) (6)
carmen, carminis *n.* song, poem (6)
Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* Carthage (6)
cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ dat.) (7)
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp (11)
castra movēre (idiom) to break camp (11)
castra pōnere (idiom) to pitch or make camp (11)
- cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence, chance, misfortune (10)
Catīlina, Catīlinae *m.* Catiline (§16)
Catō, Catōnis *m.* Cato (§63)
Catullus, Catullī *m.* Catullus (§16)
causā (+ preceding gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)
causa, causae *f.* reason, cause; case (4)
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum go, move; yield; withdraw (5)
celer, celeris, celere swift (15)
centēsimus, -a, -um hundredth (§93)
centum (indeclinable adj.) hundred (§93)
Cerēs, Cereris *f.* Ceres (§63)
certē (adv.) surely, certainly; at least (7)
certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable (7)
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other (13)
Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* Cicero (§63)
cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround; gird (on oneself) (15)
circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus place round; surround (15)
cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m. or f.* citizen (6)
cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship (7)
clārus, -a, -um bright, clear; famous (4)
Cn. = **Gnaeus, Gnaei** *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
—, —, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began, have begun (13)
cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder (2)
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know (10)
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus bring together; compare; direct (14)
sē cōnferre (idiom) to betake oneself, to go (14)
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus accomplish, complete; wear out; kill (12)
cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt (8)
cōnsilium, cōnsiliū *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment (1)
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set up, establish; decide (15)
cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* consul (8)
cōnsulātus, cōnsulātus *m.* consulship (9)
contrā (adv.) on the contrary; in opposition, in turn; (prep. + acc.) against, contrary to; facing (10)
cōpia, cōpiae *f.* wealth, abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces (7)
Corinna, Corinnae *f.* Corinna (§63)
L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēlii Sullae *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (§16)
corpus, corporis *n.* body (6)

- crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** trust, believe (+ dat.) (11)
- cum** (prep. + abl.) with (1); (conj.) when; since; although (12)
- cūnctus, -a, -um** all (14)
- Cupīdō, Cupīdinis** *m.* Cupid, Amor (§63)
- cupīdus, -a, -um** desirous (+ gen.) (4)
- cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupītus** desire, long for, want (7)
- cūr** (interrog. adv.) why (2)
- cūra, cūrae** *f.* care, concern; anxiety (2)
- Cynthia, Cynthiae** *f.* Cynthia (§63)
- D. = Decimus, Decimī** *m.* Decimus (§16)
- dē** (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning (1)
- dea, deae** *f.* goddess (1)
- dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus** owe; ought (2)
- decem** (indeclinable adj.) ten (4)
- decimus, -a, -um** tenth (§93)
- Decimus, Decimī** *m.* Decimus (§16)
- dēleō, dēlere, dēlevī, dēlētus** destroy (10)
- dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterritus** deter, prevent (15)
- deus, deī** *m.* god (1)
- Diāna, Diānae** *f.* Diana (§63)
- dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dīctus** say, speak, tell (4)
- dīctum, dīctī** *n.* word; saying (6)
- diēs, diē** *m. or f.* day (9)
- differō, differre, distulī, dilātus** *intr.*, differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions (7)
- difficilis, difficile** difficult (6)
- difficiliter** or **difficulter** (adv.) with difficulty (6)
- dignus, -a, -um** worthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
- diligentia, diligentiae** *f.* diligence (3)
- Dis, Dītis** *m.* Dis, Pluto, Hades (§63)
- discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum** go away, depart (5)
- dissimilis, dissimile** dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- diū** (adv.) for a long time (11)
- diūtius** (adv.) longer (11)
- diūtissimē** (adv.) longest (11)
- dīvīnus, -a, -um** belonging to the gods, divine (§63)
- dīvus, -a, -um** deified, divine (§63)
- dō, dare, dedī, datus** give, grant (2)
- poenās dare** (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
- vēla dare** (idiom) to set sail (2)
- dominus, dominī** *m.* master, lord (1)
- domus, domī** *f.* house, home (6)
- domus, domūs** *f.* house, home (9)
- dōnec** (conj.) while, as long as; until (13)
- dōnō** (1-tr.) give; present, reward (2)
- dōnum, dōnī** *n.* gift (1)
- dubitō** (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (12)
- dubium, dubiū** *n.* doubt, hesitation (12)
- dubius, -a, -um** doubtful (12)
- dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus** lead; consider (4)
- dulcis, dulce** sweet, pleasant (15)
- dum** (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (13)
- dummodo** (conj.) provided that (13)
- duo, duae, duo** two (§93)
- dūrus, -a, -um** hard; harsh (5)
- dux, ducis** *m. or f.* leader (10)
- ē, ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from (1)
- ecce** (interj.) lo! behold! look! (§74)
- efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** make; bring about (14)
- ego, meī** (personal pron.) I; me (4)
- , meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
- ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum** go out, come out (13)
- ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus** throw out, expel
sē ēicere (idiom) to rush forth (11)
- emō, emere, emī, emptus** buy (13)
- enim** (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for (2)
- eō** (adv.) to that place, thither (§131)
- eō, ire, iī/ivī, itum** go (3)
- eōdem** (adv.) to the same place (§131)
- equidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part (4)
- ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** tear away, snatch away (15)
- errō** (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake (2)
- et** (conj.) and; **et . . . et . . .** both . . . and . . . ; (adv.) even, also (1)
- etenim** (conj.) and indeed; for in fact (2)
- etiam** (adv.) also, even; still (7)
- etsī** (conj.) although (5)
- exercitus, exercitūs** *m.* army (9)
- experior, experīrī, expertus sum** test; try; experience (8)
- ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū** *n.* exile, banishment (8)
- ex(s)pectō** (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect (13)
- facile** (adv.) easily; readily (6)
- facilis, facile** easy (6)
- faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** make; do (4); reckon (13)
- factum, factī** *n.* deed (1)
- falsus, -a, -um** deceptive, false (7)
- fāma, fāmae** *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame (1)
- fās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted (12)
- fateor, fatērī, fassus sum** confess, admit (8)
- fātum, fātī** *n.* destiny, fate (5)
- fēlix, fēlicis** lucky, fortunate, happy (6)
- fēmina, fēminae** *f.* woman; wife (1)

- ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** bring, bear, carry; endure; say, report (5)
lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (8)
sē ferre (idiom) to proceed (quickly) (5)
ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword (1)
fidēs, fideī *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; loyalty (9)
filia, filiae *f.* daughter (1)
filius, filiū *m.* son (1)
finis, finis, -ium *m. or f.* end, limit, boundary; *pl.*, territory (10)
fīō, fierī, factus sum become, happen; be made, be done (13)
for (1-tr.) speak, say (15)
fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse (11)
fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck (12)
fortis, forte brave; strong (6)
fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance (7)
forum, forī *n.* public square, marketplace, forum (3)
frāter, frātris *m.* brother (7)
fuga, fugae *f.* flight (8)
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee (7)
- Gaius, Gaiī** *m.* Gaius (§16)
gaudium, gaudiū *n.* joy (8)
gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family (12)
genus, generis *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort (10)
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus bear; manage, conduct; perform (4)
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
gladius, gladiū *m.* sword (1)
glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory (4)
Gnaeus, Gnaei *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus (either of the Gracchi brothers) (§16)
gradior, gradi, gressus sum walk, step, proceed (13)
Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece (§16)
grātia, grātiae *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks (12)
grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)
grātiām or grātiās habēre (idiom) to have gratitude (12)
grātiā (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)
grātus, -a, -um charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased (13)
gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious; severe (8)
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus** have, hold; consider (2)
grātiām or grātiās habēre (idiom) to have gratitude (12)
ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)
Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal (§63)
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means (14)
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules! (§74)
- heu** (interj.) alas! oh! (§74)
hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time (§131)
hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (8)
hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth; **hinc . . . hinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . ; **hinc . . . illinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . (§131)
homō, hominis *m.* human being, man (6)
honestus, -a, -um honorable, respectable (10)
honor or honōs, honōris *m.* honor, respect; (political) office (13)
Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātī Flaccī *m.* Quintus Horatius Flaccus, Horace (§16)
hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (9)
hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy (6)
hūc (adv.) to here, hither (§131)
humilis, humile humble (11)
- iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus** throw; utter; lay, establish (11)
iam (adv.) (by) now; (by) then, already; presently (9)
ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then, thereupon (§131)
īdem, eadem, idem same (8)
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore (11)
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire (11)
Īlium, Īliū *n.* Ilium, Troy (§16)
ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (8)
illīc (adv.) there, in that place (§131)
illinc (adv.) from there, thence; **hinc . . . illinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . (§131)
illūc (adv.) to there, thither (§131)
immortālis, immortalē immortal (7)
impediō, impedire, impedīi/impedīvī, impeditus hinder, impede (15)
imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general (11)
imperium, imperīi *n.* power, authority, command; empire (3)
imperō (1-intr.) give an order, order, command (+ dat.) (9)
impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked (5)
in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against; (prep. + abl.) in, on (1)
incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable (7)
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus take on, begin (13)
incola, incolae *m.* inhabitant (3)
inde (adv.) from that place, from there, thence; from that time, thereupon (§131)
indignus, -a, -um unworthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
īnfēlix, infēlicis unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy (6)
īnferō, inferre, intulī, illātus carry (into); inflict (on) (12)
ingenium, ingenīi *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent (7)
ingēns, ingentis huge, vast; remarkable (6)

- ingrātus, -a, -um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased (13)
- inimīcītia, inimīcītiaē f.** enmity, hostility; *pl.*, unfriendly relations, enmity (5)
- inimīcus, -a, -um** unfriendly, hostile (+ *dat.*) (3)
- inimīcus, inimīcī m.** (personal) enemy (3)
- inīquus, -a, -um** uneven; inequitable, unjust (10)
- inquam** (defective verb) say (8)
- īnsīdiae, īnsīdiārum f. pl.** ambush, plot, treachery (7)
- īnsula, īnsulae f.** island (1)
- intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī, intellēctus** understand (6)
- inter** (prep. + *acc.*) between, among; during (6)
- interest, interesse, interfuit** it is important, it concerns (15)
- interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus** kill (5)
- inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** find, discover (11)
- invidia, invidiae f.** envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment (4)
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive *adj.*) -self, -selves; very (5)
- īra, īrae f.** anger, wrath (2)
- is, ea, id** (demonstr. *adj.*) this, that; these, those; (personal *pron.*) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (4)
- iste, ista, istud** (demonstr. *adj./pron.*) that (of yours); those (of yours) (8)
- ita** (*adv.*) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (7)
- Italia, Italiae f.** Italy (1)
- iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus** order (2)
- Iūlia, Iūliae f.** Julia (§16)
- C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūliū Caesaris m.** Gaius Julius Caesar (§63)
- Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.** Juno (§63)
- Iuppiter, Iovis m.** Jupiter (§63)
- iūre** (*adv.*) rightly, justly (6)
- iūs, iūris n.** right, law; judgment; court (6)
- iussum, iussī n.** order, command; *abl. sing.*, **iussū** (9)
- L. = Lūcius, Lūcī m.** Lucius (§16)
- labor, labōris m.** work; effort, hardship (10)
- labōrō** (1-*intr.*) work; suffer, be distressed (2)
- laetus, -a, -um** happy; fertile (3)
- laudō** (1-*tr.*) praise (3)
- lēgātus, lēgātī m.** legate, envoy; lieutenant (10)
- legiō, legiōnis f.** legion (11)
- legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** choose; read (6)
- Lesbia, Lesbiae f.** Lesbia (§63)
- levis, leve** light; trivial; fickle (8)
- lēx, lēgis f.** law (8)
- lēgem ferre** (*idiom*) to pass a law (8)
- liber, librī m.** book (1)
- līber, lībera, līberum** free (3)
- Līber, Līberī m.** Liber, Bacchus (§63)
- līberō** (1-*tr.*) free (6)
- libertās, libertātis f.** freedom (8)
- licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est** it is permitted (14)
- littera, litterae f.** letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letter, epistle; literature (12)
- Līvia, Līviae f.** Livia (§16)
- locus, locī m.** place; **loca, locōrum n. pl.** places (8)
- longē** (*adv.*) a long way, far; by far (11)
- longus, -a, -um** long; far; long-standing; far-reaching (11)
- loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** speak, talk (11)
- Lūcius, Lūcī m.** Lucius (§16)
- lūmen, lūminis n.** light, radiance; *pl.*, eyes (13)
- lūna, lūnae f.** moon (14)
- lūx, lūcis f.** light, daylight (11)
- prīmā lūce** (*idiom*) at dawn (11)
- M. = Marcus, Marcī m.** Marcus (§16)
- M' = Manius, Manī m.** Manius (§16)
- magis** (*adv.*) more (greatly) (11)
- magnopere** (*adv.*) greatly (10)
- magnus, -a, -um** large, big; great (3)
- magnam partem** (*adverbial acc.*), for a great part (13)
- maior, maius** (*adj.*) greater (11)
- maiōrēs, maiōrum m. pl.** ancestors (11)
- male** (*adv.*) badly (5)
- male velle** (*idiom*) to wish ill (12)
- mālō, mālī, māluī, —** want more, prefer (12)
- malus, -a, -um** bad, evil (3)
- maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus** remain, stay; *tr.*, await (7)
- Manius, Manī m.** Manius (§16)
- manus, manūs f.** hand; band, troop (9)
- Marcus, Marcī m.** Marcus (§16)
- mare, maris, *-ium n.** sea (6)
- Mars, Martis m.** Mars (§63)
- māter, mātris f.** mother (6)
- maximē** (*adv.*) most greatly; especially (11)
- maximus, -a, -um** greatest (11)
- maximam partem** (*adverbial acc.*) for the greatest part, for the most part (13)
- medius, -a, -um** middle (of); *neut. subst.*, midst; the open (10)
- mehercule** or **meherculēs** (*interj.*) by Hercules! (§74)
- , meī** (*reflexive pron.*) myself (5)
- melior, melius** (*adj.*) better (11)
- melius** (*adv.*) better (11)
- meminī, meminisse** (defective verb) remember (5)
- memoria, memoriae f.** memory (12)
- mēns, mentis, -ium f.** mind; intention, purpose; attitude (6)
- Mercurius, Mercurī m.** Mercury (§63)
- metuō, metuere, metuī, —** fear, dread (14)
- metus, metūs m.** fear, dread (10)

- meus, -a, -um** my, mine (4); my (own) (5)
mī, masc. sing. voc. of meus, -a, -um (4)
mīles, mīlitis *m.* soldier (6)
mīlle; mīlia, mīlium thousand (§93)
mīllēsīmus, -a, -um thousandth (§93)
Minerva, Minervae *f.* Minerva (§63)
minimē (adv.) least; not at all (11)
minimus, -a, -um smallest (11)
minor, minus (adj.) smaller (11)
minus (adv.) less (11)
miser, misera, miserum wretched, pitiable, miserable (3)
miseret, miserēre, miseruit or **miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (15)
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus send (4)
modo (adv.) only, just; now, just now (12); (conj.) provided that (13)
modus, modī *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way (8)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (city) walls (6)
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus warn; remind; advise (9)
mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain (12)
mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out (2)
mora, morae *f.* delay (3)
morior, morī, mortuus sum die (8)
moror (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait (13)
mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death (7)
mortālis, mortāle mortal (7)
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, practice; *pl.* (sometimes), character (10)
mōtus, mōtūs *m.* motion, movement; disturbance (9)
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus set in motion, stir (up), move (2)
mox (adv.) soon; then (3)
multum (adv.) much, a lot (5)
multus, -a, -um much, many (3)
mūnus, mūneris *n.* service, duty; gift (7)
mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall (11)
mūtō (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange (13)
- nam** (conj.) for (2)
namque (conj.) for in fact (2)
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum be born (10)
nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature (7)
nātus, nātī *m.* son (10)
nauta, nautae *m.* sailor (1)
- ne** (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
-ne . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
- nē** (adv.) not (7); (conj.) *introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not* (9); *introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not* (9); (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause, that* (15)
nē . . . quidem not . . . even (4)
nec or **neque** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . .** (2)
nesse (indeclinable adj.) necessary (14)
necne (conj.) *in Indirect Question, or not* (12)
nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely forbidden, sacrilege) (12)
nēmō, nēminis *m. or f.* no one (9)
Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* Neptune (§63)
neque or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . .** (2)
Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudīi Caesaris *m.* Nero Claudius Caesar, Nero (§63)
nesciō, nescīre, nescī/nescīvī, nescītus not know (11)
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two) (9)
nihil or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing (3)
nihil (adverbial acc.) not at all (13)
nihilum, nihili or **nīlum, nīlī** *n.* nothing (13)
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless (5)
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — be unwilling, not want, not wish (12)
nōlī, nōlīte (+ inf.) do not (12)
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name (14)
nōn (adv.) not (2)
nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . . (7)
nōnne (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “yes”* (12)
nōnus, -a, -um ninth (§93)
nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) we; us (4)
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect*, know (10)
noster, nostra, nostrum our, ours (4); our (own) (5) — **nostrum/nostrī** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (5)
nōtus, -a, -um known, well-known; familiar (10)
novem (indeclinable adj.) nine (§93)
novus, -a, -um new; strange (7)
nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night (9)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (9)
num (interrogative particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer “no”; introduces an Indirect Question, whether* (12)
nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen (15)
numquam (adv.) never (6)
nunc (adv.) now (3)
- ō** (interj.) O (1)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (9)
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum forget (+ gen.) (12)

- obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (15)
- occidēns, occidentis** *m.* west (14)
- occidō, occidere, occidi, occāsūrus** fall, set; die (14)
- octāvus, -a, -um** eighth (§93)
- octō** (indeclinable adj.) eight (§93)
- oculus, oculi** *m.* eye (8)
- ōdī, ōdisse** (defective verb) hate (5)
- odium, odii** *n.* hatred (3)
- omnīnō** (adv.) entirely; *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions*, at all (6)
- omnis, omne** every; all (6)
- oportet, oportēre, oportuit** it is proper, it is right (14)
- oppidum, oppidi** *n.* town (1)
- opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus** press on; overwhelm, oppress (14)
- oppugnō** (1-tr.) attack (10)
- optimē** (adv.) best (11)
- optimus, -a, -um** best (11)
- optō** (1-tr.) desire (2)
- opus, operis** *n.* work (10)
- opus est** there is need of (+ abl. or nom.) (10)
- ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech (10)
- ōrātiōnem habēre** (idiom) to make a speech (10)
- ōrātor, ōrātōris** *m.* speaker, orator (10)
- orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* ring, circle (15)
- orbis terrārum** world (15)
- Orcus, Orci** *m.* Orcus (§63)
- oriēns, orientis** *m.* east (14)
- orior, oriri, ortus sum** rise, arise (14)
- ōrō** (1-tr.) beg (for) (12)
- ōs, ōris** *n. sing. or pl.* mouth; face (14)
- P. Ovidius Nāsō, P. Ovidii Nāsōnis** *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso, Ovid (§63)
- P. = Publius, Publii** *m.* Publius (§16)
- paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit** it causes (one) to repent or regret (15)
- pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (8)
- parō** (1-tr.) prepare (for); get, obtain (9)
- pars, partis, -ium** *f.* part; *sing. or pl.*, (political) faction (7)
- parum** (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough; (adv.) too little, inadequately (11)
- parvus, -a, -um** small, little (3)
- pater, patris** *m.* father (6)
- pator, patī, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow (8)
- patrēs cōscrip̄ti** *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators (6)
- patria, patriae** *f.* country, homeland (1)
- paucī, paucae, pauca** few (4)
- paulum, *pauli** *n.* small amount, a little (11)
- pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor (8)
- pectus, pectoris** *n. sing. or pl.*, chest, breast; heart (10)
- pecūnia, pecūniae** *f.* money (1)
- peior, peius** (comparative adj.) worse (11)
- peius** (comparative adv.) worse (11)
- pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** push, drive (off) (9)
- per** (prep. + acc.) through; by (4)
- perditē** (adv.) recklessly, desperately, ruinously (13)
- perditus, -a, -um** (morally) lost, ruined, depraved (13)
- perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** destroy; lose (13)
- pereō, perire, periī, peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die (11)
- perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** suffer, endure; report (10)
- perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus** complete, accomplish (5)
- periculum, periculi** *n.* danger (1)
- pessimē** (adv.) worst (11)
- pessimus, -a, -um** worst (11)
- petō, petere, petiī/petivī, petitus** ask (for), seek; attack (7)
- piget, pigēre, piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (15)
- pius, -a, -um** dutiful, loyal (5)
- placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (8)
- plūrimē** (adv.) most (11)
- plūrimus, -a, -um** most (11)
- plūrimum** (adverbial acc.) very much (13)
- plūs** (adv.) more (11)
- plūs; plūrēs, plūra** (adj.) more (11)
- poena, poenae** *f.* punishment, penalty (2)
- poenās dare** (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
- poēta, poetae** *m.* poet (1)
- Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeii Magni** *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great (§16)
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** put, place; set aside (4)
- populus, populi** *m.* (the) people; populace (3)
- M. Porcius Catō, M. Porcii Catōnis** *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato, Cato the Elder or Cato the Censor (§63)
- possum, posse, potuī, —** be able, can (2)
- post** (adv.) after(ward), later; behind; (prep. + acc.) after; behind (7)
- postquam** (conj.) after (5)
- praefērō, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus** prefer (to) (12)
- praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** put in charge (of) (12)
- praesum, praesesse, praefuī, praefutūrus** be in charge (of) (12)
- praeter** (prep. + acc.) beyond; except (12)
- premō, premere, pressī, pressus** press (hard); overpower; check (14)
- pretium, pretii** *n.* price, value (13)

- primum** (adv.) first; for the first time (11)
quam primum as soon as possible (11)
primus, -a, -um first (§93)
primā luce (idiom) at dawn (11)
prior, prius (adj.) earlier (11)
prius (adv.) before, sooner (11)
priusquam (conj.) before (13)
prō (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of (3)
proelium, proeliū n. battle (5)
proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum set out, set forth (10)
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid (15)
Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertii m. Sextus Propertius (§63)
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (3)
prōvincia, prōvinciae f. province (3)
pūblicus, -a, -um public (9)
Publius, Publī m. Publius (§16)
pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est it makes (one) ashamed (15)
puella, puellae f. girl (1)
puer, puerī m. boy (1)
pugnō (1-intr.) fight (3)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful, handsome (3)
putō (1-tr.) think, suppose (11)
- Q. = Quintus, Quinti m.** Quintus (§16)
quaerō, quaerere, quaesii/quaesivi, quaesitus search for, seek, ask (9)
quālis, quāle what sort of; of which sort, as (13)
quam (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (11)
quam ob rem (adv.) on account of which thing, why; therefore (9)
quam primum as soon as possible (11)
quamquam (conj.) although (5)
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; as much, as great (13)
quantum (adverbial acc.) how much, as much (13)
quārē (adv.) because of which thing, why; therefore (9)
quartus, -a, -um fourth (§93)
quattuor (indeclinable adj.) four (§93)
-que (enclitic conj.) and (1)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what, which (8)
quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (8)
quia (conj.) because (13)
quid (adverbial acc.) to what extent, why (13)
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing (10)
- quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (indef. adj.) (a) certain (10)
quidem (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least (4)
nē . . . quidem not even (4)
quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic*, who/that . . . not (10); (conj.) *introduces Doubting clause*, that (12); (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause*, from (15)
quīnque (indeclinable adj.) five (§93)
quintus, -a, -um fifth (§93)
Quintus, Quinti m. Quintus (§16)
quīque, quaeque, quodque (indef. adj.) each, every (14)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (8); (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
quid (adverbial acc.), to what extent, why (13)
quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) each/every man/woman, each/every thing (14)
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither (9); (interrog. adv.) to where, whither (12)
quod (conj.) because (13); (conj.) the fact that (15)
quodsī (conj.) but if (14)
quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause*, from (15)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
quoniam (conj.) since, because (5)
quoque (adv.) also, too (8)
quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (13)
- rapīō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** seize, tear away, carry (off) (15)
redeō, redire, rediī, reditum go back, return (5)
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus bring back; report (10)
rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns (15)
rēgīna, rēgīnae f. queen (1)
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control (4)
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus leave (behind), abandon (8)
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of) (14)
Remus, Remi m. Remus (§16)
rēs, rei f. thing; property; matter, affair; activity; situation (9)
rēs gestae, rērum gestārum f. pl. accomplishments; history (9)
rēs novae, rērum novārum f. pl. révolution (9)
rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae f. republic (9)
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus answer, respond (2)

- rēx, rēgis** *m.* king (6)
rogō (1-tr.) ask (for) (12)
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome (6)
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Romans (3)
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman (3)
Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* Romulus (§16)
rūmor, rūmōris *m.* rumor (12)
rūs, rūris *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side) (6)
- saepe** (adv.) often (8)
saepius (adv.) more often (11)
saepissimē (adv.) most often (11)
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage (13)
salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health (§74)
salūtem dicere to say “greetings,” to say hello (§74)
salvē/salvēte hello! good day! (§74)
sapiēns, sapientis wise (11)
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom (2)
satis or **sat** (indeclinable subst.) enough;
 (adv.) enough, sufficiently (10)
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy (13)
sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvi, scītus know (11)
scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus write (4)
secundus, -a, -um second (§93)
sed (conj.) but (2)
semper (adv.) always (3)
- C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōnii Gracchī** *m.*
 Gaius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōnii Gracchī *m.*
 Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
- senātus, senātūs** *m.* senate (9)
sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* perception, feeling; sense (11)
sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling; opinion (4)
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive; feel (4)
septem (indeclinable adj.) seven (§93)
septimus, -a, -um seventh (§93)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow (8)
Ser. = Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae *m.* Lucius
 Sergius Catilina, Catiline (§16)
- servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* slavery (6)
Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
servō (1-tr.) save, preserve (10)
servus, servi *m.* slave (1)
sex (indeclinable adj.) six (§93)
Sex. = Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sextus, -a, -um sixth (§93)
Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sī (conj.) if (5)
sīc (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (5)
signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; standard (11)
similis, simile similar (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
sine (prep. + abl.) without (3)
- socius, -a, -um** allied (4)
socius, sociī *m.* ally, comrade (4)
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun (14)
soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed (11)
solum (adv.) only (7)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (9)
solvō, solveere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free, release;
 dissolve (15)
soror, sorōris *f.* sister (7)
Sp. = Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
speciēs, *speciēi *f.* appearance, aspect (9)
spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe (14)
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for) (12)
spēs, speī *f.* hope (10)
Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
stō, stāre, steti, stāturus stand; stand fast, endure
 (10)
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study (2)
sub (prep. + acc.) under; up to; (prep. + abl.) under;
 at the foot of; near (6)
—, suī (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself;
 themselves (5)
Sulla, Sullae *m.* Sulla (§16)
sum, esse, fui, futūrus be; exist (2)
summus, -a, -um highest; top (of); last, final (11)
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass (3)
suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its (own); their
 (own) (5)
- T. = Tītus, Titiī** *m.* Titus (§16)
taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired or
 sick (15)
tālis, tāle such, of such a sort (13)
tam (adv.) so (13)
tamen (adv.) nevertheless (5)
tandem (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and*
commands, pray, I ask you, then (8)
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great (13)
tantum (adverbial acc.) so much, only (so much)
 (13)
tēlum, tēli *n.* spear; weapon (11)
templum, templī *n.* temple (7)
tempus, temporis *n.* time (9)
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus hold, grasp; keep,
 possess; occupy (3)
terra, terrae *f.* land, earth (3)
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten (7)
tertius, -a, -um third (§93)
Ti. = Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)
Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)
timeō, timēre, timuī, — fear, be afraid (of) (2)
timor, timōris *m.* fear (6)
Tītus, Titiī *m.* Titus (§16)

- tot** (indeclinable adj.) so many (13)
tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all (9)
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down (7)
trēs, tria three (§93)
Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy (§16)
tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (4)
—, tuī (reflexive pron.) yourself (5)
M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tullii Cicerōnis *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (§63)
tum or **tunc** (adv.) then, at that time (12)
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful (15)
tuus, -a, -um your, yours (4); your (own) (5)
- ubi** (conj.) when (5); (interrog. adv.) where, when (5); (rel. adv.) where (9)
ūllus, -a, -um any (9)
umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade (7)
umquam (adv.) ever (6)
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence (9); (interrog. adv.) from where, whence (12)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (9)
urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city (6)
ut (conj.) as; when (5); (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause*, in order that (9); *introduces Indirect Command*, that (9); (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause*, that . . . not (15)
uter, utra, utrum (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (9)
utinam (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (7)
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use; experience, enjoy (+ abl.) (10)
utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct or Indirect Question* (12)
utrum . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
- valdē** (adv.) strongly (5)
valē/valēte greetings! farewell! (§74)
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able; be well, fare well (§74)
C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valerii Catullī *m.* Gaius Valerius Catullus (§16)
validus, -a, -um strong; healthy (4)
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** either . . . or . . . ; (adv.) even (14)
- vēlum, vēlī** *n.* sail (2)
vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell (13)
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum come (4)
Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus (§63)
verbum, verbī *n.* word (1)
vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, respect; dread, fear (15)
P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliū Marōnis *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro, Vergil (§63)
vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact) (7)
vērūm (conj.) but (7)
vērus, -a, -um real, true (7)
Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta (§63)
vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours (pl.) (4); your (pl.) (own) (5)
—, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid (15)
vetus, veteris old (14)
via, viae *f.* way, road, path, street (1)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see (2); *passive*, be seen; seem (3)
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome; *intr.*, win (7)
vir, virī *m.* man; husband (1)
virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue (7)
vīs, —, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.*, strength (6)
vīta, vītae *f.* life (2)
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus live, be alive (6)
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly (14)
vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name (2)
volō, velle, voluī, — be willing, want, wish (12)
bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)
vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) you (pl.) (4)
—, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word (7)
Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan (§63)
vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound (13)
vultus, vultūs *m. sing. or pl.*, expression; face (15)

ENGLISH TO LATIN VOCABULARY

This English to Latin Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

- ? -ne (enclitic) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
 ? *expecting the answer "no"* num (12)
 ? *expecting the answer "yes"* nōnne (12)
- a lot** multum (5)
abandon relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus (8)
about dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
absent absēns, absentis (14)
abundance cōpia, cōpiae *f.* (7)
accept accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
accomplish perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus (5);
 cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus (12)
accomplishments rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* (9)
activity rēs, rei *f.* (9)
admit fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (8)
advice cōsiliū, cōsiliī *n.* (1)
advise moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
Aeneas Aenēās, Aenēae *m.*; Aenēān = *acc. sing.*;
 Aenēā = *voc. sing.* (§16)
affair rēs, rei *f.* (9)
after post (adv.) (7)
after post (prep. + acc.) (7)
after postquam (conj.) (5)
afterward post (adv.) (7)
against in (prep. + acc.) (1); contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
age aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
aid auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
alas heu (interj.) (§74)
all omnis, omne (8); tōtus, -a, -um (9);
 cūctus, -a, -um (14)
allied socius, -a, -um (4)
- allow** patior, patī, passus sum (8)
ally socius, sociī *m.* (4)
alone sōlus, -a, -um (9); ūnus, -a, -um (9)
already iam (adv.) (9)
also et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7); quoque (adv.) (8)
altar āra, ārae *f.* (7)
although etsī (conj.) (5); quamquam (conj.) (5); cum
 (conj.) (12)
always semper (adv.) (3)
ambush īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
among inter (prep. + acc.) (6); apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
Amor Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63); Cupidō, Cupīdinis *m.*
 (§63)
ancestors maiōrēs, maiōrum *m. pl.* (11)
ancient antīquus, -a, -um (7)
and et (conj.) (1); -que (enclitic conj.) (1)
and (also) atque (conj.) (3); ac (conj.) (3)
and indeed etenim (conj.) (2)
and not neque, nec (conj.-adv.) (2)
anger īra, īrae *f.* (2)
animal animal, animālis, -ium *n.* (6)
another alius, -a, -um (9)
answer respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus
 (2)
Antony Antōnius, Antōniī *m.* (§16)
anxiety cūra, cūrae *f.* (2))
any ūllus, -a, -um (9); aliquī, aliqua, aliquod
 (indef. adj.) (14); quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) (14)
anyone aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid
 (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef.
 pron.) (14)

- anything** aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)
- Apollo** Apollō, Apollinis *m.* (§63)
- appearance** speciēs, *speciēi *f.* (9)
- Appius** Appius, Appii *m.* (abbreviation: App.) (§16)
- approach** accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
- arise** orior, orīrī, ortus sum (14)
- arms** arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
- army** exercitus, exercitūs *m.* (9)
- art** ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
- as** quālis, quāle (13)
- as** quam (adv.) (11)
- as** quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
- as** ut (conj.) (5)
- as** great quantus, -a, -um (13)
- as** long as dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
- as** many quot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
- as** much quantus, -a, -um (13)
- as** much quantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
- as** soon as possible quam primum (11)
- it** makes (one) ashamed pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est (15)
- ask** quaerō, quaerere, quaesii/quaesivi, quaesitus (9)
- ask** (for) petō, petere, petii/petivi, petitus (7); rogō (1-tr.) (12)
- aspect** speciēs, *speciēi *f.* (9)
- at** all omnīnō (adv.) *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions* (6)
- at** dawn primā lūce (11)
- at** last tandem (adv.) (8)
- at** least quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); certē (adv.) (7)
- at** that time tum or tunc (adv.) (12)
- at** the foot of sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
- at** the house of apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
- at** this time hīc (adv.) (§131)
- Athens** Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* (6)
- attack** petō, petere, petii/petivi, petitus (7); oppugnō (1-tr.) (10)
- attempt** cōnor (1-tr.) (8)
- attitude** mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
- audacity** audācia, audāciae *f.* (11)
- Augustus** Augustus, Augusti *m.* (§63)
- Aulus** Aulus, Auli *m.* (abbreviation: A.) (§16)
- authority** imperium, imperii *n.* (3); auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* (14)
- auxiliary troops** auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* (4)
- await** maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsurus (7); ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
- away from** ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)
- Bacchus** Bacchus, Bacchi *m.* (§63)
- bad** malus, -a, -um (3)
- badly** male (adv.) (5)
- band** manus, manūs *f.* (9)
- banishment** ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū *n.* (8)
- base** turpis, turpe (15)
- battle** proelium, proeliū *n.* (5)
- battle line** aciēs, aciēi *f.* (9)
- be** sum, esse, fui, futūrus (2)
- be** able possum, posse, potui, — (2); valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus (§74)
- be** absent absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus (14)
- be** accustomed soleō, solēre, solitus sum (11)
- be** afraid (of) timeō, timēre, timui, — (2)
- be** alive vivō, vīvere, vixi, victūrus (6)
- be** born nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (10)
- be** destroyed pereō, perire, perii, peritūrus (11)
- be** different differō, differre, distuli, dilātus (8)
- be** distant absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus (14)
- be** distressed labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
- be** done fiō, fieri, factus sum (13)
- be** free (from) careō, carēre, carui, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
- be** in awe of vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
- be** in charge (of) praesum, praesesse, praefui, praefutūrus (12)
- be** made fiō, fieri, factus sum (13)
- be** near adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus (14)
- be** obedient pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
- be** pleasing placeō, placēre, placui, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
- be** present adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus (14)
- be** strong valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus (§74)
- be** unwilling nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (12)
- be** well valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus (§74)
- be** willing volō, velle, volui, — (12)
- be** without careō, carēre, carui, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
- bear** gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus (4); ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus (5)
- beautiful** pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
- because** quoniam (conj.) (5); quia (conj.) (13); quod (conj.) (13)
- because** of propter (prep. + acc.) (3); ob (prep. + acc.) (9)
- because** of which thing quārē (adv.) (9)
- become** fiō, fieri, factus sum (13)
- before** ante (adv.) (7); prius (adv.) (11)
- before** ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
- before** antequam (conj.) (13); priusquam (conj.) (13)
- beg** (for) orō (1-tr.) (12)
- began** —, —, coepi, coeptus (13)
- begin** incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptus (13)
- behind** post (adv.) (7)
- behind** post (prep. + acc.) (7)
- behold!** ecce (interj.) (§74)

- believe** *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus* (+ dat.) (11)
belonging to the gods *dīvīnus, -a, -um* (§63)
best *optimus, -a, -um* (11); *optimē* (adv.) (11)
to betake oneself *sē cōferre* (14)
better *melior, melius* (11); *melius* (adv.) (11)
between *inter* (prep. + acc.) (6)
beyond *praeter* (prep. + acc.) (12)
big *magnus, -a, -um* (3)
bitter *acerbus, -a, -um* (7)
blind *caecus, -a, -um* (8)
block *obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus* (15)
body *corpus, corporis n.* (6)
bold *audāx, audācis* (8)
boldly *audacter* or *audāciter* (8)
boldness *audācia, audāciae f.* (11)
book *liber, librī m.* (1)
both . . . and . . . *et . . . et . . .* (1)
boundary *finis, finis, -ium m.* or *f.* (10)
boy *puer, puerī m.* (1)
brave *fortis, forte* (6)
to break camp *castra movēre* (11)
breast *sing. or pl., pectus, pectoris n.* (10)
brief *brevis, breve* (11)
bright *clārus, -a, -um* (4)
bring *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (5)
bring about *efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus* (14)
bring back *referō, referre, rettulī, relātus* (10)
bring together *cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus* (14)
brother *frāter, frātris m.* (7)
but *sed* (conj.) (2); *vērūm* (conj.) (7)
but (in fact) *vērō* (adv.) (7)
but if *quodsī* (conj.) (14)
buy *emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus* (13)
by ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (3); **per** (prep. + acc.) (4)
by far *longē* (adv.) (11)
by Hercules! *herc(u)le* (interj.) (§74); *mehercule* (interj.) (§74); *meherculēs* (interj.) (§74)
by no means *haud* (adv.) (14)
by now *iam* (adv.) (9)
by then *iam* (adv.) (9)
- Caesar** *Caesar, Caesaris m.* (§63)
call *vocō* (1-tr.) (2)
calm *aequus, -a, -um* (10)
(military) camp *castra, castrōrum n. pl.* (11)
can *possum, posse, potuī, —* (2)
capture *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus* (4)
care *cūra, cūrae f.* (2)
carry *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (5)
carry (into) *inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus* (12)
carry (off) *rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus* (15)
carry away *auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus* (7)
carry in different directions *differō, differre, distulī, dilātus* (7)
- Carthage** *Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.* (6)
case *causa, causae f.* (4)
Catiline *Catilīna, Catilīnae m.* (§16)
Cato *Catō, Catōnis m.* (§63)
Catullus *Catullus, Catullī m.* (§16)
cause *causa, causae f.* (4)
Ceres *Cerēs, Cereris f.* (§63)
certain *certus, -a, -um* (7)
(a) certain *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam* (indef. adj.) (10)
(a) certain person, (a) certain thing *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam* (indef. pron.) (10)
certainly *equidem* (adv.) (4); *quidem* (postpositive adv.) (4); *vērō* (adv.) (7)
chance *fortūna, fortūnae f.* (7); *cāsus, cāsūs m.* (10); *fors, fortis, -ium f.* (12)
change *mūtō* (1-tr.) (13)
character *mōrēs, mōrum m. pl.* (10)
charming *grātus, -a, -um* (13)
check *premō, premere, pressī, pressus* (14)
chest *sing. or pl., pectus, pectoris n.* (10)
choose *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus* (6)
Cicero *Cicerō, Cicerōnis m.* (§63)
circle *orbis, orbis, -ium m.* (15)
citizen *cīvis, cīvis, -ium m.* or *f.* (6)
citizenry *cīvitās, cīvitātis f.* (7)
citizenship *cīvitās, cīvitātis f.* (7)
city *urbs, urbis, -ium f.* (6)
city walls *moenia, moenium n. pl.* (6)
clear *clārus, -a, -um* (4)
column *agmen, agminis n.* (14)
come *veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum* (4)
come on! *age, agite* (4)
come out *ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum* (13)
come to *accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum* (5)
come to know *nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus* (10); *cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognītus* (10)
command *imperō* (1-intr.) (9)
command *imperium, imperiī n.* (3); *iussum, iussī n.* (9)
commander *imperātor, imperātōris m.* (11)
compare *cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus* (14)
complete *perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus* (5); *cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus* (12)
comrade *socius, sociī m.* (4)
concern *cūra, cūrae f.* (2)
concerning *dē* (prep. + abl.) (1)
it concerns *interest, interesse, interfuit* (15); *rēfert, rēferre, rētulit* (15)
conduct *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus* (4); *gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus* (4)
confess *fateor, fatērī, fassus sum* (8)
conquer *superō* (1-tr.) (3); *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus* (7)

- consider** habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4); arbitror (1-tr.) (11)
- consul** cōsul, cōsulis *m.* (8)
- consulship** cōsulātus, cōsulātus *m.* (9)
- contrary to** contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
- control** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
- Corinna** Corinna, Corinnae *f.* (§63)
- Cornelius Sulla** (L.) Cornēlius Sulla, (L.) Cornēlii Sullae *m.* (§16)
- country** patria, patriae *f.* (1)
- country(side)** *sing. or pl., rūs, rūris n.* (6)
- courage** virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
- court** iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
- Crassus** Crassus, Crassī *m.* (§16)
- crime** scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
- cruel** saevus, -a, -um (13)
- Cupid** Cupidō, Cupīdinis *m.* (§63)
- custom** mōs, mōris *m.* (10)
- Cynthia** Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* (§63)
- danger** perīculum, perīculi *n.* (1)
- dare** audeō, audēre, ausus sum (8)
- daring** audāx, audācis (8)
- dark** caecus, -a, -um (8)
- daughter** filia, filiae *f.* (1)
- at dawn** primā lūce (11)
- day** diēs, diēi *m. or f.* (9)
- daylight** lūx, lūcis *f.* (11)
- dear (to)** cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
- death** mors, mortis, -ium *f.* (7)
- deceptive** falsus, -a, -um (7)
- decide** cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus (15)
- Decimus** Decimus, Decimī *m.* (abbreviation: D.) (§16)
- deed** factum, facti *n.* (1)
- deep** altus, -a, -um (4)
- deep sea** altum, altī *n.* (4)
- deified** dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
- delay** moror (1-tr.) (13)
- delay** mora, morae *f.* (3)
- deliberation** cōsiliū, cōsiliī *n.* (1)
- depart** discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
- depraved** perditus, -a, -um (13)
- descent** genus, generis *n.* (10)
- desire** optō (1-tr.) (2); cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupitus (7)
- desirous** cupidus, -a, -um (+ gen.) (4)
- desperately** perditē (adv.) (13)
- destiny** fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
- destroy** dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus (10); perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus (13)
- deter** dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterruī, dēterritus (15)
- Diana** Diāna, Diānae *f.* (§63)
- die** morior, morī, mortuus sum (8); cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus (10); pereō, perire, perii, peritūrus (11); occidō, occidere, occidi, occāsūrus (14)
- differ** differō, differre, distulī, dilātus (7)
- different** dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- difficult** difficilis, difficile (6)
- with difficulty** difficiliter or difficulter (adv.) (6)
- diligence** diligentia, diligentiae *f.* (3)
- direct** cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus (14)
- Dis** Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
- discover** inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus (11)
- it disgusts (one)** piget, pigere, piguit (15)
- disloyal** impius, -a, -um (5)
- displeased** ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
- displeasing** ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
- disposition** ingenium, ingenii *n.* (7)
- dissimilar** dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- dissolve** solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
- disturbance** mōtus, mōtus *m.* (8)
- divine** dīvīnus, -a, -um (§63); dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
- divine power** nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- divine spirit** nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- divinity** nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- do** agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4); faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4)
- doubt** dubitō (1-tr.) (12)
- doubt** dubium, dubii *n.* (12)
- doubtful** dubius, -a, -um (12)
- down from** dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
- dread** metuō, metuere, metuī, — (14); vereor, vererī, veritus sum (15)
- dread** metus, metus *m.* (10)
- drive** agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
- drive (off)** pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus (9)
- during** inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
- dutiful** pius, -a, -um (5)
- duty** mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
- each** quīque, quaque, quodque (indef. adj.) (14)
- each man, each woman, each thing** quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) (14)
- earlier** ante (adv.) (7)
- earth** terra, terrae *f.* (3)
- easily** facile (adv.) (6)
- east** oriēns, orientis *m.* (14)
- easy** facilis, facile (6)
- effort** labor, labōris *m.* (10)
- eight** octō (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
- eighth** octāvus, -a, -um (§93)
- either . . . or . . .** aut . . . aut . . . (7); vel . . . vel . . . (14)
- empire** imperium, imperii *n.* (3)
- encourage** hortor (1-tr.) (9)
- end** finis, finis, -ium *m. or f.* (10)

- endure** ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); patior, patī, passus sum (8); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10); stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus (10)
- (personal) enemy** inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (3)
- (public) enemy** hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
- enjoy** ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (10)
- enmity** inimīcītia, inimīcītia *f.* (5)
- enough** satis *or* sat (adv.) (10); satis *or* sat (indeclinable subst.) (10)
- enrolled fathers** patrēs cōnscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
- enthusiasm** studium, studīi *n.* (2)
- entire** tōtus, -a, -um (9)
- entirely** omnīnō (adv.) (6)
- envoy** lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
- envy** invidia, invidia *f.* (4)
- epistle** litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
- equitable** aequus, -a, -um (10)
- err** errō (1-intr.) (2)
- especially** maximē (adv.) (11)
- establish** iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11); cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (15)
- estimate** aestimō (1-tr.) (13)
- even** aequus, -a, -um (10)
- even** et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7); vel (adv.) (14)
- not even** nē . . . quidem (4)
- ever** unquam (adv.) (6)
- every** omnis, omne (6); quīque, quaque, quodque (indef. adj.) (14)
- every man, every woman, every thing** quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) (14)
- evil** malus, -a, -um (3)
- excellence** virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
- except** praeter (prep. + acc.) (12)
- exchange** mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
- exhort** hortor (1-tr.) (9)
- exile** ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* (8)
- exist** sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (2)
- expect** ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
- expel** ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus (11)
- experience** experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8); patior, patī, passus sum (8); ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (10)
- expression** *sing. or pl.*, vultus, vultūs *m.* (15)
- eye** oculus, oculī *m.* (8)
- eyes** lūmina, lūminum *n. pl.* (13)
- face** *sing. or pl.*, ōs, ōris *n.* (14); *sing. or pl.*, vultus, vultūs *m.* (15)
- facing** contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
- the fact that** quod (conj.) (15)
- (political) faction** *sing. or pl.*, pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
- faith** fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
- fall** cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus (10); occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
- fall** cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
- false** falsus, -a, -um (7)
- fame** fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
- familiar** nōtus, -a, -um (10)
- family** gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
- famous** clārus, -a, -um (4)
- far** longus, -a, -um (11); longē (adv.) (11)
- fare well** valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
- farewell!** valē/valēte (§74)
- farmer** agricola, agricolae *m.* (1)
- far-reaching** longus, -a, -um (11)
- fate** fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
- father** pater, patris *m.* (6)
- (enrolled) fathers** patrēs conscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
- favor** pāx, pācis *f.* (8); grātia, grātia *f.* (12)
- fear** timeō, timēre, timuī, — (2); metuō, metuere, metuī, — (14); vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
- fear** timor, timōris *m.* (6); metus, metūs, *m.* (10)
- feel** sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
- feeling** sententia, sententiae *f.* (4); sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
- few** paucī, paucae, pauca (4)
- fickle** levis, leve (8)
- field** ager, agrī *m.* (1)
- fierce** ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
- fifth** quintus, -a, -um (§93)
- fight** pugnō (1-intr.) (3)
- final** summus, -a, -um (11)
- finally** tandem (adv.) (8)
- find** inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus (11)
- fire** ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* (11)
- first** prīmus, -a, -um (§93); prīmum (adv.) (11)
- five** quīnque (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
- flat plain** campus, campī *m.* (11)
- flee** fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus (7)
- flight** fuga, fugae *f.* (8)
- follow** sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (8)
- for** prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
- for** nam (conj.) (2); enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
- for a great part** magnam partem (adverbial acc.) (13)
- for a long time** diū (adv.) (11)
- for in fact** etenim (conj.) (2); namque (conj.) (2)
- for my part** equidem (adv.) (4)
- for the first time** prīmum (adv.) (11)
- for the greatest part** maximam partem (adverbial acc.) (13)
- for the most part** maximam partem (adverbial acc.) (13)
- for the purpose of** ad (prep. + acc.) (13); causā (+ preceding gen.) (13); grātiā (+ preceding gen.) (13)
- for the sake of** causā (+ preceding gen.) (13); grātiā (+ preceding gen.) (13)
- forbid** prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15); vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus (15)

- (what is divinely) forbidden** nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
force vīs, —, -ium *f.* (6)
forces cōpiae, cōpiārum *f. pl.* (7)
forget oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblītus sum (+ gen.) (12)
to form a plan cōsiliū capere (4)
fortunate fēlix, fēlicis (6)
fortune fortūna, fortūnae *f.* (7)
forum forum, forī *n.* (3)
foul turpis, turpe (15)
four quattuor (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
fourth quartus, -a, -um (§93)
free liberō (1-tr.) (6); solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
free liber, libera, liberum (3)
freedom libertās, libertātis *f.* (8)
friend amīcus, amīcī *m.* (3)
friendly amīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
friendship amīcītia, amīcītia *f.* (5)
frighten terreō, terrere, terruī, territus (7)
from quīn (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause* (15); quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause* (15)
(away) from ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)
(down) from dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
(out) from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)
from here hinc (adv.) (§131)
from that place inde (adv.) (§131)
from that time inde (adv.) (§131)
from there illinc (adv.) (§131); inde (adv.) (§131)
from where unde (rel. adv.) (9); unde (interrog. adv.) (12)
Gaius Gaius, Gaiī *m.* (abbreviation: C.) (§16)
general imperātor, imperātōris *m.* (11)
get parō (1-tr.) (9)
gift dōnum, dōnī *n.* (1); mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
gird (on oneself) cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīctus (15)
girl puella, puellae *f.* (1)
give dō, dare, dedī, datus (2); dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
give an order imperō (1-intr.) (+ dat.) (9)
give in exchange mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
glory glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
Gnaeus Gnaeus, Gnaei *m.* (abbreviation: Gn.) (§16)
go eō, ire, ī/īvī, itum (3); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
to go sē cōferre (14)
go away abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum (5); discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
go back redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (5)
go out ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum (13)
go to accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
god deus, deī *m.* (1)
goddess dea, deae *f.* (1)
gold aurum, auri *n.* (1)
good bonus, -a, -um (3)
good day! salvē/salvēte (§74)
Gracchus Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* (§16)
grant dō, dare, dedī, datus (2)
grasp teneō, tenere, tenuī, tentus (3)
grateful grātus, -a, -um (13)
gratitude grātia, grātiae *f.* (12)
great magnus, -a, -um (3)
greater maior, maius (11)
greatest maximus, -a, -um (11)
greatly magnopere (adv.) (10)
Greece Graecia, Graeciae *f.* (§16)
greetings! valē/valēte (§74)
guile ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
Hades Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
hand manus, manūs *f.* (9)
hand down trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
hand over trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
handsome pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
Hannibal Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* (§63)
happen fiō, fierī, factus sum (13); accidō, accidere, accidī, — (14)
happy laetus, -a, -um (3); fēlix, fēlicis (6)
hard dūrus, -a, -um (5)
hardly vix (adv.) (14)
hardship labor, labōris *m.* (10)
harsh dūrus, -a, -um (5); acerbus, -a, -um (7)
hate ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) (5)
hatred odium, odiī *n.* (3)
have habeō, habere, habuī, habitus (2)
have begun —, —, coepī, coeptus (13)
he is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
head caput, capitis *n.* (15)
health salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
healthy validus, -a, -um (4)
hear audiō, audīre, audivī, audītus (4)
hear (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
heart *sing. or pl.*, pectus, pectoris *n.* (10)
heaven caelum, caeli *n.* (4)
heavy gravis, grave (8)
height altum, alti *n.* (4)
hello! salvē/salvēte (§74)
help auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
hence hinc (adv.) (§131)
henceforth hinc (adv.) (§131)
her is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
her (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
here hīc (adv.) (§131)
herself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
hesitate dubitō (1-tr.) (12)
hesitation dubium, dubiī *n.* (12)
hidden caecus, -a, -um (8)
high altus, -a, -um (4)

- highest** summus, -a, -um (11)
him is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
himself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
hinder moror (1-tr.) (13); impediō, impedire, impediī/impediī, impeditus (15); obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātūrus (15)
his (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
history rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* (9)
hither hūc (adv.) (§131)
hold habeō, habere, habuī, habitus (2); teneō, tenere, tenuī, tentus (3)
home domus, domī *f.* (6); domus, domūs (9)
homeland patria, patriae *f.* (1)
honor honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
honorable honestus, -a, -um (10)
hope spēs, speī *f.* (10)
hope (for) spērō (1-tr.) (12)
Horace (Q.) Horātius Flaccus, (Q.) Horātiī Flaccī *m.* (§16)
hostile inimīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
hostility inimīcītia, inimīcītia *f.* (11)
house domus, domī *f.* (6); domus, domūs *f.* (9)
how quemadmodum (interrog. adv.) (8); quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8); quam (adv.) (11)
how great quantus, -a, -um (13)
how many quot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
how much quantus, -a, -um (13)
how much quantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
however autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
huge ingēns, ingentis (6)
human being homō, hominis *m.* (6)
humble humilis, humile (11)
hundred centum (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
hundredth centēsīmus, -a, -um (§93)
husband vir, virī *m.* (1)

I ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
I ask you tandem (adv.) (8)
if sī (conj.) (5)
if . . . not nisi (conj.) (5)
Ilīum Īlium, Īliī *n.* (§16)
ill-will invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
immortal immortalīs, immortalē (7)
impede impediō, impedire, impediī/impediī, impeditus (15)
important gravis, grave (8)
it is important interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
in in (prep. + abl.) (1)
in another way aliter (adv.) (9)
in fact enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
in front of prō (prep. + abl.) (3); ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
in opposition contrā (adv.) (10)

in order that ut (conj.) introduces Purpose clause (9)
in order that . . . not nē (adv.) introduces negative Purpose clause (9)
in return for prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
in such a way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in that place ibi (adv.) (§131); illīc (adv.) (§131)
in the manner in which quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
in the presence of apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
in this place hīc (adv.) (§131)
in this way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in turn contrā (adv.) (10)
in what way quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8)
inadequately parum (adv.) (11)
indeed equidem (adv.) (4); quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); vērō (adv.) (7)
indeed enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
inequitable inīquus, -a, -um (10)
inflict (on) inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus (12)
influence auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* (14)
inhabitant incola, incolae *m.* (3)
instead of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
intention mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
into in (prep. + acc.) (1)
it irks (one) piget, pigere, piguit (15)
iron ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1)
island īnsula, īnsulae *f.* (1)
it is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
it causes (one) to repent or regret paenitet, paenitere, paenituit (15)
it concerns interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
it disgusts (one) piget, pigere, piguit (15)
it irks (one) piget, pigere, piguit (15)
it is important interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
it is permitted licet, licere, licuit or licitum est (14)
it is proper oportet, oportere, oportuit (14)
it is right oportet, oportere, oportuit (14)
it makes (one) ashamed pudet, pudere, puduit or puditum est (15)
it makes (one) sick taedet, taedere, taesum est (15)
it makes (one) tired taedet, taedere, taesum est (15)
it moves (one) to pity miseret, miserere, miseruit or miseritum est (15)
Italy Italia, Italiae *f.* (1)
its (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
itself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)

jealousy invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
joy gaudium, gaudiī *n.* (8)
judge arbitror (1-tr.) (11)
judgment cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1); iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
Julia Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* (§16)

- Julius Caesar** (C.) Iūlius Caesar, (C.) Iūlii Caesaris *m.* (§63)
Juno Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* (§63)
Jupiter Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* (§63)
just aequus, -a, -um (10)
just modo (adv.) (12)
just now modo (adv.) (12)
justly iūre (adv.) (6)
- keen** ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
keenness aciēs, aciēi *f.* (9)
keep teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus (3)
kill interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus (5);
 cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (12)
kind genus, generis *n.* (10)
kindness grātia, grātia*e f.* (12)
king rēx, rēgis *m.* (6)
know *perfect*, nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); *perfect*,
 cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10);
 sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus (11)
known nōtus, -a, -um (10)
- labor** labor, labōris *m.* (10)
lack careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
land terra, terrae *f.* (3)
large magnus, -a, -um (3)
last summus, -a, -um (11)
later post (adv.) (7)
law iūs, iūris *n.* (6); lēx, lēgis *f.* (8)
to pass a law lēgem ferre (8)
lay iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11)
lead dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4)
leader dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* (10)
learn nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō,
 cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
learn (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
leave (behind) relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus (8)
legate lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
legion legiō, legiōnis *f.* (11)
Lesbia Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* (§63)
letter litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
letter (of the alphabet) littera, litterae *f.* (12)
level aequus, -a, -um (10)
Liber Liber, Liberī *m.* (§63)
lieutenant lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
life vīta, vītae *f.* (2)
life force anima, animae *f.* (1)
lifetime aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
light lūx, lūcis *f.* (11); lūmen, lūminis *n.* (13)
light levis, leve (8)
limit modus, modī *m.* (8); finis, finis, -ium *m.* or *f.* (10)
line (of march) agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
listen (to) audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
literature litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
- little** parvus, -a, -um (3)
a little paulum, *paulī *n.* (11)
live vivō, vīvere, vīxī, victūrus (6)
Livia Līvia, Līviae *f.* (§16)
lo ecce (interj.) (§74)
long longus, -a, -um (11)
long for cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
long-standing longus, -a, -um (11)
a long way longē (adv.) (11)
look ecce (interj.) (§74)
look (at) spectō (1-tr.) (14)
loosen solvō, solve, solvī, solūtus (15)
lord dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
lose perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus (13)
(morally) lost perditus, -a, -um (13)
a lot multum (adv.) (5)
love amō (1-tr.) (2)
love amor, amōris *m.* (6)
Love Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63)
loyal pius, -a, -um (5)
loyalty fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
Lucius Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* (abbreviation: L.) (§16)
luck fors, fortis, -ium *f.* (12)
lucky fēlix, fēlicis (6)
- make** faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4); efficiō, efficere,
 effēcī, effectus (14)
make a mistake errō (1-intr.) (2)
to make a speech orātiōnem habēre (10)
to make camp castra pōnere (11)
man vir, virī *m.* (1); homō, hominis *m.* (6)
manage gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
Manius Manius, Maniī *m.* (abbreviation: M'.) (§16)
manliness virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
manner modus, modī *m.* (8)
many multus, -a, -um (3)
Marcus Marcus, Marcī *m.* (abbreviation: M.) (§16)
Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony) Marcus Antōnius,
 Marcī Antōniī *m.* (§16)
marketplace forum, forī *n.* (3)
Mars Mars, Martis *m.* (§63)
master dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
matter rēs, rei *f.* (9)
me ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
measure modus, modī *m.* (8)
memory memoria, memoriae *f.* (12)
Mercury Mercurius, Mercuriī *m.* (§63)
meter modus, modī *m.* (8)
middle (of) medius, -a, -um (10)
midst medium, mediī *n.* (10)
military camp castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (11)
mind animus, animī *m.* (2); mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
mine meus, -a, -um (4)
Minerva Minerva, Minervae *f.* (§63)

- miserable** miser, misera, miserum (3)
misfortune cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
money pecūnia, pecūniae *f.* (1)
moon lūna, lūnae *f.* (14)
morally lost perditus, -a, -um (13)
more plūs/plūrēs, plūra (11); plūs (adv.) (11)
more (greatly) magis (adv.) (11)
moreover autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
mortal mortālis, mortāle (7)
most plūrimus, -a, -um (11); plūrimum (adv.) (11)
most greatly maximē (adv.) (11)
mother māter, mātris *f.* (6)
motion mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (9)
mountain mōns, montis, -ium *m.* (12)
mouth *sing. or pl.*, ōs, ōris *n.* (14)
move moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
movement mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (9)
much multus, -a, -um (3); multum (adv.) (5)
multitude agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
my meus, -a, -um (4)
my (own) meus, -a, -um (5)
myself —, meī (reflexive pron.) (5)
- name** nōmen, nōminis *n.* (14)
name vocō (1-tr.) (2)
nation gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingenīi *n.* (7)
nature ingenium, ingenīi *n.* (7); nātūra, nātūrae *f.* (7)
near sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
necessary necesse (indeclinable adj.) (14)
neither (of two) neuter, neutra, neutrum (9)
neither . . . nor . . . neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . (2)
Neptune Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* (§63)
Nero Nerō, Nerōnis *m.* (§63)
Nero Claudius Caesar Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudī Caesaris *m.* (§63)
never numquam (adv.) (6)
nevertheless tamen (adv.) (5)
new novus, -a, -um (7)
night nox, noctis, -ium *f.* (9)
nine novem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
ninth nōnus, -a, -um (§93)
no nūllus, -a, -um (9)
no one nēmō, nēminis *m. or f.* (9)
not nōn (adv.) (2); nē (adv.) (7)
not any nūllus, -a, -um (9)
not at all nihil (adverbial acc.) (13); haud (adv.) (14)
not enough parum (indeclinable subst. or adv.) (11)
not even nē . . . quidem (4)
not know nesciō, nescīre, nescī/nescīvī, nescītus (11)
not only . . . but also . . . nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . (7)
not want nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (12)
- not wish** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (12)
nothing nihil, nīl (indeclinable noun) *n.* (3); nihilum, nihili *n. or nīl*, nīli *n.* (13)
now nunc (adv.) (3); iam (adv.) (9); modo (adv.) (12)
numen nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
- O** ō (interj.) (1)
obey pāreō, pārere, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
observe spectō (1-tr.) (14)
obtain parō (1-tr.) (9)
occupy teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
occurrence cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
of such a sort tālis, tāle (13)
of which sort quālis, quāle (13)
(political) office honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
often saepe (adv.) (8)
oh heu (interj.) (§74)
old antiquus, -a, -um (7); vetus, veteris (14)
on in (prep. + abl.) (1)
on account of propter (prep. + acc.) (3); ob (prep. + acc.) (9)
on account of which thing quam ob rem (adv.) (9)
on behalf of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
on this side . . . on that side . . . hinc . . . hinc . . . (§131); hinc . . . illinc . . . (§131)
one ūnus, -a, -um (9)
only sōlus, -a, -um (9); ūnus, -a, -um (9)
only solum (adv.) (7); modo (adv.) (12)
only (so much) tantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
onto in (prep. + acc.) (1)
(the) open medium, mediū *n.* (10)
opinion sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
oppress opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
or aut (conj.) (7); an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question* (12); vel (conj.) (14)
or not an nōn *in direct question* (12); necne *in Indirect Question* (12)
oration ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* (10)
orator ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* (10)
Orcus Orcus, Orcī *m.* (§63)
order iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus (2); imperō (1-intr.) (+ dat.) (9)
order iussum, iussī, *n.* (9)
origin genus, generis *n.* (10)
other alius, -a, -um (9)
(the) other cēterus, -a, -um (13)
(the) other (of two) alter, altera, alterum (9)
otherwise aliter (adv.) (9)
ought dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)
our noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
our (own) noster, nostra, nostrum (5)
ours noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
ourselves —, nostrum/nostri (reflexive pron.) (5)
out from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)

- overcome** superō (1-tr.) (3); vincō, vincere, vicī, victus (7)
- overpower** premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
- overwhelm** opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
- Ovidius Naso (Ovid)** (P.) Ovidius Nasō, (P.) Ovidius Nasōnis *m.* (§63)
- owe** dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)
- part** pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
- pass away** pereō, perīre, perī, peritūrus (11)
- to pass a law** lēgem ferre (8)
- path** via, viae *f.* (1)
- to pay the penalty** poenās dare (2)
- peace** pāx, pācis *f.* (8)
- penalty** poena, poenae *f.* (2)
- to pay the penalty** poenās dare (2)
- (a) people** gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
- (the) people** populus, populī *m.* (3)
- perceive** sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
- perception** sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
- perform** gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
- perish** pereō, perīre, perī, peritūrus (11)
- permit** patior, patī, passus sum (8)
- it is permitted** licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est (14)
- (what is) permitted** fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
- personal enemy** inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (3)
- to pitch camp** castra pōnere (11)
- pitiable** miser, misera, miserum (3)
- it moves (one) to pity** miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est (15)
- place** pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
- place** locus, locī *m.*; *pl.*, loca, locōrum *n. pl.* or *sometimes* locī, locōrum *m. pl.* (8)
- place around** circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (15)
- (flat) plain** campus, campī *m.* (11)
- plan** cōsiliū, cōsiliī *n.* (1)
- to form a plan** cōsiliū capere (4)
- to plead a case** causam agere (4)
- pleasant** dulcis, dulce (15)
- please** placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
- pleased** grātus, -a, -um (13)
- pleasing** grātus, -a, -um (13)
- plot** insīdiae, insīdiarum *f. pl.* (7)
- Pluto** Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
- poem** carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
- poet** poēta, poētae *m.* (1)
- point out** mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
- political faction** *sing. or pl.*, pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
- political office** honor or honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
- Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great)** (Cn.) Pompeius Magnus, (Cn.) Pompeiī Magnī *m.* (§16)
- ponder** cōgitō (1-tr.) (2)
- populace** populus, populī *m.* (3)
- Porcius Cato** (M.) Porcius Catō, (M.) Porciī Catōnis *m.* (§63)
- possess** teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
- power** imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); vīs, —, -ium *f.* (6)
- practice** mōs, mōris *m.* (10)
- praise** laudō (1-tr.) (3)
- pray** tandem (adv.) (8)
- precious** cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
- prefer** mālō, mālle, māluī, — (12); praeferō, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus (12)
- prepare (for)** parō (1-tr.) (9)
- present** dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
- preserve** servō (1-tr.) (10)
- press (hard)** premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
- press on** opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
- prevent** dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus (15); prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15)
- previously** ante (adv.) (7)
- price** pretium, pretiī *n.* (13)
- proceed** gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
- to proceed (quickly)** sē ferre (5)
- prohibit** prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15)
- it is proper** oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
- property** rēs, rei *f.* (9)
- provided that** dum (conj.) (13); dummodo (conj.) (13); modo (conj.) (13)
- province** prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* (3)
- public** pūblicus, -a, -um (9)
- public enemy** hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
- public square** forum, forī *n.* (3)
- Publius** Publius, Publiī *m.* (abbreviation: P.) (§16)
- punishment** poena, poenae *f.* (2)
- purpose** mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
- pursuit** studium, studiī *n.* (2)
- push** pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus (9)
- put** pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
- put in charge (of)** praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus (12)
- queen** rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* (1)
- Quintus** Quintus, Quintī *m.* (abbreviation: Q.) (§16)
- race** genus, generis *n.* (10)
- radiance** lūmen, lūminis *n.* (13)
- rational soul** animus, animī *m.* (2)
- read** legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (6)
- readily** facile (adv.) (6)
- real** vērus, -a, -um (7)
- reason** causa, causae *f.* (4)
- receive** accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
- reckless** audāx, audācis (8)

- recklessly** audacter or audāciter (adv.) (8);
perditē (adv.) (13)
- recklessness** audācia, audāciae f. (11)
- reckon** faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (13)
- recognize** nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
- it causes (one) to regret** paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (15)
- release** solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
- reliable** certus, -a, -um (7)
- remain** maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
- remaining** reliquus, -a, -um (14)
- remaining part (of)** cēterus, -a, -um (13)
- remarkable** ingēns, ingentis (6)
- remember** meminī, meminisse (defective verb) (5)
- remind** moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
- remove** auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
- Remus** Remus, Remī m. (§16)
- renown** glōria, glōriae f. (4)
- it causes (one) to repent** paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (15)
- report** ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10); referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (10)
- report** fāma, fāmae f. (1)
- republic** rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae f. (9)
- reputation** fāma, fāmae f. (1)
- resentment** invidia, invidiae f. (4)
- respect** vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
- respect** honor or honōs, honōris m. (13)
- respectable** honestus, -a, -um (10)
- respond** respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus (2)
- rest (of)** cēterus, -a, -um (13); reliquus, -a, -um (14)
- return** redeō, redire, rediī, reditum (5)
- revolution** rēs novae, rērum novārum f. pl. (9)
- reward** dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
- rhythm** modus, modī m. (8)
- right** iūs, iūris n. (6)
- (what is divinely) right** fās (indeclinable noun) n. (12)
- it is right** oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
- rightly** iūre (adv.) (6)
- ring** orbis, orbis, -ium m. (15)
- rise** orior, orīrī, ortus sum (14)
- road** via, viae f. (1)
- Roman** Rōmānus, -a, -um (3)
- (the) Romans** Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum m. pl. (3)
- Rome** Rōma, Rōmae f. (6)
- Romulus** Rōmulus, Rōmulī m. (§16)
- ruined** perditus, -a, -um (13)
- ruinously** perditē (adv.) (13)
- rule** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
- rumor** fāma, fāmae f. (1); rūmor, rūmōris m. (12)
- to rush forth** sē ēicere (11)
- sacrilege** nefās (indeclinable noun) n. (12)
- safety** salūs, salūtis f. (§74)
- sail** vēlum, vēli n. (2)
- to set sail** vēla dare (2)
- sailor** nauta, nautae m. (1)
- same** idem, eadem, idem (8)
- savage** saevus, -a, -um (13)
- save** servō (1-tr.) (10)
- say** dīcō, dicere, dixī, dictus (4); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); inquam (defective verb) (8); for (1-tr.) (15)
- to say "greetings" or hello** salūtem dicere (§74)
- saying** dictum, dictī n. (6)
- scarcely** vix (adv.) (14)
- sea** mare, maris, *-ium n. (6)
- search for** quaerō, quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvi, quaesītus (9)
- second** secundus, -a, -um (§93)
- secret** caecus, -a, -um (8)
- see** videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus (2)
- seek** petō, petere, petiī/petīvi, petītus (7); quaerō, quaerere, quaesīi/quaesīvi, quaesītus (9)
- seem** passive, videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus (3)
- seize** rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15)
- self, -selves** ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
- sell** vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus (13)
- Sempronius Gracchus** (C. or Ti.) Semprōnius, (C. or Ti.) Semprōniū Gracchī m. (§16)
- senate** senātus, senātus m. (9)
- senators** patrēs cōscrip̄tī (voc. pl.) (6)
- send** mittō, mittere, misi, missus (4)
- sense** sēnsus, sēnsūs m. (11)
- Sergius Catilina (Catiline)** (L.) Sergius Catilīna, (L.) Sergiī Catilīnae m. (§16)
- serious** gravis, grave (8)
- service** mūnus, mūneris n. (8)
- Servius** Servius, Serviī m. (abbreviation: Ser.) (§16)
- set** occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
- set aside** pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
- set forth** proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (10)
- set in motion** moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
- set out** proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (10)
- to set sail** vēla dare (2)
- set up** cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus (15)
- seven** septem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
- seventh** septimus, -a, -um (§93)
- severe** gravis, grave (8)
- Sextus** Sextus, Sextī m. (abbreviation: Sex.) (§16)
- shade** umbra, umbrae f. (7)
- shadow** umbra, umbrae f. (7)
- shameful** turpis, turpe (15)
- sharp** ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
- sharp edge** aciēs, aciēi f. (9)
- she** is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)

- short** brevis, breve (11)
show mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
it makes (one) sick taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
sign signum, signī *n.* (11)
signal signum, signī *n.* (11)
similar similis, simile (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
since quoniam (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
sing (of) canō, canere, cecinī, cantus (4)
sister soror, sorōris *f.* (7)
situation rēs, reī *f.* (9)
six sex (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
sixth sextus, -a, -um (§93)
skill ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
sky caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
slave servus, servī *m.* (1)
slavery servitūs, servitūtis *f.* (6)
small parvus, -a, -um (3)
small amount paulum, *paulī *n.* (11)
snatch away ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus (15)
so sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7); tam (adv.) (13)
so great tantus, -a, -um (13)
so many tot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
so much tantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
so much tantus, -a, -um (13)
so very adeō (adv.) (14)
soldier miles, militis *m.* (6)
some aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) (14); quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) (14)
someone, something aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)
son filius, filiī *m.* (1); nātus, nāti *m.* (10)
song carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
soon mox (adv.) (3)
sooner prius (adv.) (11)
sort genus, generis *n.* (10)
soul anima, animae *f.* (1)
(rational) soul animus, animī *m.* (2)
speak dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus (4); loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (11); for (1-tr.) (15)
speaker orātor, orātōris *m.* (10)
spear tēlum, tēlī *n.* (11)
speech orātiō, orātiōnis *f.* (10)
spend agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
spirit animus, animī *m.* (2)
Spurius Spurius, Spuriī *m.* (abbreviation: Sp.) (§16)
stand stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus (10)
stand fast stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus (10)
stand in the way obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus (15)
standard signum, signī *n.* (11)
state civitās, civitātis *f.* (7)
stay maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
step gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
still etiam (adv.) (7)
stir (up) moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
stock genus, generis *n.* (10)
strange novus, -a, -um (7)
street via, viae *f.* (1)
strength vīrēs, vīrium *f. pl.* (6)
strong validus, -a, -um (4); fortis, forte (6)
strong feelings animī, animōrum *m. pl.* (2)
strongly valdē (adv.) (5)
study studium, studiī *n.* (2)
such tālis, tāle (13)
suffer labōrō (1-intr.) (2); patior, patī, passus sum (8); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10)
sufficiently satis or sat (adv.) (10)
Sulla Sulla, Sullae *m.* (§16)
summon vocō (1-tr.) (2)
sun sōl, sōlis *m.* (14)
suppose putō (1-tr.) (11)
sure certus, -a, -um (7)
surpass superō (1-tr.) (3)
surrender trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
surround cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus (15); circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (15)
sweet dulcis, dulce (15)
swift celer, celeris, celere (15)
sword ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1); gladius, gladiī *m.* (1)
take (up) capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4)
take away auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
take in exchange mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
take on incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus (13)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingenī *n.* (7)
talk loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (11)
tall altus, -a, -um (4)
tear away rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15); ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus (15)
tell dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus (4)
temple templum, templī *n.* (7)
ten decem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
tenth decimus, -a, -um (§93)
terrify terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
territory finēs, finium *m. or f.* (10)
test experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8)
than quam (conj.) (11)
thanks grātia, grātia *f.* (12)
that is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
that ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
that quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
that ut (conj.) *introduces Indirect Command* (9); quīn (conj.) *introduces Doubting Clause* (12); nē (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause* (15)
that (of yours) iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)

- that . . . not** *nē* (conj.) *introduces negative Indirect Command* (9); *quīn* (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Characteristic* (10); *quīn* (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Result* (14); *ut* (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause* (15)
- the fact that** *quod* (conj.) (15)
- their (own)** *suus*, -a, -um (5)
- them** *is*, *ea*, *id* (personal pron.) (4)
- themselves** —, *suī* (reflexive pron.) (5)
- then** *mox* (adv.) (3); *tandem* (adv.) (8); *tum* or *tunc* (adv.) (12); *ibi* (adv.) (§131)
- thence** *illinc* (adv.) (§131); *inde* (adv.) (§131)
- there** *ibi* (adv.) (§131); *illīc* (adv.) (§131)
- there is need of** *opus est* (+ abl. or nom.) (10)
- therefore** *quam ob rem* (adv.) (9); *quārē* (adv.) (9); *igitur* (postpositive conj.) (11)
- thereupon** *ibi* (adv.) (§131); *inde* (adv.) (§131)
- these** *is*, *ea*, *id* (demonstr. adj.) (4)
- these** *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- they** *is*, *ea*, *id* (personal pron.) (4)
- thing** *rēs*, *reī* f. (9)
- think** *cōgitō* (1-tr.) (2); *arbitror* (1-tr.) (11); *putō* (1-tr.) (11)
- third** *tertius*, -a, -um (§93)
- this** *is*, *ea*, *id* (demonstr. adj.) (4)
- this** *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- thither** *eō* (adv.) (§131); *illūc* (adv.) (§131)
- those** *is*, *ea*, *id* (demonstr. adj.) (4)
- those** *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- those (of yours)** *iste*, *ista*, *istud* (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
- thought** *sententia*, *sententiae* f. (4)
- thousand** *mille*; *pl.*, *mīlia*, *mīlium* (§93)
- thousandth** *mīllēsīmus*, -a, -um (§93)
- three** *tres*, *tria* (§93)
- throng** *agmen*, *agminis* n. (14)
- through** *per* (prep. + acc.) (4)
- throw** *iaciō*, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus* (11)
- throw out** *ēiciō*, *ēicere*, *ēiēcī*, *ēiectus* (11)
- thus** *sīc* (adv.) (5); *ita* (adv.) (7)
- Tiberius** *Tiberius*, *Tiberiī* m. (abbreviation: *Ti.*) (§16)
- time** *tempus*, *temporis* n. (9); *aetās*, *aetātis* f. (14)
- it makes (one) tired** *taedet*, *taedēre*, *taesum est* (15)
- Titus** *Titus*, *Titī* m. (abbreviation: *T.*) (§16)
- to ad** (prep. + acc.) (1)
- to be going to be fore** (11); *futūrus*, -a, -um *esse* (11)
- to here** *hūc* (adv.) (§131)
- to so great an extent** *adeō* (adv.) (14)
- to such an extent** *adeō* (adv.) (14)
- to that place** *eō* (adv.) (§131)
- to the same place** *eōdem* (adv.) (§131)
- to there** *illūc* (adv.) (§131)
- to what extent** *quid* (adverbial acc.) (13)
- to where** *quō* (rel. adv.) (9); *quō* (interrog. adv.) (12)
- too** *quoque* (adv.) (8)
- too little** *parum* (indeclinable subst.) (11); *parum* (adv.) (11)
- top (of)** *summus*, -a, -um (11)
- toward** *ad* (prep. + acc.) (1)
- town** *oppidum*, *oppidī* n. (1)
- tranquil** *aequus*, -a, -um (10)
- treachery** *īnsīdiae*, *īnsīdiārūm* f. pl. (7)
- trick** *ars*, *artis*, -ium f. (7)
- trivial** *levis*, *leve* (8)
- troop** *manus*, *manūs* f. (9)
- troops** *cōpiae*, *cōpiārūm* f. pl. (7)
- Troy** *Īlium*, *Īliī* n. (§16); *Troia*, *Troiae* f. (§16)
- true** *vērus*, -a, -um (7)
- trust** *crēdō*, *crēdere*, *crēdidī*, *crēditus* (+ dat.) (11)
- trust** *fidēs*, *fideī* f. (9)
- trustworthiness** *fidēs*, *fideī* f. (9)
- try** *cōnor* (1-tr.) (8); *experior*, *experīrī*, *expertus sum* (8)
- Tullius Cicero** (M.) *Tullius Cicerō*, (M.) *Tullīi Cicerōnis* m. (§63)
- two** *duo*, *duae*, *duo* (§93)
- ugly** *turpis*, *turpe* (15)
- uncertain** *incertus*, -a, -um (7)
- under** *sub* (prep. + abl.) (6); *sub* (prep. + acc.) (6)
- understand** *intellegō*, *intellegere*, *intellēxī*, *intellēctus* (6)
- uneven** *inīquus*, -a, -um (10)
- unfortunate** *īnfēlix*, *īnfēlicis* (6)
- unfriendly** *inimīcus*, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
- ungrateful** *īngrātus*, -a, -um (13)
- unhappy** *īnfēlix*, *īnfēlicis* (6)
- unjust** *inīquus*, -a, -um (10)
- unless** *nisi* (conj.) (5)
- unlike** *dissimilis*, *dissimile* (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
- unlucky** *īnfēlix*, *īnfēlicis* (6)
- unpleasant** *īngrātus*, -a, -um (13)
- unreliable** *incertus*, -a, -um (7)
- unsure** *incertus*, -a, -um (7)
- until** *dōnec* (conj.) (13); *dum* (conj.) (13)
- unworthy (of)** *īndignus*, -a, -um (+ abl.) (12)
- up to** *sub* (prep. + acc.) (6)
- urge** *hortor* (1-tr.) (9)
- us** *nōs*, *nostrum*/*nostrī* (personal pron.) (4)
- use** *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum* (+ abl.) (10)
- utter** *iaciō*, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus* (11)
- Valerius Catullus** (C.) *Valerius Catullus*, (C.) *Valeriī Catullī* m. (§16)
- value** *aestimō* (1-tr.) (13)
- value** *pretium*, *pretiī* n. (13)
- vast** *īngēns*, *īngentis* (6)
- Venus** *Venus*, *Veneris* f. (§63)

- Vergilius Maro (Vergil)** P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergilii Marōnis *m.* (§63)
- very** ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
- (so) very** adeō (adv.) (14)
- very much** plūrimum (adverbial acc.) (13)
- Vesta** Vesta, Vestae *f.* (§63)
- villainy** scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
- violence** vis, —, -ium *f.* (6)
- virtue** virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
- voice** vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
- Vulcan** Vulcānus, Vulcāni *m.* (§63)
- to wage war** bellum gerere (4)
- wait** moror (1-tr.) (13)
- wait for** ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
- walk** ambulō (1-intr.) (2); gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
- wall** mūrus, mūrī *m.* (11)
- (city) walls** moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (6)
- wander** errō (1-intr.) (2)
- want** cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupivī, cupītus (7); volō, velle, voluī, — (12)
- want more** mālō, mālle, mālūi, — (12)
- war** bellum, bellī *n.* (1)
- to wage war** bellum gerere (4)
- warn** moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
- way** via, viae *f.* (1); modus, modī *m.* (9)
- we** nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) (4)
- weapon** tēlum, tēlī *n.* (11)
- weapons** arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
- well** bene (adv.) (5)
- well-known** nōtus, -a, -um (10)
- west** occidēns, occidentis *m.* (14)
- what** quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
- what** quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
- what sort of** quālis, quāle (13)
- when** ubi (interrog. adv.) (5)
- when** ubi (conj.) (5); ut (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
- whence** unde (rel. adv.) (9); unde (interrog. adv.) (12)
- where** ubi (interrog. adv.) (5); ubi (rel. adv.) (9)
- whether** num (adv.) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
- whether** an (conj.) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
- whether** utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
- whether . . . or . . .** utrum . . . an . . . (12); -ne . . . an . . . (12); — . . . an . . . (12)
- which** quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
- which** quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
- which (of two)** uter, utra, utrum (9)
- while** dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
- whither** quō (rel. adv.) (9); quō (interrog. adv.) (12)
- who** quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8); quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
- who . . . not** quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Characteristic* (10); *introduces negative Relative Clause of Result* (14)
- whole** tōtus, -a, -um (9)
- why** cūr (interrog. adv.) (2); quam ob rem (interrog. adv.) (9); quārē (interrog. adv.) (9); quid (adverbial acc.) (13)
- wicked** impius, -a, -um (5)
- wicked deed** scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
- wife** fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
- win** capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4); *intr.*, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
- wisdom** sapientia, sapientiae *f.* (2)
- wise** sapiēns, sapientis (11)
- wish** volō, velle, voluī, — (12)
- to wish ill** male velle (12)
- to wish well** bene velle (12)
- with** cum (prep. + abl.) (1)
- with difficulty** difficiliter or difficulter (adv.) (6)
- withdraw** cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
- without** sine (prep. + abl.) (3)
- woman** fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
- word** verbum, verbī *n.* (1); dictum, dictī *n.* (6); vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
- work** labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
- work** labor, labōris *m.* (10); opus, operis *n.* (10)
- world** orbis terrārum (15)
- worse** peior, peius (11); peius (adv.) (11)
- worst** pessimus, -a, -um (11); pessimē (adv.) (11)
- worthy (of)** dignus, -a, -um (+ abl.) (12)
- wound** vulnus, vulneris *n.* (13)
- wrath** īra, īrae *f.* (2)
- wretched** miser, misera, miserum (3)
- write** scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus (4)
- year** annus, annī *m.* (9)
- yield** cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
- you** tū, tuī (personal pron.) (4)
- you (pl.)** vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) (4)
- your** tuus, -a, -um (4)
- your (pl.)** vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
- your (own)** tuus, -a, -um (5)
- your (pl.) (own)** vester, vestra, vestrum (5)
- yours** tuus, -a, -um (4)
- yours (pl.)** vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
- yourself** —, tuī (reflexive pron.) (5)
- yourselves** —, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) (5)
- zeal** studium, studiī *n.* (2)

GENERAL INDEX

English Index

- Ablative case, introduction, 17
 - Absolute, 251
 - of Accompaniment, 17
 - of Cause, 118
 - of Comparison, 306
 - of Degree of Difference, 306
 - of Description, 254
 - of Manner, 59
 - of Means, 17
 - of Origin, 254
 - of Personal Agent, 58
 - of Place From Which, 119
 - of Place Where, 119
 - of Price, 416
 - of Respect, 75
 - of Separation, 118
 - of Time When, 213
 - of Time Within Which, 213
 - Accentuation, 7
 - antepenult, 7
 - Law of the Penult, 8
 - long by nature, 8
 - long by position, 8
 - penult, 7
 - ultima, 7
 - Accusative case, introduction, 17
 - Adverbial, 415
 - Direct Object, 17
 - Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb, 530
 - Double
 - with **ōrō**, 354
 - with **rogō**, 354
 - of Duration of Time, 212
 - with imperfect tense, 212
 - with present tense, 212
 - of Exclamation, 415
 - of Place To Which, 120
 - of Respect, 530
 - Predicate adjective, 52
 - Subject, 300
 - Subject of an Indirect Statement, 298
- Active periphrastics, 252
 - Adjective morphology
 - comparative of (irregular), 305
 - comparative of (regular), 302
 - first-second declension, 50
 - irregular (gen. sing. in **-īus**), 205
 - superlative of (irregular), 305
 - superlative of (regular), 303
 - third declension, 116
 - Adjectives, introduction, 50
 - demonstrative, 77, 170
 - indefinite, 241, 466
 - intensive, 93
 - interrogative, 177
 - noun-adjective agreement, 51
 - participles, 246
 - of irregular verbs, 247
 - possessive, 77

- Adjectives (*continued*)
 predicate, 52
 reflexive-possessive, 93
 substantive use, 51
- Adverbs
 comparative of (irregular), 305
 comparative of (regular), 303
 derived from first-second declension
 adjectives, 94
 derived from third-declension adjectives,
 117
 irregular, 94, 117
 of place, 460
 superlative of (irregular), 305
 superlative of (regular), 304
- Alcaic strophe, 351
- Alliteration, 288
- Alphabet, 4
- Anaphora, 288
- Antithesis, 288
- Apodosis, definition, 97
- Apposition, 60
- Archaic spellings, 402
- Archaic verb forms, 403
- Archilochian meter, 350
- Asclepiadean meters, 349
- Assimilation (in compound verbs), 84
- Assonance, 288
- Caesura, 196
 principal, 196
- Chiasmus, 42, 288
- Choliambic (limping iambic), 348
- Cognates, introduction, 14
- Compound verbs, introduction, 84
- Conditional sentences, definition, 97
 future less vivid, 149
 future more vivid, 98
 with emphatic protasis, 98
 mixed contrary-to-fact, 150
 mixed future, 150
 past contrary-to-fact, 149
 past simple, 97
 present contrary-to-fact, 149
 present simple, 97
 summary of (using indicative), 99
 summary of, 150
- Conjunctions
 coordinating, 13
 subordinating, 95
- Consonants, 4
 Consonantal *i*, 4
 fricative, 7
 liquid, 7
 mute, 7
- Coordination, definition, 206
- Correlatives, 412
- Dactylic hexameter, 194
- Dative case, introduction, 16
 Double Dative construction, 151
 of Advantage, 151
 of Agent with a Passive Periphrastic, 253
 of Disadvantage, 151
 of Indirect Object, 16
 of Purpose, 151
 of Reference, 16
 of the Possessor, 39
 with a Compound Verb, 364
 with an Intransitive Verb, 178
- Declension, definition, 18
- Defective verbs, 85
 meminī, 85
 ōdī, 86
- Deliberative subjunctive, 358
 in indirect question, 360
- Demonstrative adjectives/pronouns
 hic, **haec**, **hoc**, 170
 ille, **illa**, **illud**, 171
 is, **ea**, **id**, 77
 iste, **ista**, **istud**, 170
 special uses of, 171
- Deponent verbs, 167
 participles of, 247
- Derivatives, introduction, 14
- Diaeresis, 197
- Diphthongs, 6
- Direct questions, 357
- Doubting clauses, 361
- Elegiac couplet, 195
- Elision, 196
- Ellipsis, 42, 288
- Enclitic, 13
- Fear clauses, 524
- Genitive case, introduction, 16
 Objective, 74
 of Characteristic, 472

- of Description, 254
- of Indefinite Value, 416
- of Possession, 16
- Partitive, 74
 - with superlatives, 307
- Subjective, 74
- Gerundives, introduction, 408
 - expressing purpose, 409
- Gerunds, introduction, 408
 - expressing purpose, 409
- Greetings in Latin, 160

- Hendecasyllable, 348
- Hendiadys, 288
- Hiatus, 197
- Hortatory subjunctive, 146
- Hyperbaton, 288
- Hypotaxis, definition, 206

- Idiom, definition, 26
- Imperative, 71
 - future, **meminī**, 86
 - future, **sciō**, 293
 - present active and passive, 71
- Impersonal constructions
 - with **licet**, **necesse est**, **oportet**, 471
 - with **miseret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, **taedet**, **rēfert**, **interest**, 526
- Impersonal passive, 112
- Indicative, introduction, 30
 - in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 301
- Indirect commands, 209
- Indirect questions, 359
 - deliberative subjunctive in, 360
 - double, 360
 - potential subjunctive in, 360
- Indirect reflexives, 528
- Indirect statement, 298
 - fore ut** construction, 470
 - personal construction of, 300
 - subordinate clauses in, 301
- Infinitive, definition, 31
 - Complementary, 38
 - Historical, 531
 - in indirect statement, 298
 - morphology, 295
 - Object, 39
 - present passive, 71
 - relative time in indirect statement, 298
 - Subject, 60
- Infix, definition, 32
- Intensive adjective **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, 93
- Interjections in Latin, 160
- Interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, 177
- Interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid**, 176

- Jussive subjunctive, 146
 - as negative command, 146
 - in parataxis with **licet**, **necesse est**, or **oportet**, 472

- Law of the Penult, 8
- Locative case, introduction, 119
- Long Vowel Rule, 34, 55

- Meter, introduction, 194
 - Alcaic strophe, 351
 - Archilochian, 350
 - Asclepiadean, 349
 - caesura, 196
 - principal, 196
 - choliambic (limping iambic), 348
 - common terms, 347
 - dactylic hexameter, 194
 - diaeresis, 197
 - elegiac couplet, 195
 - elision, 196
 - hendecasyllable, 348
 - hiatus, 197
 - Sapphic strophe, 349
 - stichic verse, 347
 - strophic or stanzaic verse, 347
- Metonymy, 12
- Morphology, definition, 9. *See also specific parts of speech and specific parts of the verb*
- Mute/liquid rule, 194

- Names, 45
 - abbreviations of common **praenōmina**, 45
 - first-second declension, 45
 - of gods, 132
 - praenōmen**, **nōmen**, and **cognōmen**, 45
 - third declension, 132
- Negative commands,
 - with jussive subjunctive, 146
 - with **nōlī** or **nōlīte**, 364

- Nominative case, introduction, 15
 Predicate, 16, 52
 Subject, 15
- Noun Morphology
 first declension, 19
 second declension, masculine/feminine, 21
 two endings of genitive singular, 22
 vocative forms of, 22
 second declension, neuter, 22
 two endings of genitive singular, 23
 third declension masculine/feminine, 112
 third declension neuter, 112
 third declension i-stem masculine/feminine, 114
 third declension i-stem neuter, 114
 third-declension noun *vīs* (irregular), 115
 fourth declension, 203
 neuter endings, 203
 fifth declension, 204
- Nouns, introduction, 15
 case, 15
 finding the stem of, 19
 gender, 15
 number, 15
For noun syntax see specific noun cases
- Numbers, cardinal and ordinal, 235
- Optative subjunctive, 147
- Parataxis, definition, 206
 jussive subjunctive in parataxis with *licet*, *nesesse est*, or *oportet*, 472
- Participle, definition, 31
 attributive, 249
 circumstantial, 249
 introduction, 246
 of deponent and semideponent verbs, 247
 of irregular verbs, 247
 perfect passive as adjective/substantive, 111
 relative time of, 249
- Passive periphrastics, 252
- Period, periodic sentence, 289
- Place expressions, summary, 120
- Possession
 Dative of the Possessor, 39
 Expressions of, compared, 40
 Genitive of Possession, 16
 summary, 78
- Potential subjunctive, 147
 in indirect question, 360
- Predicate accusative, 299
- Predicate adjective in the accusative, 299
- Prefix, 84
- Prevention clauses, 525
- Principal parts, in this textbook, 26
 vocabulary entry for a verb, 31
- Pronouns
 demonstrative, 170
 indefinite, 466
 interrogative, 176
 personal, 76
 reflexive, 91
 direct and indirect, 528
 relative, 172
 connective, 175
 indefinite or generic antecedent of, 175
 restrictive and nonrestrictive, 174
- Pronunciation, 3
- Prose Word Order, Introduction, 40
- Protasis, definition, 97
- Proviso clauses, 412
- Purpose clauses, 206
 relative clauses of, 211
- Reduplicated stem, definition, 26
- Relative clauses, 172
 of characteristic, 244
 of purpose, 211
 introduced by *quō* with comparatives, 307
 of result, 468
 placement of antecedent in and after, 176
 restrictive and nonrestrictive, 174
- Relative pronoun, 172
 connective, 175
 indefinite or generic antecedent of, 175
- Relative time
 in sequence of tenses, 207
 infinitives and, 298
 participles and, 249
- Result clauses, 467
 relative clauses of, 468
- Rhetorical terms, introduction, 288
 alliteration, 288
 anaphora, 288
 antithesis, 288
 assonance, 288
 chiasmus, 42, 288
 ellipsis, 42, 288

- hendiadys, 288
 hyperbaton, 288
 period, periodic sentence, 289
 tricolon, 288
 Rhotacism, definition, 36

 Sapphic strophe, 349
 Scansion, introduction, 194
 Semideponent verbs, 169
 participles of, 247
 Sentences
 complex, 95
 compound, 95
 conditional, 97
 future less vivid, 149
 future more vivid, 98
 future more vivid with emphatic protasis, 98
 mixed contrary-to-fact, 150
 mixed future, 150
 past contrary-to-fact, 149
 past simple, 97
 present contrary-to-fact, 149
 present simple, 97
 summary of (using indicative), 99
 summary of, 150
 simple, 95
 Sequence of tenses, 206
 summary of rules, 209
 Stems of verbs
 perfect active, 87
 present, 32
 Stress, 7
 antepenult, 7
 Law of the Penult, 8
 long by nature, 8
 long by position, 8
 penult, 7
 ultima, 7
 Subjunctive, introduction, 140
 by attraction, 529
 deliberative, 358
 in indirect question, 360
 hortatory, 146
 in causal clauses introduced by **quod/quia**, 411
 in **cum** clauses, 361
 in doubting clauses, 361
 in fear clauses, 524
 in **fore ut** construction, 470
 in future less vivid conditional, 149
 in indirect commands, 209
 in indirect questions, 360
 in mixed contrary-to-fact conditional, 150
 in mixed future conditional, 150
 in past contrary-to-fact conditional, 149
 in present contrary-to-fact conditional, 149
 in prevention clauses, 525
 in proviso clauses, 412
 in purpose clauses, 206
 in relative clauses of purpose, 211
 in relative clauses of characteristic, 244
 in result clauses, 467
 in relative clauses of result, 468
 in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 301
 in substantive **ut** clauses, 469
 in temporal clauses introduced by **antequam/priusquam**, 411
 in temporal clauses introduced by **dum/dōnec**, 411
 jussive, 146
 as negative command, 146
 optative, 147
 potential, 147
 in indirect question, 360
 summary of independent uses, 148
 Subordinate Clauses, definition, 95
 causal, definition, 96
 introduced by **cum**, 361
 introduced by **quod/quia** with an indicative, 410
 introduced by **quod/quia** with a subjunctive, 411
 circumstantial introduced by **cum**, 361
 comparative, definition, 96
 concessive, definition, 96
 introduced by **cum**, 361
 conditional, definition 96
 in indirect statement, 301
 temporal, definition, 96
 introduced by **cum**, 361
 introduced by **antequam/priusquam** with an indicative, 410
 introduced by **antequam/priusquam** with a subjunctive, 411
 introduced by **dum/dōnec** with an indicative, 410
 introduced by **dum/dōnec** with a subjunctive, 411

- Subordination, definition, 206
- Substantive **ut** clauses, 469
- Supine, 529
- Syllabification, 7
- Syncopated forms, 402
- Syncopation of forms in the perfect active system, 402
- Synopsis, introduction, 57
- I. present active and passive indicative, 57
- II. present active and passive indicative, infinitive, and imperative, 73
- III. present indicative system, perfect active system, infinitive, and imperative, 90
- IV. indicative, infinitive, imperative, 110
- V. indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, imperative, 145
- VI. indicative, subjunctive, participle, infinitive, imperative, 248
- VII. complete, 297
- Syntax, definition, 9. *See also specific parts of speech, specific cases, and specific moods*
- Tricolon, 288
- Unassimilated forms, 402
- Verb Morphology
- endings
- active personal, 33
- passive personal, 54
- perfect active, 87
- imperative
- irregular forms, 72
- of **meminī**, 86
- present active and passive, 71
- indicative
- future active of first and second conjugations, 35
- future active of third, third i-stem and fourth conjugations, 70
- future passive of first and second conjugations, 55
- future passive of third, third i-stem and fourth conjugations, 70
- future perfect active of all verbs, 89
- future perfect passive of all verbs, 109
- imperfect active of first and second conjugations, 34
- imperfect active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 69
- imperfect passive indicative of first and second conjugations, 56
- imperfect passive of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 69
- perfect active of all verbs, 87
- perfect active of **eō**, 88
- perfect active stems ending in **i-**, second singular/plural of, 137
- perfect passive of all verbs, 108
- pluperfect active of all verbs, 88
- pluperfect passive of all verbs, 109
- present, imperfect, and future active of **eō**, 53
- present, imperfect, and future of **ferō**, 91
- present, imperfect, and future active of **possum**, 35
- present, imperfect, and future active of **sum**, 35
- present active of first and second conjugations, 33
- present active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 67
- present passive of first and second conjugations, 55
- present passive of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 67
- infinitive
- future active, 295
- perfect active, 295
- perfect passive, 295
- periphrastic, 296
- present passive, 71
- participles, 246
- of deponent and semideponent verbs, 247
- of irregular verbs, 247
- periphrastics, 252
- subjunctive
- imperfect active and passive of all verbs, 142
- perfect active of all verbs, 143
- perfect passive of all verbs, 144
- pluperfect active of all verbs, 143
- pluperfect passive of all verbs, 144
- present active and passive of all verbs, 141
- present active of **eō**, 142

- present active of **possum**, 142
- present active of **sum**, 142
- Verbs, introduction, 29
 - active periphrastics, 252
 - aspect, 29
 - completed, 29
 - progressive, 29
 - repeated, 29
 - simple, 29
 - compound, introduction, 84
 - conjugations, introduction, 30
 - copulative, definition, 16
 - defective, 85
 - deponent, 167
 - impersonal passive, 112
 - inceptive or inchoative, 241
 - infinitive, definition, 31
 - present passive, 71
 - infix, definition, 32
 - intransitive, definition, 38
 - mood, 30
 - number, 29
 - of perception, 298
 - participle, definition, 31
 - attributive and circumstantial, 249
 - introduction, 246
 - passive periphrastics, 252
 - perfect active stem, 87
 - perfect active system, 87
 - perfect passive system, 108
 - person, 29
 - present stem, finding, 32
 - rhotacism, definition, 36
 - semideponent, 169
 - subjunctive, introduction, 140
 - tense, 29
 - of the indicative mood, overview, 30
 - primary, 207
 - secondary, 208
 - transitive, definition, 38
 - voice, 30
 - passive, introduction, 53
- Vocative case, introduction, 18
- Vowel triangle, 84
- Vowel weakening (in compound verbs), 84
- Vowels, 5
- Word Order (Prose), introduction, 40

Latin Index

- alius, alia, aliud**, uses of, 205
alter, altera, alterum, uses of, 205
- cum**, subordinating conjunction, 361
- domus**, full declension, 200
duo, 236
- eō**, 53
perfect active indicative, 88
present, imperfect, and future active indicative, 53
present active subjunctive, 142
- ferō**, 91
imperative, 72
fīō, 414
fore ut, 470
- habēō** in the passive voice, 58
hic, haec, hoc, 170
- īdem, eadem, idem**, 166
ille, illa, illud, 171
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 93
is, ea, id, 77
iste, ista, istud, 170
- mālō**, 363
meminī, 85
imperatives, 86
- ne**, interrogative enclitic particle, 28
nōlō, 363
- ōdī**, 86
- possum**
present, imperfect, and future active indicative, 35
present active subjunctive, 142
- quam**, comparison with, 306
-que, enclitic conjunction, 13
quī, quae, quod, 172
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam/quoddam, 241
quīn
introducing doubting clause, 361
introducing relative clause of characteristic, 245
introducing relative clause of result, 468
- quis, quid**, 176
- sum**
as a copulative verb, 37
omitted in compound forms, 111
present, imperfect, and future active indicative, 35
present active subjunctive, 142
two meanings of, 37
- trēs**, 236
- vērō**, uses of the irregular adverb, 139
videō in the passive voice, 58
vīs, 115
volō, 363

Learn to Read Latin helps students acquire an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature as quickly as possible. It not only presents basic Latin morphology and syntax with clear explanations and examples but also offers direct access to unabridged passages drawn from a wide variety of Latin texts. As beginning students learn basic forms and grammar, they also gain familiarity with patterns of Latin word order and other features of style.

Learn to Read Latin

- is designed to be comprehensive and requires no supplementary materials;
- explains English grammar points and provides drills especially for today's students;
- offers sections on Latin metrics;
- includes numerous unaltered examples of ancient Latin prose and poetry;
- incorporates selections by authors such as Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, Catullus, Vergil, and Ovid, presented chronologically with introductions to each author and work;
- offers a comprehensive workbook that provides drills and homework assignments.

This enlarged second edition improves upon an already strong foundation by streamlining grammatical explanations, increasing the number of syntax and morphology drills, and offering additional short and longer readings in Latin prose and poetry.

“Offering crystal clear explanations of Latin vocabulary, morphology, and grammar and an unparalleled wealth of exercises and unadapted selected readings, *Learn to Read Latin* has rightly become the first choice of teachers and students across the English-speaking world.”—**Jonathan L. Ready**, Indiana University

“*Learn to Read Latin* both smooths and speeds the way to true Latinity. The authors achieve a standard for the whole rest of the field in breadth and depth of outlook, to say nothing of accuracy in and love for the subject.”—**Tim Markey**, Worcester Academy

Also available:

Paperback Textbook ISBN: 978-0-300-19495-1

Workbook, Part I ISBN: 978-0-300-19497-5

Workbook, Part II ISBN: 978-0-300-19498-2

Workbook, combined ISBN: 978-0-300-19496-8

Paper Set ISBN: 978-0-300-19499-9

Andrew Keller and **Stephanie Russell** teach classics at Collegiate School in New York City.

Cover illustration: *The Young Cicero Reading*. Vincenzo Foppa, active 1456–1515. By kind permission of the Trustees of the Wallace Collection, London.

yalebooks.com/ltr1

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS

New Haven & London yalebooks.com yalebooks.co.uk

ISBN 978-0-300-19494-4



9 780300 194944